

# DENON<sup>®</sup>

## AVR-X1200W

INTEGRATED NETWORK AV RECEIVER

# Owner's Manual

[Front panel](#)[Display](#)[Rear panel](#)[Remote](#)[Index](#)

<b>Accessories</b>	<b>7</b>
Inserting the batteries	8
Operating range of the remote control unit	8
<b>Features</b>	<b>9</b>
High quality sound	9
High performance	9
Easy operation	12
<b>Part names and functions</b>	<b>13</b>
Front panel	13
Display	16
Rear panel	18
Remote control unit	21

## Connections

<b>Connecting speakers</b>	<b>25</b>
Speaker installation	25
Speaker connection	32
Speaker configuration and “Amp Assign” settings	36
<b>Connecting a TV</b>	<b>47</b>
Connection 1 : TV equipped with an HDMI connector and compatible with the ARC (Audio Return Channel)	48
Connection 2 : TV equipped with an HDMI connector and incompatible with the ARC (Audio Return Channel)	49
Connection 3 : TV equipped without an HDMI connector	50

<b>Connecting a playback device</b>	<b>51</b>
Connecting a set-top box (Satellite tuner/cable TV)	52
Connecting a DVD player or Blu-ray Disc player	53
Connecting a video camcorder or game console	54
<b>Connecting an iPod or USB memory device to the USB port</b>	<b>55</b>
<b>Connecting an FM/AM antenna</b>	<b>57</b>
<b>Connecting to a home network (LAN)</b>	<b>59</b>
Wired LAN	59
Wireless LAN	60
<b>Connecting an external control device</b>	<b>61</b>
REMOTE CONTROL jacks	61
<b>Connecting the power cord</b>	<b>62</b>

## Playback

<b>Basic operation</b>	<b>64</b>
Turning the power on	64
Selecting the input source	64
Adjusting the volume	65
Turning off the sound temporarily (Muting)	65
Playback a DVD player/Blu-ray Disc player	65



<b>Playing an iPod</b>	<b>66</b>	<b>Listening to Internet Radio</b>	<b>87</b>
Listening to music on an iPod	67	Listening to Internet Radio	88
iPod Browse Mode settings	68	Playing the last played Internet Radio station	89
Performing repeat playback	70	Using vTuner to add Internet Radio stations to favorites	90
Performing random playback	70	<b>Playing back files stored on a PC and NAS</b>	<b>91</b>
<b>Playing a USB memory device</b>	<b>71</b>	Applying media sharing settings	92
Playing files stored on USB memory devices	72	Playing back files stored on a PC and NAS	93
<b>Listening to music on a Bluetooth device</b>	<b>74</b>	<b>Listening to Pandora®</b>	<b>95</b>
Playing music from Bluetooth device	75	Listening to Pandora®	96
Pairing with other Bluetooth devices	77	Creating a new station	98
Reconnecting to this unit from a Bluetooth device	78	Listening to an existing station	99
<b>Listening to FM/AM broadcasts</b>	<b>79</b>	Listening to created radio stations at random	99
Listening to FM/AM broadcasts	80	Giving feedback and managing stations	100
Tuning in by entering the frequency (Direct Tune)	81	Sign Out	101
Changing the tune mode (Tune Mode)	82	<b>Listening to SiriusXM Internet Radio</b>	<b>102</b>
Tuning in to stations and presetting them automatically (Auto Preset)	82	Listening to SiriusXM Internet Radio	103
Presetting the current broadcast station (Preset Memory)	83	Sign Out	104
Listening to preset stations	83		
Specify a name for the preset broadcast station (Preset Name)	84		
Skipping preset broadcast stations (Preset Skip)	85		
Cancelling Preset Skip	86		



<b>AirPlay function</b>	<b>105</b>	<b>Selecting a sound mode</b>	<b>119</b>
Playing songs from your iPhone, iPod touch or iPad	106	Selecting a sound mode	120
Playing iTunes music with this unit	106	Direct playback	121
Selecting multiple speakers (devices)	107	Pure Direct playback	121
Perform iTunes playback operations with the remote control unit of this unit	107	Auto surround playback	122
<b>Spotify Connect function</b>	<b>108</b>	<b>HDMI control function</b>	<b>131</b>
Playing Spotify music with this unit	108	Setting procedure	131
<b>Convenience functions</b>	<b>109</b>	<b>Smart Menu function</b>	<b>132</b>
Performing repeat playback	110	<b>Sleep timer function</b>	<b>134</b>
Performing random playback	110	Using the sleep timer	135
Registering to Favorites	111	<b>Quick select plus function</b>	<b>136</b>
Playing back content added to the “Save to Favorite”	111	Calling up the settings	137
Deleting content added to favorites	112	Changing the settings	138
Searching content with keywords (Text Search)	112	<b>Web control function</b>	<b>139</b>
Playing back music and a favorite picture at the same time (Slideshow)	113	Controlling the unit from a web control	139
Setting the Slideshow Interval	114	<b>Playback in ZONE2 (Separate room)</b>	<b>141</b>
Adjusting the volume of each channel to match the input source (Ch Level Adjust)	115	Connecting ZONE2	141
Adjusting the tone (Tone)	116	Playback in ZONE2	143
Displaying your desired video during audio playback (Video Select)	117		
Playing the same music in all zones (All Zone Stereo)	118		



## Settings

<b>Menu map</b>	<b>145</b>
Menu operations	148
<b>Inputting characters</b>	<b>149</b>
Using the keyboard screen	150
<b>Audio</b>	<b>151</b>
Dialog Level	151
Subwoofer Level	151
Surr.Parameter	152
Restorer	156
Audio Delay	157
Volume	157
Audyssey®	158
Manual EQ	161
<b>Video</b>	<b>164</b>
HDMI Setup	164
On Screen Disp.	169
TV Format	170

<b>Inputs</b>	<b>171</b>
Input Assign	171
Source Rename	173
Hide Sources	173
Source Level	173
Input Select	174
<b>Speakers</b>	<b>175</b>
<b>Audyssey® Setup</b>	<b>175</b>
Procedure for speaker settings (Audyssey® Setup)	177
Error messages	184
Retrieving Audyssey® Setup settings	185
<b>Manual Setup</b>	<b>186</b>
Amp Assign	186
Speaker Config.	187
Distances	192
Levels	193
Crossovers	194
Bass	195
Front Speaker	196



<b>Network</b>	<b>197</b>
Information	197
Connection	197
Wi-Fi Setup	198
Settings	201
Network Control	203
Friendly Name	203
Diagnostics	204
Maintenance Mode	205
<b>General</b>	<b>206</b>
Language	206
ECO	206
ZONE2 Setup	209
Zone Rename	210
Quick Sel.Names	210
Front Display	210
Firmware	211
Information	213
Usage Data	214
Setup Lock	215

## Tips

Tips	217
Troubleshooting	219
<b>Resetting factory settings</b>	<b>235</b>

## Appendix

<b>About HDMI</b>	<b>236</b>
<b>Playing back a USB memory devices</b>	<b>239</b>
<b>Playing back a Bluetooth device</b>	<b>240</b>
<b>Playing back a file saved on a PC or NAS</b>	<b>241</b>
<b>Playing back Internet Radio</b>	<b>242</b>
<b>Personal memory plus function</b>	<b>242</b>
<b>Last function memory</b>	<b>242</b>
<b>Sound modes and channel output</b>	<b>243</b>
<b>Sound modes and surround parameters</b>	<b>244</b>
<b>Types of input signals, and corresponding sound modes</b>	<b>247</b>
<b>Explanation of terms</b>	<b>250</b>
<b>Trademark information</b>	<b>259</b>
<b>Specifications</b>	<b>261</b>
<b>Index</b>	<b>266</b>
<b>License</b>	<b>269</b>



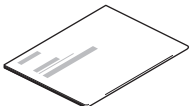
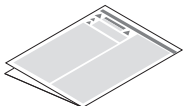
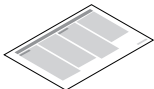

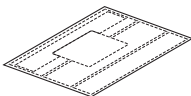
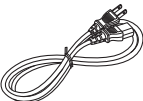



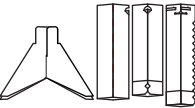
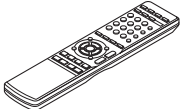

Thank you for purchasing this Denon product.

To ensure proper operation, please read this owner's manual carefully before using the product.

After reading this manual, be sure to keep it for future reference.

## Accessories

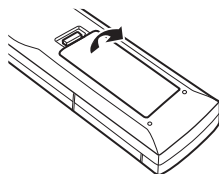
Check that the following parts are supplied with the product.

 <p>Quick Start Guide</p>	 <p>Safety Instructions</p>	 <p>Notes on radio</p>	 <p>Warranty (for North America model only)</p>	 <p>Cable labels</p>
 <p>Power cord</p>	 <p>FM indoor antenna</p>	 <p>AM loop antenna</p>	 <p>Sound calibration microphone (ACM1HB)</p>	 <p>Sound calibration microphone stand</p>
 <p>Remote control unit (RC-1189)</p>	 <p>R03/AAA batteries</p>			

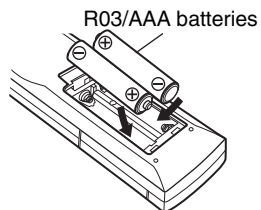


## Inserting the batteries

- 1 Remove the rear lid in the direction of the arrow and remove it.



- 2 Insert two batteries correctly into the battery compartment as indicated.



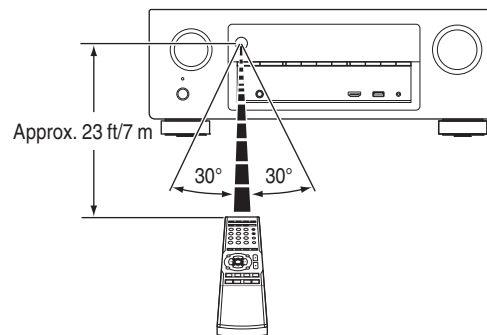
- 3 Put the rear cover back on.

### NOTE

- To prevent damage or leakage of battery fluid:
  - Do not use a new battery together with an old one.
  - Do not use two different types of batteries.
- Remove the batteries from the remote control unit if it will not be in use for long periods.
- If the battery fluid should leak, carefully wipe the fluid off the inside of the battery compartment and insert new batteries.

## Operating range of the remote control unit

Point the remote control unit at the remote sensor when operating it.





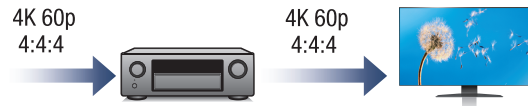
# Features

## High quality sound

- **With discrete circuit technology, the power amplifier provides identical quality for all 7-channels (120 Watts x 7-channels)**  
For optimum realism and stunning dynamic range, the power amplifier section features discrete power devices (not integrated circuitry). By using high current, high power discrete power devices, the amplifier is able to easily drive high quality speakers.
- **Dolby Atmos (🔊 p. 250)**  
This unit is equipped with a decoder that supports Dolby Atmos audio format. The placement or movement of sound is accurately reproduced by the addition of overhead speakers, enabling you to experience an incredibly natural and realistic surround sound field.
- **DTS:X**  
This unit is equipped with the DTS:X decoder technology. DTS:X brings the home theater experience to new heights with its immersive object based audio technology which removes the bounds of channels. The flexibility of objects allows for sound to be scaled large or small and moved around the room with greater accuracy than ever before leading to a richer immersive audio experience.

## High performance

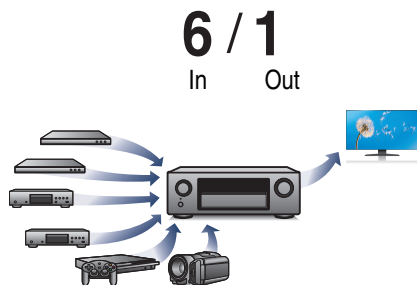
- **4K 60Hz input/output supported**



- When 4K Ultra HD (High Definition) is used, an input/output speed of 60 frames per second (60p) is achieved for video signals. When connected to 4K Ultra HD and 60p video signal input compatible TV, you can enjoy the sense of realism only available from high-definition images, even when viewing fast-moving video.
- This unit also supports image processing for 4K 60p, 4:4:4 and 24-bit videos. By processing the video at the original resolution, this unit lets you enjoy flawless, high-definition picture quality.
- **HDCP 2.2**  
This unit is compatible with HDCP2.2 copyright protection standard.

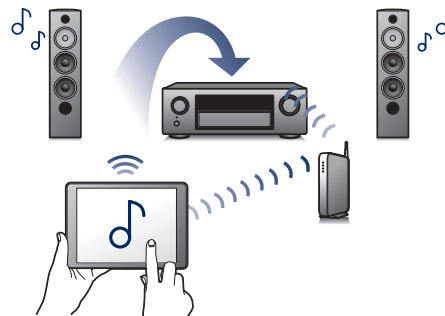


- **HDMI connections enable connection to various digital AV devices (6 inputs, 1 output)**



This unit is equipped with 6 HDMI inputs and 1 HDMI output enabling connection to various HDMI compatible devices such as Blu-ray Disc players, game consoles and HD video camcorders.

- **The device is equipped with a AirPlay® function in addition to network functions such as Internet radio etc. (p. 105)**



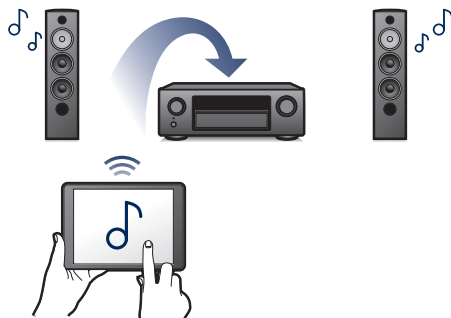
You can enjoy a wide variety of content, including listening to Internet Radio, playing audio files stored on your PC, and displaying photographs stored on your PC on our television.

This unit also supports Apple AirPlay which lets you stream your music library from an iPhone®, iPad®, iPod touch® or iTunes®.

- **Playback of DSD and FLAC files via USB and networks**  
This unit supports the playback of high resolution audio formats such as DSD (2.8 MHz) and FLAC 192 kHz files. It provides high quality playback of high resolution files.



- **Wireless connection with Bluetooth devices can be carried out easily** (🔗 p. 74)



You can enjoy music simply by connecting wirelessly with your smartphone, tablet, PC, etc.

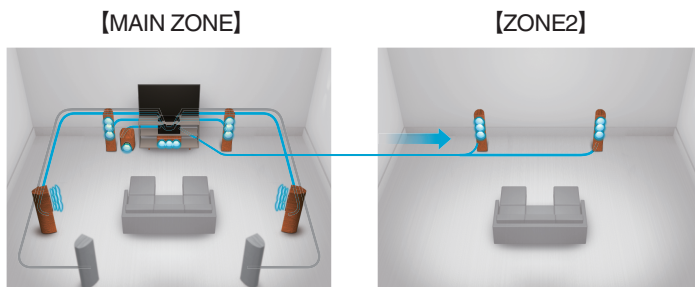
- **Compatible with the “Denon 2015 AVR Remote”\* for performing basic operations of the unit with an iPad, iPhone or Android™ devices (Google, Amazon Kindle Fire)**

“Denon 2015 AVR Remote” is application software that allows you to perform basic operations with an iPad, iPhone, Android smartphone or Android tablet such as turning the unit ON/OFF, controlling the volume, and switching the source.

\* Download the appropriate “Denon 2015 AVR Remote” for your iOS or Android devices. This unit needs to be connected to the same LAN or Wi-Fi (wireless LAN) network that the iPhone or iPod touch is connected to.



- **Multi-Room audio** (🔗 p. 118)



You can select and play back the respective inputs in MAIN ZONE and ZONE2.

In addition, when the All Zone Stereo function is used, the music being played back in MAIN ZONE can be enjoyed in all the zones at the same time. This is useful when you want to let the BGM propagate throughout the whole house.

- **Energy-saving design**

This unit is equipped with an ECO Mode function that allows you to enjoy music and movies while reducing the power consumption during use, and also an auto-standby function that automatically turns off the power supply when the unit is not in use. This helps reduce unnecessary power use.

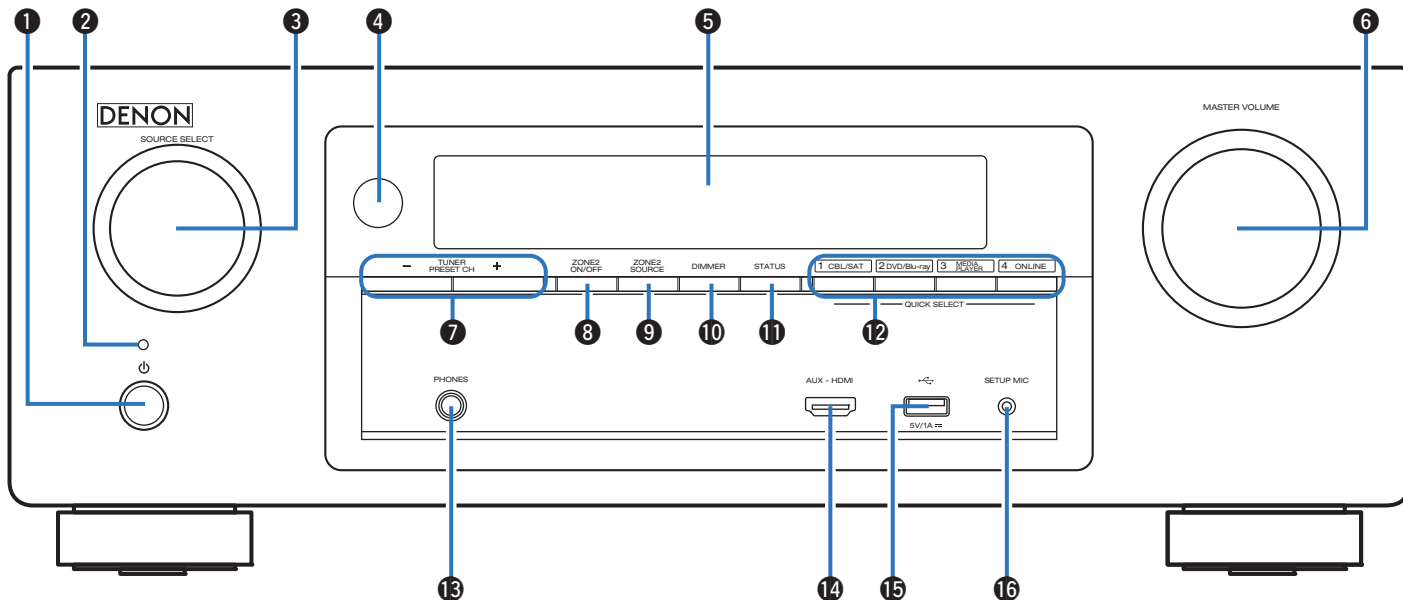
## Easy operation

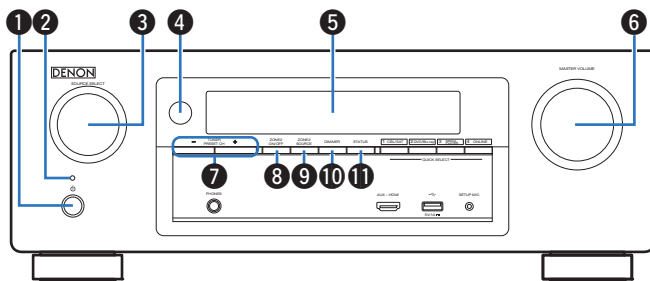
- **“Setup Assistant” provides easy-to-follow setup instructions**  
First select the language when prompted. Then simply follow the instructions displayed on the TV screen to set up the speakers, network, etc.
- **Easy to use Graphical User Interface**  
This unit is equipped with a Graphical User Interface for improved operability.



# Part names and functions

## Front panel





### ❶ Power operation button (⏻)

Used to turn the power of the MAIN ZONE (room where this unit is located) on/off (standby). (☞ p. 64)

### ❷ Power indicator

This is lit as follows according to the power status:

- White: Power on
- Off: Normal standby
- Red:
  - When “HDMI Control” is set to “On” (☞ p. 165)
  - When “HDMI PassThrough” is set to “On” (☞ p. 166)
  - When “Network Control” is set to “Always On” (☞ p. 203)

### ❸ SOURCE SELECT knob

This selects the input source. (☞ p. 64)

### ❹ Remote control sensor

This receives signals from the remote control unit. (☞ p. 8)

### ❺ Display

This displays various pieces of information. (☞ p. 16)

### ❻ MASTER VOLUME knob

This adjusts the volume level. (☞ p. 65)

### ❼ Tuner preset channel buttons (TUNER PRESET CH +, -)

These select preset broadcast stations. (☞ p. 83)

### ❽ ZONE2 ON/OFF button

This turns the power of ZONE2 (separate room) on/off. (☞ p. 143)

### ❾ ZONE2 SOURCE button

This selects the input source for ZONE2. (☞ p. 143)

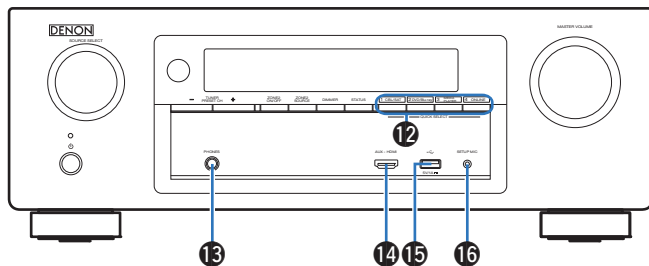
### ❿ DIMMER button

Each press of this switches the brightness of the display. (☞ p. 210)

### ⓫ STATUS button

Each press of this switches the status information that is shown on the display.





### 12 QUICK SELECT buttons

With a single press of any of these buttons, you can call up various settings you've registered to each button such as the input source, volume level and sound mode settings. (☞ p. 136)

### 13 Headphones jack (PHONES)

This is used to connect headphones.  
When the headphones are plugged into this jack, audio will no longer be output from the connected speakers or from the SUBWOOFER connectors.

#### NOTE

- To prevent hearing loss, do not raise the volume level excessively when using headphones.

### 14 AUX-HDMI connector

This is used to connect HDMI output compatible devices such as video camcorders and game consoles. (☞ p. 54)

### 15 USB port (☞)

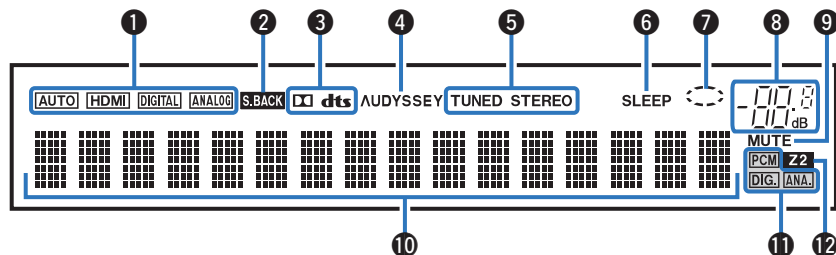
This is used to connect USB storages (such as USB memory devices) and the USB cable supplied with iPod. (☞ p. 55)

### 16 SETUP MIC jack

This is used to connect the supplied Sound calibration microphone. (☞ p. 178)



## Display



### 1 Input mode indicators

These light according to the audio input mode settings of each input source. (🔗 p. 174)

### 2 Surround back indicator

This lights when audio signals are being output from the surround back speakers. (🔗 p. 189)

### 3 Decoder indicators

These light when Dolby or DTS signals are input or when the Dolby or DTS decoder is running.

### 4 Audyssey® indicator

This lights when “MultEQ® XT”, “Dynamic EQ” or “Dynamic Volume” has been set up. (🔗 p. 158)

### 5 Tuner reception mode indicators

These light up according to the reception conditions when the input source is set to “Tuner”.

**TUNED:** Lights up when the broadcast is properly tuned in.

**STEREO:** Lights up when receiving FM stereo broadcasts.

### 6 Sleep timer indicator

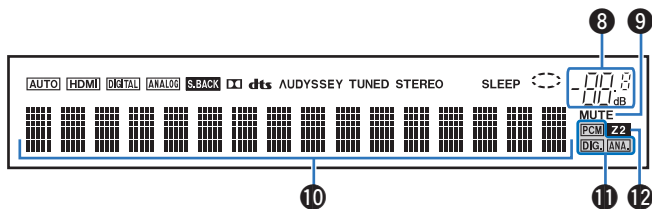
This lights when the sleep mode is selected. (🔗 p. 134)

### 7 Circle indicator

This is displayed when the input source is “Online Music” or “iPod/USB” when you are playing back music.







### 8 Volume indicator

### 9 MUTE indicator

This blinks while the sound is muted. (👉 p. 65)

### 10 Information display

The input source name, sound mode, setting values and other information are displayed here.

### 11 Input signal indicators

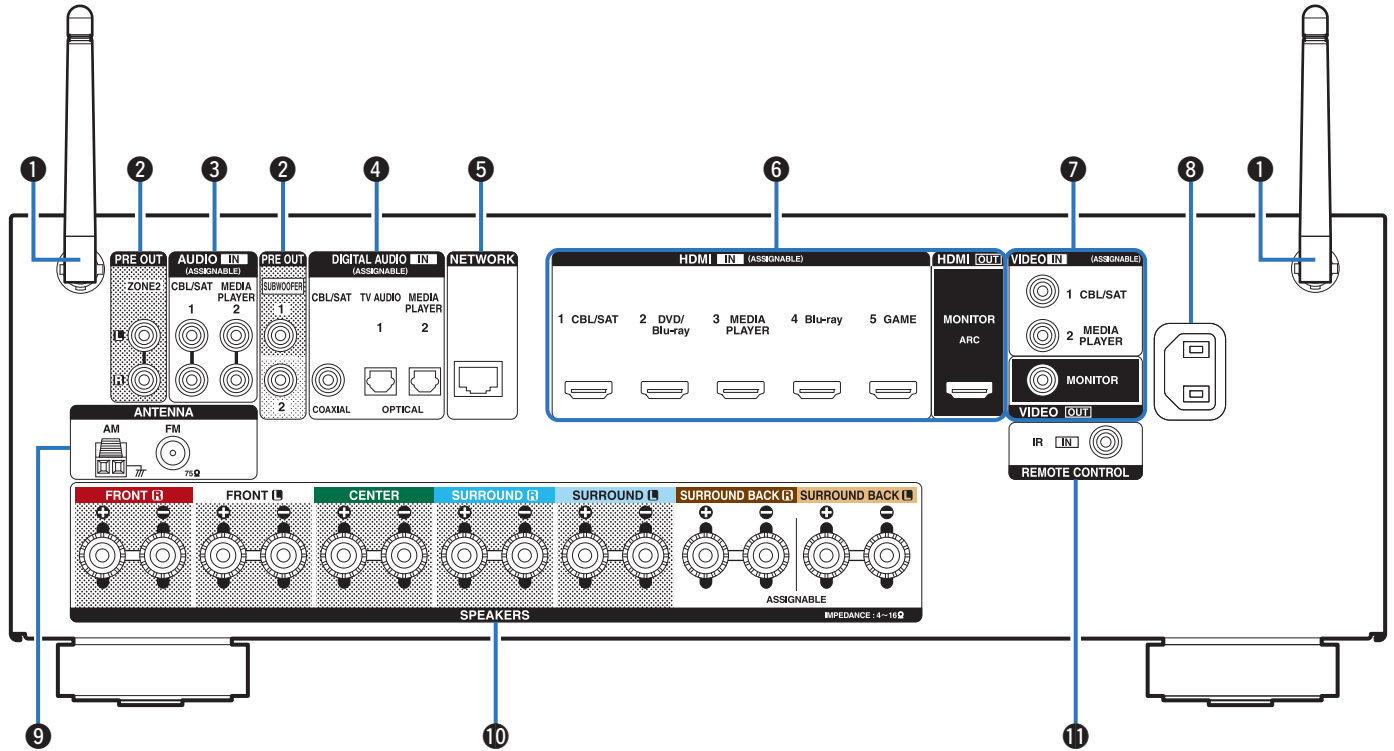
The respective indicator will light corresponding to the input signal. (👉 p. 174)

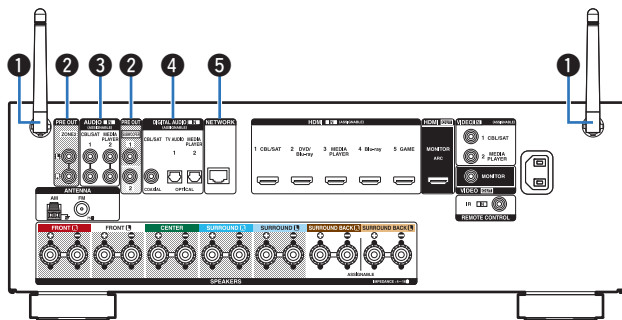
### 12 ZONE2 indicator

This lights up when ZONE2 (separate room) power is turned on. (👉 p. 143)



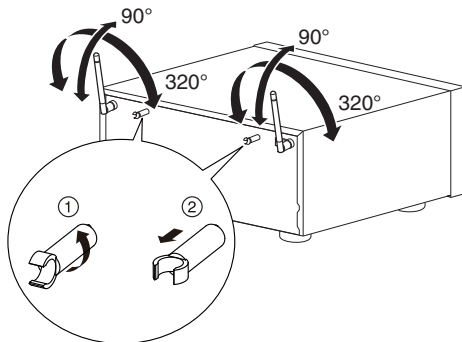
# Rear panel





### 1 Rod antennas for Bluetooth/wireless LAN

Stand this antenna upright when connecting to a network via wireless LAN, or when connecting to a handheld device via Bluetooth.  
([p. 60](#))



- The antenna clip can be removed from the rear panel.

- Rotate the antenna clip 90 degrees to the left.
- Pull the antenna clip out towards yourself.

- The antenna clip is needed when transporting this unit. Keep it in a safe place.
- Attach the antenna clip by following the steps for removing it in reverse.

### 2 PRE OUT connectors

Used to connect a subwoofer with built-in amplifier or power amplifier for ZONE2.

- “Connecting the subwoofer” ([p. 33](#))
- “Connection 2 : Connection using an external amplifier” ([p. 142](#))

### 3 Analog audio connectors (AUDIO)

Used to connect devices equipped with analog audio connectors.  
([p. 52](#))

### 4 Digital audio connectors (DIGITAL AUDIO)

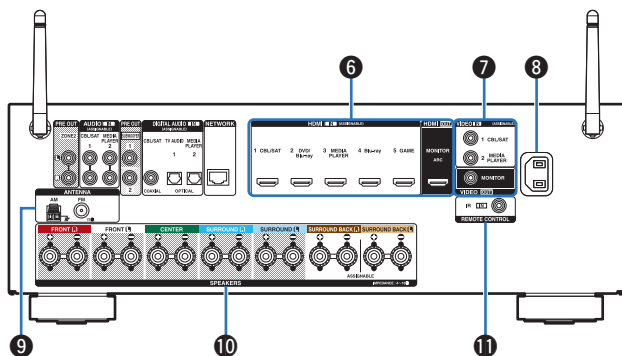
Used to connect devices equipped with digital audio connectors.

- “Connection 2 : TV equipped with an HDMI connector and incompatible with the ARC (Audio Return Channel)” ([p. 49](#))
- “Connection 3 : TV equipped without an HDMI connector” ([p. 50](#))
- “Connecting a set-top box (Satellite tuner/cable TV)” ([p. 52](#))

### 5 NETWORK connector

Used to connect to a LAN cable when connecting to a wired LAN network.  
([p. 59](#))





## 6 HDMI connectors

Used to connect devices equipped with HDMI connectors.

- “Connection 1 : TV equipped with an HDMI connector and compatible with the ARC (Audio Return Channel)” (☞ p. 48)
- “Connection 2 : TV equipped with an HDMI connector and incompatible with the ARC (Audio Return Channel)” (☞ p. 49)
- “Connecting a set-top box (Satellite tuner/cable TV)” (☞ p. 52)
- “Connecting a DVD player or Blu-ray Disc player” (☞ p. 53)

## 7 Video connectors (VIDEO)

Used to connect devices equipped with video connectors.

- “Connection 3 : TV equipped without an HDMI connector” (☞ p. 50)
- “Connecting a set-top box (Satellite tuner/cable TV)” (☞ p. 52)

## 8 AC inlet (AC IN)

Used to connect the power cord. (☞ p. 62)

## 9 FM/AM antenna terminals (ANTENNA)

Used to connect FM antennas and AM loop antennas. (☞ p. 57)

## 10 Speaker terminals (SPEAKERS)

Used to connect speakers. (☞ p. 32)

## 11 REMOTE CONTROL jack

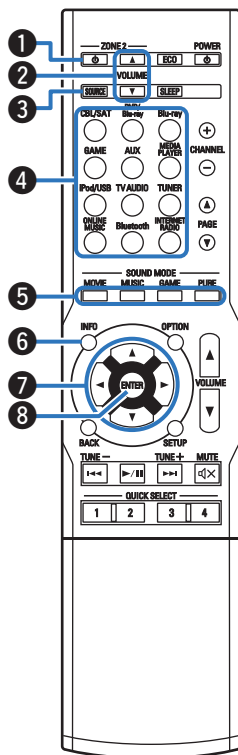
Used to connect infrared receivers/transmitters in order to operate this unit and external devices from a different room. (☞ p. 61)

### NOTE

- Do not touch the inner pins of the connectors on the rear panel. Electrostatic discharge may cause permanent damage to the unit.

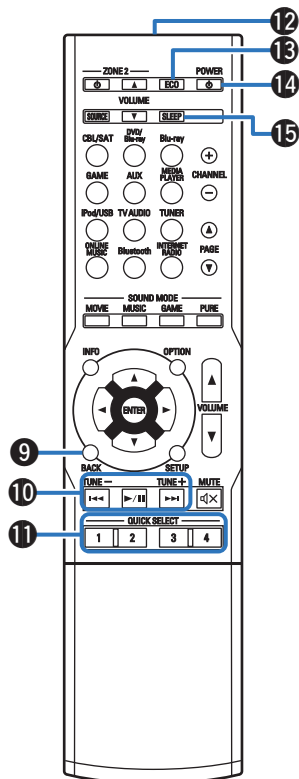


## Remote control unit



- 1 ZONE2 ON/OFF button (ZONE2 ⏻)**  
This turns the power of ZONE2 (separate room) on/off. (👉 p. 143)
- 2 ZONE2 VOLUME buttons (▲▼)**  
This setting adjusts the volume level for ZONE2. (👉 p. 144)
- 3 ZONE2 SOURCE button**  
This selects the input source for ZONE2. (👉 p. 143)
- 4 Input source select buttons**  
These selects the input source. (👉 p. 64)
- 5 SOUND MODE buttons**  
These select the sound mode. (👉 p. 119)
- 6 Information button (INFO)**  
This displays the status information on the TV screen. (👉 p. 214)
- 7 Cursor buttons (▲▼◀▶)**  
These select items.
- 8 ENTER button**  
This determines the selection.



**9 BACK button**

This returns to the previous screen.

**10 System buttons**

These perform playback related operations.

**Tuning up / Tuning down buttons (TUNE +, -)**

These select either FM broadcast or AM broadcast. (☞ p. 80)

**11 QUICK SELECT buttons (1 - 4)**

These call up settings registered to each button, such as input source, volume level and sound mode settings. (☞ p. 136)

**12 Remote control signal transmitter**

This transmits signals from the remote control unit. (☞ p. 8)

**13 ECO Mode button**

This switches to ECO Mode. (☞ p. 206)

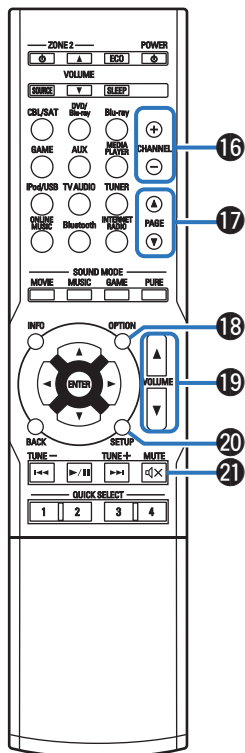
**14 POWER button (⏻)**

This turns the power on/off. (☞ p. 64)

**15 SLEEP button**

This sets the sleep timer. (☞ p. 134)





- 16 Channel select buttons (CHANNEL +, -)**  
These select preset broadcast stations. (👉 p. 83)
- 17 Page search buttons (PAGE ▲▼)**  
These switch pages.
- 18 OPTION button**  
This displays the option menu on the TV screen.
- 19 VOLUME buttons (▲▼)**  
These adjust the volume level. (👉 p. 65)
- 20 SETUP button**  
This displays the menu on the TV screen. (👉 p. 148)
- 21 MUTE button (MUTE icon)**  
This mutes the output audio. (👉 p. 65)



## ■ Contents









Connecting speakers	25
Connecting a TV	47
Connecting a playback device	51
Connecting an iPod or USB memory device to the USB port	55
Connecting an FM/AM antenna	57
Connecting to a home network (LAN)	59
Connecting an external control device	61
Connecting the power cord	62

### NOTE

- Do not plug in the power cord until all connections have been completed. However, when the “Setup Assistant” is running, follow the instructions in the “Setup Assistant” (page 8 in the separate “Quick Start Guide”) screen for making connections. (During “Setup Assistant” operation, the input/output connectors do not conduct current.)
- Do not bundle power cords together with connection cables. Doing so can result in noise.

## ■ Cables used for connections

Provide necessary cables according to the devices you want to connect.

Speaker cable	
Subwoofer cable	
HDMI cable	
Video cable	
Coaxial digital cable	
Optical cable	
Audio cable	
LAN cable	



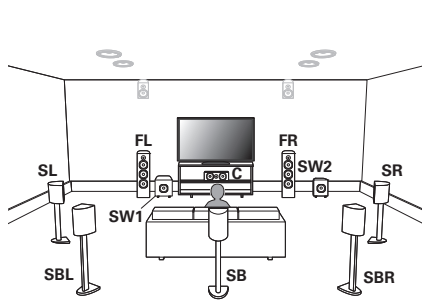


# Connecting speakers

Install speakers and connect them to this unit. (“Speaker installation” (🔍 p. 25), “Speaker connection” (🔍 p. 32))

## Speaker installation

Determine the speaker system depending on the number of speakers you are using and install each speaker and subwoofer in the room. Speaker installation is explained using this example of a typical installation.



### FL/FR

(Front speaker left/  
right):

Place the FRONT left and right speakers an equal distance from the main listening position. The distance between each speaker and your TV should also be the same.

### C

(Center speaker):

Place the CENTER speaker in between the front speakers and above or below your TV.

### SL/SR

(Surround speaker left/  
right):

Place the SURROUND left and right speakers an equal distance to the left and right sides of the main listening position. If you don't have surround back speakers, move the surround speakers slightly behind your listening position.

### SBL/SBR

(Surround back  
speaker left/right):

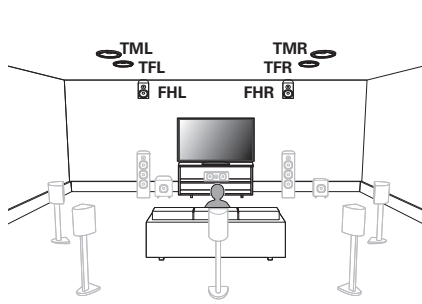
Place the SURROUND BACK left and right speakers an equal distance from the main listening position and directly behind the main listening position. When using a single surround back speaker (SB), place it directly behind the listening position.

### SW 1/2

(Subwoofer) :

Place the SUBWOOFER at a convenient location near the front speakers. If you have two subwoofers, place them asymmetrically across the front of your room.





**FHL/FHR**  
(Front height speaker  
left/right):

Place the FRONT HEIGHT left and right speakers directly above the front speakers. Mount them as close to the ceiling as possible and aim them towards the main listening position.

**TFL/TFR**  
(Top front speaker  
left/right):

Mount the TOP FRONT left and right speakers on the ceiling slightly in front of your main listening position and aligned with the left and right front speakers.

**TML/TMR**  
(Top middle speaker  
left/right):

Mount the TOP MIDDLE left and right speakers directly above the main listening position and aligned with the left and right front speakers.





**FDL/FDR**  
(Front Dolby speaker  
left/right):

Place the FRONT Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker on the front speaker. For a Dolby Atmos Enabled (Front Dolby speaker integrated with a front speaker, place the Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker instead of the front speaker.

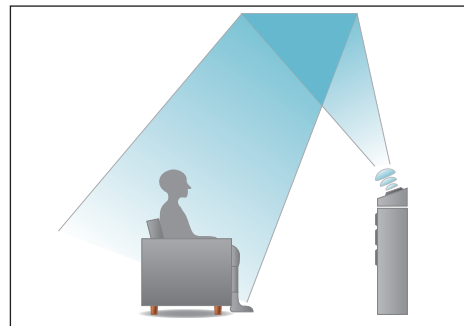
**SDL/SDR**  
(Surround Dolby  
speaker left/right):

Place the SURROUND Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker on the surround speaker. For a Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker integrated with a surround speaker, place the Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker instead of the surround speaker.

### About Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers

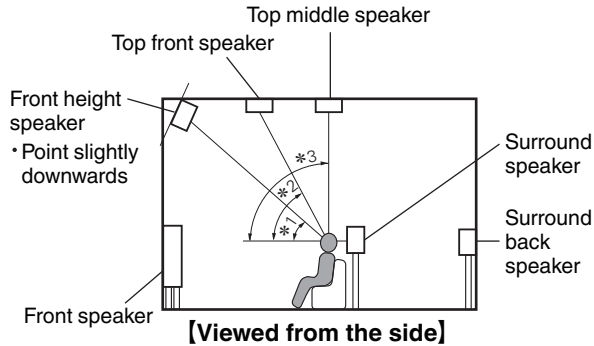
Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers reflect the sound off the ceiling to allow the sound to come from over your head by using a special upward-pointing speaker that is placed on the floor.

You can enjoy the Dolby Atmos 3D sound even in an environment where speakers cannot be installed on the ceiling.





- This unit is compatible with Dolby Atmos and DTS:X which offers an even wider and deeper surround sensation.
- Use the illustration below as a guide for how high each speaker should be installed. The height does not need to be exactly the same.

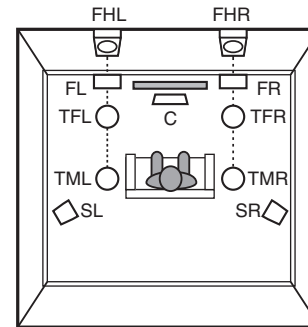


\*1: 30° - 45°

\*2: 30° - 55°

\*3: 65° - 100°

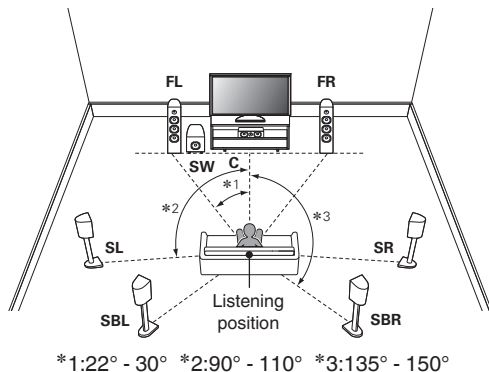
### Height speakers layout



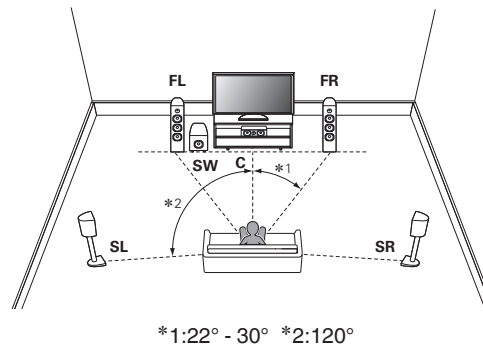
**[Viewed from the top]**



■ When 7.1-channel speakers are installed using surround back speakers



■ When 5.1-channel speakers are installed



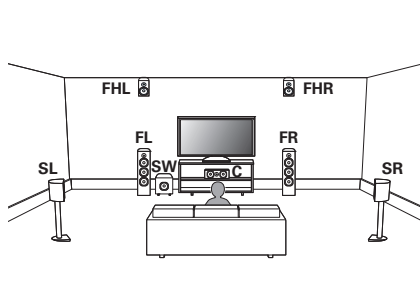
- When using a single surround back speaker, place it directly behind the listening position.



■ **Layout including height speakers and top speakers**

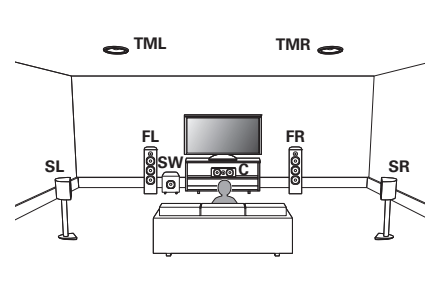
□ **Height speaker layout example**

Combination of 5.1-channel layout and front height speakers.



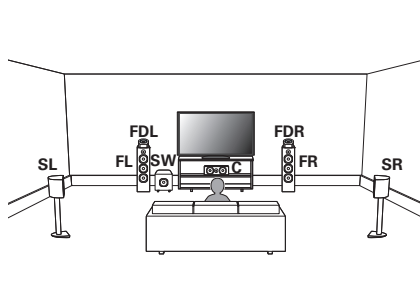
□ **Top speaker layout example**

Combination of 5.1-channel layout and top middle speakers.



## ❑ Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker layout example

Combination of 5.1-channel layout and front Dolby speakers.



## Speaker connection

Here we connect the speakers in the room to this unit.

This section explains how to connect them using typical examples.

### NOTE

- Disconnect this unit's power plug from the power outlet before connecting the speakers. Also, turn off the subwoofer.
- Connect so that the speaker cable core wires do not protrude from the speaker terminal. The protection circuit may be activated if the core wires touch the rear panel or if the + and - sides touch each other. ("Protection circuit" (🔌 p. 258))
- Never touch the speaker terminals while the power cord is connected. Doing so could result in electric shock. When the "Setup Assistant" (page 8 in the separate "Quick Start Guide") is running, follow the instructions in the "Setup Assistant" screen for making connections. (Power is not supplied to the speaker terminals while the "Setup Assistant" is running.)
- Use speakers with an impedance of 4 – 16  $\Omega$ /ohms.

### NOTE

- Carry out the following settings when using a speaker with an impedance of 4 – 6  $\Omega$ /ohms.

1. Press and hold the main unit's ZONE2 SOURCE and STATUS at the same time for at least 3 seconds.  
"V.Format:< NTSC>" appears on the display.
2. Press DIMMER on the main unit twice.  
"Sp.Imp.:<8ohms>" appears on the display.
3. Press TUNER PRESET CH + or TUNER PRESET CH – on the main unit to select the impedance.

---

**6ohms:** Select when the impedance for any of the connected speakers is 6  $\Omega$ /ohms.

---

**4ohms:** Select when the impedance for any of the connected speakers is 4  $\Omega$ /ohms.

---

4. Press the main unit's STATUS to complete the setting.





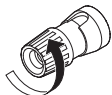
## ■ Connecting the speaker cables

Carefully check the left (L) and right (R) channels and + (red) and – (black) polarities on the speakers being connected to this unit, and be sure to connect the channels and polarities correctly.

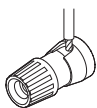
- 1 Peel off about 3/8 inch (10 mm) of sheathing from the tip of the speaker cable, then either twist the core wire tightly or terminate it.



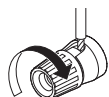
- 2 Turn the speaker terminal counterclockwise to loosen it.



- 3 Insert the speaker cable's core wire to the hilt into the speaker terminal.



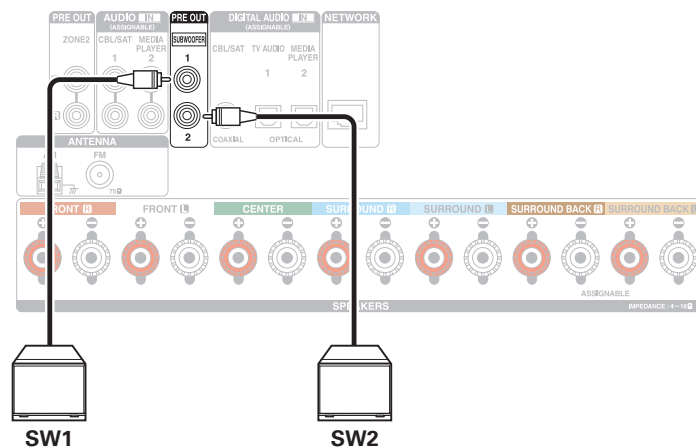
- 4 Turn the speaker terminal clockwise to tighten it.



## ■ Connecting the subwoofer

Use a subwoofer cable to connect the subwoofer. Two subwoofers can be connected to this unit.

The same signal is output from the respective subwoofer terminals.



## ■ About the cable label (supplied) for channel identification

The channel display section for speaker terminals on the rear panel is color-coded for each channel to be identifiable.

Attach the cable label corresponding to each speaker to each speaker cable.

This makes it easy to connect the correct cable to the speaker terminals on the rear panel.

Speaker	Color
FRONT L	White
FRONT R	Red
CENTER	Green
SURROUND L	Light blue
SURROUND R	Blue
SURROUND BACK L	Beige
SURROUND BACK R	Brown
FRONT HEIGHT L	Beige
FRONT HEIGHT R	Brown
ZONE2 L	Beige
ZONE2 R	Brown
TOP FRONT L	Beige
TOP FRONT R	Brown
TOP MIDDLE L	Beige
TOP MIDDLE R	Brown
FRONT DOLBY L	Beige
FRONT DOLBY R	Brown
SURROUND DOLBY L	Beige
SURROUND DOLBY R	Brown
SUBWOOFER	Black

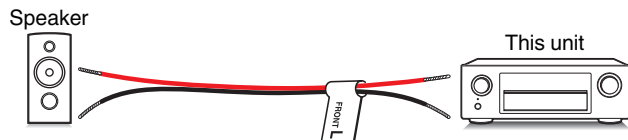


Attach the cable label for each channel to its speaker cable as shown in the diagram.

Refer to the table and attach the label to each speaker cable.


Then, make connection so that the color of the speaker terminal matches that of the cable label.

**[ How to attach the cable label ]**



## Speaker configuration and “Amp Assign” settings


This unit has a built-in 7-channel power amplifier. In addition to the basic 5.1-channel system, a variety of speaker systems can be configured by changing the “Amp Assign” settings to suit the application, such as 7.1-channel systems, bi-amp connections and 2-channel systems for multi-zone playback.

( p. 186)

Perform “Amp Assign” settings to suit the number of rooms and speaker configuration to be installed. ( p. 186)

Playback speaker and zone		“Amp Assign” settings	Connection page
MAIN ZONE	ZONE2		
5.1-channel	2-channel (Pre-out)	Can be set in all “Amp Assign” modes.	<a href="#">37</a>
7.1-channel (surround back)	2-channel (Pre-out)	Surround Back	<a href="#">38</a>
7.1-channel (front height)	2-channel (Pre-out)	Front Height	<a href="#">39</a>
7.1-channel (top front)	2-channel (Pre-out)	Top Front	<a href="#">40</a>
7.1-channel (top middle)	2-channel (Pre-out)	Top Middle	<a href="#">41</a>
7.1-channel (front Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker)	2-channel (Pre-out)	Front Dolby	<a href="#">42</a>
7.1-channel (surround Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker)	2-channel (Pre-out)	Surround Dolby	<a href="#">43</a>
5.1-channel (bi-amp connection for front speaker)	2-channel (Pre-out)	Bi-Amp	<a href="#">44</a>
5.1-channel + front speaker of second unit	2-channel (Pre-out)	Front B	<a href="#">45</a>
5.1-channel	2-channel (Speaker out)	ZONE2 (Default)	<a href="#">46</a>



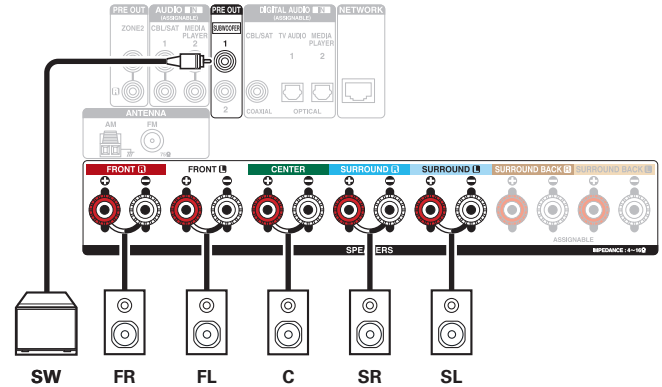
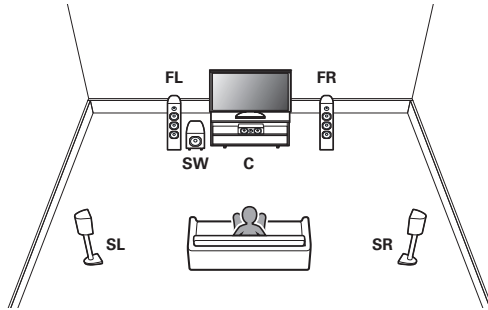
- The sound mode that can be selected varies according to the speaker configuration. See “Relationship between sound modes and channel output” ( p. 243) for the sound modes that are supported.



■ **Standard configuration and connection**

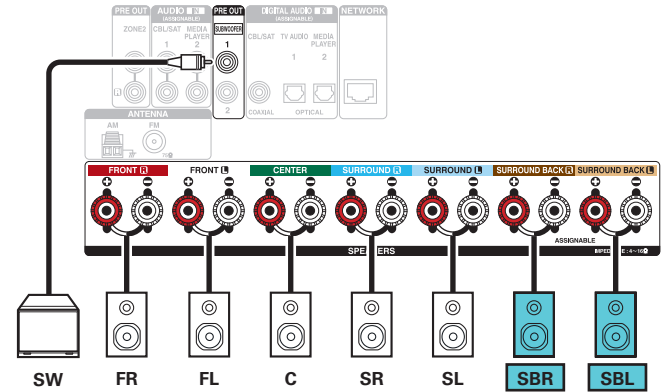
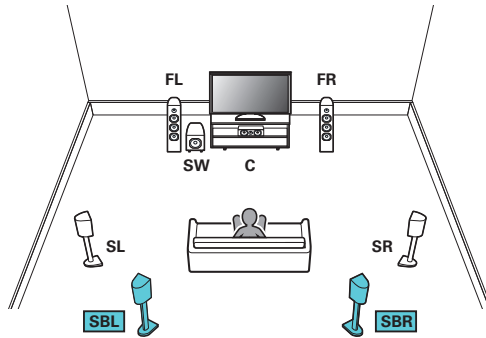
□ **5.1-channel**

This serves as a basic 5.1-channel surround system.



## 7.1-channel (surround back)

This 7.1-channel surround system is the same as a basic 5.1-channel system but with surround back speakers.

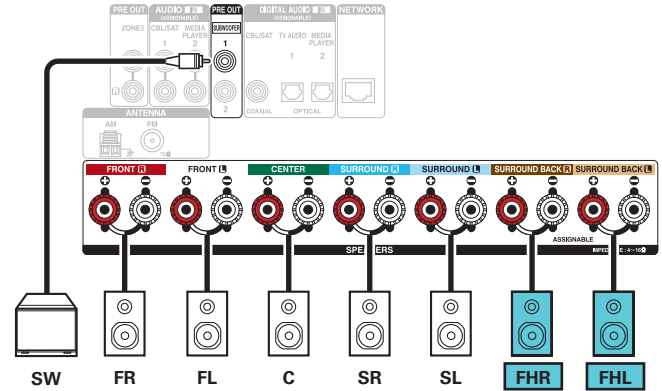
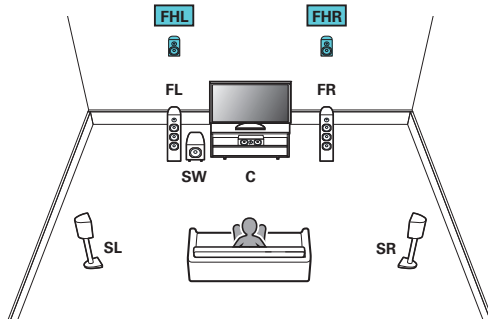


- When using a single surround back speaker, connect it to the SURROUND BACK L terminal.



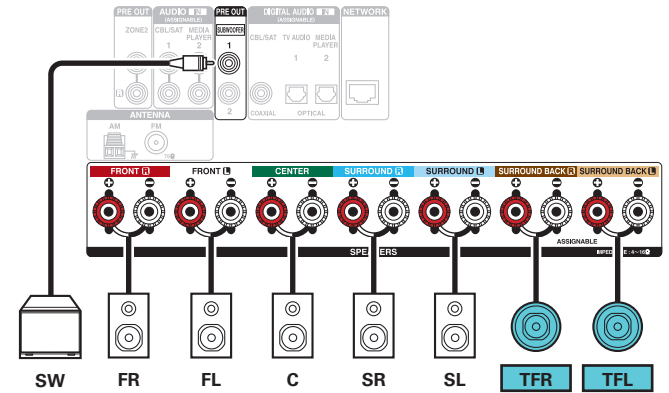
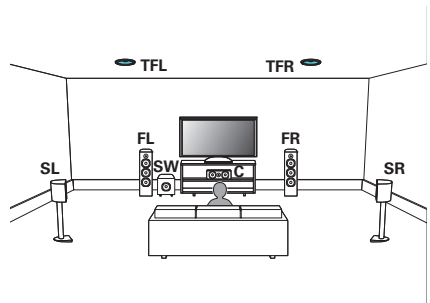
## 7.1-channel (front height)

This 7.1-channel surround system is the same as a basic 5.1-channel system but with front height speakers.



## 7.1-channel (top front)

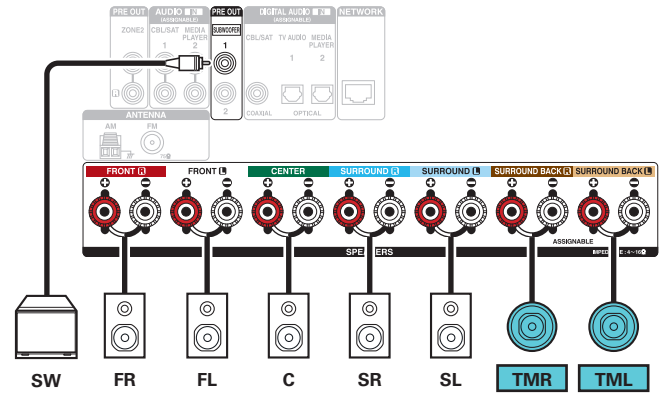
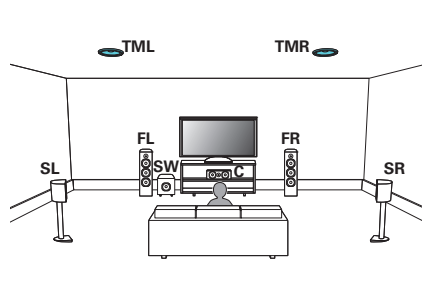
This 7.1-channel surround system is the same as a basic 5.1-channel system but with top front speakers.





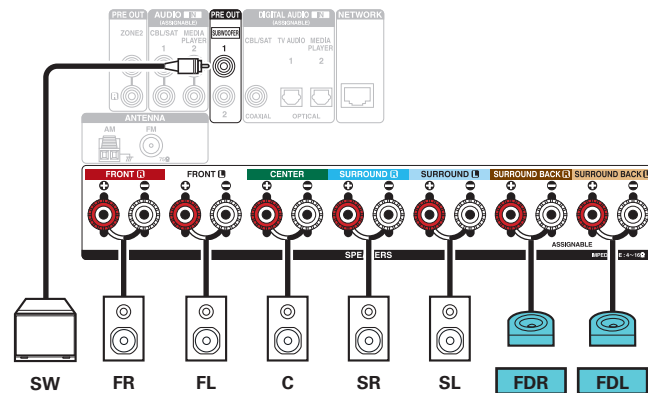
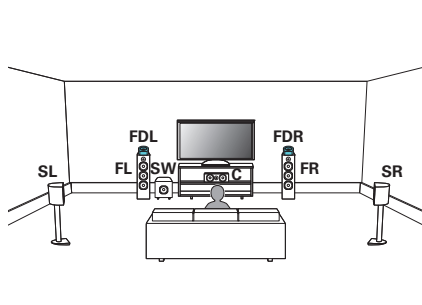
## 7.1-channel (top middle)

This 7.1-channel surround system is the same as a basic 5.1-channel system but with top middle speakers.



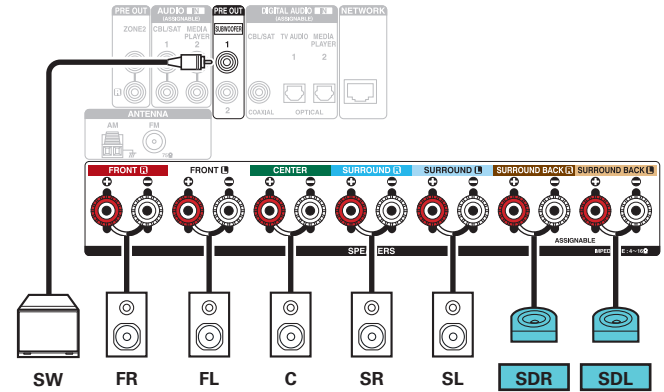
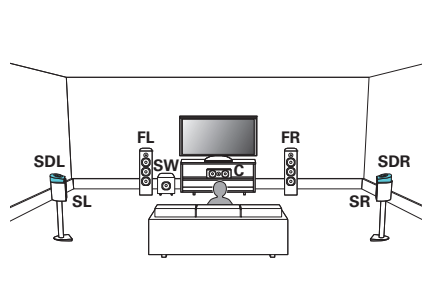
## 7.1-channel (front Dolby Atmos Enabled)

This 7.1-channel surround system is the same as a basic 5.1-channel system but with front Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers.



### 7.1-channel (surround Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker)

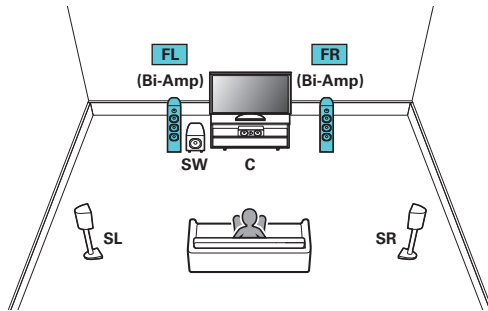
This 7.1-channel surround system is the same as a basic 5.1-channel system but with surround Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers.



## ■ Applied configuration and connection

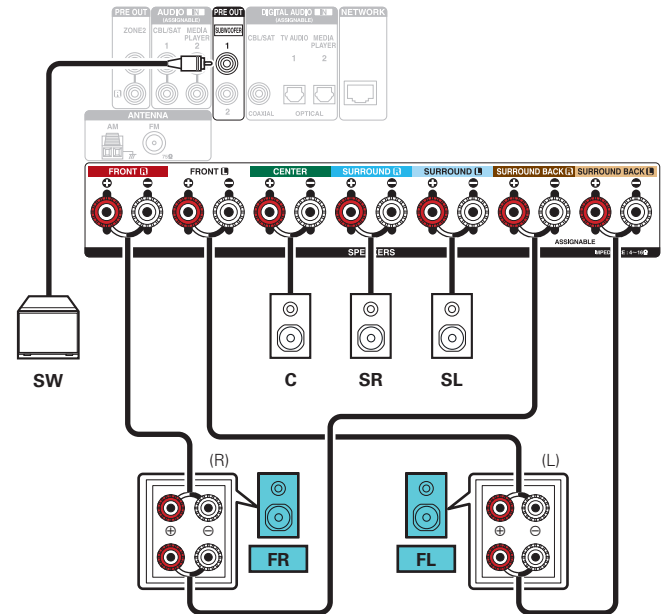
### □ 5.1-channel (bi-amp connection of front speaker)

This is a method of connecting separate amplifiers to the tweeter terminals and woofer terminals of bi-amp compatible speakers. This connection enables back EMF (power returned without being output) from the woofer to flow into the tweeter without affecting the sound quality, producing a higher sound quality.



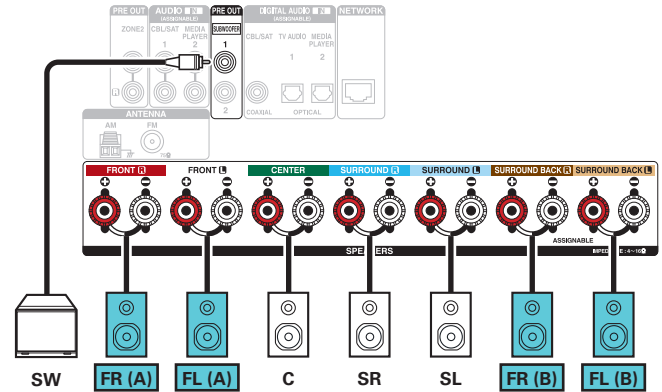
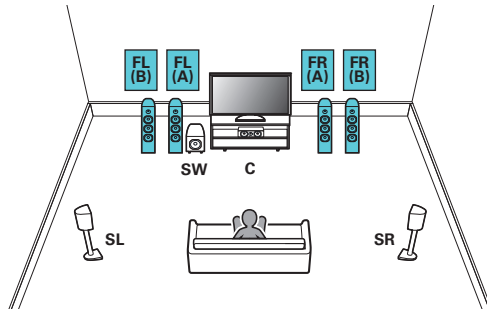
#### NOTE

- When making bi-amp connections, be sure to remove the short-circuiting plate or wire between the speaker's woofer and tweeter terminals.



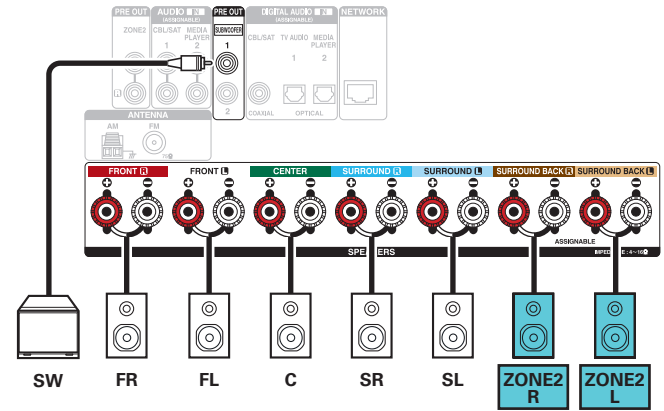
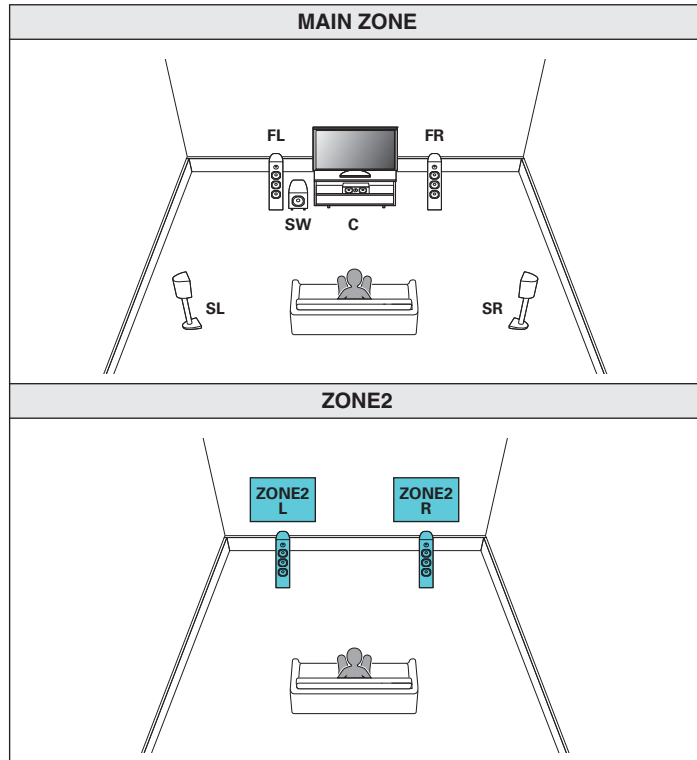
### □ 5.1-channel + front speaker of second unit

This system enables switching playback between front speakers A and B as desired.



### □ 5.1-channel (MAIN ZONE) + 2-channel (ZONE2)

This connection method constructs a 5.1-channel speaker system in the MAIN ZONE and a 2-channel system in ZONE2.

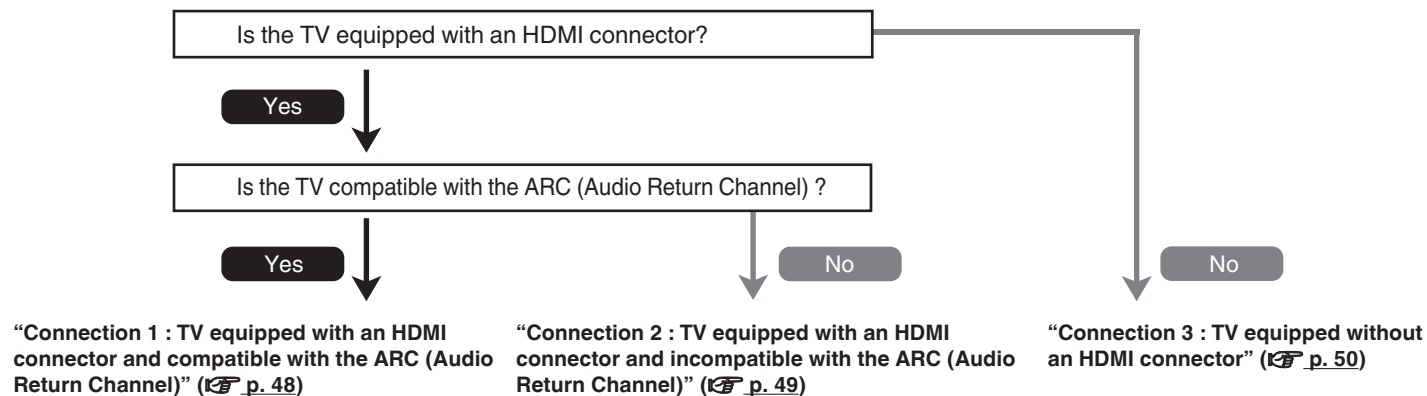


## Connecting a TV

Connect a TV to this unit so that the input video is output to the TV. You can also enjoy audio from the TV on this unit.

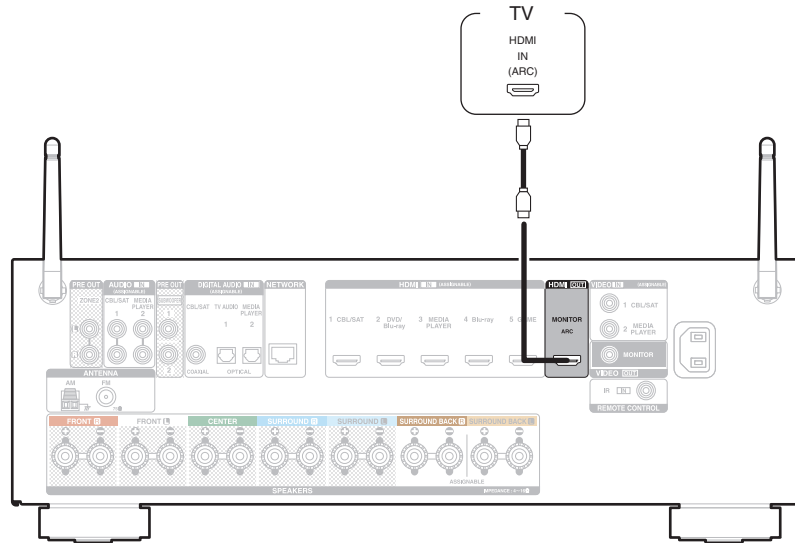
How to connect a TV depends on the connectors and functions equipped on the TV.

ARC (Audio Return Channel) function plays TV audio on this unit by sending the TV audio signal to this unit via HDMI cable.



## Connection 1 : TV equipped with an HDMI connector and compatible with the ARC (Audio Return Channel)

Use an HDMI cable to connect a TV that is compatible with the ARC function to this unit.  
Set "HDMI Control" to "On" when using a TV that supports the ARC function. (👉 p. 165)

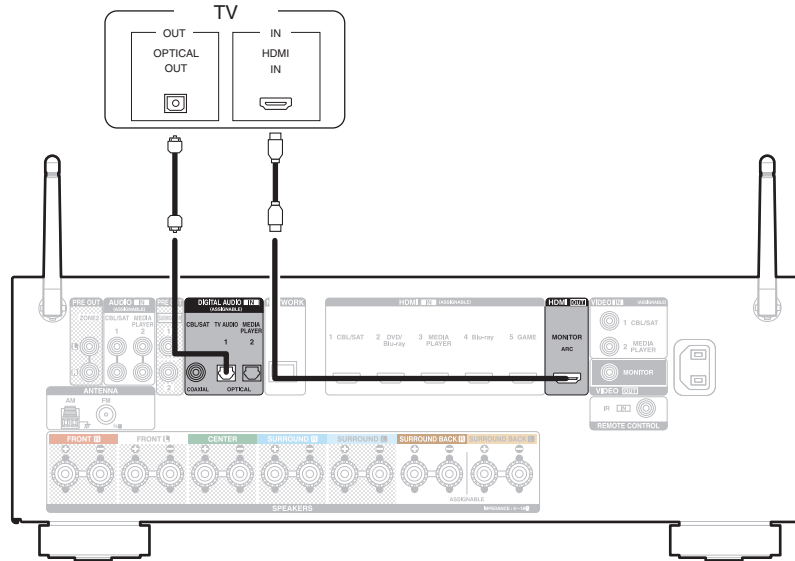




## Connection 2 : TV equipped with an HDMI connector and incompatible with the ARC (Audio Return Channel)

Use an HDMI cable to connect the TV to this unit.

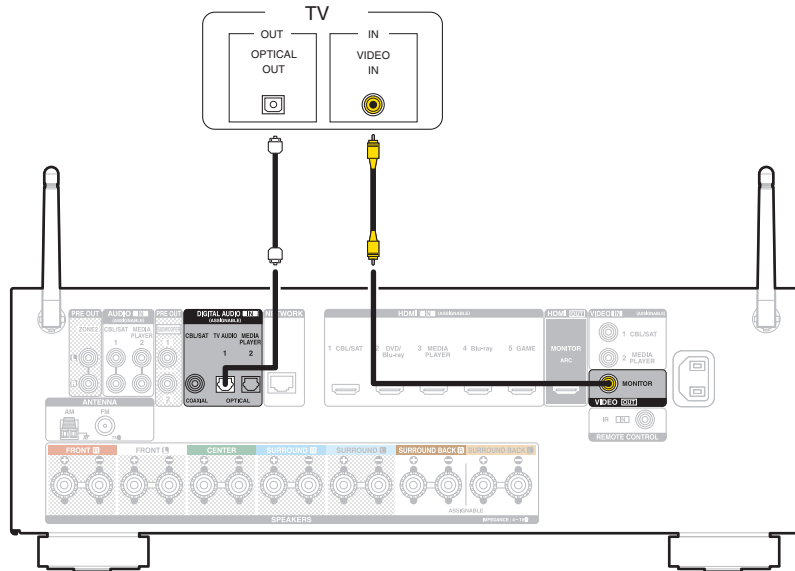
To listen to audio from TV on this unit, use an optical cable to connect the TV to this unit.



## Connection 3 : TV equipped without an HDMI connector

Use a video cable to connect the TV to this unit.

To listen to audio from TV on this unit, use an optical cable to connect the TV to this unit.



## Connecting a playback device

This unit is equipped with two types of video input connectors (HDMI and composite video) and three types of audio input connectors (HDMI, digital audio and audio).

Select input connectors on this unit according to the connectors equipped on the device you want to connect.

If the device connected to this unit is equipped with an HDMI connector, it is recommended to use HDMI connections.

In the HDMI connection, audio and video signals can be transmitted through a single HDMI cable.

- “Connecting a set-top box (Satellite tuner/cable TV)” (🔗 p. 52)
- “Connecting a DVD player or Blu-ray Disc player” (🔗 p. 53)
- “Connecting a video camcorder or game console” (🔗 p. 54)



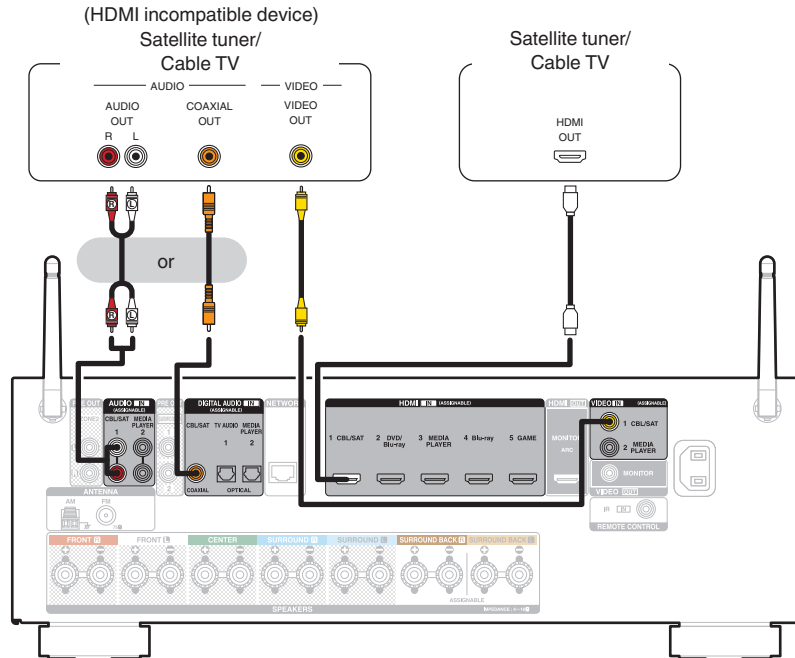
- Connect devices to this unit as indicated by the input sources printed on the audio/video input connectors of this unit.
- The source that is assigned to the HDMI IN, DIGITAL AUDIO IN, VIDEO IN and AUDIO IN connectors can be changed. See “Input Assign” on how to change the input source assigned to the input connectors. (🔗 p. 171)
- To play back audio signals that are input to this unit on a TV connected via HDMI, set in the menu “HDMI Audio Out” to “TV”. (🔗 p. 164)
- To enjoy content that is copyright protected by HDCP 2.2, use a playback device and TV compatible with HDCP 2.2 only.



## Connecting a set-top box (Satellite tuner/cable TV)

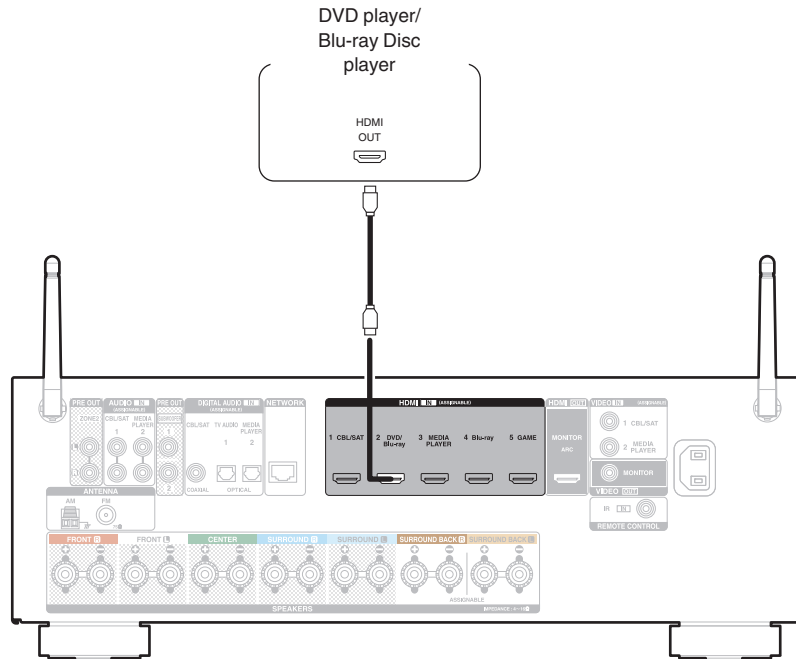
This explanation uses the connection with a satellite tuner/cable TV STB as an example.

Select the input connectors on this unit to match the connectors on the device that you want to connect to.



## Connecting a DVD player or Blu-ray Disc player

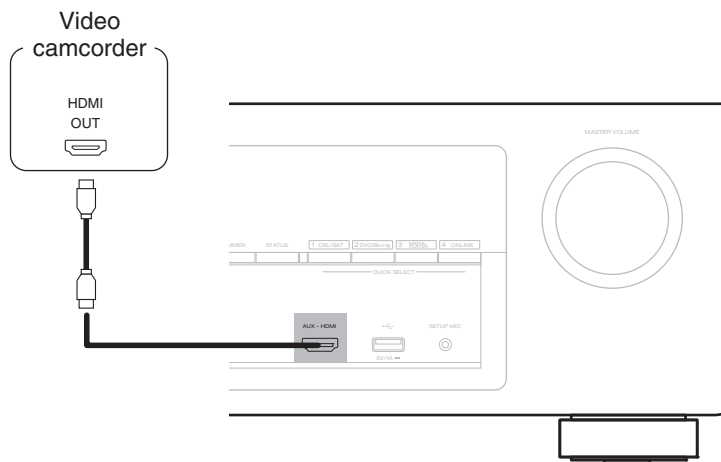
This explanation uses the connection with a DVD player or Blu-ray Disc player as an example.



## Connecting a video camcorder or game console

This explanation uses the connection with a video camcorders as an example.

Connect a playback device to this unit, such as a video camcorder or game console.



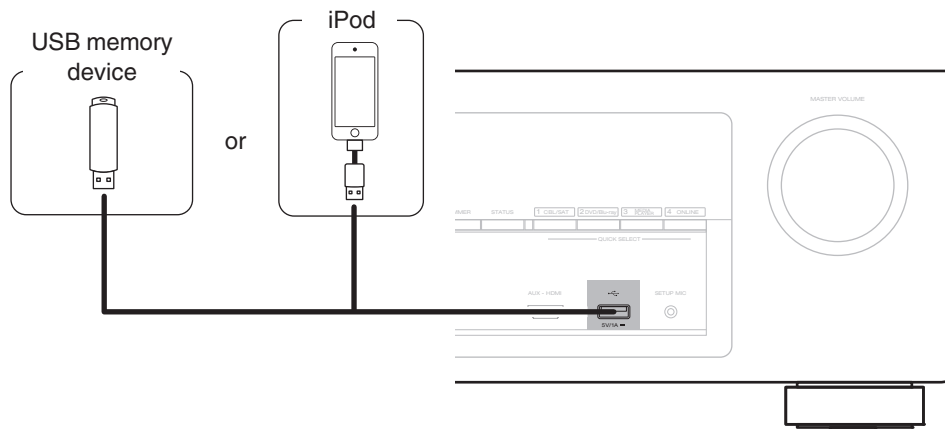
- The 4K 60/50Hz video signal cannot be input to this connection using a format other than YCbCr 4:2:0. If your playback device does not support YCbCr 4:2:0 for the 4K 60/50Hz output format, use an HDMI connector on the rear panel.



## Connecting an iPod or USB memory device to the USB port

To connect an iPod to this unit, use the USB adapter cable that was supplied with the iPod.

For operating instructions see “Playing an iPod” (👉 p. 66) or “Playing a USB memory device” (👉 p. 71).



- Denon does not guarantee that all USB memory devices will operate or receive power. When using a portable USB hard disk drive (HDD) which came with an AC adapter, use that device's supplied AC adapter.

### NOTE

- USB memory devices will not work via a USB hub.
- It is not possible to use this unit by connecting the unit's USB port to a PC via a USB cable.
- Do not use an extension cable when connecting a USB memory device. This may cause radio interference with other devices.



## ■ Supported iPod/iPhone models

### • iPod classic



iPod classic  
80GB



iPod classic  
160GB (2007)



iPod classic  
160GB (2009)

### • iPod nano



iPod nano  
3rd generation  
(video)  
4GB 8GB



iPod nano  
4th generation (video)  
8GB 16GB



iPod nano  
5th generation (video camera)  
8GB 16GB



iPod nano  
6th generation  
8GB 16GB



iPod nano  
7th generation  
16GB

### • iPod touch



iPod touch  
2nd generation  
8GB 16GB 32GB



iPod touch  
3rd generation  
32GB 64GB



iPod touch  
4th generation  
8GB 16GB 32GB 64GB



iPod touch  
5th generation  
16GB 32GB 64GB

### • iPhone



iPhone 3G  
8GB 16GB



iPhone 3GS  
8GB 16GB 32GB



iPhone 4  
8GB 16GB 32GB



iPhone 4S  
16GB 32GB 64GB



iPhone 5  
iPhone 5c iPhone 5s  
16GB 32GB 64GB





## Connecting an FM/AM antenna

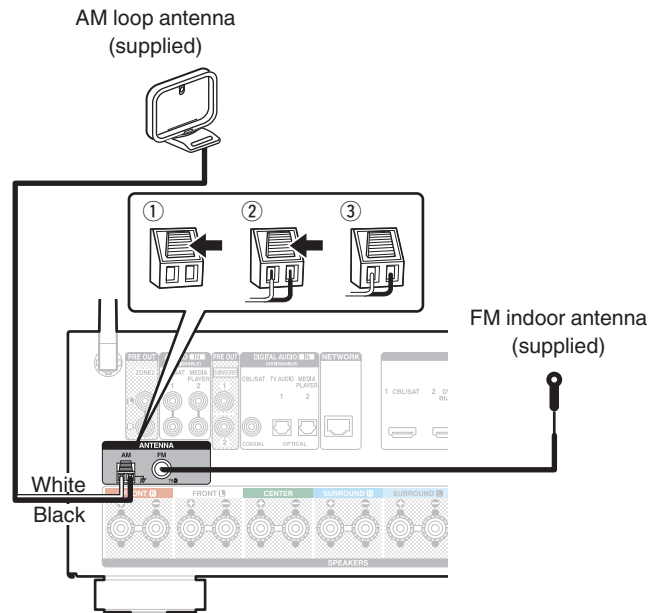
Connect the antenna, tune in to a broadcast and then move the antenna to the location where there is least noise. Then use tape, etc. to fix the antenna in this location. (“Listening to FM/AM broadcasts” (🔗 p. 79))



- If you are unable to receive a good broadcast signal, we recommend installing an outdoor antenna. For details, inquire at the retail store where you purchased the unit.

### NOTE

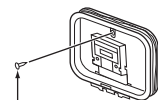
- Do not connect two FM antennas simultaneously.
- Make sure the AM loop antenna lead terminals do not touch metal parts of the panel.



## ■ Using the AM loop antenna

### Suspending on a wall

Suspend directly on a wall without assembling.

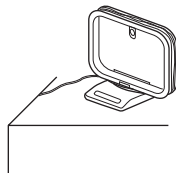


Nail, tack, etc.

### Standing alone

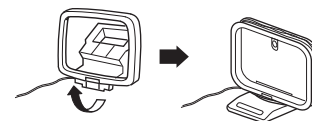
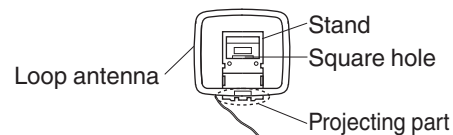
Use the procedure shown above to assemble.

When assembling, refer to “AM loop antenna assembly”.



## ■ AM loop antenna assembly

- 1 Put the stand section through the bottom of the loop antenna from the rear and bend it forward.
- 2 Insert the projecting part into the square hole in the stand.



## Connecting to a home network (LAN)

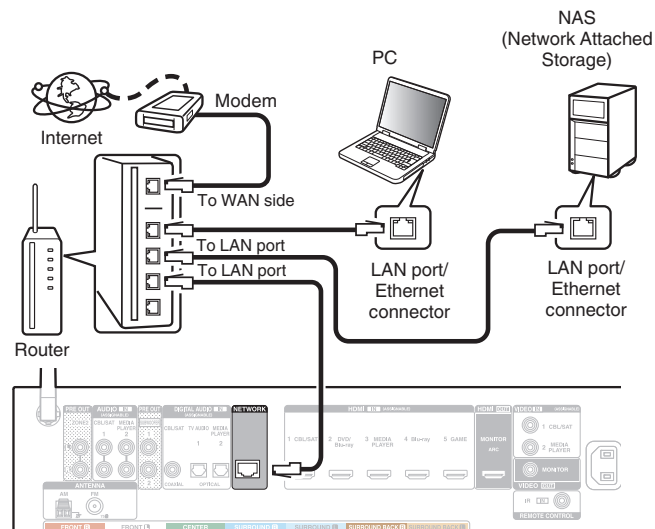
This unit can connect to a network using a wired LAN or wireless LAN. You can connect this unit to your home network (LAN) to enable various types of playback and operations as described below.

- Playback of network audio such as Internet Radio and from your media server(s)
- Using the Apple AirPlay function
- Operation on this unit via the network
- Firmware Update

**For connections to the Internet, contact an ISP (Internet Service Provider) or a computer shop.**

### Wired LAN

To make connections via wired LAN, use a LAN cable to connect the router to this unit as shown in the figure below.

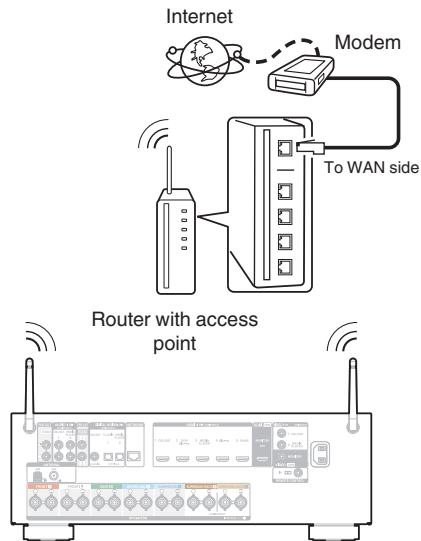


## Wireless LAN

When connecting to a wireless LAN network, stand the rod antenna for Bluetooth/wireless LAN connection upright on the rear panel.

See “Wi-Fi Setup” on how to connect to a wireless LAN router.

(☞ p. 198)



- When using this unit, we recommend you use a router equipped with the following functions:

- Built-in DHCP server  
This function automatically assigns IP addresses on the LAN.

- Built-in 100BASE-TX switch  
When connecting multiple devices, we recommend a switching hub with a speed of 100 Mbps or greater.

- Only use a shielded STP or ScTP LAN cable (readily available at electronics stores). (CAT-5 or greater recommended)

- The normal shielded-type LAN cable is recommended.

If a flat-type cable or unshielded-type cable is used, other devices could be affected by noise.

- When using a router that supports the WPS (Wi-Fi Protected Setup) function, Wi-Fi connection can be carried out easily.

- When using this unit connected to a network with no DHCP function, configure the IP address, etc. in “Network”. (☞ p. 197)

### NOTE

- The types of routers that can be used depend on the ISP. Contact your ISP or a computer shop for details.
- This unit is not compatible with PPPoE. A PPPoE compatible router is required if your contracted line is not set using PPPoE.
- Do not connect a NETWORK connector directly to the LAN port / Ethernet connector on your computer.
- Various online services may be discontinued without prior notice.

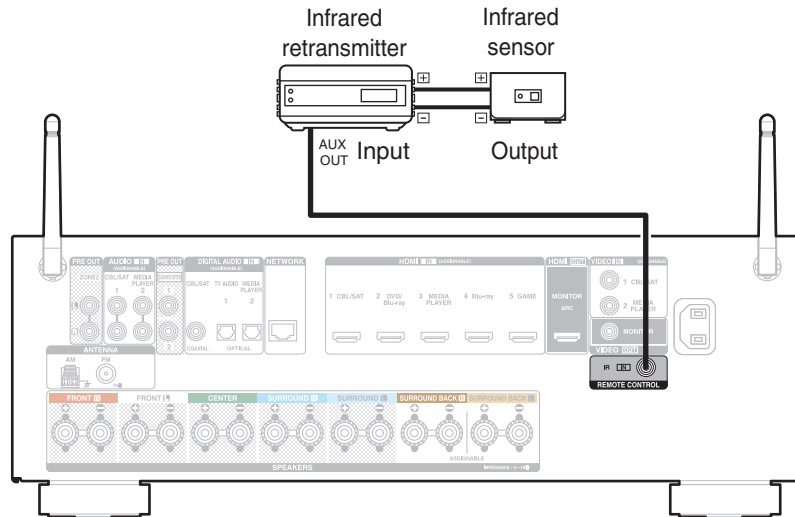


## Connecting an external control device

### REMOTE CONTROL jacks

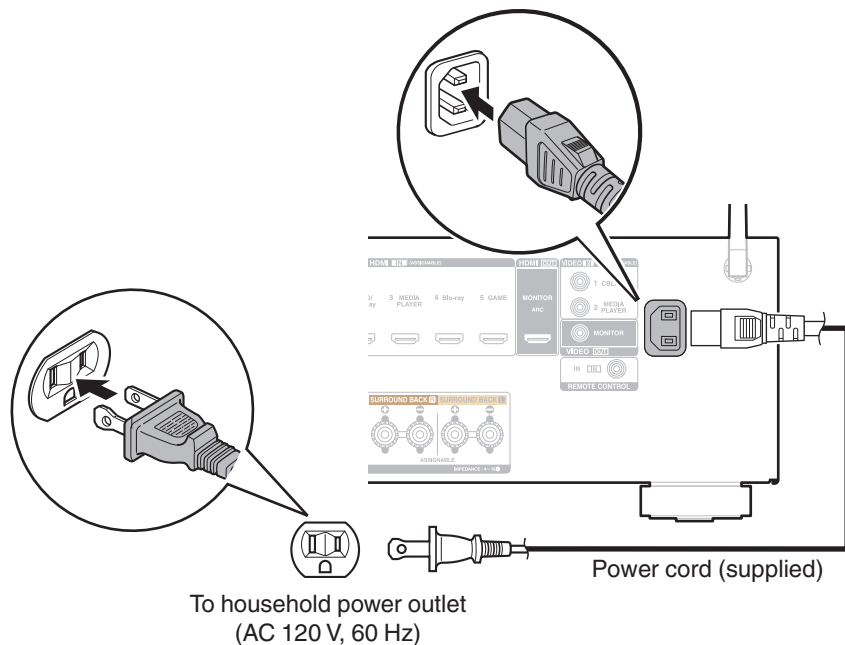
When this unit is installed in a location where the remote control signals cannot reach (installation in a cabinet etc.), it can still be controlled by the remote control by connecting a remote control receiver unit (sold separately).

You can also use it to remotely control ZONE2 (separate room).



## Connecting the power cord

After completing all the connections, insert the power plug into the power outlet.



## ■ Contents

### Basic operation

---

Turning the power on	64
Selecting the input source	64
Adjusting the volume	65
Turning off the sound temporarily (Muting)	65
Selecting a sound mode	119

### Playback a device

---

Playing a DVD player/Blu-ray Disc player	65
Playing an iPod	66
Playing a USB memory device	71
Listening to music on a Bluetooth device	74
Listening to FM/AM broadcasts	79

### Playback network audio/service

---

Listening to Internet Radio	87
Playing back files stored on a PC and NAS	91
Listening to Pandora®	95
Listening to SiriusXM Internet Radio	102
AirPlay function	105
Spotify Connect function	108

### Convenience functions

---

Convenience functions	109
HDMI control function	131
Smart Menu function	132
Sleep timer function	134
Quick select plus function	136

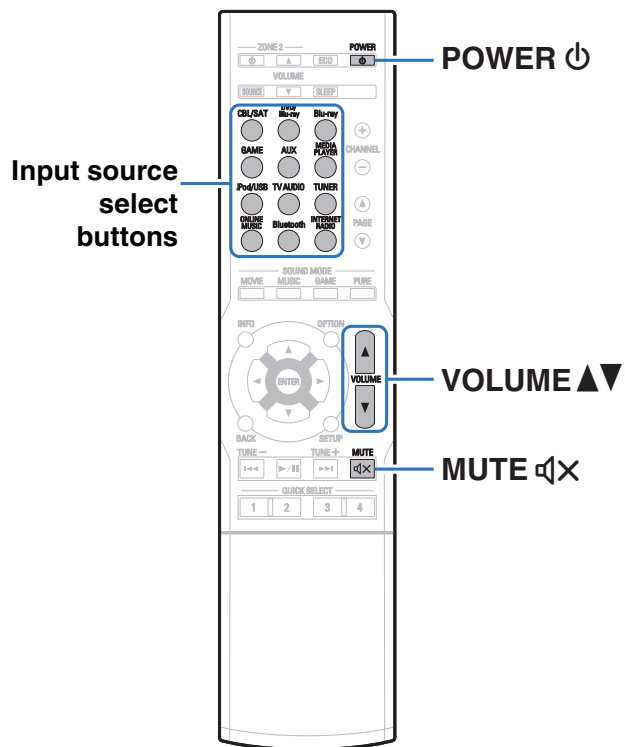
### Other functions

---

Web control function	139
Playback in ZONE2 (Separate room)	141



## Basic operation



### Turning the power on

**1** Press **POWER**  $\text{\textcircled{P}}$  to turn on power to the unit.



- You can press the input source select button when the unit is in standby mode to turn on the power.
- You can also switch the power to standby by pressing  $\text{\textcircled{P}}$  on the main unit.

### Selecting the input source

**1** Press the **input source select button** to be played back.  
The desired input source can be selected directly.



- You can also select the input source by turning **SOURCE SELECT** on the main unit.





## Adjusting the volume


### 1 Use VOLUME ▲▼ to adjust the volume.





- The variable range differs according to the input signal and channel level setting.
- You can also adjust the master volume by turning MASTER VOLUME on the main unit.

## Turning off the sound temporarily (Muting)

### 1 Press MUTE .

- MUTE indicator on the display flashes.
-  appears on the TV screen.



- The sound is reduced to the level set at "Mute Level" in the menu. ( p. 158)
- To cancel mute, either adjust the sound volume or press MUTE  again.

## Playback a DVD player/Blu-ray Disc player

The following describes the procedure for playing DVD player/Blu-ray Disc player.

### 1 Prepare for playback.

- ① Turn on the power of the TV, subwoofer and player.
- ② Change the TV input to the input of this unit.

### 2 Press POWER to turn on power to the unit.

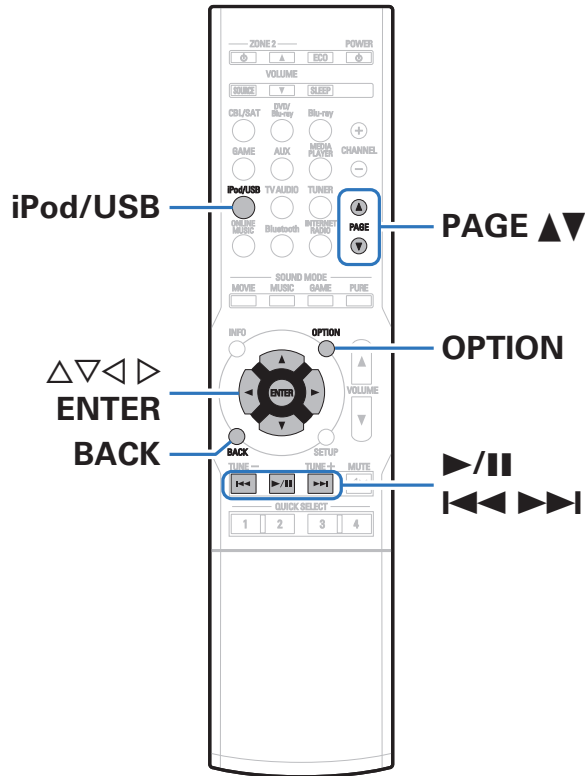
### 3 Press DVD/Blu-ray or Blu-ray to switch the input source of the player to be played back.

### 4 Play the DVD player or Blu-ray Disc player.

### ■ Surround playback ( p. 119)



## Playing an iPod



- You can use the USB cable provided with the iPod to connect the iPod with the unit's USB port and enjoy music stored on the iPod.
- For information on the iPod models that can be played back with this unit, see "Supported iPod/iPhone models" (👉 p. 56).
- See "AirPlay function" (👉 p. 105) on how to play a music file saved on an iPhone, iPod touch, iPad or iTunes on this unit via the network.



## Listening to music on an iPod

- 1** Connect the iPod to the USB port. (🔧 p. 55)
- 2** Press iPod/USB to switch the input source to “iPod/USB”.
  - “Browse from iPod” is displayed on the display of this unit.
    - Nothing is displayed on the TV screen.
- 3** Operate iPod itself while seeing the iPod screen to play back music.



- “iPod Browse Mode” has two modes, “From iPod” and “On-Screen”. The default setting is “From iPod” that operate the iPod itself while looking at the iPod screen.
- To change to “On-Screen”, where you perform operations while having the iPod information displayed on the TV screen, see “iPod Browse Mode settings” (🔧 p. 68).

### NOTE

- Depending on the type of iPod and the software version, some functions may not operate.
- Note that Denon will accept no responsibility whatsoever for any problems arising with the data on an iPod when using this unit in conjunction with the iPod.

## ■ Operations accessible through the option menu

This can be operated when the “iPod Browse Mode” is set to “From iPod”. (🔧 p. 68)

- “iPod Browse Mode settings” (🔧 p. 68)
- “Adjusting the volume of each channel to match the input source (Ch Level Adjust)” (🔧 p. 115)
- “Adjusting the tone (Tone)” (🔧 p. 116)
- “Displaying your desired video during audio playback (Video Select)” (🔧 p. 117)
- “Playing the same music in all zones (All Zone Stereo)” (🔧 p. 118)



## iPod Browse Mode settings

In this mode, various lists and screens during playback on the iPod are displayed on the TV screen.

This section describes the steps up to playing back tracks on the iPod in "On-Screen".

### 1 Press **OPTION** when the input source is "iPod/USB".

The option menu screen is displayed.

### 2 Select "iPod Browse Mode", then press **ENTER**.

The "iPod Browse Mode" screen is displayed.

### 3 Use **<|>** to select "On-Screen", then press **ENTER**.

- Operations available for "On-Screen" and "From iPod" are listed below.

iPod Browse Mode		From iPod	On-Screen
Playable files	Music file	✓	✓
	Video file	*	
Active buttons	Remote control unit (This unit)	✓	✓
	iPod	✓	

\*Only the sound is played.

### 4 Use **△▽▷** to select the file to be played, then press **ENTER**.

Playback starts.

Operation buttons	Function
<b>▶/  </b>	Playback / Pause
<b>◀◀▶▶</b>	Skip to previous track / Skip to next track (Press and hold) Fast-reverse/Fast-forward
<b>ENTER</b>	Playback / Pause (Press and hold) Stop
<b>△▽</b>	Skip to previous track / Skip to next track (Press and hold) Fast-reverse / Fast-forward
<b>PAGE ▲▼</b>	Switch to the previous page/next page in the list display

- The actions of the operation buttons may differ.



- The display switches between track title, artist name, and album title etc. each time the main unit's STATUS is pressed during playback with "iPod Browse Mode" set to "On-Screen".
- English letters, numbers and certain symbols are displayed. Incompatible characters are displayed as "." (period).



## ■ Operations accessible through the option menu

This can be operated when the “iPod Browse Mode” is set to “On-Screen”. (🔍 p. 68)

- “iPod Browse Mode settings” (🔍 p. 68)
- “Performing repeat playback” (🔍 p. 70)
- “Performing random playback” (🔍 p. 70)
- “Adjusting the volume of each channel to match the input source (Ch Level Adjust)” (🔍 p. 115)
- “Adjusting the tone (Tone)” (🔍 p. 116)
- “Displaying your desired video during audio playback (Video Select)” (🔍 p. 117)
- “Playing the same music in all zones (All Zone Stereo)” (🔍 p. 118)



## Performing repeat playback

- 1 Press **OPTION** with “iPod Browse Mode” set to “On-Screen”.

The option menu screen is displayed.

- 2 Use **Δ∇** to select “Repeat”, then press **ENTER**.

- 3 Use **◀▶** to select repeat playback mode.

<b>Off</b> (Default) :	Repeat playback mode is canceled.
<b>One:</b>	A file being played is played repeatedly.
<b>All:</b>	All files in the folder currently being played are played repeatedly.

- 4 Press **ENTER**.

The display returns to the playback screen.



- “Repeat” settings are stored for each input source.

## Performing random playback

- 1 Press **OPTION** with “iPod Browse Mode” set to “On-Screen”.

The option menu screen is displayed.

- 2 Use **Δ∇** to select “Random”, then press **ENTER**.

- 3 Use **◀▶** to select random playback mode.

<b>Off</b> (Default):	Disable random playback.
<b>On:</b>	Randomly play back all tracks in the current playback folder.

- 4 Press **ENTER**.

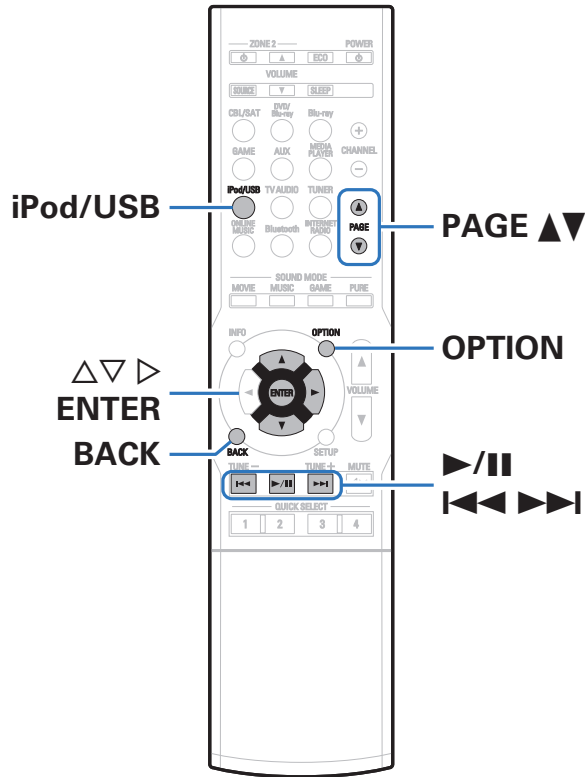
The display returns to the playback screen.



- During random playback, each time playback of a track is completed, another track is randomly selected for playback from tracks in the folder. Therefore, it's possible that you may hear a track played back more than once during random playback.
- “Random” settings are stored for each input source.



## Playing a USB memory device




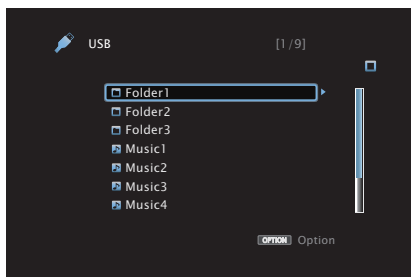
- Playing back music or viewing still picture (JPEG) files stored on a USB memory device.
- Only USB memory devices conforming to mass storage class standards can be played on this unit.
- This unit is compatible with USB memory devices in “FAT16” or “FAT32” format.
- The audio/video format types and specifications supported by this unit for playback are as follows.  
See “Playback a USB memory device” for details. (p. 239)

- WMA
- MP3
- WAV
- MPEG-4 AAC
- FLAC
- ALAC
- AIFF
- DSD
- JPEG



## Playing files stored on USB memory devices

- 1 Connect the USB memory device to the USB port.  
( p. 55)
- 2 Press iPod/USB to switch the input source to “iPod/USB”.



- 3 Use  $\Delta \nabla \triangleright$  to select the file to be played, then press **ENTER**.  
Playback starts.

Operation buttons	Function
$\blacktriangleright / \parallel$	Playback / Pause
$\blacktriangleleft \blacktriangleleft \blacktriangleright \blacktriangleright$	Skip to previous track / Skip to next track (Press and hold) Fast-reverse / Fast-forward
<b>ENTER</b>	Playback / Pause (Press and hold) Stop
$\Delta \nabla$	Skip to previous track / Skip to next track (Press and hold) Fast-reverse / Fast-forward
<b>PAGE</b> $\blacktriangle \blacktriangledown$	Switch to the previous page/next page in the list display



- When an MP3 music file includes album art data, the album art can be displayed while playing the file.
- This unit plays back picture (JPEG) files in the order in which they are stored in the folder.

### NOTE

- Note that Denon will accept no responsibility whatsoever for any problems arising with the data on a USB memory device when using this unit in conjunction with the USB memory device.





## ■ Operations accessible through the option menu

- “Performing repeat playback” (🔍 p. 110)
- “Performing random playback” (🔍 p. 110)
- “Searching content with keywords (Text Search)” (🔍 p. 112)
- “Playing back music and a favorite picture at the same time (Slideshow)” (🔍 p. 113)
- “Setting the Slideshow Interval” (🔍 p. 114)
- “Adjusting the volume of each channel to match the input source (Ch Level Adjust)” (🔍 p. 115)
- “Adjusting the tone (Tone)” (🔍 p. 116)
- “Displaying your desired video during audio playback (Video Select)” (🔍 p. 117)
- “Playing the same music in all zones (All Zone Stereo)” (🔍 p. 118)



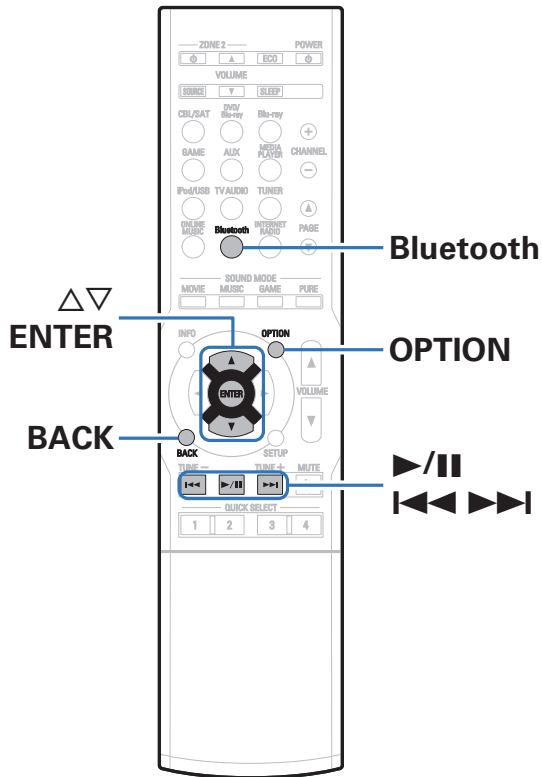
## Listening to music on a Bluetooth device

Music files stored on Bluetooth devices such as smartphones, digital music players, etc. can be enjoyed on this unit by pairing and connecting this unit with the Bluetooth device.

Communication is possible up to a range of about 32.8 ft/10 m.

### NOTE

- To play back music from a Bluetooth device, the Bluetooth device needs to support the A2DP profile.

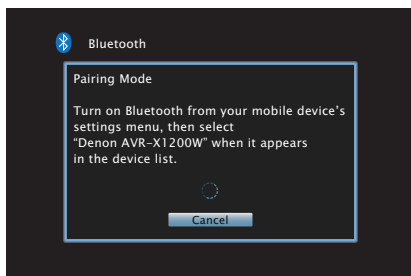


## Playing music from Bluetooth device

In order to enjoy music from a Bluetooth device on this unit, the Bluetooth device must first be paired with this unit.

Once the Bluetooth device has been paired, it does not need to be paired again.

### 1 Press Bluetooth to switch the input source to “Bluetooth”.



When using for the first time, the unit will go into the pairing mode automatically and “Pairing...” will appear on the display of the unit.

### 2 Activate the Bluetooth settings on your mobile device.

### 3 Select this unit when its name appears in the list of devices displayed on the screen of the Bluetooth device.

Connect to the Bluetooth device while “Pairing” is being displayed on the display of the unit.

Perform the connection with the Bluetooth device close to the unit (about 3.3 ft/1 m).

### 4 When a number appears on the display of this unit, check that it is the same number as that shown on the screen of the Bluetooth device and then select “Pair” for both the Bluetooth device and the unit.

At the end of the pairing, the device name appears on the display of this unit.




### 5 Play music using any app on your Bluetooth device.

- The Bluetooth device can also be operated with the remote control of this unit.
- The next time the input source is switched to Bluetooth, this unit automatically connects to the last Bluetooth device that was connected.



- Enter “0000” when the password is requested on the screen of the Bluetooth device.



Operation buttons	Function
	Playback / Pause
	Skip to previous track / Skip to next track (Press and hold) Fast-reverse / Fast-forward
ENTER	Playback / Pause (Press and hold) Stop
	Skip to previous track / Skip to next track (Press and hold) Fast-reverse / Fast-forward










- Press STATUS on this unit during playback to switch the display between Title name, Artist name, Album name, etc.
- English letters, numbers and certain symbols are displayed. Incompatible characters are displayed as “.” (period).

#### NOTE

- To operate the Bluetooth device with the remote control of this unit, the Bluetooth device needs to support the AVRCP profile.
- The remote control of this unit is not guaranteed to work with all Bluetooth devices.
- Depending on the type of Bluetooth device, this unit outputs audio that is coupled to the volume setting on the Bluetooth device.

#### ■ Operations accessible through the option menu

- “Pairing with other Bluetooth devices” ( p. 77)
- “Performing repeat playback” ( p. 110)
- “Performing random playback” ( p. 110)
- “Adjusting the volume of each channel to match the input source (Ch Level Adjust)” ( p. 115)
- “Adjusting the tone (Tone)” ( p. 116)
- “Displaying your desired video during audio playback (Video Select)” ( p. 117)
- “Playing the same music in all zones (All Zone Stereo)” ( p. 118)



## Pairing with other Bluetooth devices

Pair a Bluetooth device with this unit.

### 1 Activate the Bluetooth settings on your mobile device.

### 2 Press OPTION when the input source is “Bluetooth”.

The option menu screen is displayed.

### 3 Use $\Delta$ / $\nabla$ to select “Pairing Mode”, then press ENTER.

The device will go into the pairing mode.

### 4 Select this unit when its name appears in the list of devices displayed on the screen of the Bluetooth device.

### 5 When a number appears on the display of this unit, check that it is the same number as that shown on the screen of the Bluetooth device and then select “Pair” for both the Bluetooth device and the unit.

At the end of the pairing, the device name appears on the display of this unit.



- This unit can be paired with a maximum of 8 Bluetooth devices. When a 9th Bluetooth device is paired, it will be registered in place of the oldest registered device.
- Enter “0000” when the password is requested on the screen of the Bluetooth device.
- Press and hold the Bluetooth button on the remote control for at least 3 seconds to go into pairing mode.



## Reconnecting to this unit from a Bluetooth device

After pairing is completed, the Bluetooth device can be connected without performing any operations on this unit.

This operation also needs to be performed when switching the Bluetooth device for playback.

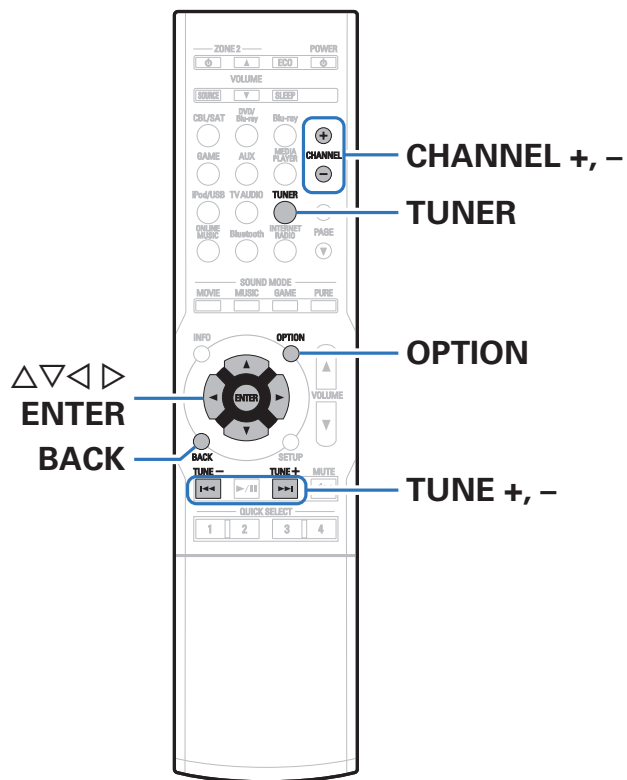
- 1 If a Bluetooth device is currently connected, deactivate the Bluetooth setting of that device to disconnect it.**
- 2 Activate the Bluetooth setting of the Bluetooth device to be connected.**
- 3 Select this unit from the Bluetooth device list on your Bluetooth device.**
- 4 Play music using any app on your Bluetooth device.**



- When the power of this unit is turned on, the input source will be automatically switched to “Bluetooth” if a Bluetooth device is connected.
- When the “Network Control” setting of this unit is set to “Always On” and a Bluetooth device is connected with the unit in the standby state, the power of the unit will be turned on automatically. (🔗 [p. 197](#))



## Listening to FM/AM broadcasts



You can use the built-in tuner of this unit to listen to FM broadcasts and AM broadcasts.

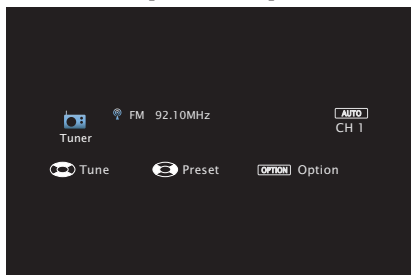
Make sure the FM antenna and AM loop antenna are connected to this unit first.



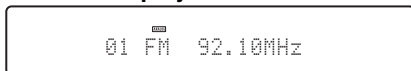
## Listening to FM/AM broadcasts

- 1 Connect the antenna. (“Connecting an FM/AM antenna” (🔧 p. 57))
- 2 Press TUNER to switch the input source to “Tuner”.

[ TV screen ]



[ Display of this unit ]



- 3 Press OPTION.  
The option menu screen is displayed.
- 4 Use  $\Delta \nabla$  to select “FM/AM”, then press ENTER.  
This displays the reception band input screen.

- 5 Use  $\triangleleft \triangleright$  to select “FM” or “AM”, then press ENTER.

**FM:** When listening to an FM broadcast.

**AM:** When listening to an AM broadcast.

- 6 Press TUNE + or TUNE - to select the station you want listen to.

Scanning is performed until it finds an available radio station. When it finds a radio station, it stops the scan automatically and tunes in.



- The modes for receiving FM broadcasts consists of “Auto” mode that automatically searches available broadcast stations and “Manual” mode that lets you tune in using buttons to change the frequency. The default setting is “Auto”. You can also use “Direct Tune” to tune in by entering the frequency directly. In “Auto” mode, you cannot tune in to radio stations if the reception is not good. If this is the case, then use the “Manual” mode or “Direct Tune” mode to tune in.

Operation buttons	Function
TUNE +, -	Selects the radio station (up/down)
CHANNEL +, -	Selects preset radio stations
$\Delta \nabla$	Selects the radio station (up/down)
$\triangleleft \triangleright$	Selects preset radio stations





## ■ Operations accessible through the option menu

- “Tuning in by entering the frequency (Direct Tune)” (🔗 p. 81)
- “Changing the tune mode (Tune Mode)” (🔗 p. 82)
- “Tuning in to stations and presetting them automatically (Auto Preset)” (🔗 p. 82)
- “Presetting the current broadcast station (Preset Memory)” (🔗 p. 83)
- “Specify a name for the preset broadcast station (Preset Name)” (🔗 p. 84)
- “Skipping preset broadcast stations (Preset Skip)” (🔗 p. 85)
- “Adjusting the volume of each channel to match the input source (Ch Level Adjust)” (🔗 p. 115)
- “Adjusting the tone (Tone)” (🔗 p. 116)
- “Displaying your desired video during audio playback (Video Select)” (🔗 p. 117)
- “Playing the same music in all zones (All Zone Stereo)” (🔗 p. 118)

## Tuning in by entering the frequency (Direct Tune)

You can enter the receiving frequency directly to tune in.

- 1 Press OPTION when the input source is “Tuner”.**  
The option menu screen is displayed.
- 2 Use  $\Delta\nabla$  to select “Direct Tune”, then press ENTER.**  
The screen that lets you enter the frequency is displayed.
- 3 Use  $\Delta\nabla$  to select the number, then press  $\blacktriangleright$ .**
  - If  $\triangleleft$  is pressed, the immediately preceding input is cancelled.
- 4 Repeat step 3 and enter the frequency of the radio station you want to hear.**
- 5 When setting is completed, press ENTER.**  
The preset frequency is tuned in.



## Changing the tune mode (Tune Mode)

You can change the mode for tuning into FM and AM broadcasts. If you cannot tune in automatically with “Auto” mode, change the mode to “Manual” and tune in manually.

- 1 Press OPTION when the input source is “Tuner”.**  
The option menu screen is displayed.
- 2 Use  $\Delta\nabla$  to select “Tune Mode”, then press ENTER.**
- 3 Use  $\triangleleft\rangle$  to select the tune mode, then press ENTER.**

<b>Auto:</b>	Automatically search for and tune to a receivable radio station.
<b>Manual:</b>	Manually change the frequency one step at a time each time the button is pressed.

## Tuning in to stations and presetting them automatically (Auto Preset)

A maximum of 56 radio stations can be automatically preset.

- 1 Press OPTION when the input source is “Tuner”.**  
The option menu screen is displayed.
- 2 Use  $\Delta\nabla$  to select “Auto Preset”, then press ENTER.**
- 3 Press ENTER.**

The unit starts to tune in to radio stations automatically and preset them.

- When presetting is completed, “Completed” is displayed for about 5 seconds and the option menu screen turns off.



- The preset memory is overwritten.



## Presetting the current broadcast station (Preset Memory)

Your favorite broadcast stations can be preset so that you can tune them in easily.

Up to 56 stations can be preset.

- 1 Tune in the broadcast station you want to preset.**  
 (“Listening to FM/AM broadcasts” (🔧 p. 80))
- 2 Press OPTION.**  
 The option menu screen is displayed.
- 3 Use  $\Delta\nabla$  to select “Preset Memory”, then press ENTER.**  
 The list of already preset channels is displayed.
- 4 Use  $\Delta\nabla$  to select the channel you want to preset, then press ENTER.**  
 The current broadcast station that is preset.
  - To preset other stations, repeat steps 1 to 4.

Channel	Default settings
1 – 8	92.10 / 92.30 / 92.50 / 92.70 / 93.10 / 93.50 / 93.70 / 94.10 MHz
9 – 16	94.30 / 94.50 / 94.70 / 94.90 / 95.10 / 95.30 / 95.50 / 95.70 MHz
17 – 24	98.10 / 98.30 / 98.50 / 98.70 / 98.90 / 99.10 / 100.10 / 100.30 MHz
25 – 32	100.50 / 100.70 / 100.90 / 101.10 / 101.30 / 101.50 / 101.70 / 101.90 MHz
33 – 40	103.10 / 103.30 / 103.50 / 103.70 / 103.90 / 104.10 / 104.30 / 104.50 MHz
41 – 48	104.70 / 104.90 / 105.10 / 105.30 / 105.50 / 105.70 / 105.90 / 106.10 MHz
49 – 56	106.30 / 106.50 / 106.70 / 106.90 / 107.10 / 107.30 / 107.50 / 107.90 MHz

## Listening to preset stations

- 1 Use CHANNEL + or CHANNEL - to select the desired preset channel.**



- You can also select preset broadcast stations by pressing TUNER PRESET CH + or TUNER PRESET CH - on the main unit.



## Specify a name for the preset broadcast station (Preset Name)

You can set the name to the preset broadcast station or change it. Up to eight characters can be input.


- 1 Press OPTION when the input source is “Tuner”.**  
The option menu screen is displayed.
- 2 Use  $\Delta\nabla$  to select “Preset Name”, then press ENTER.**  
The Preset Name screen is displayed.
- 3 Use  $\triangleleft\rangle$  to select the group of the broadcast station you want to name.**
- 4 Use  $\Delta\nabla$  to select the broadcast station you want to name, then press ENTER.**

### 5 Use $\Delta\nabla$ to select a name label, then press ENTER.

The screen that lets you edit the Preset Name is displayed.

- If you select “Set Defaults”, then the unit returns to displaying the frequency.

### 6 Enter the characters, then press “OK”.

- For character input, see “Using the keyboard screen” ( p. 150).

### 7 Press OPTION to return to the previous screen.



## Skipping preset broadcast stations (Preset Skip)

Perform auto preset memory to save all the broadcasting stations that can be received in the memory. Selecting a broadcast station becomes easier by skipping unnecessary memories.

### 1 Press **OPTION** when the input source is “Tuner”.

The option menu screen is displayed.

### 2 Use $\Delta \nabla$ to select “Preset Skip”, then press **ENTER**.

The “Preset Skip” screen is displayed.

### 3 To set the stations you want to skip by groups

- ① Use  $\triangleleft \triangleright$  to select the group of broadcast stations you want to skip.
- ② Press  $\Delta$  to select “Set No. \* - \* to Skip”, then press **ENTER**.  
Skip all the broadcast stations that are included in the selected group “\* - \*”.  
(\* is the selected group number.)

### To set the stations you want to skip by stations

- ① Use  $\triangleleft \triangleright$  to select the group of broadcast stations you want to skip.
- ② Use  $\Delta \nabla$  to select the broadcast station you want to skip.
- ③ Use  $\triangleleft \triangleright$  to select “Skip”.  
The station you selected is not displayed.

### 4 Press **OPTION** to return to the previous screen.



## Cancelling Preset Skip

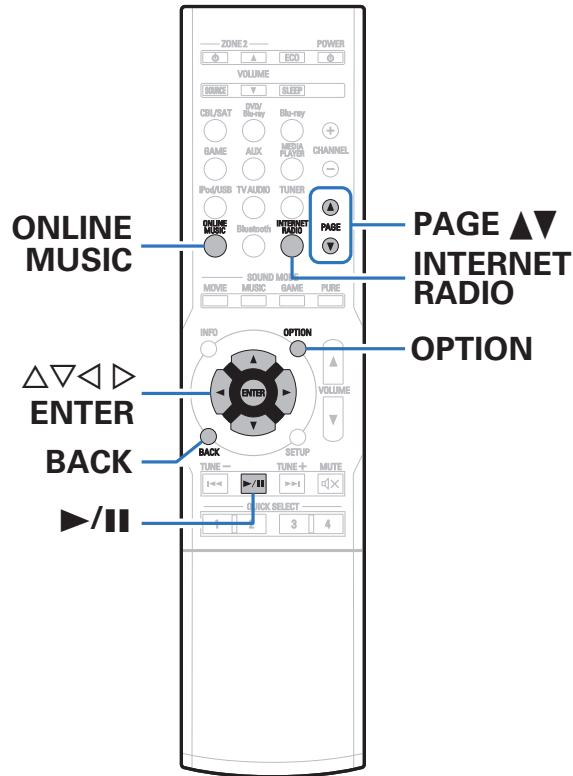
- 1** While the “Preset Skip” screen is displayed, use ◀▶ to select a group containing a broadcast station to cancel the skip for.
- 2** Use ▲▼ to select a broadcast station to cancel the skip for.
- 3** Use ◀▶ to select “On”.  
The skip is cancelled.

### NOTE

- Preset skip cannot be cancelled for groups.



# Listening to Internet Radio



- Internet Radio refers to radio broadcasts distributed over the Internet. Internet Radio stations from around the world can be received.
- The Internet radio station list on this unit the database service provided by vTuner radio station.
- The audio format types and specifications supported by this unit for playback are as follows.  
See “Playing an Internet Radio Station” (👉 p. 242) for details.

- WMA
- MP3
- MPEG-4 AAC



## Listening to Internet Radio

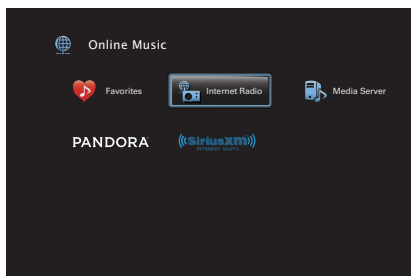
### 1 Prepare for playback.

- Check the network environment, then turn on this unit's power. ("Connecting to a home network (LAN)" (🔗 p. 59))

### 2 Press ONLINE MUSIC.

- You can also press INTERNET RADIO to select the input source "Internet Radio" directly.

### 3 Use $\Delta \nabla \triangleleft \triangleright$ to select "Internet Radio", then press ENTER.



### 4 Use $\Delta \nabla$ to select the search method for the radio station that you wish to playback and then press ENTER.

<b>Name of country :</b>	Select the various regions. Displays typical Internet Radio stations.
<b>Search Stations :</b>	Displays all Internet Radio stations that this unit can tune in to.
<b>Search Podcasts :</b>	Displays Internet Radio stations in the podcasts that this unit can tune in to.
<b>Recommended Stations :</b>	Displays recommended Internet Radio stations.
<b>radiodemon.com :</b>	Displays Internet Radio stations added to favorites in vTuner. For instructions on how to add to favorites in vTuner, see "Using vTuner to add Internet Radio stations to favorites" (🔗 p. 90).
<b>Recently Played :</b>	Displays recently played Internet Radio stations. Up to 20 stations can be stored in "Recently Played".
<b>Search by Keyword :</b>	Displays Internet Radio stations searched by keyword. For character input, see "Using the keyboard screen" (🔗 p. 150).





## 5 Use $\Delta \nabla \triangleright$ to select the station, then press ENTER.

Playback starts once buffering reaches “100%”.

Operation buttons	Function
$\blacktriangleright$ /	Playback / Stop
ENTER	(Press and hold) Stop
PAGE $\blacktriangle$ $\blacktriangledown$	Switch to the previous page/next page in the list display



- The display switches between track title and radio station name etc. each time the main unit's STATUS is pressed.
- Any characters that cannot be displayed are replaced with "." (period).

### NOTE

- The radio station database service may be suspended or be otherwise unavailable without notice.

## Playing the last played Internet Radio station

### 1 Press INTERNET RADIO.

The source switches to “Internet Radio” and the last played radio station plays.


### ■ Operations accessible through the option menu

- “Searching content with keywords (Text Search)” (🔍 p. 112)
- “Playing back music and a favorite picture at the same time (Slideshow)” (🖼️ p. 113)
- “Adjusting the volume of each channel to match the input source (Ch Level Adjust)” (🔊 p. 115)
- “Adjusting the tone (Tone)” (🎚️ p. 116)
- “Displaying your desired video during audio playback (Video Select)” (📺 p. 117)
- “Playing the same music in all zones (All Zone Stereo)” (🏠 p. 118)




## Using vTuner to add Internet Radio stations to favorites

There are many Internet Radio stations in the world, and this unit can tune into these stations. But finding the radio station you want to hear may be difficult, because there are too many stations. If this is the case, then please use vTuner, an Internet Radio station search website specifically designed for this unit. You can use your PC to search Internet Radio stations and add them as your favorites. This unit can play radio stations added to vTuner.

- 1 Check the MAC address of this unit.**  
("Information"  p. 197)
  - The MAC address is necessary when you create an account for vTuner.
- 2 Use your PC to access the vTuner website**  
(<http://www.radiodenon.com>).
- 3 Enter the MAC address of this unit, then click "Go".**

- 4 Enter your E-mail address and a password of your choice.**
- 5 Select the search criteria (genre, region, language, etc.) of your choice.**
  - You can also enter a keyword to search for a station you want to hear.
- 6 Select the radio station of your choice from the list, and then click the Add to Favorites icon.**
- 7 Enter the name of the favorite group, then click "Go".**

A new favorite group that includes the selected radio station is created.

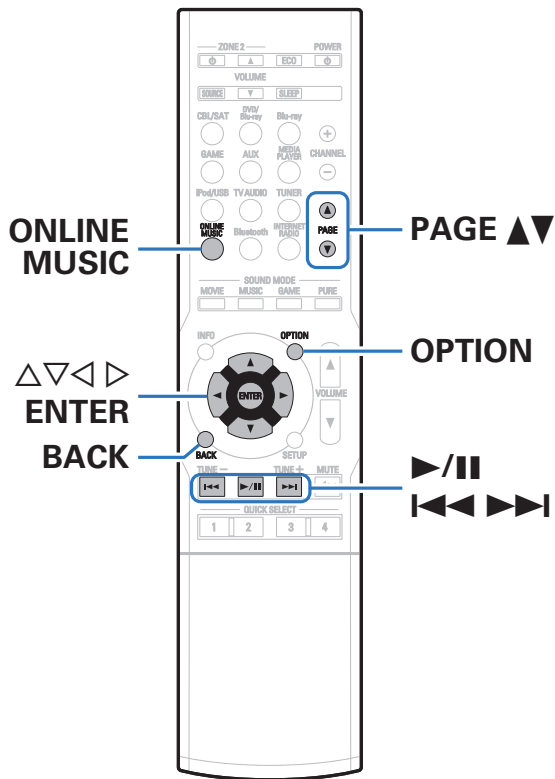
  - Internet Radio stations added to favorites in vTuner can be played from "radiodenon.com" with this unit. ( p. 88)



- You can also add a radio station that is not in the vTuner list.



## Playing back files stored on a PC and NAS



- This unit can play back music files and playlists (m3u, wpl) stored on a PC and on Network Attached Storage (NAS) that supports DLNA.
- The network audio playback function of this unit connects to the server using technologies shown below.  
Windows Media Player Network Sharing Service
- The audio/video format types and specifications supported by this unit for playback are as follows.  
For details, see “Playing back a file saved on a PC or NAS” (👉 p. 241).

- WMA
- MP3
- WAV
- MPEG-4 AAC
- FLAC
- ALAC
- AIFF
- DSD
- JPEG



## Applying media sharing settings

Here, we apply the settings to share music files stored on a PC and NAS on the network.

If you are using a Media Server, be sure to apply this setting first.

### ■ When using Windows Media Player 12 (Windows 7 / Windows 8)

- 1 Start up Windows Media Player 12 on the PC.
- 2 Select “More streaming options...” in the “Stream”.
- 3 Select “Allowed” in the “Denon AVR-X1200W” drop-down list.
- 4 Select “Allowed” in the drop-down list for “Media programs on this PC and remote connections...”.
- 5 Follow the screen instructions to end the setting.

### ■ When using Windows Media Player 11

- 1 Start up Windows Media Player 11 on the PC.
- 2 Select “Media Sharing” in the “Library”.
- 3 Click the “Share my media” check box, select “Denon AVR-X1200W”, and then click “Allow”.
- 4 As you did in step 3, select the icon of the device (other PCs and mobile devices) you want to use as a media controller, and then click “Allow”.
- 5 Click “OK” to finish.

### ■ Sharing media stored in NAS

Change settings on the NAS to allow this unit and other devices (PCs and mobile devices) used as media controllers to access the NAS. For details, see the owner’s manual that came with the NAS.



## Playing back files stored on a PC and NAS

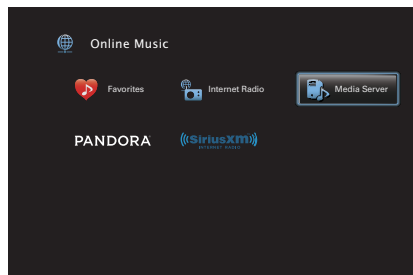
Use this procedure to play music files, image files or playlists.

### 1 Prepare for playback.

- ① Check the network environment, then turn on this unit's power. ("Connecting to a home network (LAN)" (☞ p. 59))
- ② Prepare the computer. (☞ Computer's operating instructions)

### 2 Press ONLINE MUSIC.

### 3 Use $\Delta \nabla \triangleleft \triangleright$ to select "Media Server", then press ENTER.



**4** Use  $\Delta \nabla$  to select the server including the file to be played, then press ENTER.

**5** Use  $\nabla \Delta \triangleright$  to select the file, then press ENTER.

Playback starts once buffering reaches "100%".

Operation buttons	Function
$\blacktriangleright \parallel$	Playback / Pause
$\blacktriangleleft \blacktriangleleft \blacktriangleright \blacktriangleright$	Skip to previous track / Skip to next track (Press and hold) Fast-reverse / Fast-forward
ENTER	Playback / Pause (Press and hold) Stop
$\Delta \nabla$	Skip to previous track / Skip to next track (Press and hold) Fast-reverse / Fast-forward
PAGE $\blacktriangle \blacktriangledown$	Switch to the previous page/next page in the list display














- The display switches between track title, artist name, and album title each time the main unit's STATUS is pressed.
- When a WMA (Windows Media Audio), MP3 or MPEG-4 AAC file includes album art data, the album art can be displayed while the music files are playing.
- If you use Ver.11 or later of Windows Media Player, the album art for WMA files can be displayed.
- WMA Lossless files can be played when using a server supporting transcoding, such as Windows Media Player (Ver.11 or later).
- This unit plays back picture (JPEG) files in the order in which they are stored in the folder.

**NOTE**

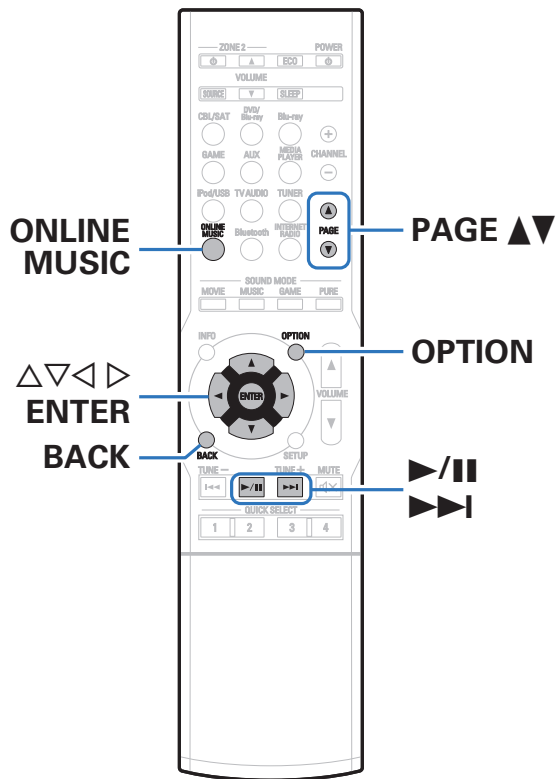
- When playing back music files with your PC or NAS connected through wireless LAN, audio may be interrupted depending on your wireless LAN environment. In this case, connect using a wired LAN.
- Depending on the size of the still picture (JPEG) file, some time may be required for the file to be displayed.
- The order in which the tracks/files are displayed depends on the server specifications. If the tracks/files are not displayed in alphabetical order due to the server specifications, searching by the first letter may not work properly.

**■ Operations accessible through the option menu**

- “Performing repeat playback” ( p. 110)
- “Performing random playback” ( p. 110)
- “Searching content with keywords (Text Search)” ( p. 112)
- “Playing back music and a favorite picture at the same time (Slideshow)” ( p. 113)
- “Setting the Slideshow Interval” ( p. 114)
- “Adjusting the volume of each channel to match the input source (Ch Level Adjust)” ( p. 115)
- “Adjusting the tone (Tone)” ( p. 116)
- “Displaying your desired video during audio playback (Video Select)” ( p. 117)
- “Playing the same music in all zones (All Zone Stereo)” ( p. 118)



## Listening to Pandora®



Pandora is an automated music recommendation and Internet Radio service created by the Music Genome Project.

To listen to Pandora you will need a free Pandora account.

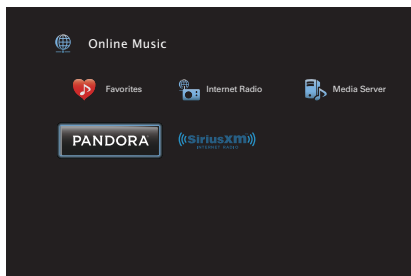
If you do not have a Pandora account, you can create one at [www.pandora.com](http://www.pandora.com) or from the Pandora smartphone application.

Playback of Pandora in this unit requires the Pandora account to be linked to the unit. Therefore, access <http://www.pandora.com/denon> from your personal computer and perform the linkage.

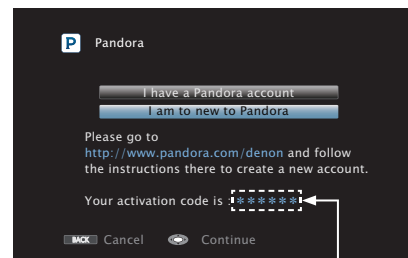


## Listening to Pandora®

- 1 **Prepare for playback.**
  - Check the network environment, then turn on this unit's power. ("Connecting to a home network (LAN)" (☞ p. 59))
- 2 **Press ONLINE MUSIC.**
- 3 **Use  $\Delta \nabla \triangleleft \triangleright$  to select "Pandora", then press ENTER.**



- 4 **If you have a Pandora account, use  $\Delta \nabla$  to select "I have a Pandora account", then press ENTER.**
  - If you do not have a Pandora account, to select "I am to new to Pandora", then press ENTER. The URL of Pandora and activation code are displayed. Access the Pandora web page from your PC and register the displayed activation code and account information. Then press ENTER.



This is an identification code required to register your purchased product to the Pandora service.  
This code is used to obtain your account.



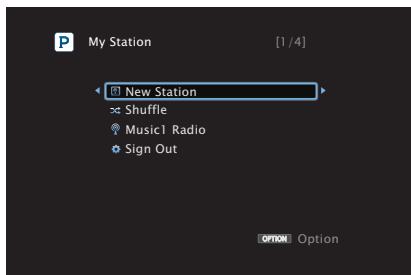


## 5 Input “Email address” and “Password”.

- For character input, see “Using the keyboard screen” (📖 p. 150).
- Press BACK to cancel the input. When “Cancel input?” is displayed, select “Yes”, then press ENTER.

## 6 After inputting the “Email address” and “Password”, select “OK”, then press ENTER.

If the “Email address” and “Password” match, the top menu for Pandora is displayed.



## Creating a new station

You can create up to 100 radio stations.

**1 Use  $\Delta$ / $\nabla$  to select “New Station”, then press ENTER.**

**2 Input a track or artist name, then press “OK”.**

- For character input, see “Using the keyboard screen” (🖱️ p. 150).

**3 Use  $\Delta$ / $\nabla$  to select “Search by Artist” or “Search by Track”, then press ENTER.**

You can search and display a list by track or artist.

**4 Use  $\Delta$ / $\nabla$ , select a file from the list, press ENTER.**

New station is created.



- Your new station will play music with similar qualities to the artist or track you entered.

Operation buttons	Function
▶/	Playback / Pause
▶▶	Skip to next track
ENTER	Playback / Pause (Press and hold) Stop
▽	Skip to next track
PAGE ▲ ▼	Switch to the previous page/next page in the list display



## Listening to an existing station

- 1 Use  $\Delta$ / $\nabla$  and select the radio station that you want to listen to, then press ENTER.



- You can skip up to 6 tracks that are being played back within 1 hour.

## Listening to created radio stations at random

- 1 Use  $\Delta$ / $\nabla$  to select “Shuffle”, then press ENTER.  
Created radio stations are selected at random, and tracks are streamed.




## Giving feedback and managing stations

You can personalize your stations by providing feedback.


### 1 Press while a track is playing.

The Pandora menu screen is displayed.

#### I like this track :

Press when you like the track that is being played.  
Playback a favorite track.  
Display the  (Thumbs up) icon.

#### I don't like this track :

Press when you don't like the track that is being played.  
Delete that track from the radio station.  
Display the  (Thumbs down) icon.

#### Why is this track playing? :

Displays the reason why Pandora selected this track.

#### Create station :

Creates a station for the track or artist being played.

#### Bookmark this track :

Bookmarks the artist currently being played.  
You can check on a computer or iPhone etc.  
For details, see the Pandora web page.

#### I'm tired of this track :

Press when you don't like the track that is being played.  
The track will not be played for 1 month.

#### Delete this station :

Press when you want to delete the station that is being played.



## Sign Out

Disassociate this unit from your Pandora account.

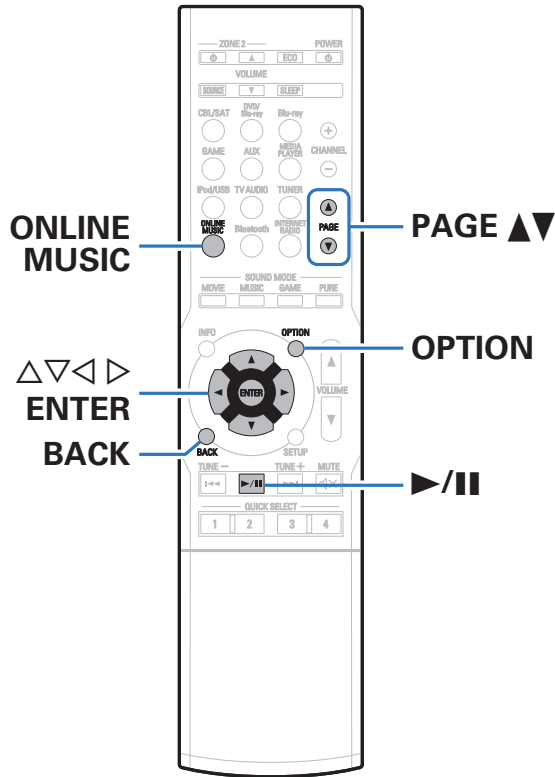
- 1 Use  $\Delta\nabla$  to select “Sign Out”, then press ENTER.
- 2 When the popup menu appears, use  $\triangleleft\triangleright$  to select “Yes”, then press ENTER.

### ■ Operations accessible through the option menu

- “Adjusting the volume of each channel to match the input source (Ch Level Adjust)” (🔍 p. 115)
- “Adjusting the tone (Tone)” (🔍 p. 116)
- “Displaying your desired video during audio playback (Video Select)” (🔍 p. 117)
- “Playing the same music in all zones (All Zone Stereo)” (🔍 p. 118)



# Listening to SiriusXM Internet Radio



You can access SiriusXM to enjoy access to a wide range of unique content.

An All Access package lets you listen to SiriusXM on your computer, smartphone, tablet or Lynx Portable.

For details, see the SiriusXM homepage.

<http://www.siriusxm.com>



## Listening to SiriusXM Internet Radio

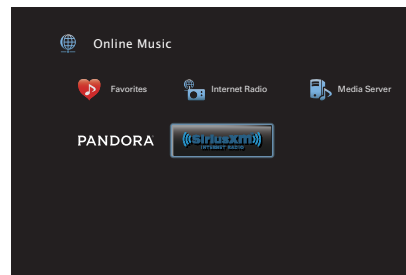
Over 155 channels commercial-free music, plus play-by-play sports, exclusive talk, comedy and entertainment.

### 1 Prepare for playback.

- ① Check the network environment, then turn on this unit's power. ("Connecting to a home network (LAN)" (👉 p. 59))
- ② Access the following website from your PC and obtain a SiriusXM account.
  - <http://www.siriusxm.com>
  - If you already have SiriusXM Internet Radio credentials, select Sign in in step 4 and enter your SiriusXM username and password. If you need to setup a SiriusXM account or Internet Radio credentials, visit <http://care.siriusxm.com>

### 2 Press ONLINE MUSIC.

### 3 Use $\Delta \nabla \triangleleft \triangleright$ to select "SiriusXM", then press ENTER.



### 4 Select "Sign in" and then press ENTER.

### 5 Input "Username" and "Password".

- For character input, see "Using the keyboard screen" (👉 p. 150).

### 6 Select the "Sign in", then press ENTER.

The top menu of SiriusXM is displayed.



**7** Use  $\Delta\nabla$  to select the genre, then press ENTER.

**8** Use  $\Delta\nabla$  to select the file, then press ENTER.

The selected file is displayed.

Operation buttons	Function
$\blacktriangleright/\parallel$	Playback / Stop
ENTER	Playback (Press and hold) Stop
PAGE $\blacktriangle$ $\blacktriangledown$	Switch to the previous page/next page in the list display

## Sign Out

Disassociate this unit from your SiriusXM account.

**1** Use  $\Delta\nabla$  to select “Sign Out”, then press ENTER.

**2** When the popup menu appears, use  $\triangleleft$   $\triangleright$  to select “Yes”, then press ENTER.

### ■ Operations accessible through the option menu

- “Adjusting the volume of each channel to match the input source (Ch Level Adjust)” (🔧 p. 115)
- “Adjusting the tone (Tone)” (🔧 p. 116)
- “Displaying your desired video during audio playback (Video Select)” (🔧 p. 117)
- “Playing the same music in all zones (All Zone Stereo)” (🔧 p. 118)




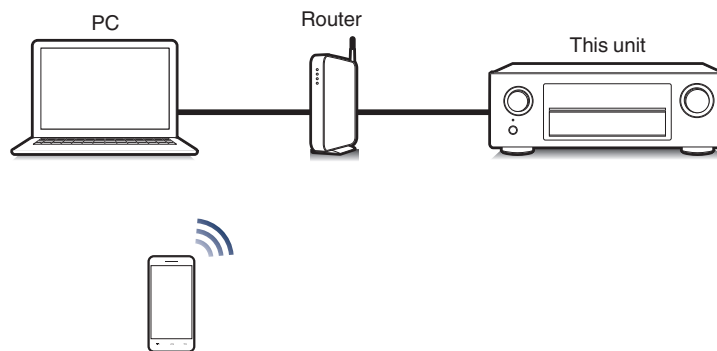


## AirPlay function

Music files stored on your iPhone, iPod touch, iPad or iTunes can be played on this unit via the network.



-  is displayed on the menu screen while AirPlay is being operated.
- Source input will be switched to "Online Music" when AirPlay playback is started.
- You can stop AirPlay playback by pressing <| or choosing other input source.
- To see song and artist names together, press STATUS on the main unit.
- For information about how to use iTunes, also see the Help for iTunes.
- The screen may differ depending on the OS and software versions.



## Playing songs from your iPhone, iPod touch or iPad

If you update your “iPhone/iPod touch/iPad” to iOS 4.2.1 or later, you can stream music stored in your “iPhone/iPod touch/iPad” directly to this unit.

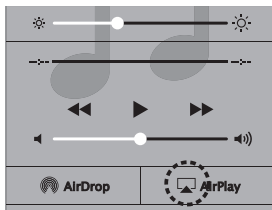
### 1 Connect your iPhone, iPod touch or iPad Wi-Fi to the same network as this unit.

- For details, see your device’s manual.

### 2 Play the song on your iPhone, iPod touch or iPad.

 is displayed on the iPhone, iPod touch or iPad screen.

### 3 Tap the AirPlay icon .



### 4 Select the speaker (devices) you want to use.

## Playing iTunes music with this unit

### 1 Install iTunes 10, or later, on a Mac or Windows PC that is connected to the same network as this unit.

### 2 Turn this unit ON.

Set “Network Control” to “Always On” for this unit. ( p. 203)

#### NOTE

- When “Network Control” is set to “Always On”, the unit consumes more standby power.

### 3 Start iTunes and click the AirPlay icon to select the main unit.




### 4 Choose a song and click play in iTunes.

The music will stream to this unit.



## Selecting multiple speakers (devices)

It is possible to play iTunes songs on your home's AirPlay compatible speakers (devices) other than those of this unit.

- 1 Click the **AirPlay icon**  and select **“Multiple”**.
- 2 Check the speakers you want to use.

### NOTE

- In playback using the AirPlay function, the sound is output at the iPhone, iPod touch, iPad or iTunes volume setting level. You should turn down the iPhone, iPod touch, iPad or iTunes volume prior to playback and then adjust it to a suitable level.

## Perform iTunes playback operations with the remote control unit of this unit

With this unit's remote control unit, you can perform iTunes song play, pause, and auto search (cue) operations.

- 1 Select the **“Edit” - “Preferences...”** in the iTunes menu.
- 2 Select **“Devices”** in the iTunes setting window.
- 3 Check **“Allow iTunes audio control from remote speakers”**, and then click **“OK”**.



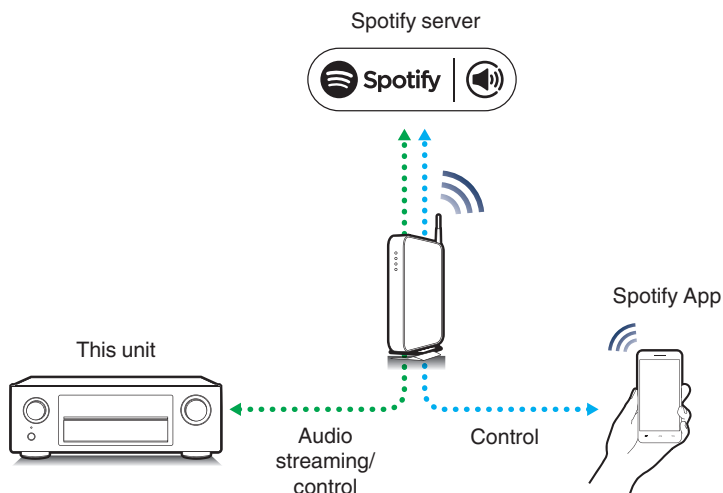
- This does not need to be set if using version 12 or later of iTunes.



## Spotify Connect function


Spotify is the world's most popular streaming service. If you subscribe to Spotify Premium, you can control your new speaker with your phone or tablet. Because Spotify is built-in to your speaker, you can still take calls or use other apps - the music never stops.

For information on how to set up and use Spotify Connect please visit [www.spotify.com/connect](http://www.spotify.com/connect)



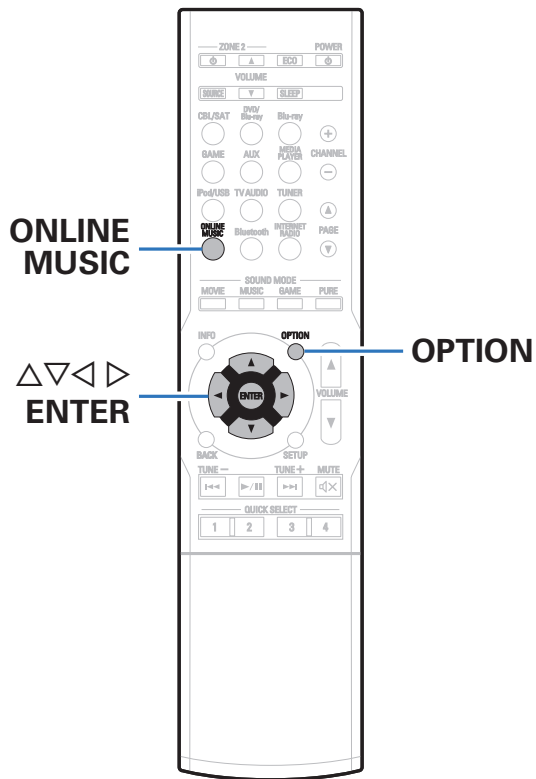
### Playing Spotify music with this unit

Download the "Spotify App" onto your Android or iOS device beforehand. To play a Spotify track in this unit, you need to register in the Spotify premium account first.

- 1 Connect the Wi-Fi settings of the iOS or Android device in the same network as this unit.**
- 2 Launch the Spotify App.**
- 3 Play back the Spotify track.**
- 4 Tap the  icon to select the unit.**  
The music will stream to this unit.



## Convenience functions



- This section explains how to use convenient functions that can be used for each input source.
- These functions can only be set in the MAIN ZONE.



## Performing repeat playback

- ❑ **Supported input sources:**  
USB / Media Server / Bluetooth

- 1 While content is playing, press OPTION.**  
The option menu screen is displayed.
- 2 Use  $\Delta\nabla$  to select “Repeat”, then press ENTER.**
- 3 Use  $\triangleleft\rangle$  to select repeat playback mode.**

<b>Off</b> (Default):	Repeat playback mode is canceled.
<b>One:</b>	A file being played is played repeatedly.
<b>All:</b>	All files in the folder currently being played are played repeatedly.

- 4 Press ENTER.**  
The display returns to the playback screen.



- This cannot be set up if the Bluetooth device does not support the repeat setting under the AVRCP profile.
- “Repeat” settings are stored for each input source.

## Performing random playback

- ❑ **Supported input sources :**  
USB / Media Server / Bluetooth

- 1 While content is playing, press OPTION.**  
The option menu screen is displayed.
- 2 Use  $\Delta\nabla$  to select “Random”, then press ENTER.**
- 3 Use  $\triangleleft\rangle$  to select random playback mode.**

<b>Off</b> (Default):	Disable random playback.
<b>On:</b>	Randomly play back all tracks in the current playback folder.

- 4 Press ENTER.**  
The display returns to the playback screen.



- During random playback, each time playback of a track is completed, another track is randomly selected for playback from tracks in the folder. Therefore, it's possible that you may hear a track played back more than once during random playback.
- This cannot be set up if the Bluetooth device does not support the random setting under the AVRCP profile.
- “Random” settings are stored for each input source.



## Registering to Favorites

You can register a total of 100 favorites.

### ❑ Supported input sources :

**Internet Radio / Media Server / Pandora / SiriusXM**

#### 1 While content is playing, press OPTION.

The option menu screen is displayed.

#### 2 Use $\Delta \nabla$ to select “Save to Favorite”, then press ENTER.

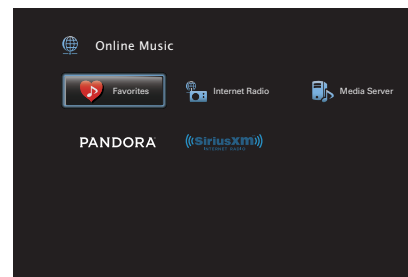
“Favorite added” is displayed, and the current content is added to favorites.

- The display returns to the playback screen when the procedure is completed.

## Playing back content added to the “Save to Favorite”

#### 1 Press ONLINE MUSIC.

#### 2 Use $\Delta \nabla \triangleleft \triangleright$ to select “Favorites”, then press ENTER.



#### 3 Use $\Delta \nabla$ to select the content you want to play, then press ENTER.

Playback starts.




## Deleting content added to favorites

- 1** Press **ONLINE MUSIC**.
- 2** Use  $\Delta \nabla \triangleleft \triangleright$  to select “Favorites”, then press **ENTER**.
- 3** Use  $\Delta \nabla$  to select the content you want to delete from favorites, then press **OPTION**.  
The option menu screen is displayed.
- 4** Use  $\Delta \nabla$  to select “Remove from Fav.”, then press **ENTER**.  
“Favorite removed” is displayed, and the selected content is deleted from favorites.
  - The screen returns to the previous screen when the delete process is complete.

## Searching content with keywords (Text Search)

### ❑ Supported input sources : USB / Internet Radio / Media Server

- 1** While the content is playing, press **OPTION**.  
The option menu screen is displayed.
- 2** Use  $\Delta \nabla$  to select “Text Search”, then press **ENTER**.  
The keyboard input screen is displayed.
- 3** Enter the first character of the Internet Radio station or file you want to search for, and then press “OK”.
  - For character input, see “Using the keyboard screen” ( p. 150).
- 4** Use  $\Delta \nabla$  to select the content you want to play, then press **ENTER**.  
Playback starts.



- “Text Search” searches for Internet Radio stations or files that start with the entered first character from the displayed list.

#### NOTE

- Text Search may not work for some lists.





## Playing back music and a favorite picture at the same time (Slideshow)

### ❑ Supported input sources : USB

#### 1 Play back a still picture.

- Playing back still pictures stored on USB memory devices. (🔍 p. 71)

#### 2 Play back a music file. (🔍 p. 71)

#### 3 Press OPTION.

The option menu screen is displayed.

#### 4 Use $\Delta\nabla$ to select “Slideshow”, then press ENTER.

The option menu disappears, and the picture you were viewing is shown on the screen.

### ❑ Supported input sources : Internet Radio / Media Server

#### 1 Play back a still picture.

- Play back still pictures stored on Media Server. (🔍 p. 91)

#### 2 Play back a music file of Media Server or Internet Radio station.

- “Listening to Internet Radio” (🔍 p. 87)
- “Playing back files stored on a PC and NAS” (🔍 p. 91)

#### 3 Press OPTION.

The option menu screen is displayed.

#### 4 Use $\Delta\nabla$ to select “Slideshow”, then press ENTER.

The option menu disappears, and the picture you were viewing is shown on the screen.



## Setting the Slideshow Interval

Set the playback interval when playing back a slideshow of still picture (JPEG) files stored on a USB memory device or media server.

### ❑ Supported input sources: USB / Media Server

#### 1 While the list is displayed, press **OPTION**.

The option menu screen is displayed.

#### 2 Use $\Delta \nabla$ to select “Slideshow Time”, then press **ENTER**.

#### 3 Use $\triangleleft \triangleright$ to set the display time.

<b>Off:</b>	The slide show is not played back.
<b>5s - 60s</b> (Default: 5s):	Set the time for displaying a single picture when playing back images in the slide show.

#### 4 Press **ENTER**.



- The “Slideshow Time” settings are reflected for all input sources.



## Adjusting the volume of each channel to match the input source (Ch Level Adjust)

The volume of each channel can be changed while listening to music. You can set this for each input source.

### 1 Press **OPTION**.

The option menu screen is displayed.

### 2 Use **Δ∇** to select “Ch Level Adjust”, then press **ENTER**.

The “Ch Level Adjust” screen is displayed.

### 3 Use **Δ∇** to select the channel that you wish to adjust.

### 4 Use **◀▶** to adjust the volume.

---

-12.0 dB – +12.0 dB (Default : 0.0 dB)

---

### 5 Use **Δ∇◀▶** to select “Exit”, then press **ENTER**.



- Select “Reset” and press ENTER if you want to restore the adjustment values of the various channels to “0.0 dB” (default).
- Headphone volume can be adjusted when a headphone is connected.
- “Ch Level Adjust” settings are stored for each input source.
- You can only set this for speakers that output audio. In addition, you cannot set this when in the menu “HDMI Audio Out” is set to “TV”. (☞ p. 164)



## Adjusting the tone (Tone)

Adjusts the tonal quality of the sound.

### 1 Press OPTION.

The option menu screen is displayed.

### 2 Use $\Delta \nabla$ to select "Tone", then press ENTER.

The "Tone" screen is displayed.

### 3 Use $\triangleleft \triangleright$ to set the tone control function to on/off.

**On:** Allow tone adjustment (bass, treble).

**Off**  
(Default): Playback without tone adjustment.

### 4 Select "On" in step 3 and press $\nabla$ to select the sound range to be adjusted.

**Bass:** Adjust bass.

**Treble:** Adjust treble.

### 5 Use $\triangleleft \triangleright$ to adjust the tone, then press ENTER.

-6 dB – +6 dB (Default : 0 dB)



- "Tone" settings are stored for each input source.
- This cannot be set when the sound mode is set to "Direct" or "Pure Direct".
- This item cannot be set when "Dynamic EQ" is set to "On". (☞ p.159)
- You cannot set this when no audio signal is input or in the menu "HDMI Audio Out" is set to "TV". (☞ p.164)



## Displaying your desired video during audio playback (Video Select)

This unit can display video from a different source on TV during audio playback. You can set this for each input source.

### ❑ Supported input sources: iPod/USB / Tuner / Online Music / Bluetooth

#### 1 Press **OPTION** during audio playback.

The option menu screen is displayed.

#### 2 Use **Δ∇** to select “Video Select”, then press **ENTER**.

#### 3 Use **◀▶** to select the Video Select mode.

---

**Off**  
(Default):                      Disable Video Select mode.

---

**On:**                                      Enable Video Select mode.

---

**4** If you selected “On” in step 3, press **∇** and select “Source”.

**5** Use **◀▶** to select the input source for video you want to play back, then press **ENTER**.



- “Video Select” settings are stored for each input source.



## Playing the same music in all zones (All Zone Stereo)

You can play back the music being played back in MAIN ZONE simultaneously in ZONE2 (separate room).

It is useful when you want to enjoy the same music at the same time in multiple rooms during home party or when you want to play back the same BGM in the entire house.

### 1 Press OPTION.

The option menu screen is displayed.

### 2 Use $\Delta\nabla$ to select “All Zone Stereo”, then press ENTER.

### 3 Select “Start”, then press ENTER.

The input source for ZONE2 is switched to the same input source as for MAIN ZONE, and playback starts in the All Zone Stereo mode.

## ■ Stopping the All Zone Stereo mode

### 1 During playback in All Zone Stereo mode, press OPTION.

The option menu screen is displayed.

### 2 Use $\Delta\nabla$ to select “All Zone Stereo”, then press ENTER.

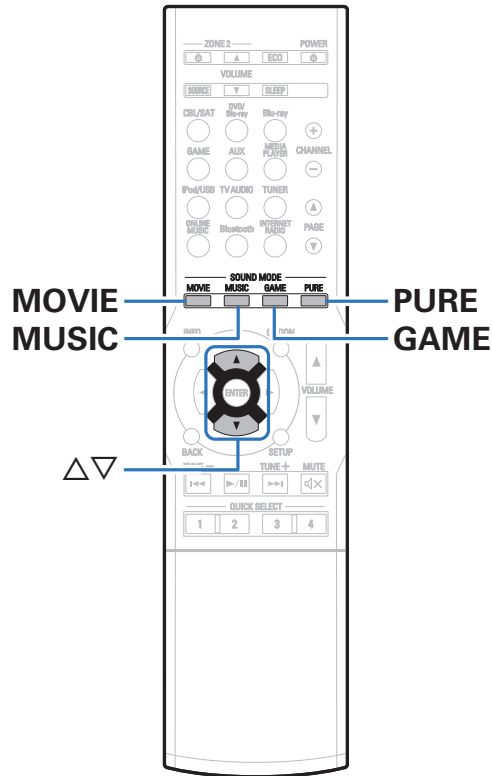
### 3 Select “Stop”, then press ENTER.



- The All Zone Stereo mode is canceled even when the power supply of the MAIN ZONE is turned off.
- In the All Zone Stereo mode, only the “Multi Ch Stereo” and “Stereo” sound modes can be selected.
- When “HDMI Audio Out” is set to “TV”, the All Zone Stereo mode is not available. (🔧 p.164)



## Selecting a sound mode



This unit allows you to enjoy various kinds of surround and stereo playback modes. Disc formats such as Blu-ray Disc and DVD, as well as being supported by digital broadcasting, and even by streaming movies and music from internet-based subscription services.

This unit supports playback of almost all of these multi-channel audio formats. It also supports surround playback of audio formats other than multi-channel audio such as 2-channel stereo audio.



- For audio formats recorded on a disc, see the disc jacket or label.



## Selecting a sound mode

### 1 Press MOVIE, MUSIC or GAME to select a sound mode.

<b>MOVIE :</b>	Switches to the sound mode suitable for enjoying movies and TV programs.
<b>MUSIC :</b>	Switches to the sound mode suitable for enjoying music.
<b>GAME :</b>	Switches to the sound mode suitable for enjoying games.

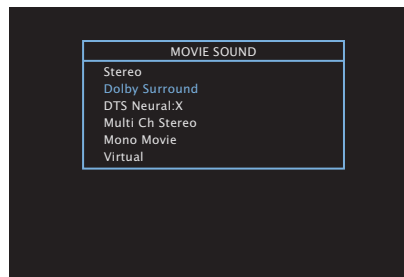


- The MOVIE, MUSIC, or GAME button memorizes the last sound mode selected for its button. Pressing MOVIE, MUSIC, or GAME recalls the same sound mode as the one selected at the previous playback.
- If the content played back does not support the previously selected sound mode, the most appropriate sound mode for the content is automatically selected.

### ■ Switching the sound mode

- Press MOVIE, MUSIC or GAME to display a list of the sound modes that can be selected. Each time you press MOVIE, MUSIC or GAME, the sound mode changes.
- While the list is displayed, you can also use  $\Delta$ / $\nabla$  to select a sound mode.
- Try out various sound modes and enjoy sound mode in your favorite mode.

**[Example]** When MOVIE is pressed



This unit provides not only sound modes that conform to the formats recorded on discs such as Dolby and DTS, but also extended types of modes that match your speaker configuration and “original sound modes” that create atmosphere of Rock Arena and Jazz Club, etc.





## Direct playback

Sound recorded in source is played as is.

- 1 **Press PURE to select “Direct”.**  
Direct playback begins.

## Pure Direct playback

This mode is for playback with higher sound quality than in Direct playback mode.







This mode turns off the main unit display and analog video circuit. Doing so suppresses noise sources that affect sound quality.

- 1 **Press PURE to select “Pure Direct”.**

The display goes dark, and Pure Direct playback begins.



• In Direct and Pure Direct sound modes, the following items cannot be adjusted.

- Tone ( p. 116)
- Restorer ( p. 156)
- MultEQ® XT ( p. 159)
- Dynamic EQ ( p. 159)
- Dynamic Volume ( p. 160)
- Manual EQ ( p. 161)

### NOTE

- Video signals are only output when HDMI signals are played in the Pure Direct mode.
- When the Pure Direct mode has been selected, the display turns off after about 5 seconds.



## Auto surround playback

This mode detects the type of input digital signal, and automatically selects the corresponding mode for playback. Perform stereo playback when the input signal is PCM. When the input signal is Dolby Digital or DTS, the music is played back according to the respective channel number.

### 1 Press PURE to select “Auto”.

Auto surround playback begins.



## ■ Description of sound mode types

### Dolby sound mode

Sound mode type	Description
Dolby Surround	This mode uses Dolby Surround Upmixer to extend various sources to natural and realistic multi channels for playback. Use ceiling speakers such as top middle speakers to realize a three-dimensional sound field.
Dolby Digital	This mode can be selected when playing sources recorded in Dolby Digital.
Dolby TrueHD	This mode can be selected when playing sources recorded in Dolby TrueHD.
Dolby Digital Plus	This mode can be selected when playing sources recorded in Dolby Digital Plus.
Dolby Atmos*	This mode can be selected when playing back content encoded with Dolby Atmos. It decodes Dolby Atmos content and its positioning data in real time and outputs audio from the appropriate speakers, creating natural audio images regardless of the speaker layout. Use ceiling speakers and Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers to realize a three-dimensional sound field.

\* Can be selected when using the Surround Back, Front Height, Top Front, Top Middle, Front Dolby or Surround Dolby speakers.



**DTS sound mode**

Sound mode type	Description
DTS Surround	This mode can be selected when playing sources recorded in DTS.
DTS ES Dscrt6.1*	This mode is suitable for playing discs recorded in DTS-ES. The surround back channel added using the discrete method is played as an independent channel. Since all channels are independent, the 360-degree spacial expressiveness and sound localization are enhanced.
DTS ES Mtrx6.1*	This mode is suitable for playing discs recorded in DTS-ES. The surround back channel added to the surround-left and surround-right channels by a matrix encoder at software recording time is decoded by this unit's matrix decoder and played from each channel (surround left, surround right, surround back).
DTS 96/24	This mode can be selected when playing sources recorded in DTS 96/24.
DTS-HD	This mode can be selected when playing sources recorded in DTS-HD.
DTS Express	This mode can be selected when playing sources recorded in DTS Express.
DTS:X	This mode can be selected when playing back content encoded with DTS:X. It decodes DTS:X content and its positioning data in real time and outputs audio from the appropriate speakers, creating natural audio images regardless of the speaker layout. Use height speakers to realize a three-dimensional sound field.
DTS Neural:X	This mode uses DTS Neural:X Upmixer to extend various sources to natural and realistic multi channels for playback. Use height speakers such as front height speakers to realize a three-dimensional sound field.

\* This can be selected when "Speaker Config." - "Surround Back" is not set to "None". (🔧 p. 189)

**PCM multi-channel sound mode**

Sound mode type	Description
Multi Ch In	This mode can be selected when playing multi-channel PCM sources.



**Original sound mode**

Sound mode type	Description
Multi Ch Stereo	This mode is for enjoying stereo sound from all speakers. Stereo audio (2-channel) sources are played back via the front (L/R) speakers, the surround speakers and surround back speakers (if connected).
Rock Arena	This mode simulates the expansive sound of a live concert in an arena.
Jazz Club	This mode simulates the experience of being in an intimate jazz club.
Mono Movie	This mode works with monaural audio sources and delivers a surround sound effect. For optimum channel balance and surround sound effects, connect the monaural source to both of the front (L/R) audio inputs.
Video Game	This mode provides an exciting, dynamic surround sound effect with your favorite action video games.
Matrix	This mode adds a spacious surround sound effect with stereo music sources.
Virtual	This mode lets you experience an expansive surround sound effect when playing back through just the front (L/R) speakers only, and when listening with stereo headphones.

**Auto sound mode**

Sound mode type	Description
Auto	In this mode, the type of digital signal input, such as Dolby Digital, Dolby TrueHD, Dolby Digital Plus, Dolby Digital EX, Dolby Atmos, DTS, DTS-HD, DTS:X, DTS-ES, PCM (multi-channel) is detected, and the playback mode switches automatically to the corresponding mode. If the input signal is analog or PCM (2-channel), stereo playback is used. For Dolby Digital or DTS, the music is played back according to the respective channel number.



**Stereo sound mode**

Sound mode type	Description
Stereo	<p>This mode plays 2-channel stereo audio with no additional surround sound processing.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Sound is output from the front left and right speakers, and subwoofer if connected.</li><li>• When multi-channel signals are inputted, they are mixed down to 2-channel audio and are played back with no additional surround sound processing.</li></ul>

**Direct sound mode**

Sound mode type	Description
Direct	<p>This mode plays back audio as recorded in the source.</p>
Pure Direct	<p>This mode plays back an even higher quality sound than the “Direct” mode. The following circuits are stopped in order to further improve sound quality.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Display indicator circuit of the main body (display will go off.)</li><li>• The analog video input/output switcher and processor is disabled.</li></ul>



## ■ Sound mode that can be selected for each input signal

- The following sound modes can be selected using the MOVIE, MUSIC and GAME buttons.
- Adjust the sound field effect with the menu “Surr.Parameter” to enjoy surround sound the way you like it. (👉 p. 152)

Input signal	Sound mode	MOVIE button	MUSIC button	GAME button
2-channel *1	Stereo	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	Dolby Surround	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	DTS Neural:X *2	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	Multi Ch Stereo	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	Mono Movie	<input type="radio"/>		
	Rock Arena		<input type="radio"/>	
	Jazz Club		<input type="radio"/>	
	Matrix		<input type="radio"/>	
	Video Game			<input type="radio"/>
	Virtual	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>

\*1 2-channel also includes analog input.

\*2 This mode plays back 2-channel sources in 5.1 or 7.1-channel playback. It cannot be selected when headphones are used or when the speaker configuration is front speakers only.



Input signal	Sound mode	MOVIE button	MUSIC button	GAME button
Multi-channel *3	Stereo	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	Dolby Digital	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Dolby TrueHD	Dolby Digital + Dolby Surround	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	Dolby TrueHD	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Dolby Digital Plus	Dolby TrueHD + Dolby Surround	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	Dolby Digital Plus	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Dolby Atmos	Dolby Digital Plus + Dolby Surround	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	Dolby Atmos	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
DTS	DTS Surround	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	DTS ES Dscrt 6.1	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	DTS ES Mtrx 6.1	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	DTS 96/24	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	DTS + Neural:X	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>

\*3 The sound mode that can be selected differs depending on the audio format of the input signal and the number of channels. For details, see "Types of input signals, and corresponding sound modes" (📖 p. 247).



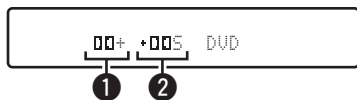


Input signal	Sound mode	MOVIE button	MUSIC button	GAME button
DTS-HD/ DTS Express	DTS-HD HI RES	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	DTS-HD MSTR	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	DTS Express	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	DTS-HD + Neural:X	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
DTS:X	DTS:X	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	DTS:X MSTR	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
PCM multi-channel	Multi Ch In	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	Multi Ch In 7.1	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	Multi In + Dolby Surround	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	Multi Ch In + Neural:X	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Multi-channel *3	Multi Ch Stereo	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
	Mono Movie	<input type="radio"/>		
	Rock Arena		<input type="radio"/>	
	Jazz Club		<input type="radio"/>	
	Matrix		<input type="radio"/>	
	Video Game			<input type="radio"/>
	Virtual	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>

\*3 The sound mode that can be selected differs depending on the audio format of the input signal and the number of channels. For details, see "Types of input signals, and corresponding sound modes" (📖 p. 247).



## ■ Views on the display



### ① Shows a decoder to be used.

- In the case of the Dolby Digital Plus decoder, "Dolby Digital Plus" is displayed.

### ② Shows a decoder that creates sound output.

- "Dolby Surround" indicates that the Dolby Surround decoder is being used.



# HDMI control function

A recent addition to the HDMI standard is CEC (Consumer Electronics Control), which allows control signals from one device to communicate with another device via the HDMI cable connection.

## Setting procedure

### 1 Enable the HDMI control function of this unit.

Set "HDMI Control" to "On". (☞ p. 165)

### 2 Turn the power on for all the devices connected by HDMI cable.

### 3 Set the HDMI control function for all devices connected by HDMI cable.

- Please consult the operating instructions for the connected devices to check the settings.
- Carry out steps 2 and 3 should any of the devices be unplugged.

### 4 Switch the television input to the HDMI input connected to this unit.

### 5 Switch the input source of this unit to check that video from the player connected by HDMI is played back correctly.

### 6 When you turn the TV's power to standby, check that the power of this unit also goes to standby.

#### NOTE

- Some functions may not operate depending on the connected TV or player. Check the owner's manual of each device for details beforehand.



# Smart Menu function

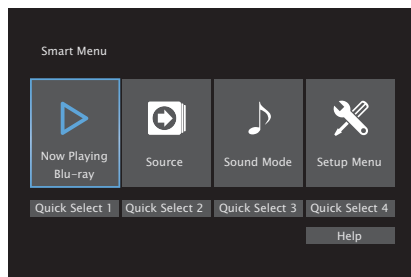
This function can be used to configure the settings of this unit, select an input source and set Tuner and Internet Radio stations using the TV remote control.

- 1 **Enable the HDMI control function of this unit and the TV.** (🔧 p. 165)
- 2 **Set “Smart Menu” to “On” on this unit.** (🔧 p. 168)
- 3 **Select “AV Receiver” in a TV menu such as “Input”\* or “Operate Connected HDMI Device”\*.**

The Smart Menu of this unit is displayed on the TV.

- This unit can be operated with the TV remote control while the Smart Menu is displayed.

\* The selection method differs depending on your TV.



## ■ Now Playing

Enjoy content from the input source currently selected on this unit.

## ■ Source

Switch the input of this unit.

If you select “Online Music”, “iPod/USB” or “Tuner”, you can continue to operate this unit using the TV remote control.

## ■ Sound Mode

Change the sound mode of this unit.

You can select from the following three sound modes.

### Surround:

Surround sound playback according to the input signal.

### Stereo:

Stereo playback.

### Multi Ch Stereo:

Multi-channel stereo playback.



## ■ Setup Menu

Displays a setup menu for configuring the settings of this unit.

## ■ Quick Select

Calls up the QUICK SELECT items registered to this unit.

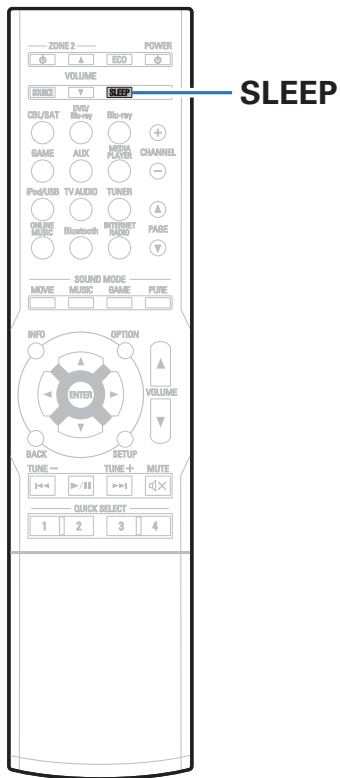
### NOTE

- If the "HDMI Control" or "Smart Menu" settings have been changed, always reset the power to connected devices after the change.
- The Smart Menu function may not work properly depending on the specifications of your TV. In this case, set "Smart Menu" to "Off".



## Sleep timer function

You can have the power automatically switched to standby once a set time has elapsed. This is convenient for viewing and listening while going to sleep.



## Using the sleep timer

- 1 Press SLEEP and display the time you want to set.**
  - The SLEEP indicator lights up on the display and the sleep timer starts.
  - You can set the sleep timer in the range from 10 to 120 minutes in steps of 10 minutes.

### ■ Checking the remaining time

Press SLEEP when the sleep timer is in operation.  
The remaining time appears on the display.

### ■ To cancel the sleep timer

Press SLEEP to select "Off".  
The SLEEP indicator on the display turns off.



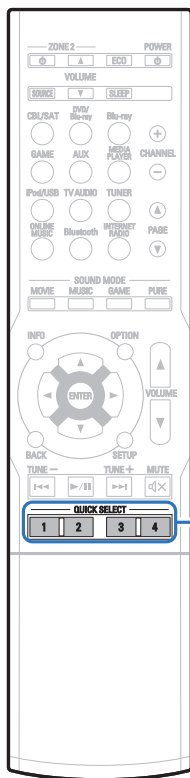
- The sleep timer setting is canceled when the unit switches to standby mode.

#### NOTE

- The sleep timer function cannot turn off the power of devices connected to this unit. To turn off the power of those connected devices, set up sleep timers on the connected devices themselves.



## Quick select plus function



**QUICK SELECT  
1 - 4**

- Settings such as the input source, volume level and sound mode can be registered to the QUICK SELECT 1 - 4 buttons. You can simply press one of the registered QUICK SELECT buttons in subsequent playbacks to switch to the group of saved settings in a batch.
- By saving frequently used settings at the QUICK SELECT 1 – 4 buttons, you will always be able to easily call up the same playback environment.
- The Quick select plus function can only be set for the MAIN ZONE.





## Calling up the settings

### 1 Press QUICK SELECT.

The Quick Select settings registered to the button you pressed are called up.

- The default settings for the input source and volume are as shown below.

[MAIN ZONE]

Button	Input source	Volume
QUICK SELECT 1	CBL/SAT	40
QUICK SELECT 2	DVD/Blu-ray	40
QUICK SELECT 3	Media Player	40
QUICK SELECT 4	Online Music	40



## Changing the settings

### 1 Set the items below to the settings you want to register.

The following settings from ① to ⑦ can be memorized for MAIN ZONE, and settings ① and ② can be memorized for ZONE2.

- ① Input source (🔗 p. 64)
- ② Volume (🔗 p. 65)
- ③ Sound mode (🔗 p. 119)
- ④ Audyssey (Audyssey MultEQ® XT, Audyssey Dynamic EQ®, Audyssey Dynamic Volume®) (🔗 p. 158)
- ⑤ "Restorer" (🔗 p. 156)
- ⑥ "Adjusting the volume of each channel to match the input source (Ch Level Adjust)" (🔗 p. 115)
- ⑦ "Displaying your desired video during audio playback (Video Select)" (🔗 p. 117)



- Press and hold QUICK SELECT while a radio station is being received or a track is being played back with any of the following sources, the current radio station or track is memorized.
  - Tuner / Internet Radio / Media Server / Pandora / SiriusXM / Favorites / iPod/USB

### 2 Press and hold the desired QUICK SELECT until "Quick\* Memory" appears on the display.

The current settings will be memorized.

\* is displayed the number for the QUICK SELECT button you pressed.

### ■ Changing the Quick Select Name

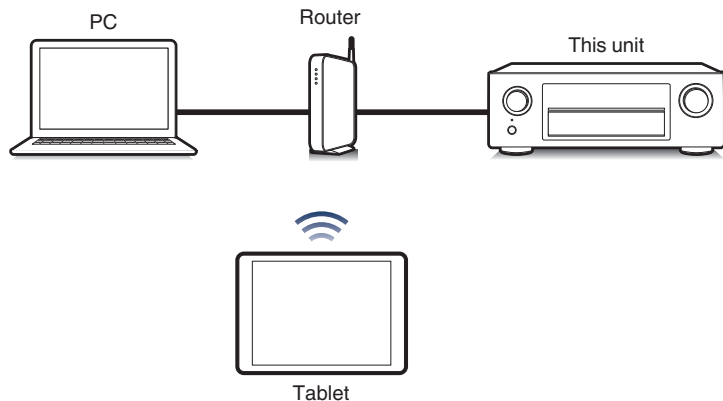
The MAIN ZONE Quick Select name displayed on the TV screen or display of this unit can be changed to a different name.

For the name change method, see "Quick Sel.Names" (🔗 p. 210).



## Web control function

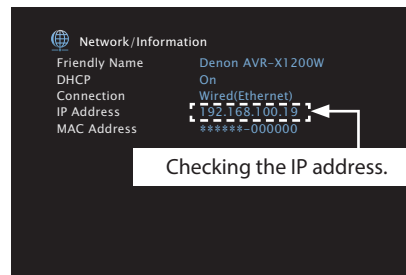
You can control this unit from a web control screen on a web browser.



- This unit and the PC or tablet need to be connected correctly to the network in order to use the web control function. ("Connecting to a home network (LAN)" (☞ p. 59))
- Depending on the settings of your security-related software, you may not be able to access this unit from your PC. If this is the case, then change the settings of the security-related software.

### Controlling the unit from a web control

- 1 Switch the "Network Control" setting to "Always On". (☞ p. 203)
- 2 Check the IP address of this unit with "Information". (☞ p. 197)

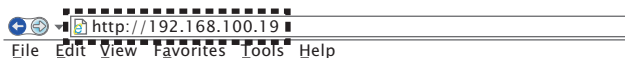


- 3 Start up the web browser.

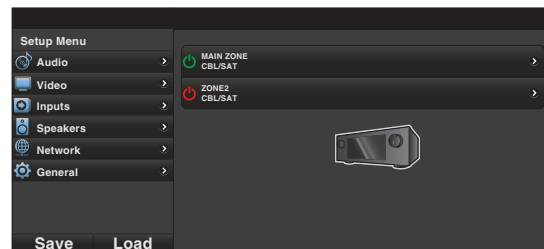


#### 4 Enter the IP address of this unit in browser's address box.

For example, if the IP address of this unit is "192.168.100.19", enter "http://192.168.100.19".



#### 5 When the top menu is displayed, click on the menu item you want to operate.



- You can use the "Save" and "Load" functions to store or recall various function settings using web control from a PC.
  - To memorize settings, click "Save" on the Setup Menu screen.
  - To call up settings, click "Load" on the Setup Menu screen.
- We recommend using one of the following web browsers.
  - Internet Explorer 10 and above
  - Mozilla Firefox 24 and above
  - Google Chrome 29 and above
  - Safari 5.x and above



## Playback in ZONE2 (Separate room)

You can operate this unit to enjoy audio in a room (ZONE2) that is different from the room where this unit is placed (MAIN ZONE).

You can simultaneously play back the same source in both the MAIN ZONE and ZONE2. You can also play back separate sources in the MAIN ZONE and ZONE2.

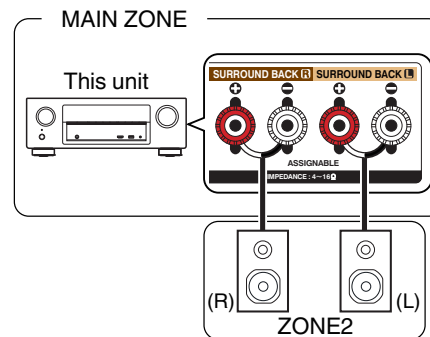
### Connecting ZONE2

You can use the following two methods to play back audio in ZONE2.

- “Connecting using a speaker output terminal” (👉 p. 141)
- “Connecting using an external amplifier” (👉 p. 142)

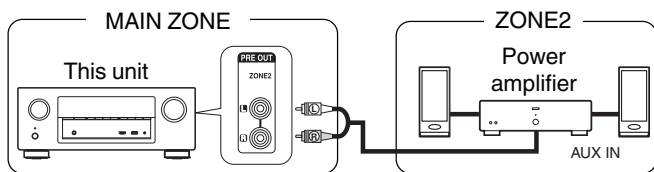
#### ■ Connection 1: Connecting using a speaker output terminal

When “Assign Mode” is set to “ZONE2” in the menu, ZONE2 audio is output from the SURROUND BACK speaker terminal. (👉 p. 186)

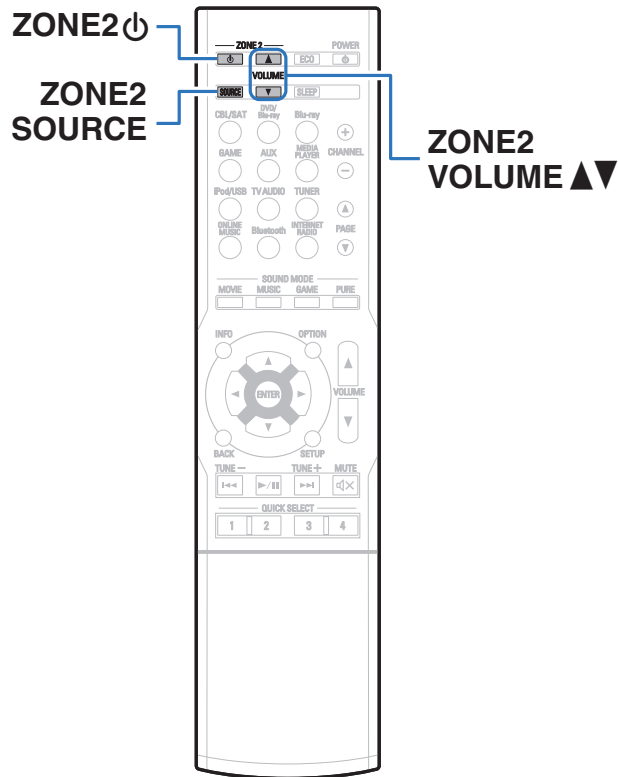


## ■ Connection 2 : Connection using an external amplifier

The audio signals of this unit's ZONE2 audio output connectors are output to the ZONE2 amplifiers and played on these amplifiers.



## Playback in ZONE2



### 1 Press ZONE2 $\phi$ to turn on the ZONE2 power.

The **Z2** indicator on the display lights.

- Power in ZONE2 can be turned on or off by pressing ZONE2 ON/OFF on the main unit.

### 2 Press ZONE2 SOURCE to select the input source to be played.


The audio signal of the selected source is output to ZONE2.

- To perform an operation with the main unit, press ZONE2 SOURCE. Each time you press ZONE2 SOURCE, the input source changes.



## ■ Adjusting the volume

Use ZONE2 VOLUME ▲▼ to adjust the volume.

- At time of purchase, “Volume Limit” is set to “70 (-10 dB)”.  
( p. 209)



- Turn MASTER VOLUME after pressing ZONE2 SOURCE on the main unit to adjust the volume.










## Menu map

When using menu operations, connect this unit to a TV and operate this unit while viewing the TV.



The recommended settings are configured for this unit by default. You can customize this unit based on your existing system and your preferences.

Setting items	Detailed items	Description	Page
 Audio	<b>Dialog Level</b>	This setting adjusts the output level to clarify the dialogue output from the center channel.	<a href="#">151</a>
	<b>Subwoofer Level</b>	This setting adjusts the volume level for the subwoofer.	<a href="#">151</a>
	<b>Surr.Parameter</b>	Adjusts surround sound parameters.	<a href="#">152</a>
	<b>Restorer</b>	Expands the low and high frequency components of compressed audio content such as MP3 files to enable richer audio playback.	<a href="#">156</a>
	<b>Audio Delay</b>	Compensates for incorrect timing between video and audio.	<a href="#">157</a>
	<b>Volume</b>	Sets the MAIN ZONE (room where the unit is located) volume setting.	<a href="#">157</a>
	<b>Audyssey</b>	Makes Audyssey MultEQ® XT, Audyssey Dynamic EQ® and Audyssey Dynamic Volume® settings.	<a href="#">158</a>
	<b>Manual EQ</b>	Uses the graphic equalizer to adjust the tone of each speaker.	<a href="#">161</a>
 Video	<b>HDMI Setup</b>	Makes settings for HDMI video/audio output.	<a href="#">164</a>
	<b>On Screen Disp.</b>	Configures the on-screen display settings.	<a href="#">169</a>
	<b>TV Format</b>	Sets the video signal format to be output for the TV you are using.	<a href="#">170</a>



Setting items	Detailed items	Description	Page
 Inputs	<b>Input Assign</b>	Changes input connector assignment.	<a href="#">171</a>
	<b>Source Rename</b>	Changes the display name for input source.	<a href="#">173</a>
	<b>Hide Sources</b>	Removes from the display input sources that are not used.	<a href="#">173</a>
	<b>Source Level</b>	Adjusts the playback level of the audio input.	<a href="#">173</a>
	<b>Input Select</b>	Sets the audio input mode and decode mode.	<a href="#">174</a>
 Speakers	<b>Audyssey® Setup</b>	The acoustic characteristics of the connected speakers and listening room are measured and the optimum settings are made automatically.	<a href="#">175</a>
	<b>Manual Setup</b>	Sets up the speakers manually or changes the Audyssey® Setup settings.	<a href="#">186</a>
 Network	<b>Information</b>	Displays network information.	<a href="#">197</a>
	<b>Connection</b>	Selects whether to connect the home network to a wireless LAN or a wired LAN.	<a href="#">197</a>
	<b>Settings</b>	Used for manually setting the IP address or when using a proxy server.	<a href="#">201</a>
	<b>Network Control</b>	Enables network communication in standby power mode.	<a href="#">203</a>
	<b>Friendly Name</b>	The “Friendly Name” is the name of this unit displayed on the network. You can change the Friendly Name according to your preferences.	<a href="#">203</a>
	<b>Diagnostics</b>	Used to check the network connection.	<a href="#">204</a>
	<b>Maintenance Mode</b>	Used when receiving maintenance from a Denon service engineer or custom installer. This mode is not designed for use by the end user, and should only be used by a trained service technician or custom installation professional.	<a href="#">205</a>



Setting items	Detailed items	Description	Page
 <b>General</b>	<b>Language</b>	Changes the language of the display on the TV screen.	<a href="#">206</a>
	<b>ECO</b>	Configures the ECO Mode and Auto Standby energy-saving functions.	<a href="#">206</a>
	<b>ZONE2 Setup</b>	Makes settings for audio playback with ZONE2.	<a href="#">209</a>
	<b>Zone Rename</b>	Changes the display title of each zone to one you prefer.	<a href="#">210</a>
	<b>Quick Sel.Names</b>	Changes the Quick Select Name display title to one you prefer.	<a href="#">210</a>
	<b>Front Display</b>	Makes settings related to the display on this unit.	<a href="#">210</a>
	<b>Firmware</b>	Checks for the latest firmware information about updates and upgrades, updates the firmware, and sets up the notification message display.	<a href="#">211</a>
	<b>Information</b>	Shows information about this unit settings, input signals, etc.	<a href="#">213</a>
	<b>Usage Data</b>	Selects whether or not to send anonymous usage data to Denon.	<a href="#">214</a>
	<b>Setup Lock</b>	Protects settings from inadvertent changes.	<a href="#">215</a>
 <b>Setup Assistant</b>	<b>Begin Setup...</b>	Performs basic installation/connections/settings from the beginning according to the guidance indicated on the TV screen.	Page 8 of the separate manual "Quick Start Guide"
	<b>Language Select</b>	Sets individual setting items according to the guidance displayed on the TV screen.	
	<b>Speaker Setup</b>		
	<b>Sp.Calibration</b>		
	<b>Network Setup</b>		
	<b>TV Audio Connect</b>		
	<b>Input Setup</b>		



## Menu operations

### 1 Press **SETUP**.

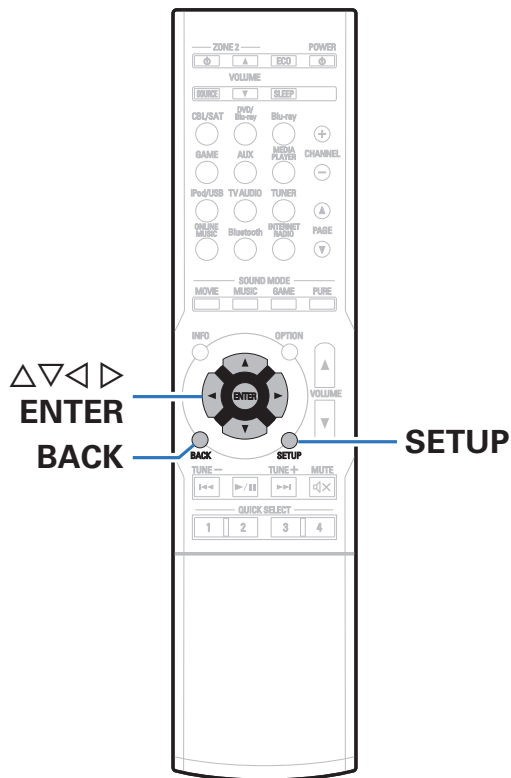
The menu is displayed on the TV screen.

### 2 Use **Δ▽▷◁** to select the menu to be set or operated, then press **ENTER**.

### 3 Use **◁▷** to change to desired setting.

### 4 Press **ENTER** to enter the setting.

- To return to the previous item, press **BACK**.
- Exiting the menu, press **SETUP** while the menu is displayed. The menu display disappears.



## Inputting characters

---

On this unit, you can change the name displayed on the following screens to the names that you prefer.

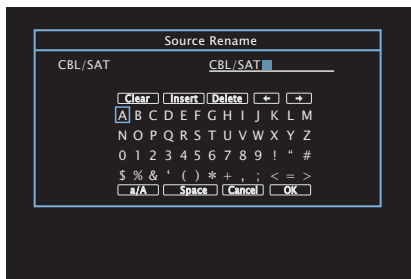
- Preset Name (👉 p. 84)
- Text Search (👉 p. 112)
- Source Rename (👉 p. 173)
- Friendly Name (👉 p. 203)
- Zone Rename (👉 p. 210)
- Quick Sel.Names (👉 p. 210)
- Character input for the network functions



## Using the keyboard screen

### 1 Display the screen for inputting characters.

[Example] “Source Rename” screen



### 2 Use $\Delta \nabla \triangleleft \triangleright$ to select $\leftarrow$ or $\rightarrow$ .

### 3 Press ENTER to move the cursor to the character that you wish to change.

- Each time ENTER is pressed, the cursor moves by one character.

### 4 Select a character to be input with $\Delta \nabla \triangleleft \triangleright$ then press ENTER.

### 5 Repeat steps 2 - 4 to change the name.

### 6 Use $\Delta \nabla \triangleleft \triangleright$ to select “OK”, then press ENTER.



# Audio

Make audio-related settings.

## Dialog Level

This setting adjusts the output level to clarify the dialogue output from the center channel.

### ■ Adjustment

Set whether to adjust the dialog level or not.

<b>On:</b>	Enables the adjustment of the dialog level.
------------	---

<b>Off</b> (Default):	Disables the adjustment of the dialog level.
--------------------------	--

### ■ Level

Adjusts the volume output from the center channel.

<b>-12.0 dB – +12.0 dB</b> (Default : 0.0 dB)
---

## Subwoofer Level

This setting adjusts the volume level for the subwoofer.

### ■ Adjustment

Set whether to adjust the subwoofer level.

<b>On:</b>	Enables the adjustment of the subwoofer level.
------------	--

<b>Off</b> (Default):	Disables the adjustment of the subwoofer level.
--------------------------	---

### ■ Subwoofer Level

Adjusts the volume level for the subwoofer.

<b>-12.0 dB – +12.0 dB</b> (Default : 0.0 dB)
---



## Surr.Parameter

You can adjust the surround audio sound field effects to match your preferences.

The items (parameters) that can be adjusted depend on the signal being input and the currently set sound mode. For details on the adjustable parameters, see “Sound modes and surround parameters” (🔍 p. 244).



- Some setting items cannot be set while playback is stopped. Make the settings during playback.
- “Surr.Parameter” settings are stored for each sound mode.

## ■ Cinema EQ

Gently softens the upper treble range of movie soundtracks to reduce possible harshness and improve clarity.

---

**On:** “Cinema EQ” is used.

---

**Off**  
(Default): “Cinema EQ” is not used.

---

## ■ Loudness Mngmt

This sets whether to output as specified in “Dynamic Comp.” or output directly without compressing the dynamic range of audio recorded in the disc.

---

**On**  
(Default):

Outputs are given based on enabling the settings made in “Dynamic Comp.” and Dialog normalization function.

---

**Off:**

“Dynamic Comp.” settings and “Dialogue Normalization” are disabled, and the signals on the disc are output as is.

---



- “Loudness Mngmt” can be set when Dolby Digital, Dolby Digital Plus, Dolby TrueHD and Dolby Atmos signal is input.





## ■ Dynamic Comp.

Compress dynamic range (difference between loud and soft sounds).

**Auto:** Automatic dynamic range compression on/off control according to source.

**Low / Medium / High:** These set the compression level.

**Off:** Dynamic range compression is always off.



- "Dynamic Comp." can be set when Dolby Digital, Dolby Digital Plus, Dolby TrueHD or Dolby Atmos signal is input.
- The default setting is "Off". When the input signal is the Dolby TrueHD or Dolby Atmos source, the default setting is "Auto".

## ■ Dialog Control

Adjust the volume of dialog in movies, vocals in music, etc. so these can be heard more easily.

**0 – 6** (Default : 0)



- This can be set when a DTS:X signal that is compatible with the Dialog Control function is input.

## ■ Low Frequency

Adjust the low frequency effects level (LFE).

**-10 dB – 0 dB** (Default : 0 dB)



- For proper playback of the different sources, we recommend setting to the values below.
  - Dolby Digital sources : 0 dB
  - DTS movie sources : 0 dB
  - DTS music sources: -10 dB



## ■ Center Spread

Center spread expands the center channel signal to left and right front speakers to create a wider frontal audio image for the listener. It is optimized and designed primary for playback of stereo music content.

**On:** Use “Center Spread”.

**Off**  
(Default): Do not use “Center Spread”.



- You can set this when sound mode is Dolby Surround.

## ■ DTS Neural:X

DTS Neural:X Expands the non-object based audio signals and optimizes them for your speaker configuration.

**On**  
(Default): Use “DTS Neural:X”.

**Off:** Do not use “DTS Neural:X”.



- You can set this when sound mode is DTS:X or DTS:X MSTR.

## ■ Delay Time

Adjust the audio delay time against video to extend the sound field image.

**0 ms – 300 ms** (Default : 30 ms)



- You can set this when the sound mode is “Matrix”.

## ■ Effect Level

Adjust the sound effect level of the current sound mode.

**1 – 15** (Default : 10)



- Set to a lower level if the positioning and sense of phase of the surround signals seems unnatural.



## ■ Room Size

Determine size of acoustic environment.

<b>Small:</b>	Simulate acoustics of a small room.
<b>Medium small:</b>	Simulate acoustics of a medium-small room.
<b>Medium (Default) :</b>	Simulate acoustics of a medium room.
<b>Medium large:</b>	Simulate acoustics of a medium-large room.
<b>Large:</b>	Simulate acoustics of a large room.



- “Room Size” does not indicate the size of the room in which sources are played.

## ■ Subwoofer

Turn subwoofer output on and off.

<b>On (Default):</b>	The subwoofer is used.
<b>Off:</b>	The subwoofer is not used.



- You can set this when the sound mode is “Direct” or “Stereo” and in the menu “Subwoofer Mode” is set to “LFE+Main”. (👉 p. 195)

## ■ Set Defaults

The “Surr.Parameter” settings are returned to the default settings.



## Restorer

Compressed audio formats such as MP3, WMA (Windows Media Audio) and MPEG-4 AAC reduce the amount of data by eliminating signal components that are hard for the human ear to hear. The “Restorer” function generates the signals eliminated upon compression, restoring the sound to conditions near those of the original sound before compression. It also restores the original bass characteristics for a rich and expanded tonal range.

### ■ Mode

<b>High:</b>	Optimized mode for compressed sources with very weak highs (64 kbps and under).
<b>Medium:</b>	Apply suitable bass and treble boost for all compressed sources (96 kbps and under).
<b>Low:</b>	Optimized mode for compressed sources with normal highs (96 kbps and over).
<b>Off:</b>	Do not use “Restorer”.



- This item can be set with analog signals or PCM signal (Sample Rate = 44.1/48 kHz) is input.
- This item default setting for “Online Music”, “iPod/USB” and “Bluetooth” is “Low”. All others are set to “Off”.
- This cannot be set when the sound mode is set to “Direct” or “Pure Direct”.
- “Restorer” settings are stored for each input source.



## Audio Delay

Compensates for incorrect timing between video and audio.

**0 ms – 200 ms** (Default : 0 ms)



- “Audio Delay” settings are stored for each input source.

## Volume

Set the MAIN ZONE (room where the unit is located) volume setting.

### ■ Scale

Set how volume is displayed.

**0 - 98**  
(Default): Display in the range 0 (Min) to 98.

**-79.5 dB – 18.0 dB:** Display ---dB (Min), in the range -79.5 dB to 18.0 dB.



- “Scale” settings are reflected in all the zones.

### ■ Limit

Make a setting for maximum volume.

**60 (-20 dB) / 70 (-10 dB) / 80 (0 dB)**

**Off** (Default)

### ■ Power On Level

Define the volume setting that is active when the power is turned on.

**Last**  
(Default) : Use the memorized setting from the last session.

**Mute:** Always use the muting on condition when power is turned on.

**1 – 98 (-79 dB – 18 dB) :** The volume is adjusted to the set level.



## ■ Mute Level

Set the amount of attenuation when muting is on.

<b>Full</b> (Default):	The sound is muted entirely.
<b>-40 dB :</b>	The sound is attenuated by 40 dB down.
<b>-20 dB :</b>	The sound is attenuated by 20 dB down.

## Audyssey®

Set Audyssey MultEQ® XT, Audyssey Dynamic EQ® and Audyssey Dynamic Volume®. These can be selected after Audyssey® Setup has been performed.

For additional information on Audyssey technology, please see “Explanation of terms” (📖 p. 250).



- “MultEQ® XT”, “Dynamic EQ”, “Ref.Lev.Offset” and “Dynamic Volume” settings are stored for each input source.
- When the sound mode is in the “Direct” or “Pure Direct” mode, “MultEQ® XT”, “Dynamic EQ” and “Dynamic Volume” settings cannot be configured.



## ■ MultEQ® XT

MultEQ® XT compensates for both time and frequency characteristics of the listening area based on Audyssey® Setup measurement results. Selection is done from three types of compensation curves. We recommend the “Reference” setting.

<b>Reference</b> (Default):	Selects the default calibrated setting with a slight roll off at high frequencies, which is optimized for movies.
<b>L/R Bypass:</b>	Selects the reference setting, but bypasses MultEQ® XT on the front left and right speakers.
<b>Flat:</b>	Selects the calibrated setting which is optimized for small rooms where your listening position is closer to the speakers.
<b>Off :</b>	Do not use “MultEQ® XT”.



- When using headphones, “MultEQ® XT” is automatically set to “Off”.

## ■ Dynamic EQ

Solves the problem of deteriorating sound quality as volume is decreased by taking into account human perception and room acoustics.

Works with MultEQ® XT.

<b>On</b> (Default):	Use Dynamic EQ.
<b>Off:</b>	Do not use Dynamic EQ.



- When the menu “Dynamic EQ” setting is “On”, it is not possible to do “Tone” adjustment. (🔧 p. 116)



## ■ Ref.Lev.Offset

Audyssey Dynamic EQ® is referenced to the standard film mix level. It makes adjustments to maintain the reference response and surround envelopment when the volume is turned down from 0 dB. However, film reference level is not always used in music or other non-film content. Dynamic EQ Reference Level Offset provides three offsets from the film level reference (5 dB, 10 dB, and 15 dB) that can be selected when the mix level of the content is not within the standard. Recommended setting levels for content are shown below.

<b>0 dB</b> (Film Reference) (Default):	Optimized for content such as movies.
<b>5 dB :</b>	Select this setting for content that has a very wide dynamic range, such as classical music.
<b>10 dB :</b>	Select this setting for jazz or other music that has a wider dynamic range. This setting should also be selected for TV content as that is usually mixed at 10 dB below film reference.
<b>15 dB :</b>	Select this setting for pop/rock music or other program material that is mixed at very high listening levels and has a compressed dynamic range.



- Setting is enabled when "Dynamic EQ" is "On". (🔧 p. 159)

## ■ Dynamic Volume

Solves the problem of large variations in volume level between TV, movies and other content (between quiet passages and loud passages, etc.) by automatically adjusting to the user's preferred volume setting.

<b>Heavy:</b>	Most adjustment to softest and loudest sounds.
<b>Medium:</b>	Medium adjustment to loudest and softest sound.
<b>Light:</b>	Least adjustment to loudest and softest sounds.
<b>Off</b> (Default):	Do not use Dynamic Volume.



- If "Dynamic Volume" is set to "Yes" in "Audyssey® Setup", the setting is automatically changed to "Medium". (🔧 p. 175)





## Manual EQ

Uses the graphic equalizer to adjust the tone of each speaker.



- Speakers for which “Manual EQ” can be set differ according to the sound mode.
- This can be set when the “MultEQ® XT” setting is “Off”. (🔗 p. 159)
- This cannot be set when the sound mode is set to “Direct” or “Pure Direct”.
- If you are using headphones, you can set the equalizer for headphones. (🔗 p. 161)

### Manual EQ

Set whether to use the graphic equalizer or not.

<b>On:</b>	Use the graphic equalizer.
<b>Off</b> (Default):	Do not use the graphic equalizer.

### When using headphones

#### Headphone EQ

Set whether to use the graphic equalizer for headphones or not.

<b>On:</b>	Use the graphic equalizer for headphones.
<b>Off</b> (Default):	Do not use the graphic equalizer for headphones.



## ■ Speaker Select

Select whether to adjust tones for individual speakers or for all speakers.

<b>All:</b>	Adjust all speaker tones together.
<b>Left/Right (Default) :</b>	Adjust the left and right speaker tones together.
<b>Each:</b>	Adjust the tone for each speaker.

## ■ Adjust EQ

Adjust tonal balance for each frequency band.

1. Select the speaker.
2. Select the adjustment frequency band.  
**63 Hz / 125 Hz / 250 Hz / 500 Hz / 1 kHz / 2 kHz / 4 kHz / 8 kHz / 16 kHz**
3. Adjust the level.  
**-20.0 dB – +6.0 dB** (Default : 0.0 dB)



- Front Dolby and Surround Dolby speakers can only be set when 63 Hz/125 Hz/250 Hz/500 Hz/1 kHz.



## ■ Curve Copy

Copy the Flat correction curve created in the Audyssey® Setup.



- “Curve Copy” is displayed after Audyssey® Setup has been performed.
- “Curve Copy” cannot be used when using headphones.

## ■ Set Defaults

The “Manual EQ” settings are returned to the default settings.



# Video

Make video-related settings.

## HDMI Setup

Make settings for HDMI video/audio output.

### NOTE

- When “HDMI Control” and “HDMI PassThrough” is set to “On”, it consumes more standby power. (“HDMI Control” (☞ p. 165), “HDMI PassThrough” (☞ p. 166)) If you are not using this unit for an extended period, it is recommended that you unplug the power cord from the power outlet.

## ■ Auto Lip Sync

Make automatic compensation for timing shift in audio and video output.

<b>On</b> (Default):	Correct automatically.
<b>Off:</b>	Do not correct automatically.

## ■ HDMI Audio Out

Select HDMI audio output device.

<b>AVR</b> (Default):	Play back through speakers connected to the unit.
<b>TV:</b>	Play back through TV connected to the unit.



- When the HDMI control function is activated, priority is given to the TV audio setting. (☞ p. 131)
- When the power of this unit is on and “HDMI Audio Out” is set to “TV”, audio is output as 2-channel from the HDMI OUT connector.



## ■ HDMI Control

You can link operations with devices connected to HDMI and compatible with HDMI Control.

<b>On:</b>	Use HDMI control function.
<b>Off</b> (Default):	Do not use HDMI control function.



- Please consult the operating instructions for each connected device to check the settings.
- Refer to “HDMI control function” for more information about the HDMI control function. (🔍 p. 131)

### NOTE

- If the “HDMI Control” settings have been changed, always reset the power to connected devices after the change.

## ■ ARC

On the TV connected to the HDMI MONITOR connector, set whether to receive sound from the TV via HDMI.

<b>On:</b>	Use ARC function.
<b>Off</b> (Default):	Do not use ARC function.



- You can adjust the volume of this unit using the TV remote control.
- If using this function, use a TV compatible with ARC (Audio Return Channel) and enable the HDMI control function of the TV.
- When “HDMI Control” is set to “On”, the “ARC” settings automatically switch “On”. (🔍 p. 165)

### NOTE

- If the “ARC” settings have been changed, always reset the power to connected devices after the change.



## ■ HDMI PassThrough

Selects how this unit will transmit HDMI signals to the HDMI output in standby power mode.

<b>On</b> (Default):	Transmits the selected HDMI input through the AV receiver's HDMI output when this unit is in standby power mode.
<b>Off:</b>	No HDMI signals are transmitted through this unit's HDMI output in standby power mode.

## ■ Pass Source

Sets the HDMI connector that inputs HDMI signals when in standby.

**Last:** The most recently used input source will go into standby mode.

**CBL/SAT / DVD/Blu-ray / Blu-ray / Game / AUX / Media Player** Pass through the selected input source.  
(Default : CBL/SAT):



- "Pass Source" can be set when "HDMI Control" is set to "On" or "HDMI PassThrough" is set to "On". ("HDMI Control" (🔗 p. 165), "HDMI PassThrough" (🔗 p. 166))




## ■ TV Audio Switching

Sets automatic switching to the “TV Audio” input when a TV connected via HDMI sends an appropriate CEC control command to the AVR.


<b>On</b> (Default):	Select the “TV Audio” input automatically when receiving a command from the TV.
<b>Off:</b>	Do not select the “TV Audio” input automatically when receiving a command from the TV.



- “TV Audio Switching” can be set when “HDMI Control” is set to “On”.  
( p. 165)

## ■ Pow.Off Control

Links the power standby of this unit to external devices.

<b>All</b> (Default):	If power to a connected TV is turned off independently of the input source, power to this unit is automatically set to standby.
<b>Video:</b>	With an input source being selected that is assigned either “HDMI” or “VIDEO”, when you turn the power of the TV off, power to this unit is automatically set to standby. (  p. 172)
<b>Off:</b>	This unit does not link with power to a TV.



- “Pow.Off Control” can be set when “HDMI Control” is set to “On”. ( p. 165)



## ■ Power Saving

If “TV Speaker” is set as the audio output setting of your TV, this unit is automatically set to standby mode to reduce power consumption.

This function is activated in the following cases.

- When “TV Audio” is selected as the input source of this unit
- When playing content from a device connected by HDMI

**On:** Use Power Saving function.

**Off**  
(Default): Do not use Power Saving function.



- “Power Saving” can be set when “HDMI Control” is set to “On”. (👉 p. 165)

## ■ Smart Menu

This function can be used to configure the settings of this unit, select an input source and set Tuner and Internet Radio stations using the TV remote control.

**On:** Use Smart Menu function.

**Off:** Do not use Smart Menu function.



- “Smart Menu” can be set when “HDMI Control” is set to “On”. (👉 p. 165)

### NOTE

- If the “Smart Menu” settings have been changed, always reset the power to connected devices after the change.
- The Smart Menu function may not work properly depending on the specifications of your TV. In this case, set “Smart Menu” to “Off”.





## On Screen Disp.

Select the on-screen display user interface preferences.

### ■ Volume

Sets where to display the volume level.

<b>Bottom</b> (Default):	Display at the bottom.
-----------------------------	------------------------

<b>Top:</b>	Display at the top.
-------------	---------------------

<b>Off:</b>	Turn display off.
-------------	-------------------



- When the master volume display is hard to see when superimposed text (closed captioning) or movie subtitles are present, set to "Top".

### ■ Info

Displays status of operation temporarily when the sound mode is changed, or input source is switched.

<b>On</b> (Default):	Shows the volume display.
-------------------------	---------------------------

<b>Off:</b>	Does not show the volume display.
-------------	-----------------------------------

### ■ Now Playing

Sets the display time for the playback display when the input source is "Online Music", "iPod/USB", "Bluetooth" or "Tuner".

<b>Always On</b> (Default) :	Show display continuously.
---------------------------------	----------------------------

<b>Auto Off:</b>	Show display for 30 seconds after operation.
------------------	--



## TV Format

Set the video signal format to be output for the TV you are using.

### ■ Format

<b>NTSC</b> (Default):	Select NTSC output.
<b>PAL:</b>	Select PAL output.



- “Format” can also be set by the following procedure. However, the menu screen is not displayed. Following the display content to make the setting.
  1. Press and hold the main unit’s ZONE2 SOURCE and STATUS at the same time for at least 3 seconds.  
“V.Format:<NTSC>” appears on the display.
  2. Use the main unit’s TUNER PRESET CH + or TUNER PRESET CH - and set the video signal format.
  3. Press the main unit’s STATUS to complete the setting.

#### NOTE

- When a format other than the video format of the connected TV is set, the picture will not be displayed properly.



# Inputs

Perform settings related to input source playback.

You do not have to change the settings to use the unit. Make settings when needed.

## Input Assign

By making connections as indicated by the input sources printed on the audio/video input connectors of this unit, you can just press one of the input source select buttons to easily play back audio or video from a connected device.

Please change the assignment of the HDMI input connector, digital audio input connector, analog audio input connector and video input connector when connecting an input source that differs from that printed to the audio/video input connectors of this unit.



Input Assign				
Set Defaults	HDMI	DIGITAL	ANALOG	VIDEO
CBL/SAT	1	COAX	1	1
DVD/Blu-ray	2	—	—	—
Blu-ray	4	—	—	—
Game	5	—	—	—
Media Player	3	OPT2	2	2
TV Audio	—	OPT1	—	—
AUX	FRONT	—	—	—



- By default, each item is set as follows.

Input source	Input connector			
	HDMI	DIGITAL	ANALOG	VIDEO
CBL/SAT	1	COAX	1	1
DVD/Blu-ray	2	—	—	—
Blu-ray	4	—	—	—
Game	5	—	—	—
Media Player	3	OPT2	2	2
TV Audio	—	OPT1	—	—
AUX	FRONT	—	—	—

### TV set top box/satellite users please note

When using the digital audio output on a TV/satellite box:

To play the video signal assigned to “HDMI” combined with the audio signal assigned at “Input Assign” - “DIGITAL”, you will also need to select “Digital” in the “Input Mode”. (p. 174)



## ■ HDMI

Set this to change the HDMI input connectors assigned to the input sources.

<b>1 / 2 / 3 / 4 / 5 / FRONT:</b>	Assign an HDMI input connector to the selected input source.
<b>- :</b>	Do not assign an HDMI input connector to the selected input source.



- When "HDMI Control" is set to "On" in the menu, "HDMI" cannot be assigned to "TV Audio". (☞ p. 165)
- No information on changing the volume or sound mode is displayed when the 4K signal is input.

## ■ DIGITAL

Set this to change the digital audio input connectors assigned to the input sources.

<b>COAX (Coaxial) / OPT1 (Optical) / OPT2:</b>	Assign a digital audio input connector to the selected input source.
<b>- :</b>	Do not assign a digital audio input connector to the selected input source.

## ■ ANALOG

Set this to change the analog audio input connectors assigned to the input sources.

<b>1 / 2 :</b>	Assign a analog audio input connector to the selected input source.
<b>- :</b>	Do not assign a analog audio input connector to the selected input source.

## ■ VIDEO

Set this to change the composite video input connectors assigned to the input sources.

<b>1 / 2:</b>	Assign the video input connector to the selected input source.
<b>- :</b>	Do not assign a video input connector to the selected input source.

## ■ Set Defaults

The "Input Assign" settings are returned to the default settings.



## Source Rename

Change the display name for input source.

This is convenient when the name of your device and the input source name of this unit are different. You can change the name to suit your needs. When the renaming is completed, the name is displayed on this unit's display and on the menu screen.

**CBL/SAT / DVD/Blu-ray / Blu-ray / Game / AUX / Media Player / TV Audio:** Change the display name for input source.

**Set Defaults:** The Source Rename settings are returned to the default settings.



- Up to 12 characters can be input. For character input, see "Using the keyboard screen" (📖 p. 150).

## Hide Sources

Remove from the display input sources that are not used.

**Show (Default) :** Use this source.

**Hide:** Do not use this source.

## Source Level

This function corrects the playback level of the selected input source's audio input.

Make this setting if there are differences in the input volume levels between the different sources.

**-12 dB – +12 dB (Default : 0 dB)**



- "Source Level" settings are stored for each input source.



## Input Select

Set the audio input mode and decode mode of each input source.  
The input modes available for selection may vary depending on the input source.






- "Input Select" settings are stored for each input source.

## Input Mode

Set the audio input modes for the different input sources.  
It is normally recommended to set the audio input mode to "Auto".

<b>Auto</b> (Default):	Automatically detect input signal and perform playback.
<b>HDMI:</b>	Play only signals from HDMI input.
<b>Digital:</b>	Play only signals from digital audio input.
<b>Analog:</b>	Play only signals from analog audio input.




- When digital signals are properly input, the  indicator lights on the display. If the  indicator does not light, check "Input Assign" and the connections. ( p. 171)
- If "HDMI Control" is set to "On" and a TV compatible with the ARC is connected via the HDMI MONITOR connectors, the input mode whose input source is "TV Audio" is fixed to ARC.

## Decode Mode

Set the audio decode mode for input source.  
It is normally recommended to set the audio input mode to "Auto". But we recommend changing it to "PCM" or "DTS" if the start of the source is clipped or noise occurs.

<b>Auto</b> (Default):	Detect type of digital audio input signal and decode and play automatically.
<b>PCM:</b>	Decode and play only PCM input signals.
<b>DTS:</b>	Decode and play only DTS input signals.



- This item can be set for input sources for which "HDMI" or "DIGITAL" is assigned at "Input Assign". ( p. 171)



# Speakers

The acoustic characteristics of the connected speakers and listening room are measured and the optimum settings are made automatically. This is called “Audyssey® Setup”.

You do not have to perform Audyssey® Setup when you have already performed “Sp.Calibration” in “Setup Assistant”.

To set up the speakers manually, use “Manual Setup” on the menu. (🔗 p. 186)

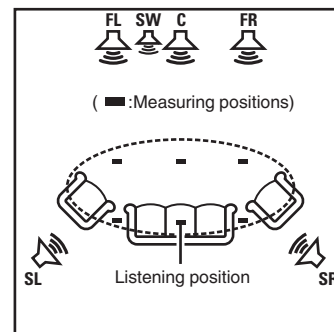
## Audyssey® Setup

To perform measurement, place the Sound calibration microphone in multiple locations all around the listening area. For best results, we recommend you measure in six or more positions, as shown in the illustration (up to eight positions).

When measuring the second and subsequent positions, install the Sound calibration microphone within 2 ft (60 cm) of the first measurement position (main listening position).



- If you perform the Audyssey® Setup, the Audyssey MultEQ® XT, Audyssey Dynamic EQ® and Audyssey Dynamic Volume® functions are enabled. (🔗 p. 158)



- FL** Front speaker (L)
- FR** Front speaker (R)
- C** Center speaker
- SW** Subwoofer
- SL** Surround speaker (L)
- SR** Surround speaker (R)



## ■ About the main listening position

The main listening position is the position where listeners would normally sit or where one would normally sit alone within the listening environment. Before starting Audyssey® Setup, place the Sound calibration microphone in the main listening position.

Audyssey MultEQ® XT uses the measurements from this position to calculate speaker distance, level, polarity, and the optimum crossover value for the subwoofer.

### NOTE

- Make the room as quiet as possible. Background noise can disrupt the room measurements. Close windows and turn off the power on electronic devices (radios, air conditioners, fluorescent lights, etc.). The measurements could be affected by the sounds emitted by such devices.
- During the measurement process, place cell phones outside the listening room. Cell phone signals could disrupt the measurements.
- Do not stand between the speakers and Sound calibration microphone or allow obstacles in the path while the measurements are being made. Also, install the Sound calibration microphone at least 20 inches (50 cm) away from the wall. Failure to do so will result in inaccurate readings.
- During the measurement process, audible test tones will come from the speakers and subwoofer(s), but this is part of normal operation. If there is background noise in the room, these test signals will increase in volume.
- Operating VOLUME ▲▼ on the remote control unit or MASTER VOLUME on the main unit during the measurements will cancel the measurements.
- Measurement cannot be performed when headphones are connected. Unplug the headphones before performing Audyssey® Setup.





## Procedure for speaker settings (Audyssey® Setup)

Preparation



Measurement



Calculation & Store



Check



Finish

- 1 Attach the Sound calibration microphone to the supplied microphone stand or own tripod and install it at the main listening position.**

When installing the Sound calibration microphone, point the tip of the microphone toward the ceiling and adjust the height to match the height of the ears of a listener in a seated position.

- 2 If using a subwoofer capable of the following adjustments, set up the subwoofer as shown below.**

**When using a subwoofer with a direct mode**

Set the direct mode to “On” and disable the volume adjustment and crossover frequency setting.

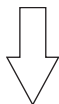
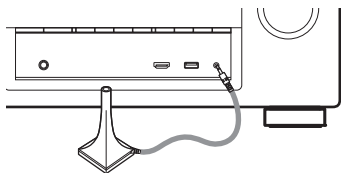
**When using a subwoofer without a direct mode**

Make the following settings:

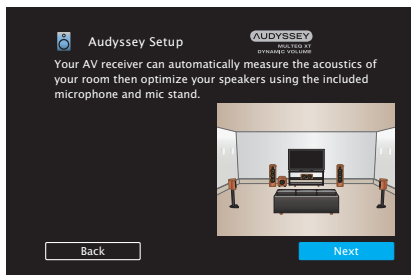
- Volume : 12 o'clock position
- Crossover frequency : Maximum/Highest Frequency
- Low pass filter : Off
- Standby mode : Off



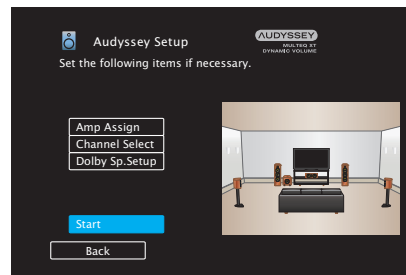
### 3 Connect the Sound calibration microphone to the SETUP MIC jack of this unit.



When the Sound calibration microphone is connected, the following screen is displayed.



### 4 Select “Next”, then press ENTER.



## 5 Select “Start”, then press ENTER.

Audyssey® Setup can also make the following settings.

- **Amp Assign**

The signals output from the SURROUND BACK speaker terminals can be switched in accordance with your speaker environment. (“Amp Assign” (📖 p. 186))

- **Channel Select**

If channels that are not to be used are set in advance, measurement for the set channels is skipped, and measuring time can be reduced. You can also change the number of surround back speakers and subwoofer.

- **Dolby Sp.Setup**

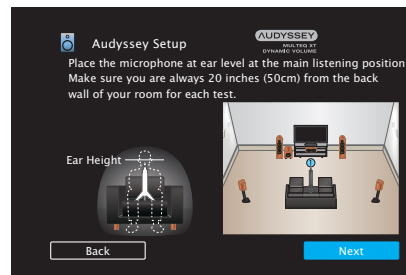
Set the distance between the Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker and the ceiling.

This can be set when “Assign Mode” is set to “Front Dolby” or “Surround Dolby” in the “Amp Assign” settings. (📖 p. 186)

## 6 Follow the instructions on the screen display and press “Next” to proceed further.

## 7 When the following screen is displayed, select “Begin Test” and then press ENTER.

Start the measurement of the first position.



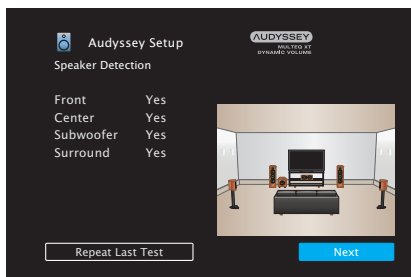
- Measurement requires several minutes.

### NOTE

- If “Caution!” is displayed on TV screen:
  - Go to “Error messages” (📖 p. 184). Check any related items, and perform the necessary procedures.



- 8** When the detected speaker is displayed, select “Next” and then press ENTER.



- 9** Move the Sound calibration microphone to position 2, select “Continue”, then press ENTER.

The measurement of the second position starts.

Measurements can be made in up to eight positions.



#### □ Stopping Audyssey® Setup

- ① Press BACK to display the popup screen.
- ② Press < to select “Yes”, then press ENTER.

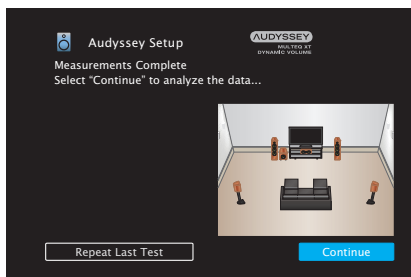


## 10 Repeat step 9, measuring positions 3 to 8.



- To skip measuring the fourth and subsequent listening position, press < and select "Complete" and press ENTER to proceed to step 12.

## 11 Select "Continue", then press ENTER.



Start the analysis and storage of the measurement results.

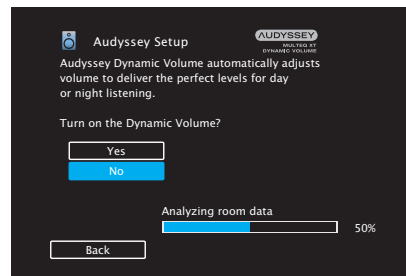
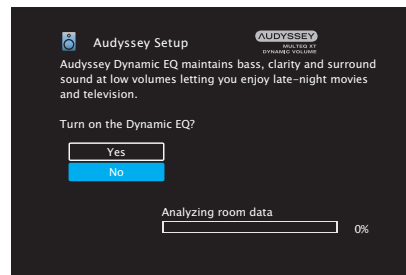
- Analysis takes several minutes to complete. The more speakers and measurement positions that there are, the more time it takes to perform the analysis.

### NOTE

- When the measurement results are being saved, make sure the power is not turned off.

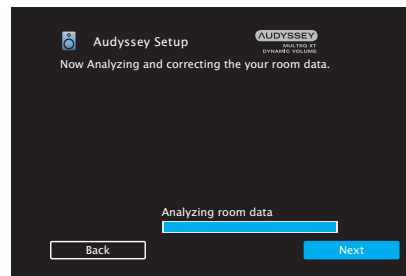
## 12 Perform the settings for Audyssey Dynamic EQ® and Audyssey Dynamic Volume®.

The following screen is displayed during the analysis. Configure the settings as preferred.



- Dynamic EQ corrects the frequency response in consideration of the audio characteristics of the room and human hearing ability so that sound can be heard even at low volume. This is recommended when using the unit with the volume turned down, e.g. when enjoying a movie or TV program in the middle of the night.
- Dynamic Volume adjusts the output volume to the optimal level while constantly monitoring the level of the audio input to the unit. Optimal volume control is performed automatically without any loss in the dynamism and clarity of the sound when, for example, the volume suddenly increases for commercials shown during television programs.

### 13 When the analysis and storage ends, unplug the Sound calibration microphone from the SETUP MIC jack on the main unit and then press “Next”.



## 14 Select “Details” and press ENTER to verify the measurement results.

- Subwoofers may measure a greater reported distance than the actual distance due to added electrical delay common in subwoofers.

### NOTE

- Do not change the speaker connection or subwoofer volume after Audyssey® Setup. If these are changed, run Audyssey® Setup again in order to configure the optimum equalizer settings.



## Error messages

An error message is displayed if Audyssey® Setup could not be completed due to speaker placement, the measurement environment, etc. If an error message is displayed, check the relevant items and perform the necessary measures. Be sure to turn off the power before checking speaker connections.

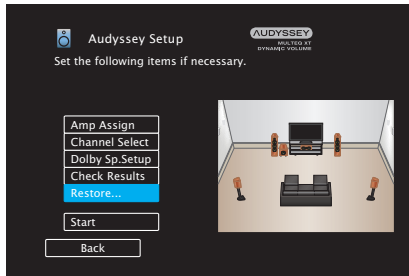
Examples	Error details	Measures
No speakers found.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Sound calibration microphone is not detected.</li> <li>• Not all speakers could be detected.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Connect the included Sound calibration microphone to the SETUP MIC jack of this unit.</li> <li>• Check the speaker connections.</li> </ul>
Ambient noise is too high or level is too low	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• There is too much noise in the room.</li> <li>• Speaker or subwoofer sound is too low.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Either turn off any device generating noise or move it away.</li> <li>• Perform again when the surroundings are quieter.</li> <li>• Check the speaker installation and the direction in which the speakers are facing.</li> <li>• Adjust the subwoofer's volume.</li> </ul>
Front R : None	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The displayed speaker could not be detected.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the connections of the displayed speaker.</li> </ul>
Front R : Phase	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The displayed speaker is connected with the polarity reversed.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the polarity of the displayed speaker.</li> <li>• For some speakers, this error message may be displayed even if the speaker is properly connected. If you are sure the connection is correct, press <math>\triangleright</math> to select "Ignore", then press ENTER.</li> </ul>





## Retrieving Audyssey® Setup settings

If you set “Restore...” to “Restore”, you can return to Audyssey® Setup measurement result (value calculated at the start by MultEQ® XT) even when you have changed each setting manually.



## Manual Setup

Perform when setting the speakers manually or when changing settings made in Audyssey® Setup.

- If you change the speaker settings after performing Audyssey® Setup, you will no longer be able to select Audyssey MultEQ® XT, Audyssey Dynamic EQ® or Audyssey Dynamic Volume®. (👉 p. 158)
- “Manual Setup” can be used without changing the settings. Please set if necessary.

## Amp Assign

Select the power amplifier usage method to match your speaker system. See “Speaker configuration and “Amp Assign” settings” (👉 p. 36) regarding the speaker configuration and connection.

### ■ Assign Mode

Select how to use the power amp.

<b>Surround Back:</b>	Setting for 7.1-channel playback using surround back speakers.
<b>Front Height:</b>	Setting for 7.1-channel playback using front height speakers.
<b>Top Front:</b>	Setting for 7.1-channel playback using top front speakers.
<b>Top Middle:</b>	Setting for 7.1-channel playback using top middle speakers.
<b>Front Dolby:</b>	Setting for 7.1-channel playback using front Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers.
<b>Surround Dolby:</b>	Setting for 7.1-channel playback using surround Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers.




**ZONE2**  
(Default):

Setting to assign the unit's built-in power amplifier for ZONE2 and output the audio in stereo.

**Bi-Amp:**

Setting to use the front speakers via the bi-amp connection.

**Front B:**

Setting for playback using a second front speaker. You can switch the playback between front speaker A and B according to your liking. Switch the front speaker using "Front Speaker" in the menu.  
( p. 196)

## Speaker Config.

Select whether or not speakers are present, playback capacity for low bass frequencies and speaker size.

### ■ Front

Set the front speaker size.

**Large**  
(Default):

Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.

**Small:**

Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.



- When "Subwoofer" is set to "No", "Front" is automatically set to "Large".
- When "Front" is set to "Small", "Center", "Surround", "Surr. Back" and "Front Height" can not be set to "Large".



## ■ Center

Set the presence and size of the center speaker.

<b>Large:</b>	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
<b>Small (Default):</b>	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
<b>None:</b>	Select when a center speaker is not connected.

## ■ Subwoofer

Set the presence of a subwoofer.

<b>Yes (Default):</b>	Use a subwoofer.
<b>No:</b>	Select when a subwoofer is not connected.

## ■ Surround

Set the presence and size of the surround speakers.

<b>Large:</b>	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
<b>Small (Default):</b>	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
<b>None:</b>	Select when the surround speakers are not connected.



- When “Surround” is set to “None”, “Surround Back” and “Surround Dolby” are automatically set to “None”.



## ■ Surround Back

Set the presence, size and number of surround back speakers.

<b>Large:</b>	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
<b>Small (Default):</b>	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
<b>None:</b>	Select when the surround back speakers are not connected.
<b>2 spkrs (Default):</b>	Use two surround back speakers.
<b>1 spkr:</b>	Use only one surround back speaker. Connect to the L terminal to SURROUND BACK when this setting is selected.



- When "Assign Mode" setting is "Surround Back", you can make this setting. (👉 p. 186)

## ■ Front Height

Set the presence and size of the front height speakers.

<b>Large:</b>	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
<b>Small (Default):</b>	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
<b>None:</b>	Select when the front height speakers are not connected.



- When "Assign Mode" setting is "Front Height", you can make this setting. (👉 p. 186)



## ■ Top Front

Set the presence and size of the top front speakers.

<b>Large:</b>	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
<b>Small (Default):</b>	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
<b>None:</b>	Select when the top front speakers are not connected.



- When “Assign Mode” setting is “Top Front”, you can make this setting. (👉 p. 186)

## ■ Top Middle

Set the presence and size of the top middle speakers.

<b>Large:</b>	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
<b>Small (Default):</b>	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
<b>None:</b>	Select when the top middle speakers are not connected.



- When “Assign Mode” setting is “Top Middle”, you can make this setting. (👉 p. 186)



## ■ Front Dolby

Set the presence and size of the front Dolby speakers.

<b>Large:</b>	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
<b>Small (Default):</b>	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
<b>None:</b>	Select when the front Dolby speakers are not connected.



- When “Assign Mode” setting is “Front Dolby”, you can make this setting. (👉 p. 186)

## ■ Surround Dolby

Set the presence and size of the surround Dolby speakers.

<b>Large:</b>	Use a large speaker that can adequately play back very low bass frequencies.
<b>Small (Default):</b>	Use a small speaker that has inadequate playback capacity for very low bass frequencies.
<b>None:</b>	Select when the surround Dolby speakers are not connected.



- When “Assign Mode” setting is “Surround Dolby”, you can make this setting. (👉 p. 186)



## Distances

Set distance from listening position to speakers.

Measure beforehand the distance from the listening position to each speaker.

### ■ Unit

Set the unit of distance.

**Feet** (Default)

**Meters**

### ■ Step

Set the minimum variable width of the distance.

**1 ft / 0.1 ft** (Default: 1 ft)

**0.1 m / 0.01 m**

### ■ Set the distance

**0.0 ft – 60.0 ft / 0.00 m – 18.00 m**



- The speakers that can be selected differ depending on the “Amp Assign” and “Speaker Config.” settings. (“Amp Assign” (🔍 p. 186), “Speaker Config.” (🔍 p. 187))
- Default settings :  
Front L / Front R / Front Height L / Front Height R / Center / Front Dolby L / Front Dolby R / Subwoofer: 12.0 ft (3.60 m)  
Surround L / Surround R / Surround Back L / Surround Back R / Top Front L / Top Front R / Top Middle L / Top Middle R / Surround Dolby L / Surround Dolby R: 10.0 ft (3.00 m)
- Set the difference in the distance between the speakers to less than 20.0 ft (6.00 m).





## ■ Dolby Sp.Setup

Set the distance between the Dolby Atmos Enabled speaker and the ceiling.

---

**3.0 ft - 11.0 ft / 0.90 m - 3.30 m**(Default : 6.0 ft / 1.80 m)

---



- This can be set when “Front Dolby” or “Surround Dolby” is set to “Large” or “Small” in “Speaker Config.”.

## ■ Set Defaults

The “Distances” settings are returned to the default settings.

## Levels

Set the volume of the test tone to be the same at the listening position when it is output from each speaker.

## ■ Test Tone Start

A test tone is output from the selected speaker.


While listening to the test tone, adjust the volume output from the selected speaker.

---

**-12.0 dB – +12.0 dB** (Default : 0.0 dB)

---



- The set “Levels” are reflected in all sound modes.
- If you wish to adjust the channel level for each input source, carry out the settings in “Ch Level Adjust” ( p. 115).
- When headphones are connected to the PHONES connector on this unit, you cannot set “Levels”.

## ■ Set Defaults

The “Levels” settings are returned to the default settings.



## Crossovers

Set in accordance with the lower limit frequency of the base frequencies that can be played back through each speaker. See the speaker manual for information concerning speaker crossover frequency.

### ■ Speaker Select

Selects how to set the crossover frequency.

<b>All</b> (Default):	Sets the same crossover frequency for all speakers.
<b>Individual:</b>	Selects the crossover points for each speaker individually.

### ■ Set the crossover frequency

40 Hz / 60 Hz / 80 Hz / 90 Hz / 100 Hz / 110 Hz / 120 Hz / 150 Hz / 200 Hz / 250 Hz (Default : 80 Hz)



- “Crossovers” can be set when the “Subwoofer Mode” setting is “LFE+Main”, or when you have a speaker that is set to “Small”. (🔗 p. 195)
- The default crossover frequency is “80 Hz”, which will work best with the widest variety of speakers. We recommend setting to a higher frequency that the crossover frequency when small speakers are used. For example, set to “250 Hz” when the frequency range of the speakers is 250 Hz – 20 kHz.
- Sound below the crossover frequency is cut off from the output of the speakers set in “Small”. This cut off bass frequency is output from the subwoofer or front speakers.
- The speakers that can be set when “Individual” is selected differ depending on to the “Subwoofer Mode” setting. (🔗 p. 195)
  - When “LFE” is selected, speakers set to “Small” at “Speaker Config.” can be set. If the speakers are set to “Large”, “Full Band” is displayed and the setting cannot be made. (🔗 p. 187)
  - When “LFE+Main” is selected, speakers can be set regardless of the “Speaker Config.” setting. (🔗 p. 187)



## Bass

Set subwoofer and LFE signal range playback.

### ■ Subwoofer Mode

Select low range signals to be reproduced by subwoofer.

<b>LFE</b> (Default):	The low range signal of the channel set to "Small" speaker size is added to the LFE signal output from the subwoofer.
<b>LFE+Main:</b>	The low range signal of all channels is added to the LFE signal output from the subwoofer.



- "Subwoofer Mode" can be set when "Speaker Config." - "Subwoofer" is set to other than "No". (☞ p.188)
- Play music or a movie source and select the mode offering the strongest bass.
- If "Speaker Config." - "Front" and "Center" are set to "Large", and "Subwoofer Mode" is set to "LFE", no sound may be output from the subwoofers, depending on the input signal or selected sound mode. (☞ p.188) Select "LFE+Main" if you want the bass signals to always be produced from the subwoofer.

### ■ LPF for LFE

Set LFE signal playback range. Set this when you want to change the playback frequency (low pass filter point) of the subwoofer.

80 Hz / 90 Hz / 100 Hz / 110 Hz / 120 Hz / 150 Hz /  
200 Hz / 250 Hz (Default : 120 Hz)



## Front Speaker

Set the front speaker A/B to use for every sound mode.

<b>A</b> (Default):	Front speaker A is used.
<b>B :</b>	Front speaker B is used.
<b>A+B :</b>	Both front speakers A and B are used.



- This can be set when “Assign Mode” is set to “Front B”. ( p. 186)



# Network

To use this unit by connecting it to a home network (LAN), you must configure network settings.

If you set up your home network (LAN) via DHCP, set “DHCP” to “On”. (Use the default setting.) This allows this unit to use your home network (LAN). When assigning an IP address to each device manually, you need to assign an IP address to this unit using the “IP Address” settings, and enter information about your home network (LAN) such as the gateway address and subnet mask, etc.

## Information

Display network information.

**Friendly Name / Connection / SSID / DHCP / IP Address /  
MAC Address**



- MAC Address is required to create a vTuner account.

## Connection

Choose whether to connect the home network to a wireless LAN or a wired LAN.

When connecting to the network using wired LAN, select “Wired(Ethernet)” after connecting a LAN cable,

When connecting to the network using wireless LAN, select “Wireless(Wi-Fi)” and configure the “Wi-Fi Setup”. (📖 p. 198)

### ■ Wi-Fi

You can stop the Wi-Fi function when connecting this unit to the network using Wired LAN.

<b>Enabled</b> (Default):	The Wi-Fi function is used.
<b>Disabled:</b>	The Wi-Fi function is stopped.



## ■ Connect Using

Select the method for connecting to the home network (LAN).

**Wired(Ethernet):** Use a LAN cable to connect to a network.

**Wireless(Wi-Fi):** Use the wireless LAN (Wi-Fi) function to connect to a network.



- This can be set when “Wi-Fi” is set to “Enabled”. (🔗 p. 197)

## Wi-Fi Setup

Connect to a wireless LAN (Wi-Fi) router.

The router can be connected in the following ways. Select the connection method to suit your home environment.

### ■ Scan Networks

Select the network you wish to connect to from the list of possible networks shown on the TV screen.

1. Select the network you wish to connect to from the list of wireless networks.  
Select “Rescan” if the network cannot be found.
2. Enter your password and select “OK”.

### ■ Use iOS Device

Use your iOS device (iPhone/iPod/iPad) to connect to the network. By connecting your iOS device to this unit, the unit can be automatically connected to the same network as your device.

This unit can be connected to your iOS device in two ways, using a USB cable and using Wi-Fi.



## □ When connecting using Wi-Fi

1. Select “Wireless connection” on the TV screen.
2. Check that your iOS device is connected to the wireless LAN (Wi-Fi) router and select “Denon AVR-X1200W” from “SET UP NEW AIRPLAY SPEAKER...” at the bottom of the Wi-Fi configuration screen of your iOS device.
3. Tap “Next” on the screen of the iOS device.



- The iOS device firmware version needs to support iOS 7 or later.

## □ When using a USB cable

1. Select “USB cable” on the TV screen.
2. Check that your iOS device is connected to the wireless LAN (Wi-Fi) and connect it to the USB port on the front panel using a USB cable.
3. Select “Connect” on the TV screen.
4. Tap “Allow” when the connection message appears on the screen of your iOS device.



- The iOS device firmware version needs to support iOS 5 or later.

## ■ WPS Router

Use a WPS-compatible router to connect.

There are two ways to connect, using the push button method or the PIN code method. Select the connection method to match your router.

### □ When connecting using the push button method

1. Select “Push Button” on the TV screen.
2. Switch to the WPS mode by pressing the WPS button of the router you wish to connect to.
  - The time for pressing the button varies depending on the router.
3. Select “Connect” on the TV screen within 2 minutes.

### □ When connecting using the PIN code method

1. Select “PIN” on the TV screen.
2. Register the PIN code of the unit in the router.



## ■ Manual

Enter the name (SSID) and password of the network you wish to connect to.

1. Set the following items.

<b>SSID:</b>	Input the name of the wireless network (SSID).
<b>Security:</b>	Select the encryption method according to the encryption setting of the access point you are using.
<b>Password:</b>	Input the password.
<b>Default Key:</b>	Select the Default Key. When connecting to a "WEP" encrypted network, "Default Key" menu is displayed.

2. Select "Connect" at the end of the setting.



- The wireless LAN (Wi-Fi) settings of this unit can also be configured from a PC or tablet that supports wireless LAN connection.

When using a device that has a firmware version of iOS7 or later, "When connecting using Wi-Fi" (🔑 p. 199) in "Use iOS Device".

1. Press and hold the DIMMER and STATUS buttons on the main unit for at least 3 seconds when the power of the unit is on.
2. Connect the wireless LAN of the PC or tablet used to "Denon AVR-X1200W" when the message "Connect your Wi-Fi device to Wi-Fi network called "Denon AVR-X1200W"" appears in the display.
3. Start up the browser and enter "192.168.1.16" in the URL.
4. Use the browser to enter the settings, select "Connect" and then exit the settings.

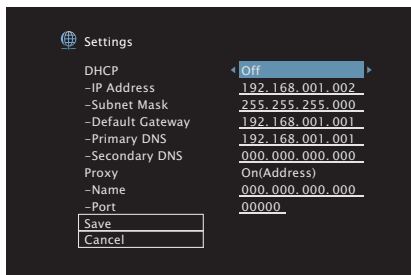




## Settings

Configure the proxy settings and IP address.

- If you are using a broadband router (DHCP function), the information required for network connection such as the IP address will be automatically configured since the DHCP function is set to “On” in the default settings of this unit.
- Set up the IP Address, Subnet Mask, Default Gateway and DNS server information only when assigning a fixed IP address or when connecting to a network without DHCP function.
- Configure the proxy settings when using a proxy server to connect to the Internet.



### ■ DHCP

Selects how to connect to the network.

<b>On</b> (Default):	Configure the network settings automatically from your router.
<b>Off:</b>	Configure the network settings manually.

### ■ IP Address

Set the IP address within the ranges shown below.

- The Network Audio function cannot be used if other IP addresses are set.

CLASS A:10.0.0.1 - 10.255.255.254

CLASS B:172.16.0.1 - 172.31.255.254

CLASS C:192.168.0.1 - 192.168.255.254

### ■ Subnet Mask

When connecting an xDSL modem or connector adapter directly to this unit, input the subnet mask indicated in the documentation supplied by your provider. Normally input 255.255.255.0.



## ■ Default Gateway

When connected to a gateway (router), input its IP address.

## ■ Primary DNS, Secondary DNS

If there is only one DNS address indicated in the documentation supplied by your provider, input it at “Primary DNS”. If two or more DNS are provided by your provider, enter both “Primary DNS” and “Secondary DNS”.

## ■ Proxy

Make this setting when connecting to the Internet via a proxy server.  
Make the proxy settings only when you connect to the Internet via a proxy server that is on your internal network or provided by your provider, etc.

---

**On(Address):** Select when inputting by address.

---

**On(Name):** Select when inputting by domain name.

---

**Off**  
(Default): Disables the proxy server.

---

## ■ Port

Enter port number.



- If you cannot connect to the Internet, recheck the connections and settings. (☞ p. 59)
- If you do not understand about Internet connection, contact your ISP (Internet Service Provider) or the store from which you purchased your computer.



## Network Control

Enables network communication in standby power mode.

**Off In Standby:** Suspend network function during standby.

**Always On (Default) :** Network is on during standby. Main unit operable with a network compatible controller.



- When using the web control function or Denon 2015 AVR Remote, use with the "Network Control" setting set to "Always On".

### NOTE

- When "Network Control" is set to "Always On", the unit consumes more standby power.

## Friendly Name

The Friendly Name is the name of this unit displayed on the network. You can change the Friendly Name according to your preferences.

### ■ Name

Selects Friendly Name from the list.

When you select "Other", you can change the Friendly Name according to your preferences.

**Home Theater / Living Room / Family Room / Guest Room / Kitchen / Dining Room / Master Bedroom / Bedroom / Den / Office / Other**



- Up to 63 characters can be input.  
For character input, see "Using the keyboard screen" (📖 p. 150).
- The default Friendly Name on first use is "Denon AVR-X1200W".

### ■ Set Defaults

Restores Friendly Name, which you had changed, to the default setting.



## Diagnostics

Used to check the network connection.

### ■ Physical Connection

Checks the physical LAN port connection.

---

**OK**

**Error:**

The LAN cable is not connected. Check the connection.

---



- When connected using a wireless LAN, "Connection Wireless(Wi-Fi)" will be displayed.

### ■ Router Access

Checks the connection from this unit to the router.

---

**OK**

**Error:**

Failed to communicate with the router.  
Check the router settings.

---

### ■ Internet Access

Checks whether this unit has access to the Internet (WAN).

---

**OK**

**Error:**

Failed to connect to the Internet. Check the Internet connection environment or router settings.

---



## Maintenance Mode

Use when receiving maintenance from a Denon service engineer or custom installer. Ordinarily, this mode isn't suitable for use by the end user, only by a trained service technician or custom installation professional.

### NOTE

- Only use this function if so instructed by a Denon serviceperson or installer.



# General

Make various other settings.

## Language

Set the language for display the menu on the TV screen.

**English / Français / Español** (Default : English)



- “Language” can also be set up by the following operation. However, the menu screen is not displayed. Watch the display while configuring the settings.
  1. Press and hold the main unit’s ZONE2 SOURCE and STATUS at the same time for at least 3 seconds.  
“V.Format:< NTSC>” appears on the display.
  2. Press the main unit’s DIMMER.  
“Lang.:<ENGLISH >” appears on the display.
  3. Use the main unit’s TUNER PRESET CH + or TUNER PRESET CH - and set the language.
  4. Press the main unit’s STATUS to complete the setting.

## ECO

Configure the settings of the ECO Mode and auto standby mode.

### ECO Mode

This mode can reduce the power consumption when the power of the unit is on.

<b>On:</b>	Reduce the power consumption.
<b>Auto:</b>	The power consumption is automatically reduced to match the volume.
<b>Off (Default):</b>	Do not reduce the power consumption.



- When you want to output audio at a high volume level, it is recommended to set “ECO Mode” to “Off”.
- Eco mode can also be switched by pressing ECO on the remote control unit.



## ■ Pow.On Default

Set the mode to ECO when the power is on.

<b>Last</b> (Default) :	The ECO Mode will be set to the previous setting before the power was switched off.
<b>On:</b>	When power is turned on, the mode will always be switched to the ECO Mode in "On".
<b>Auto:</b>	When power is turned on, the mode will always be switched to the ECO Mode in "Auto".
<b>Off:</b>	When power is turned on, the mode will always be switched to the ECO Mode in "Off".

## ■ On Screen Disp.

Display the power consumption of this unit using a meter on the TV screen.

<b>Always On:</b>	Always display the meter on the TV screen.
<b>Auto</b> (Default):	Display the meter when changing the mode or volume.
<b>Off:</b>	Do not display the meter.



## ■ Auto Standby

Set so the unit power automatically switches to standby.

### □ MAIN ZONE

Sets the time for switching to auto standby when there are no audio or video signals input into this unit.

Before the unit enters standby mode, "Auto Standby" is displayed on the unit display and the menu screen.

<b>60 min:</b>	The unit goes into standby after 60 minutes.
----------------	--

<b>30 min:</b>	The unit goes into standby after 30 minutes.
----------------	--

<b>15 min:</b>	The unit goes into standby after 15 minutes.
----------------	--

<b>Off</b> (Default):	The unit does not go into standby automatically.
--------------------------	--

### □ ZONE2

When there are no operations for a certain period of time as set here, the power is automatically shut off even if there is audio or video input.

<b>8 hours:</b>	Put ZONE2 in the standby state after about 8 hours.
-----------------	---

<b>4 hours:</b>	Put ZONE2 in the standby state after about 4 hours.
-----------------	---

<b>2 hours:</b>	Put ZONE2 in the standby state after about 2 hours.
-----------------	---

<b>Off</b> (Default):	Do not automatically put ZONE2 in the standby state.
--------------------------	--





## ZONE2 Setup

Makes settings for audio playback with ZONE2.



- Values set for “Volume Limit” and “Pow.On Volume” are displayed according to the setting specified for the volume “Scale” (🔗 p. 157).

### ■ Volume Level

Set the volume output level.

<b>Variable</b> (Default) :	Volume can be adjusted.
<b>1 – 98</b> <b>(–79.5 dB – 18.0 dB):</b>	Volume is fixed at the desired level. The volume cannot be adjusting using the remote control unit.

### ■ Volume Limit

Make a setting for maximum volume.

**60 (-20 dB) / 70 (-10 dB) / 80 (0 dB)**  
(Default : 70 (-10 dB))

**Off:** Do not set a maximum volume.



- This can be set when “Volume Level” is set to “Variable”. (🔗 p. 209)

### ■ Pow.On Volume

Define the volume setting that is active when the power is turned on.

<b>Last</b> (Default) :	Use the memorized setting from the last session.
<b>Mute:</b>	Always use the muting on condition.
<b>1 – 98</b> <b>(–79.5 dB – 18.0 dB):</b>	The volume is adjusted to the set level.



- This can be set when “Volume Level” is set to “Variable”. (🔗 p. 209)



## Zone Rename

Change the display title of each zone to one you prefer.

### MAIN ZONE / ZONE2

**Set Defaults:** The default setting is restored for the edited zone name.



- Up to 10 characters can be input.  
For character input, see “Using the keyboard screen” (🖱 p. 150).

## Quick Sel.Names

Change the quick select name that appears on the TV screen to one you prefer.

### Quick Select 1 / Quick Select 2 / Quick Select 3 / Quick Select 4

**Set Defaults:** The default setting is restored for the edited quick select name.



- Up to 16 characters can be input.  
For character input, see “Using the keyboard screen” (🖱 p. 150).

## Front Display

Makes settings related to the display on this unit.

### ■ Dimmer

Adjust the display brightness of this unit.

**Bright**  
(Default) : Normal display brightness.

**Dim:** Reduced display brightness.

**Dark:** Very low display brightness.

**Off:** Turns the display off.



- You can also adjust the display by pressing DIMMER on the main unit.



## Firmware

Checks for the latest firmware information about updates and upgrades, updates the firmware, and sets up the notification message display for updates and upgrades.

### ■ Update

Updates the firmware of this unit.

#### Update:

Execute the update process. When the update starts, the menu screen is shut down. During the update, the progress is shown on the display.



- This unit automatically retries updating if updating fails. If the update still fails, either one of the following messages will appear on the screen. If the display reads as shown below, check the settings and network environment, then update again.

Display	Description
<b>Updating fail</b>	Updating failed.
<b>Login failed</b>	Failure to log into server.
<b>Server is busy</b>	Server is busy. Wait a while then try again.
<b>Connection fail</b>	Failure in connecting to server.
<b>Download fail</b>	Downloading of the firmware has failed.

### ■ Notifications

When the latest firmware is available, a notification message is displayed on the TV screen at power on.

The notification message is displayed for about 40 seconds when the power is turned on.

#### Update

**On**  
(Default): Display update message.

**Off:** Do not display update message.

#### Upgrade

**On**  
(Default): Display upgrade message.

**Off:** Do not display upgrade message.



## ■ Add New Feature

Display new features that can be downloaded to this unit and perform an upgrade.

<b>Upgrade Package:</b>	Display the items to be upgraded.
<b>Upgrade Status:</b>	Display a list of the additional functions provided by the upgrade.
<b>Upgrade Start:</b>	Execute the upgrade process. When the upgrade starts, the menu screen is shut down. During the upgrade, the amount of upgrade time which has elapsed is displayed.



- See the Denon website for details about upgrades.
- When the procedure is complete, “Registered” is displayed in this menu and upgrades can be carried out. If the procedure has not been carried out, “-----” is displayed.  
The ID number shown on this screen is needed when carrying out the procedure.  
The ID number can also be displayed by pressing and holding the main unit’s TUNER PRESET CH + and STATUS for at least 3 seconds.
- If the upgrade is not successful, an error message identical to those in “Firmware” - “Update” will appear on the display. Check the settings and network environment and then perform the upgrade again.

### Notes concerning use of “Update” and “Add New Feature”

- In order to use these functions, you must have the correct system requirements and settings for an Internet connection. (☞ p. 59)
- Do not turn off the power until updating or upgrading is completed.
- Approximately 1 hour is required for the updating/upgrading procedure to be completed.
- Once updating/upgrade starts, normal operations on this unit cannot be performed until updating/upgrading is completed. Furthermore, there may be cases where backup data is reset for the parameters, etc., set on this unit.
- If the update or upgrade fails, press and hold the ⏻ on the main unit for more than 5 seconds, or remove and re-insert the power cord. “Update Retry” appears on the display and update restarts from the point at which update failed. If the error continues despite this, check the network environment.



- Information regarding the “Update” function and “Add New Feature” will be announced on the Denon website each time related plans are defined.



## Information

Show information about this unit settings, input signals, etc.

### ■ Audio

Show the audio information for MAIN ZONE.

<b>Sound Mode:</b>	The currently set sound mode.
<b>Input Signal:</b>	The input signal type.
<b>Format:</b>	The number of input signal channels (presence of front, surround, LFE).
<b>Sample Rate:</b>	The input signal's sampling frequency.
<b>Offset:</b>	The dialogue normalization correction value.
<b>Flag:</b>	This is displayed when inputting signals including a surround back channel. "MATRIX" is displayed with DTS-ES Matrix input signals, "DISCRETE" with DTS-ES Discrete signals.

### ■ Video

Show the HDMI input/output signals and HDMI monitor information for MAIN ZONE.

#### HDMI Signal

##### Resolution / Color Space / Pixel Depth

#### HDMI Monitor

##### Interface / Resolutions

### ■ ZONE

Show information about current settings.

<b>MAIN ZONE:</b>	This item shows information about settings for MAIN ZONE. The information displayed differs according to the input source.
<b>ZONE2:</b>	This item shows information about settings for ZONE2.

### ■ Firmware

<b>Version:</b>	Displays information for the current firmware.
<b>DTS Version:</b>	Displays the current DTS version.



## ■ Notifications

Displays and sets notifications.

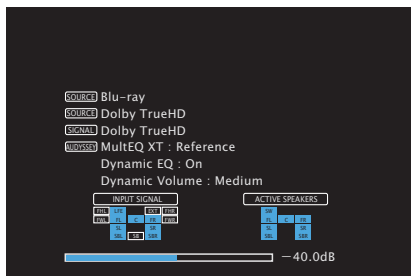
Also, sets whether or not to display the notification when the power is turned on.

### Notif.Alerts

<b>On</b> (Default):	Notification messages are displayed.
<b>Off:</b>	Notification messages are not displayed.



- Press INFO on the remote control unit to display current source name, volume, sound mode name, and other information at the bottom of the screen.



## Usage Data

To help us improve our products and customer service, Denon collects anonymous information about how you use your AV receiver (such as frequently used input sources and sound modes and speaker settings). Denon will never provide any information we collect to third parties.

<b>Yes:</b>	Provide information on the operating status of this unit.
<b>No:</b>	Do not provide information on the operating status of this unit.



## Setup Lock

Protect settings from inadvertent changes.

### ■ Lock

---

**On:** Turn protection on.

---

**Off**  
(Default): Turn protection off.

---



- When cancelling the setting, set “Lock” to “Off”.

#### NOTE

- When “Lock” is set to “On”, no setting items are displayed except for “Setup Lock”.



## ■ Contents

### Tips

I want the volume not to become too loud by mistake	217
I want to keep the volume at the same level when I turn the power on	217
I want to have the subwoofer always output audio	217
I want to make human voices in the movies clearer	217
I want to keep bass and clarity during playback at a lower volume level	217
I want to automatically adjust the volume level difference in content such as TV and movies	217
I want to set the optimized listening environment after changing the configuration/position of the speakers or changing a speaker to a new one	218
I want to combine a desired video with the current music	218
I want to skip unused input sources	218
I want to enjoy the same music in all zones at the home party, etc.	218
I want to operate this unit using the TV remote control	218

### Troubleshooting

Power does not turn on / Power is turned off	220
Operations cannot be performed through the remote control unit	221
Display on this unit shows nothing	221
No sound comes out	222
Desired sound does not come out	223
Sound is interrupted or noise occurs	225
No video is shown on the TV	226
The menu screen is not displayed on the TV	227
iPod cannot be played back	228
USB memory devices cannot be played back	229
File names on the iPod/USB memory device are not displayed properly	230
Bluetooth cannot be played back	230
The Internet radio cannot be played back	231
Music files on PC or NAS cannot be played back	232
Various online services cannot be played	232
The HDMI control function does not work	233
Cannot connect to a wireless LAN network	234





## Tips

### I want the volume not to become too loud by mistake

- Set the volume upper limit for “Volume Limit” in the menu beforehand. This prevents children or others from increasing the volume too much by mistake. You can set this for each zone. (“Volume” (🔍 p. 157), “Volume Limit” (🔍 p. 209))

### I want to keep the volume at the same level when I turn the power on

- By default, the volume setting when power was previously set to standby on this unit is applied at next power on with no change. To use a fixed volume level, set the volume level at power on for “Pow.On Volume” in the menu. You can set this for each zone. (“Volume” (🔍 p. 157), “Pow.On Volume” (🔍 p. 209))

### I want to have the subwoofer always output audio

- Depending on the input signals and sound mode, the subwoofer may not output audio. When “Subwoofer Mode” in the menu is set to “LFE+Main”, you can have the subwoofer always output audio. (🔍 p. 195)

### I want to make human voices in the movies clearer

- Use “Dialog Level” in the menu to adjust the level. (🔍 p. 151)

### I want to keep bass and clarity during playback at a lower volume level

- Set “Dynamic EQ” in the menu to “On”. This setting corrects the frequency characteristics to allow you to enjoy clear sound without the bass being lost even during playback at a lower volume level. (🔍 p. 159)

### I want to automatically adjust the volume level difference in content such as TV and movies

- Set “Dynamic Volume” in the menu. Volume level changes (between quiet scenes and loud scenes) in TV shows or movies are automatically adjusted to your desired level. (🔍 p. 160)



**I want to set the optimized listening environment after changing the configuration/position of the speakers or changing a speaker to a new one.**

- Perform Audyssey® Setup. This automatically makes the optimized speaker settings for the new listening environment. (👉 p. 175)

**I want to combine a desired video with the current music**

- Set “Video Select” in the option menu to “On”. You can combine the current music with your desired video source from a Set-top a Box or DVD, etc. while listening to music from the Tuner, Internet radio, USB or Bluetooth. (👉 p. 117)

**I want to skip unused input sources**

- Set unused input sources for “Hide Sources” in the menu. This allows you to skip unused input sources when turning the SOURCE SELECT knob on this unit. (👉 p. 173)

**I want to enjoy the same music in all zones at the home party, etc.**

- Set “All Zone Stereo” in the option menu to “Start”. This allows you to simultaneously play back the music that is being played back in MAIN ZONE in ZONE2. (👉 p. 118)

**I want to operate this unit using the TV remote control**

- Select “AV Receiver” in a TV menu such as “Input”\* or “Operate Connected HDMI Device”\*. The Smart Menu of this unit is displayed on the TV. This Smart Menu can be operated using the remote control of your TV.

\* The selection method differs depending on your TV. See the owner's manual of your TV for details.



## Troubleshooting

If a problem should arise, first check the following:

1. **Are the connections correct?**
2. **Is the set being operated as described in the owner's manual?**
3. **Are the other devices operating properly?**

If this unit does not operate properly, check the corresponding symptoms in this section.

If the symptoms do not match any of those described here, consult your dealer as it could be due to a fault in this unit. In this case, disconnect the power immediately and contact the store where you purchased this unit.



## ■ Power does not turn on / Power is turned off

Symptom	Cause / Solution	Page
Power does not turn on.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check whether the power plug is correctly inserted into the power outlet.</li> </ul>	<u>62</u>
Power automatically turns off.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The sleep timer is set. Turn on the power again.</li> </ul>	<u>134</u>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>"Auto Standby" is set. "Auto Standby" is triggered when there is no operation for a set amount of time. To disable "Auto Standby", set "Auto Standby" on the menu to "Off".</li> </ul>	<u>208</u>
Power turns off and the power indicator flashes in red approx. every 2 seconds.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The protection circuit has been activated due to a rise in temperature within this unit. Turn the power off, wait about an hour until this unit cools down sufficiently, and then turn the power on again.</li> </ul>	<u>258</u>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Please re-install this unit in a place having good ventilation.</li> </ul>	—
Power turns off and the power indicator flashes in red approx. every 0.5 seconds.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check the speaker connections. The protection circuit may have been activated because speaker cable core wires came in contact with each other or a core wire was disconnected from the connector and came in contact with the rear panel of this unit. After unplugging the power cord, take corrective action such as firmly re-twisting the core wire or taking care of the connector, and then reconnect the wire.</li> </ul>	<u>32</u>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Turn down the volume and turn on the power again.</li> </ul>	<u>64</u>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This unit's amplifier circuit has failed. Unplug the power cord and contact our customer service center.</li> </ul>	—
Power does not turn off even when the power button is pressed, and the display shows "ZONE2 On".	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The power supply of ZONE2 is turned to ON. To turn off the power supply of this unit (standby), press the ZONE2 ON/OFF on the main unit, or press the <math>\odot</math> button on the remote control unit to turn off the power supply of ZONE2.</li> </ul>	—



## ■ Operations cannot be performed through the remote control unit

Symptom	Cause / Solution	Page
Operations cannot be performed through the remote control unit.	• Batteries are worn out. Replace with new batteries.	<a href="#">8</a>
	• Operate the remote control unit within a distance of about 23 ft/7 m from this unit and at an angle of within 30°.	<a href="#">8</a>
	• Remove any obstacle between this unit and the remote control unit.	—
	• Insert the batteries in the proper direction, checking the ⊕ and ⊖ marks.	<a href="#">8</a>
	• The set's remote control sensor is exposed to strong light (direct sunlight, inverter type fluorescent bulb light, etc.). Move the set to a place in which the remote control sensor will not be exposed to strong light.	—
	• When using a 3D video device, the remote control unit of this unit may not function due to effects of infrared communications between units (such as TV and glasses for 3D viewing). In this case, adjust the direction of units with the 3D communications function and their distance to ensure they do not affect operations from the remote control unit of this unit.	—

## ■ Display on this unit shows nothing

Symptom	Cause / Solution	Page
Display is off.	• Set "Dimmer" on the menu to something other than "Off".	<a href="#">210</a>
	• When the sound mode is set to "Pure Direct", the display is off.	<a href="#">121</a>



## ■ No sound comes out

Symptom	Cause / Solution	Page
No sound comes out of speakers.	• Check the connections for all devices.	<u>25</u>
	• Insert connection cables all the way in.	—
	• Check that input connectors and output connectors are not reversely connected.	—
	• Check cables for damage.	—
	• Check that speaker cables are properly connected. Check that cable core wires come in contact with the metal part on speaker terminals.	<u>32</u>
	• Securely tighten the speaker terminals. Check speaker terminals for looseness.	<u>32</u>
	• Check that a proper input source is selected.	<u>64</u>
	• Adjust the volume.	<u>65</u>
	• Cancel the mute mode.	<u>65</u>
	• Check the digital audio input connector setting.	<u>171</u>
	• Check the digital audio output setting on the connected device. On some devices, the digital audio output is set to off by default.	—
	• When a headphone is plugged into the PHONES jack on the main unit, sound is not output from the speaker terminal and SUBWOOFER connector.	—
No sound comes out when using the DVI-D connection.	• When this unit is connected to a device equipped with a DVI-D connector, no sound is output. Make a separate audio connection.	—



## ■ Desired sound does not come out

Symptom	Cause / Solution	Page
The volume does not increase.	• The maximum volume is set too low. Set the maximum volume using “Limit” on the menu.	<a href="#">157</a>
	• Appropriate volume correction processing is performed according to the input audio format and settings, so the volume may not reach the upper limit.	—
No sound comes out with the HDMI connection.	• Check the connection of the HDMI connectors.	<a href="#">48</a>
	• When outputting HDMI audio from the speakers, set “HDMI Audio Out” on the menu to “AVR”. To output from the TV, set “TV”.	<a href="#">164</a>
	• When using the HDMI control function, check that the audio output is set to the AV amplifier on the TV.	<a href="#">131</a>
No sound comes out of a specific speaker.	• Check that speaker cables are properly connected.	—
	• Check that a selection other than “None” is set for the “Speaker Config.” setting in menu.	<a href="#">187</a>
	• Check the “Assign Mode” setting in the menu.	<a href="#">186</a>
	• When the sound mode is “Stereo” and “Virtual”, audio is only output from the front speakers and subwoofer.	—
No sound is produced from subwoofer.	• Check the subwoofer connections.	—
	• Turn on the subwoofer’s power.	—
	• Set “Speaker Config.” – “Subwoofer” on the menu to “Yes”.	<a href="#">188</a>
	• When “Speaker Config.” - “Front” in the menu is set to “Large”, depending on the input signal and the sound mode, no sound may be output from the subwoofer.	<a href="#">187</a>
	• When no subwoofer audio signal (LFE) is included in the input signals, no sound may be output from the subwoofer.	<a href="#">195</a>
	• You can make the subwoofer always output sound by setting the “Subwoofer Mode” to “LFE+Main”.	<a href="#">195</a>
DTS sound is not output.	• Check that the digital audio output setting on the connected device is set to “DTS”.	—
	• Set “Decode Mode” on the menu to “Auto” or “DTS”.	<a href="#">174</a>
Dolby Atmos, Dolby TrueHD, DTS-HD, Dolby Digital Plus audio is not output.	• Make HDMI connections.	<a href="#">52</a>
	• Check the digital audio output setting on the connected device. On some devices, “PCM” is set by default.	—



Symptom	Cause / Solution	Page
DTS Neural:X mode cannot be selected.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>DTS Neural:X cannot be selected when using the headphones.</li> </ul>	—
Dolby Surround mode cannot be selected.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Dolby Surround cannot be selected when using the headphones.</li> </ul>	—
Audyssey MultEQ® XT, Audyssey Dynamic EQ® and Audyssey Dynamic Volume® cannot be selected.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>These cannot be selected when you have not performed Audyssey® Setup.</li> </ul>	<a href="#">175</a>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Switch to a sound mode other than “Direct” or “Pure Direct”.</li> </ul>	<a href="#">121</a>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>These cannot be selected when using the headphones.</li> </ul>	—
“Restorer” cannot be selected.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check that an analog signal or PCM signal (Sample Rate = 44.1/48 kHz) is input. For playback of multichannel signals such as Dolby Digital or DTS surround, “Restorer” cannot be used.</li> </ul>	<a href="#">156</a>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Switch to a sound mode other than “Direct” or “Pure Direct”.</li> </ul>	<a href="#">121</a>
No sound is output when using ZONE2.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Digital signal audio input from the HDMI connector or digital audio connectors (OPTICAL/COAXIAL) cannot be played back. Use analog connections.</li> </ul>	—
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When listening to the audio of a Bluetooth device in ZONE2, remove any obstructions between the Bluetooth device and this unit and use it within a range of about 32.8 ft/10 m.</li> </ul>	—





## ■ Sound is interrupted or noise occurs

Symptom	Cause / Solution	Page
During playback from the Internet radio or USB memory device, sound is occasionally interrupted.	• When the transfer speed of the USB memory device is slow, sound may occasionally be interrupted.	—
	• The network communication speed is slow or the radio station is busy.	—
When making a call on iPhone, noise occurs in audio output on this unit.	• When making a call, keep a distance of 0.7 ft/20 cm or longer between iPhone and this unit.	—
Noise often occurs in FM/AM broadcasting.	• Change the antenna orientation or position.	<a href="#">57</a>
	• Separate the AM loop antenna from the unit.	—
	• Use an outdoor antenna.	<a href="#">57</a>
	• Separate the antenna from other connection cables.	<a href="#">57</a>
The sounds appear to be distorted.	• Lower the volume.	<a href="#">65</a>
	• Set "Off" to the ECO Mode. When "On" or "Auto" is in the ECO Mode, the audio may be distorted when the playback volume is high.	<a href="#">206</a>
Sound cuts out when using Wi-Fi connection.	• If nearby devices cause playback to cut out due to electronic interference, switch to a wired LAN connection.	<a href="#">59</a>
	• Particularly when you play back large music files, depending on your wireless LAN environment, the playback sound may be interrupted. In this case, make the wired LAN connection.	<a href="#">198</a>



## ■ No video is shown on the TV

Symptom	Cause / Solution	Page
No picture appears.	• Check the connections for all devices.	<a href="#">48</a>
	• Insert connection cables all the way in.	—
	• Check that input connectors and output connectors are not reversely connected.	—
	• Check cables for damage.	—
	• Match the input settings to the input connector of the TV connected to this unit.	<a href="#">171</a>
	• Check that the proper input source is selected.	<a href="#">64</a>
	• Check the video input connector setting.	<a href="#">171</a>
	• Check that the resolution of the player corresponds to that of the TV.	<a href="#">213</a>
	• Check whether the TV is compatible with copyright protection (HDCP). If connected to a device not compatible with HDCP, video will not be output correctly.	<a href="#">238</a>
	• To enjoy content that is copyright protected by HDCP 2.2, use a playback device and TV compatible with HDCP 2.2 only.	—
• Use an “High Speed HDMI cable with Ethernet” or “High speed cable” that comes with the HDMI logo if you wish to playback 4K (60/50 Hz) video.	—	
No video is shown on the TV with the DVI-D connection.	• With the DVI-D connection, on some device combinations, devices may not function properly due to the copy guard copyright protection (HDCP).	<a href="#">238</a>
While the menu is being displayed, no video is shown on the TV.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The video being played will not appear in the background of the menu when the menu is operated during playback of the following video signals.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Some images of 3D video content</li> <li>- Computer resolution images (example: VGA)</li> <li>- Video with an aspect ratio other than 16:9 or 4:3</li> <li>- Some images of 4K video content</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	—





## ■ The menu screen is not displayed on the TV

Symptom	Cause / Solution	Page
The menu screen or status information screen is not displayed on the TV.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The menu screen is only displayed on this unit and a TV connected with an HDMI cable. If this unit is connected to a TV using a different video output connector, operate while watching the display on this unit.</li> </ul>	—
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The status information will not appear on the TV when the following video signals are being played.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Some images of 3D video content</li> <li>- Computer resolution images (example: VGA)</li> <li>- Video with an aspect ratio other than 16:9 or 4:3</li> <li>- Some images of 4K video content</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<a href="#">214</a>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When a 2D video is converted to a 3D video on the TV, the menu screen or status information screen is not displayed properly.</li> </ul>	<a href="#">214</a>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In the pure direct playback mode, the menu screen or status information is not displayed. Switch to a sound mode other than the pure direct mode.</li> </ul>	<a href="#">120</a>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Set the “TV Format” setting in the menu to a selection that is appropriate for the TV.</li> </ul>	<a href="#">170</a>



## ■ iPod cannot be played back

Symptom	Cause / Solution	Page
iPod cannot be connected.	• When using iPod by connecting it to the USB port, some iPod variations are not supported.	<a href="#">55</a>
	• When iPod is connected by using a USB cable other than the genuine cable, iPod may not be recognized. Use a genuine USB cable.	—
The AirPlay icon  is not displayed on iTunes / iPhone / iPod touch / iPad.	• This unit and PC / iPhone / iPod touch / iPad are not connected to the same network (LAN). Connect it to the same LAN as this unit.	<a href="#">59</a>
	• The firmware on iTunes / iPhone / iPod touch / iPad is not compatible with AirPlay. Update the firmware to the latest version.	—
Audio is not output.	• The volume on iTunes / iPhone / iPod touch / iPad is set to the minimum level. The volume on iTunes / iPhone / iPod touch / iPad is linked with the volume on this unit. Set a proper volume level.	—
	• The AirPlay playback is not performed, or this unit is not selected. Click the AirPlay icon  on the iTunes / iPhone / iPod touch / iPad screen and select this unit.	<a href="#">106</a>
Audio is interrupted during the AirPlay playback on iPhone / iPod touch / iPad.	• Quit the application running in the background of the iPhone/iPod touch/iPad, and then play using AirPlay.	—
	• Some external factors may be affecting the wireless connection. Modify the network environment by taking measures such as shortening the distance from the wireless LAN access point.	—
iTunes cannot be played back through the remote control unit.	• Enable the “Allow iTunes audio control from remote speakers” setting on iTunes. Then, you can perform playback, pause, and skip operations through the remote control unit.	—



## ■ USB memory devices cannot be played back

Symptom	Cause / Solution	Page
"No connection" is displayed.	• This unit cannot recognize the USB memory device. Disconnect and reconnect the USB memory device.	<u>55</u>
	• Mass storage class compatible USB memory devices are supported.	—
	• This unit does not support a connection through a USB hub. Connect the USB memory device directly to the USB port.	—
	• The USB memory device must be formatted to FAT16 or FAT32.	—
	• Not all USB memory devices are guaranteed to work. Some USB memory devices are not recognized. When using a type of portable hard disc drive compatible with the USB connection that requires power from an AC adapter, use the AC adapter that came with the drive.	—
Files on the USB memory device are not displayed.	• Files of a type not supported by this unit are not displayed.	<u>71</u>
	• This unit is able to display files in a maximum of eight folder layers. A maximum of 5000 files (folders) can also be displayed for each layer. Modify the folder structure of the USB memory device.	—
	• When multiple partitions exist on the USB memory device, only files on the first partition are displayed.	—
Files on a USB memory device cannot be played.	• Files are created in a format that is not supported by this unit. Check the formats supported by this unit.	<u>239</u>
	• You are attempting to play a file that is copyright protected. Files that are copyright protected cannot be played on this unit.	—
	• Playback may not be possible if the album art file size exceeds 2 MB.	—



## ■ File names on the iPod/USB memory device are not displayed properly

Symptom	Cause / Solution	Page
The file names are not displayed properly ("...", etc.).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Characters that cannot be displayed have been used. On this unit, characters that cannot be displayed are replaced with a ". (period)".</li> </ul>	—

## ■ Bluetooth cannot be played back

Symptom	Cause / Solution	Page
Bluetooth devices cannot be connected to this unit.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The Bluetooth function in the Bluetooth device has not been enabled. See the Owner's Manual of the Bluetooth device to enable the Bluetooth function.</li> </ul>	—
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Bring the Bluetooth device near to this unit.</li> </ul>	—
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The Bluetooth device cannot connect with this unit if it is not compatible with the A2DP profile.</li> </ul>	—
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Turn the power of the Bluetooth device off and on again, and then try again.</li> </ul>	—
The sound is cut off.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Bring the Bluetooth device near to this unit.</li> </ul>	—
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Remove obstructions between the Bluetooth device and this unit.</li> </ul>	—
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To prevent electromagnetic interference, locate this unit away from microwave ovens, wireless LAN devices and other Bluetooth devices.</li> </ul>	—
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Reconnect the Bluetooth device.</li> </ul>	—



## ■ The Internet radio cannot be played back

Symptom	Cause / Solution	Page
A list of broadcasting stations is not displayed.	• The LAN cable is not properly connected, or the network is disconnected. Check the connection status.	<a href="#">59</a>
	• Perform the network diagnostic mode.	—
Internet Radio cannot be played.	• The selected radio station is broadcasting in a format that is not supported by this unit. Formats that can be played back in this unit are MP3, WMA and AAC.	<a href="#">242</a>
	• The firewall function is enabled on the router. Check the firewall setting.	—
	• The IP address is not properly set.	<a href="#">201</a>
	• Check the power of the router is on.	—
	• To obtain the IP address automatically, enable the DHCP server function on the router. Also, set the DHCP setting to “On” on this unit.	<a href="#">201</a>
	• To obtain the IP address manually, set the IP address and proxy on this unit.	<a href="#">201</a>
	• Some radio stations broadcast silently during some time period. In this case, no audio is output. Wait for a while and select the same radio station, or select another radio station.	<a href="#">88</a>
Cannot connect to favorite radio stations.	• Radio station is not currently in service. Register radio stations in service.	—
For some radio stations, “Connection down” is displayed and station cannot be connected to.	• The selected radio station is not in service. Select a radio station in service.	—



## ■ Music files on PC or NAS cannot be played back

Symptom	Cause / Solution	Page
Files stored on a computer cannot be played.	• Files are stored in a non-compatible format. Record in a compatible format.	<a href="#">241</a>
	• Files that are copyright protected cannot be played on this unit.	—
	• The set's USB port cannot be used for connection to a computer.	—
	• Media sharing settings are not correct. Change media sharing settings so that the unit can access the folders on your computer.	<a href="#">92</a>
Server is not found, or it is not possible to connect to the server.	• The computer's or router's firewall is activated. Check the computer's or router's firewall settings.	—
	• Computer's power is not turned on. Turn on the power.	—
	• Server is not running. Launch the server.	—
	• Set's IP address is wrong. Check the set's IP address.	<a href="#">197</a>
Music files on PC cannot be played back.	• Even if PC is connected to the USB port on this unit, music files on it cannot be played back. Connect PC to this unit through the network.	<a href="#">59</a>
Files on PC or NAS are not displayed.	• Files of a type not supported by this unit are not displayed.	<a href="#">241</a>
Music stored on a NAS cannot be played.	• If you use a NAS in conformity with the DLNA standard, enable the DLNA server function in the NAS setting.	—
	• If you use a NAS that does not conform with the DLNA standard, play the music via a PC. Set Windows Media Player's media sharing function and add NAS to the selected play folder.	<a href="#">92</a>
	• If connection is restricted, set audio equipment as the connection target.	—

## ■ Various online services cannot be played

Symptom	Cause / Solution	Page
Various online services cannot be played.	• The online service may have been discontinued.	—





## ■ The HDMI control function does not work

Symptom	Cause / Solution	Page
The HDMI control function does not work.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Check that “HDMI Control” in the menu is set to “On”.</li></ul>	<a href="#">165</a>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• You cannot operate devices that are not compatible with the HDMI control function. In addition, depending on the connected device or the settings, the HDMI control function may not work. In this case, operate the external device directly.</li></ul>	<a href="#">131</a>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Check that the HDMI control function setting is enabled on all devices connected to this unit.</li></ul>	<a href="#">131</a>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• When you make connection related changes such as connecting an additional HDMI device, the link operation settings may be initialized. Turn off this unit and devices connected via HDMI, and turn them on again.</li></ul>	<a href="#">131</a>



## ■ Cannot connect to a wireless LAN network

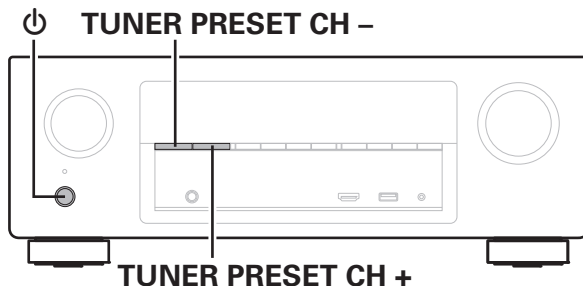
Symptom	Cause / Solution	Page
Cannot connect to the network.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The network name (SSID), password and encryption setting have not been set up correctly. Configure the network settings according to the setting details of this unit.</li> </ul>	<a href="#">200</a>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Shorten the distance from the wireless LAN access point and remove any obstructions to improve access first before re-connecting again. Place the unit away from microwave ovens and other network access points.</li> </ul>	—
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Configure the access point channel settings away from channels that are being used by other networks.</li> </ul>	—
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This unit is not compatible with WEP (TSN).</li> </ul>	—
Cannot connect to WPS.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check that the WPS mode of the router is operating.</li> </ul>	—
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the WPS button on the router and then press the “Connect” button displayed on the TV within 2 minutes.</li> </ul>	—
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A router/settings that are compatible with WPS 2.0 standards are required. Set the encryption time to “None”, “WPA-PSK (AES)” or WPA2-PSK (AES).</li> </ul>	<a href="#">200</a>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>If the router encryption method is WEP/WPA-TKIP/WPA2-TKIP, you cannot connect by using the WPS button. In this case, use the “Scan Networks” or “Manual” method to connect.</li> </ul>	—
Cannot connect to the network using iPhone/iPod touch/iPad.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Update the iPhone/iPod touch/iPad firmware to the latest version.</li> </ul>	—
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When using a USB cable to configure the settings, the iOS device firmware version needs to support iOS 5 or later. When configuring the settings via a wireless connection, iOS 7 or later needs to be supported.</li> </ul>	—



## Resetting factory settings

Perform this procedure if the display is abnormal or if operations cannot be performed.

Various settings are reset to the factory default values. Make settings again.



- 1 Turn off the power using  $\text{\textcircled{I}}$ .**
- 2 Press  $\text{\textcircled{I}}$  while simultaneously pressing TUNER PRESET CH + and TUNER PRESET CH -.**
- 3 Remove your fingers from the two buttons when "Initialized" appears on the display.**



- Before restoring the default setting, the "Save" function of the web control function can be used to store the various settings of the unit. ([☞ p. 140](#)) However, account information for network content and information on registered favorites cannot be stored.
- When deleting a Pandora account, carry out steps 1 to 3 after signing out in the Pandora service. ([☞ p. 101](#))



## About HDMI

HDMI is an abbreviation of High-Definition Multimedia Interface, which is an AV digital interface that can be connected to a TV or amplifier.

With the HDMI connection, high definition video and high quality audio formats adopted by Blu-ray Disc players (Dolby Digital Plus, Dolby TrueHD, DTS-HD, DTS-HD Master Audio) can be transmitted, which is not possible with the analog video transmission.

Furthermore, in the HDMI connection, audio and video signals can be transmitted through a single HDMI cable, while in conventional connections it is necessary to provide audio and video cables separately for connection between devices. This allows you to simplify the wiring configuration that tends to be quite complex in a home theater system.

This unit supports the following HDMI functions.

- **Deep Color**

An imaging technology supported by HDMI. Unlike RGB or YCbCr, which uses 8 bits (256 shades) per color, it can use 10 bits (1024 shades), 12 bits (4096 shades), or 16 bits (65536 shades) to produce colors in higher definition.

Both devices linked via HDMI must support Deep Color.

- **“x.v.Color”**

This function lets HDTVs display colors more accurately. It enables display with natural, vivid colors.

“x.v.Color” is trademark of Sony Corporation.

- **3D**

This unit supports input and output of 3D (3 dimensional) video signals of HDMI. To play back 3D video, you need a TV and player that provide support for the HDMI 3D function and a pair of 3D glasses.

- **4K**

This unit supports input and output of 4K (3840 x 2160 pixels) video signals of HDMI.

- **Content Type**

It automatically makes settings suitable for the video output type (content information).

- **Adobe RGB color, Adobe YCC601 color**

The color space defined by Adobe Systems Inc. Because it is a wider color space than RGB, it can produce more vivid and natural images.

- **sYCC601 color**

Each of these color spaces defines a palette of available colors that is larger than the traditional RGB color model.



- **Auto Lip Sync**

This function can automatically correct delay between the audio and video.

Use a TV that is compatible with the Auto Lip Sync function.

- **HDMI Pass Through**

Even when the power to this unit is set to standby, signals input from the HDMI input connector are output to a TV or other device that is connected to the HDMI output connector.

- **HDMI Control**

If you connect the unit and an HDMI control function compatible TV or player with an HDMI cable and then enable the HDMI control function setting on each device, the devices will be able to control each other.

- **Power off link**

This unit power off can be linked to the TV power off step.

- **Audio output destination switching**

From the TV, you can switch whether to output audio from the TV or the AV amplifier.

- **Volume adjustment**

You can adjust this unit's volume in the TV volume adjustment operation.

- **Input source switching**

You can switch this unit input sources through linkage to TV input switching.

When playing the player, this unit input source switches to the source for that player.

- **ARC (Audio Return Channel)**

This function transmits audio signals from the TV to this unit through the HDMI cable and plays back the audio from the TV on this unit based on the HDMI control function.

If a TV without the ARC function is connected via HDMI connections, video signals of the playback device connected to this unit are transmitted to the TV, but this unit can not play back the audio from the TV. If you want to enjoy surround audio for TV program, a separate audio cable connection is required.

In contrast, if a TV with the ARC function is connected via HDMI connections, no audio cable connection is required. Audio signals from the TV can be input to this unit through the HDMI cable between this unit and the TV. This function allows you to enjoy surround playback on this unit for the TV.



## ■ Supported audio formats

2-channel Linear PCM	2-channel, 32 kHz – 192 kHz, 16/20/24 bit
Multi-channel Linear PCM	7.1-channel, 32 kHz – 192 kHz, 16/20/24 bit
Bitstream	Dolby Digital / DTS / Dolby Atmos / Dolby TrueHD / Dolby Digital Plus / DTS-HD Master Audio / DTS-HD High Resolution Audio / DTS Express

## ■ Supported video signals

- 480i
- 576i
- 720p 60/50Hz
- 1080p 60/50/24Hz
- 480p
- 576p
- 1080i 60/50Hz
- 4K 60/50/30/25/24 Hz

### Copyright protection system

In order to play back digital video and audio such as BD video or DVD video via HDMI connection, both this unit and the TV or player must to support the copyright protection system known as HDCP (High-bandwidth Digital Content Protection System). HDCP is copyright protection technology comprised of data encryption and authentication of the connected AV devices. This unit supports HDCP.

- If a device that does not support HDCP is connected, video and audio are not output correctly. Read the owner's manual of your television or player for more information.



- When connecting this unit to a device that is compatible with the Deep Color, 4K and ARC functions, use a "High Speed HDMI cable with Ethernet" that bears the HDMI logo.



## Playing back a USB memory devices

- This unit is compatible with MP3 ID3-Tag (Ver. 2) standard.
- This unit can show the artwork that was embedded by using MP3 ID3-Tag Ver. 2.3 or 2.4.
- This unit is compatible with WMA META tags.
- If the image size (pixels) of an album artwork exceeds 500 × 500 (WMA/MP3/WAV/FLAC) or 349 × 349 (MPEG-4 AAC), then music may not be played back properly.

### Compatible formats

	Sampling frequency	Bit rate	Extension
WMA*1	32/44.1/48 kHz	48 – 192 kbps	.wma
MP3	32/44.1/48 kHz	32 – 320 kbps	.mp3
WAV	32/44.1/48/88.2/96/176.4/192 kHz	–	.wav
MPEG-4 AAC*1	32/44.1/48 kHz	16 – 320 kbps	.aac/ .m4a/ .mp4
FLAC	32/44.1/48/88.2/96/176.4/192 kHz	–	.flac
ALAC*2	32/44.1/48/88.2/96 kHz	–	.m4a
DSD	2.8 MHz	–	.dsf/ .dff
AIFF	32/44.1/48/88.2/96/176.4/192 kHz	–	.aif/ .aiff

- \*1 Only files that are not protected by copyright can be played on this unit. Content downloaded from pay sites on the Internet are copyright protected. Also, files encoded in WMA format when ripped from a CD, etc. on a computer may be copyright protected, depending on the computer's settings.
- \*2 Copyright [2012] [D&M Holdings, Inc.] Licensed under the Apache License, Version 2.0 (the "License"); you may not use this file except in compliance with the License. You may obtain a copy of the License at <http://www.apache.org/licenses/LICENSE-2.0>



- In ZONE2, it is not possible to play the DSD signal.



## ■ Maximum number of playable files and folder

The limits on the number of folders and files that can be displayed by this unit are as follows.

Item	Media	USB memory device
Memory capacity		FAT16 : 2 GB, FAT32 : 2 TB
Number of folder directory levels *1		8 levels
Number of folders		500
Number of files*2		5000

\*1 The limited number includes the root folder.

\*2 The allowable number of files may differ according to the USB memory device capacity and the file size.

## Playing back a Bluetooth device

This unit supports the following Bluetooth profile.

- A2DP (Advanced Audio Distribution Profile):  
When a Bluetooth device that supports this standard is connected, monaural and stereo sound data can be streamed at a high quality.
- AVRCP (Audio/Video Remote Control Profile):  
When a Bluetooth device that supports this standard is connected, the Bluetooth device can be operated from this unit.

## ■ About Bluetooth communications

Radio waves broadcast from this unit may interfere with the operation of medical devices. Make sure you turn off the power of this unit and Bluetooth device in the following locations as radio wave interference may cause malfunctions.

- Hospitals, trains, aircraft, petrol kiosks and places where flammable gases are generated
- Near automatic doors and fire alarms





## Playing back a file saved on a PC or NAS

- This unit is compatible with MP3 ID3-Tag (Ver. 2) standard.
- This unit can show the artwork that was embedded by using MP3 ID3-Tag Ver. 2.3 or 2.4.
- This unit is compatible with WMA META tags.
- If the image size (pixels) of an album artwork exceeds 500 × 500 (WMA/MP3/WAV/FLAC) or 349 × 349 (MPEG-4 AAC), then music may not be played back properly.
- A server or server software compatible with distribution in the corresponding formats is required to play music files via a network.

### ■ Specifications of supported files

	Sampling frequency	Bit rate	Extension
WMA*1	32/44.1/48 kHz	48 – 192 kbps	.wma
MP3	32/44.1/48 kHz	32 – 320 kbps	.mp3
WAV	32/44.1/48/88.2/ 96/176.4/192 kHz	–	.wav
MPEG-4 AAC*1	32/44.1/48 kHz	16 – 320 kbps	.aac/ .m4a/ .mp4
FLAC	32/44.1/48/88.2/ 96/176.4/192 kHz	–	.flac
ALAC*2	32/44.1/48/88.2/ 96 kHz	–	.m4a
DSD	2.8 MHz	–	.dsf/ .dff
AIFF	32/44.1/48/88.2/ 96/176.4/192 kHz	–	.aif/ .aiff

- \*1 Only files that are not protected by copyright can be played on this unit. Content downloaded from pay sites on the Internet are copyright protected. Also, files encoded in WMA format when ripped from a CD, etc. on a computer may be copyright protected, depending on the computer's settings.
- \*2 Copyright [2012] [D&M Holdings, Inc.] Licensed under the Apache License, Version 2.0 (the "License"); you may not use this file except in compliance with the License. You may obtain a copy of the License at <http://www.apache.org/licenses/LICENSE-2.0>



- In ZONE2, it is not possible to play the DSD signal.



## Playing back Internet Radio

### ■ Playable broadcast station specifications

	Sampling frequency	Bit rate	Extension
WMA	32/44.1/48 kHz	48 – 192 kbps	.wma
MP3	32/44.1/48 kHz	32 – 320 kbps	.mp3
MPEG-4 AAC	32/44.1/48 kHz	16 – 320 kbps	.aac/ .m4a/ .mp4

## Personal memory plus function

The most recently used settings (input mode, HDMI output mode, sound mode, tone control, channel level, MultEQ® XT, Dynamic EQ, Dynamic Volume, Restorer and audio delay, etc.) are saved for each input source.



- “Surr.Parameter” settings are stored for each sound mode.

## Last function memory

This function stores the settings which were made before going into the standby mode.



## Sound modes and channel output

- This indicates the audio output channels or surround parameters that can be set.
- ◎ This indicates the audio output channels. The output channels depend on the settings of “Speaker Config.”. (🔗 p. 187)

Sound mode	Channel output									
	Front L/R	Center	Surround L/R	Surround Back L/R	Front Height L/R	Top Front L/R	Top Middle L/R	Front Dolby Atmos Enabled L/R	Surround Dolby Atmos Enabled L/R	Subwoofer
Direct/Pure Direct (2-channel)	○									◎*4
Direct/Pure Direct (Multi-channel)	○	◎	◎	◎*1	◎*1	◎*1	◎*1	◎*1	◎*1	◎
Stereo	○									◎
Multi Ch In	○	◎	◎	◎*1	◎*3	◎*3	◎*3	◎*3	◎*3	◎
Dolby Surround	○	◎	◎	◎*2	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎
DTS Neural:X	○	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎
Dolby Digital	○	◎	◎	◎	◎*3	◎*3	◎*3	◎*3	◎*3	◎
Dolby Digital Plus	○	◎	◎	◎*1	◎*1	◎*3	◎*3	◎*3	◎*3	◎
Dolby TrueHD	○	◎	◎	◎*1	◎*1	◎*3	◎*3	◎*3	◎*3	◎
Dolby Atmos	○	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎
DTS Surround	○	◎	◎	◎	◎*3	◎*3	◎*3	◎*3	◎*3	◎
DTS 96/24	○	◎	◎	◎	◎*3	◎*3	◎*3	◎*3	◎*3	◎
DTS-HD	○	◎	◎	◎*1	◎*1	◎*3	◎*3	◎*3	◎*3	◎
DTS Express	○	◎	◎	◎	◎*3	◎*3	◎*3	◎*3	◎*3	◎
DTS:X	○	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎
Multi Ch Stereo	○	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎
Rock Arena	○	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎
Jazz Club	○	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎
Mono Movie	○	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎
Video Game	○	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎
Matrix	○	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎	◎
Virtual	○									◎

- \*1 A signal for each channel contained in an input signal is output as audio.
- \*2 Audio is not output when “Speaker Config.” - “Surround Back” in the menu is set to “1 spkr”. (🔗 p. 189)
- \*3 Audio is output when the set sound mode name contains “+ Dolby Surround”.
- \*4 Audio is output when “Subwoofer Mode” in the menu is set to “LFE+Main”. (🔗 p. 195)



## Sound modes and surround parameters

Sound mode	Surr. Parameter								
	Dialog Level	Subwoofer Level	Cinema EQ	Loudness Mngmt *1	Dynamic Comp. *2	Dialog Control *3	Low Frequency *4	Delay Time	Effect Level
Direct/Pure Direct (2-channel) *5		<input type="radio"/> *6		<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>				
Direct/Pure Direct (Multi-channel) *5	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>		<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>				
Stereo		<input type="radio"/>		<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>		<input type="radio"/>		
Multi Ch In	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>				<input type="radio"/>		
Dolby Surround	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>		<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>		<input type="radio"/>		
DTS Neural:X	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>				
Dolby Digital	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>		<input type="radio"/>		
Dolby Digital Plus	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>		<input type="radio"/>		
Dolby TrueHD	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>		<input type="radio"/>		
Dolby Atmos	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>		<input type="radio"/>		
DTS Surround	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>		<input type="radio"/>		<input type="radio"/>		
DTS 96/24	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>				<input type="radio"/>		
DTS-HD	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>				<input type="radio"/>		
DTS Express	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>				<input type="radio"/>		
DTS:X	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>			<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>		
Multi Ch Stereo	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>		<input type="radio"/>		
Rock Arena	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>		<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>		<input type="radio"/>		<input type="radio"/>
Jazz Club	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>		<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>		<input type="radio"/>		<input type="radio"/>
Mono Movie	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>		<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>		<input type="radio"/>		<input type="radio"/>
Video Game	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>		<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>		<input type="radio"/>		<input type="radio"/>
Matrix	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>		<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>		<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	
Virtual		<input type="radio"/>		<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>		<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	

\*1 - \*6: "Sound modes and surround parameters" (☞ p. 246)



Sound mode	Surr.Parameter			Tone *7	Audyssey			Restorer *10
	Room Size	Center Spread	DTS Neural:X		MultEQ® XT *8	Dynamic EQ *9	Dynamic Volume *9	
Direct/Pure Direct (2-channel) *5								
Direct/Pure Direct (Multi-channel) *5								
Stereo				<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Multi Ch In				<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Dolby Surround		<input type="radio"/>		<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
DTS Neural:X				<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Dolby Digital				<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Dolby Digital Plus				<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Dolby TrueHD				<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Dolby Atmos				<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
DTS Surround				<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
DTS 96/24				<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
DTS-HD				<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
DTS Express				<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
DTS:X			<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Multi Ch Stereo				<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Rock Arena	<input type="radio"/>			<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Jazz Club	<input type="radio"/>			<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Mono Movie	<input type="radio"/>			<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Video Game	<input type="radio"/>			<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Matrix				<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Virtual				<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>

\*5, \*7 - \*10: "Sound modes and surround parameters" (📖 p. 246)



- \*1 This item can be selected when a Dolby Digital, Dolby Digital Plus, Dolby TrueHD, Dolby Atmos, DTS:X or DTS signal is played.
- \*2 This item can be selected when a Dolby TrueHD, Dolby Digital or DTS signal is played.
- \*3 This item can be selected when a DTS:X signal that is compatible with the Dialog Control function is input.
- \*4 This item can be selected when a Dolby Digital or DTS signal or DVD-Audio is played.
- \*5 During playback in Pure Direct mode, the surround parameters are the same as in Direct mode.
- \*6 This setting is available when “Subwoofer Mode” in the menu is set to “LFE+Main”. (🔍 p. 195)
- \*7 This item cannot be set when “Dynamic EQ” is set to “On”. (🔍 p. 159)
- \*8 This item cannot be set when Audyssey® Setup (Speaker Calibration) has not been performed.
- \*9 This item cannot be set when “MultEQ® XT” is set to “Off”. (🔍 p. 159)
- \*10 This item can be set when the input signal is analog, PCM 48 kHz or 44.1 kHz.



# Types of input signals, and corresponding sound modes

- This indicates the default sound mode.
- This indicates the selectable sound mode.

Sound mode	NOTE	2-channel signal				Multi-channel signal									
		Analog / PCM	Dolby Digital (+/HD)	DTS (-HD)	PCM Multi	DTS:X	DTS-HD	DTS Express	DTS ES Dscrt6.1	DTS ES Mtrx6.1	DTS	Dolby Atmos	Dolby TrueHD	Dolby Digital Plus	Dolby Digital (EX)
DTS Surround															
DTS:X MSTR / DTS:X						●									
DTS-HD MSTR							●*3								
DTS-HD HI RES							●*4								
DTS ES Dscrt6.1	*2								●						
DTS ES Mtrx6.1	*2									●					
DTS Surround									○	○	●				
DTS 96/24											●*5				
DTS Express								●							
DTS (-HD) + Neural:X								○				○			
DTS Neural:X		○		●											
Dolby Surround															
Dolby Atmos *1												●			
Dolby TrueHD												○*6	○		
Dolby Digital+												○*7		○	
Dolby (D+) (HD) + Dolby Surround													●	●	●
Dolby Digital			●												○
Dolby Surround		○	●												

\*1 – \*7 : "Types of input signals, and corresponding sound modes" (p. 249)



Sound mode	NOTE	2-channel signal			Multi-channel signal										
		Analog / PCM	Dolby Digital (+/HD)	DTS (-HD)	PCM Multi	DTS:X	DTS-HD	DTS Express	DTS ES Dscrt6.1	DTS ES Mtrrx6.1	DTS	Dolby Atmos	Dolby TrueHD	Dolby Digital Plus	Dolby Digital (EX)
Multi Ch In															
Multi Ch In					●										
Multi Ch In + Dolby Surround					○										
Multi Ch In 7.1	*2				○*9										
Multi Ch In + Neural:X					○										
Direct															
Direct		○*8	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Pure Direct															
Pure Direct		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Original sound mode															
Multi Ch Stereo		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○
Rock Arena		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○*10	○	○	○
Jazz Club		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○*10	○	○	○
Mono Movie		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○*10	○	○	○
Video Game		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○*10	○	○	○
Matrix		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○*10	○	○	○
Virtual		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○*10	○	○	○
Stereo															
Stereo		●	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○

\*2, \*8 – \*10 : "Types of input signals, and corresponding sound modes" (☞ p. 249)





- \*1 This item can be selected when using any of the Surround Back, Front Height, Top Front, Top Middle, Front Dolby or Surround Dolby speaker.
- \*2 This item can be selected when surround back speakers are used.
- \*3 This item can be selected when the input signal is DTS-HD Master Audio.
- \*4 This item can be selected when the input signal is DTS-HD Hi Resolution.
- \*5 This item can be selected when the input signal is DTS 96/24.
- \*6 This can be selected when the Dolby Atmos signal contains the Dolby TrueHD signal.
- \*7 This can be selected when the Dolby Atmos signal contains the Dolby Digital Plus signal.
- \*8 The default sound mode for the AirPlay playback is "Direct".
- \*9 This item can be selected when the input signals contain surround back signals.
- \*10 This can be selected when the Dolby Atmos signal contains the Dolby TrueHD or Dolby Digital Plus signal.



## Explanation of terms

---

### ■ Audyssey

#### **Audyssey Dynamic EQ®**

Dynamic EQ solves the problem of deteriorating sound quality as volume is decreased by taking into account human perception and room acoustics.

Audyssey Dynamic EQ® works in tandem with Audyssey MultEQ® XT to provide well-balanced sound for every listener at any volume level.

#### **Audyssey Dynamic Volume®**

Dynamic Volume solves the problem of large variations in volume level between television programs, commercials, and between the soft and loud passages of movies. Audyssey Dynamic EQ® is integrated into Dynamic Volume so that as the playback volume is adjusted automatically, the perceived bass response, tonal balance, surround impression, and dialog clarity remain the same.

#### **Audyssey MultEQ® XT**

Audyssey MultEQ® XT is a room equalization solution that calibrates any audio system so that it can achieve optimum performance for every listener in a large listening area. Based on several room measurements, MultEQ® XT calculates an equalization solution that corrects for both time and frequency response problems in the listening area and also performs a fully automated surround system setup.

### ■ Dolby

#### **Dolby Atmos**

Introduced first in the cinema, Dolby Atmos brings a revolutionary sense of dimension and immersion to the Home Theater experience. Dolby Atmos is an adaptable and scalable object based format that reproduces audio as independent sounds (or objects) that can be accurately positioned and move dynamically throughout the 3 dimensional listening space during playback. A key ingredient of Dolby Atmos is the introduction of a height plane of sound above the listener.



### Dolby Atmos Stream

Dolby Atmos content will be delivered to your Dolby Atmos enabled AV receiver via Dolby Digital Plus or Dolby TrueHD on Blu-ray Disc, downloadable files and streaming media. A Dolby Atmos stream contains special metadata that describes the positioning of sounds within the room. This object audio data is decoded by a Dolby Atmos AV receiver and scaled for optimum playback through Home Theater speaker systems of every size and configuration.

### Dolby Digital

Dolby Digital is a multi-channel digital signal format developed by Dolby Laboratories.

A total of 5.1-channels are played: 3 front channels (“FL”, “FR” and “C”), 2 surround channels (“SL” and “SR”) and the “LFE” channel for low frequency effects.

Because of this, there is no crosstalk between channels and a realistic sound field with a “three-dimensional” feeling (sense of distance, movement and positioning) is achieved. This delivers a thrilling surround sound experience in the home.

### Dolby Digital Plus

Dolby Digital Plus is an improved Dolby Digital signal format that is compatible with up to 7.1-channels of discrete digital sound and also improves sound quality thanks to extra data bit rate performance. It is upwardly compatible with conventional Dolby Digital, so it offers greater flexibility in response to the source signal and the conditions of the playback device.

### Dolby Surround

Dolby surround is a next generation surround technology that intelligently up mixes stereo; 5.1 and 7.1 content for playback through your surround speaker system. Dolby surround is compatible with traditional speaker layouts, as well as Dolby Atmos enabled playback systems that employ in-ceiling speakers or products with Dolby speaker technology.



### **Dolby Speaker Technology (Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers)**

A convenient alternative to speakers built into the ceiling, Dolby Atmos Enabled speakers employ the ceiling above you as a reflective surface for reproducing audio in the height plane above the listener. These speakers feature a unique upward firing driver and special signal processing. These features can be built into a conventional speaker or standalone speaker module. The features minimally impact the overall speaker footprint while providing an immersive listening experience during Dolby Atmos and Dolby surround playback.

### **Dolby TrueHD**

Dolby TrueHD is a high definition audio technology developed by Dolby Laboratories, using lossless coding technology to faithfully reproduce the sound of the studio master.

This format provides the facility to support up to 8 audio channels with a sampling frequency of 96 kHz/24 bit resolution and up to 6 audio channels with a sampling frequency of 192 kHz/24 bit resolution.

## ■ DTS

### **Dialog Control**

Gives you control of the listening experience. You can lift the dialog out from the background sounds when clarity and intelligibility are desired. This requires that content has been authored to support Dialog Control.

### **DTS**

This is an abbreviation of Digital Theater System, which is a digital audio system developed by DTS. DTS delivers a powerful and dynamic surround sound experience, and is found in the world's finest movie theaters and screening rooms.

### **DTS 96/24**

DTS 96/24 is a digital audio format enabling high sound quality playback in 5.1-channels with a sampling frequency of 96 kHz and 24 bit quantization on DVD-Video.

### **DTS Digital Surround**

DTS™ Digital Surround is the standard digital surround format of DTS, Inc., compatible with a sampling frequency of 44.1 or 48 kHz and up to 5.1-channels of digital discrete surround sound.



**DTS-ES™ Discrete 6.1**

DTS-ES™ Discrete 6.1 is a 6.1-channel discrete digital audio format adding a surround back (SB) channel to the DTS digital surround sound. Decoding of conventional 5.1-channel audio signals is also possible according to the decoder.

**DTS-ES™ Matrix 6.1**

DTS-ES™ Matrix 6.1 is a 6.1-channel audio format that inserts a surround back (SB) channel to the DTS digital surround sound through matrix encoding. Decoding of conventional 5.1-channel audio signals is also possible according to the decoder.

**DTS Express**

DTS Express is an audio format supporting low bit rates (max. 5.1-channels, 24 to 256 kbps).

**DTS-HD**

This audio technology provides higher sound quality and enhanced functionality than the conventional DTS and is adopted as an optional audio for Blu-ray Disc.

This technology supports multi-channel, high data transfer speed, high sampling frequency, and lossless audio playback. Maximum 7.1-channels are supported in Blu-ray Disc.

**DTS-HD High Resolution Audio**

DTS-HD High Resolution Audio is an improved version of the conventional DTS, DTS-ES and DTS 96/24 signals formats, compatible with sampling frequencies of 96 or 48 kHz and up to 7.1-channels of discrete digital sound. High data bit rate performance provides high quality sound. This format is fully compatible with conventional products, including conventional DTS digital surround 5.1-channel data.

**DTS-HD Master Audio**

DTS-HD Master Audio is a lossless audio format created by Digital Theater System (DTS). This format provides the facility to support up to 8 audio channels with a sampling frequency of 96 kHz/24 bit resolution and up to 6 audio channels with a sampling frequency of 192 kHz/24 bit resolution. It is fully compatible with conventional products, including conventional DTS digital surround 5.1-channel data.

**DTS:X**

DTS:X produces a hemisphere of audio, where flyovers as well as ambient backgrounds become truly enveloping. DTS:X objects enable audio to move smoothly from one speaker to any other creating life-like realism.

**DTS Neural:X**

Enables an immersive audio experience for older content. DTS Neural:X can upmix your stereo, 5.1 or 7.1 content to take full advantage of all speakers in your surround sound system.



## ■ Audio

### ALAC (Apple Lossless Audio Codec)

This is a codec for lossless audio compression method developed by Apple Inc. This codec can be played back on iTunes, iPod or iPhone. Data compressed to approximately 60 – 70 % can be decompressed to exactly the same original data.

### FLAC (Free Lossless Audio Codec)

FLAC stands for Free lossless Audio Codec, and is a lossless free audio file format. Lossless means that the audio is compressed without any loss in quality.

The FLAC license is as shown below.

Copyright (C) 2000, 2001, 2002, 2003, 2004, 2005, 2006, 2007, 2008, 2009 Josh Coalson

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- Neither the name of the Xiph.org Foundation nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE FOUNDATION OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

### LFE

This is an abbreviation of Low Frequency Effect, which is an output channel that emphasizes low frequency effect sound. Surround audio is intensified by outputting 20 Hz to 120 Hz deep bass to the system subwoofer(s).

### MP3 (MPEG Audio Layer-3)

This is an internationally standardized audio data compression scheme, using the "MPEG-1" video compression standard. It compresses the data volume to about one eleventh its original size while maintaining sound quality equivalent to a music CD.



**MPEG (Moving Picture Experts Group), MPEG-2, MPEG-4**

These are the names for digital compression format standards used for the encoding of video and audio. Video standards include “MPEG-1 Video”, “MPEG-2 Video”, “MPEG-4 Visual”, “MPEG-4 AVC”. Audio standards include “MPEG-1 Audio”, “MPEG-2 Audio”, “MPEG-4 AAC”.

**WMA (Windows Media Audio)**

This is audio compression technology developed by Microsoft Corporation.

WMA data can be encoded using Windows Media® Player.

To encode WMA files, only use applications authorized by Microsoft Corporation. If you use an unauthorized application, the file may not work properly.

**Sampling frequency**

Sampling involves taking a reading of a sound wave (analog signal) at regular intervals and expressing the height of the wave at each reading in digitized format (producing a digital signal).

The number of readings taken in one second is called the “sampling frequency”. The larger the value, the closer the reproduced sound is to the original.

**Speaker impedance**

This is an AC resistance value, indicated in  $\Omega$  (ohms). Greater power can be obtained when this value is smaller.

**Dialog normalization function**

This function operates automatically during playback of Dolby Digital, Dolby Digital Plus, Dolby TrueHD, Dolby Atmos, DTS or DTS-HD sources. It automatically corrects the standard signal level for individual program sources.

**Dynamic range**

The difference between the maximum undistorted sound level and the minimum discernible level above the noise emitted by the device.

**Downmix**

This function converts the number of channels of surround audio to a lower number of channels and plays back according to the system’s configuration.



## ■ Video

### Progressive (sequential scanning)

This is a scanning system of the video signal that displays 1 frame of video as one image. Compared to the interlace system, this system provides images with less flickering and jagged edges.

## ■ Network

### AirPlay

AirPlay sends (plays) contents recorded in iTunes or on an iPhone/iPod touch/iPad to a compatible device via the network.

### DLNA

DLNA and DLNA CERTIFIED are trademarks and/or service marks of Digital Living Network Alliance. Some contents may not be compatible with other DLNA CERTIFIED® products.

### vTuner

This is a free online content server for Internet Radio.

For inquiries about this service, visit the vTuner site below.

vTuner website:

<http://www.radiodenon.com>

This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Nothing Else Matters Software and BridgeCo. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Nothing Else Matters Software and BridgeCo or an authorized subsidiary.





**WEP Key (network key)**

This is key information used for encrypting data when conducting data transfer. On this unit, the same WEP key is used for data encryption and decryption, so the same WEP key must be set on both devices in order for communications to be established between them.

**Wi-Fi®**

Wi-Fi Certification assures tested and proven interoperability by the Wi-Fi Alliance, a group certifying interoperability among wireless LAN devices.

**WPA (Wi-Fi Protected Access)**

This is a security standard established by the Wi-Fi Alliance. In addition to the conventional SSID (network name) and WEP key (network key), it also uses a user identification function and encrypting protocol for stronger security.

**WPA2 (Wi-Fi Protected Access 2)**

This is a new version of the WPA established by the Wi-Fi Alliance, compatible with more secure AES encryption.

**WPA-PSK/WPA2-PSK (Pre-shared Key)**

This is a simple authentication system for mutual authentication when a preset character string matches on the wireless LAN access point and client.

**WPS (Wi-Fi Protected Setup)**

This is a standard drawn up by the Wi-Fi Alliance to ease the task of setting up wireless LAN connections and configuring security.

**Network Names (SSID: Service Set Identifier)**

When forming wireless LAN networks, groups are formed to prevent interference, data theft, etc. These groups are based on “SSID (network names)”. For enhanced security, a WEP key is set so that communication is unavailable unless both the “SSID” and the WEP key match. This is suitable for constructing a simplified network.



## ■ Others

### HDCP

When transmitting digital signals between devices, this copyright protection technology encrypts the signals to prevent content from being copied without authorization.

### MAIN ZONE

The room where this unit is placed is called the MAIN ZONE.

### Pairing

Pairing (registration) is an operation that is required in order to connect a Bluetooth device to this unit using Bluetooth. When paired, the devices authenticate each other and can connect without mistaken connections occurring.

When using Bluetooth connection for the first time, you need to pair this unit and the Bluetooth device to be connected.

### Protection circuit

This is a function to prevent damage to devices within the power supply when an abnormality such as an overload, excess voltage occurs or over temperature for any reason.



## Trademark information

Made for



iPod



iPhone



“Made for iPod” and “Made for iPhone” mean that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod, or iPhone, respectively, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards.

Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards. Please note that the use of this accessory with iPod, or iPhone, may affect wireless performance.

AirPlay, the AirPlay logo, iPad, iPhone, iPod, iPod classic, iPod nano, iPod shuffle and iPod touch are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

- Individual users are permitted to use iPhone, iPod, iPod classic, iPod nano, iPod shuffle, and iPod touch for private copy and playback of non-copyrighted contents and contents whose copy and playback is permitted by law. Copyright infringement is prohibited by law.

**AUDYSSEY**

MULTEQ XT  
DYNAMIC VOLUME

Manufactured under license from Audyssey Laboratories™. U.S. and foreign patents pending. Audyssey MultEQ® XT, Audyssey Dynamic EQ® and Audyssey Dynamic Volume® are registered trademarks of Audyssey Laboratories.



The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by D&M Holdings Inc. is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

**DOLBY**

Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby, Dolby Atmos, Dolby Surround, and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.





For DTS patents, see <http://patents.dts.com>. Manufactured under license from DTS, Inc. DTS, the Symbol, DTS in combination with the Symbol, DTS:X, and the DTSX logo are registered trademarks or trademarks of DTS, Inc. in the United States and/or other countries. © DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.



The terms HDMI and HDMI High-Definition Multimedia Interface, and the HDMI Logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing LLC in the United States and other countries.



The Wi-Fi CERTIFIED logo is a registered trademark of the Wi-Fi Alliance.

Wi-Fi Certification provides assurance that the device has passed the interoperability test conducted by the Wi-Fi Alliance, a group that certifies interoperability among wireless LAN devices.



# Specifications

---

## ■ Audio section

- Power amplifier

**Rated output:**

Front:

80 W + 80 W (8  $\Omega$ /ohms, 20 Hz – 20 kHz with 0.08 % T.H.D.)

120 W + 120 W (6  $\Omega$ /ohms, 1 kHz with 0.7 % T.H.D.)

Center:

80 W (8  $\Omega$ /ohms, 20 Hz – 20 kHz with 0.08 % T.H.D.)

120 W (6  $\Omega$ /ohms, 1 kHz with 0.7 % T.H.D.)

Surround:

80 W + 80 W (8  $\Omega$ /ohms, 20 Hz – 20 kHz with 0.08 % T.H.D.)

120 W + 120 W (6  $\Omega$ /ohms, 1 kHz with 0.7 % T.H.D.)

Surround back:

80 W + 80 W (8  $\Omega$ /ohms, 20 Hz – 20 kHz with 0.08 % T.H.D.)

120 W + 120 W (6  $\Omega$ /ohms, 1 kHz with 0.7 % T.H.D.)

4 – 16  $\Omega$ /ohms

**Output connectors:**

- Analog

**Input sensitivity/Input impedance:**

200 mV/47 k $\Omega$ /kohms

**Frequency response:**

10 Hz – 100 kHz — +1, –3 dB (Direct mode)

**S/N:**

98 dB (IHF–A weighted, Direct mode)



## ■ Video section

- Standard video connectors

<b>Input/output level and impedance:</b>	1 Vp-p, 75 Ω/ohms
<b>Frequency response:</b>	5 Hz – 10 MHz — 0, –3 dB

## ■ Tuner section

	[FM]	[AM]
	(Note: $\mu\text{V}$ at 75 Ω/ohms, 0 dBf = $1 \times 10^{-15}$ W)	
<b>Reception frequency range:</b>	87.5 MHz – 107.9 MHz	520 kHz – 1710 kHz
<b>Effective sensitivity:</b>	1.2 $\mu\text{V}$ (12.8 dBf)	18 $\mu\text{V}$
<b>50 dB sensitivity:</b>	MONO — 2.8 $\mu\text{V}$ (20.2 dBf)	
<b>S/N ratio:</b>	MONO — 70 dB (IHF-A weighted, Direct mode) STEREO — 67 dB (IHF-A weighted, Direct mode)	
<b>Distortion:</b>	MONO — 0.7 % (1 kHz) STEREO — 1.0 % (1 kHz)	



## ■ Wireless LAN section

<b>Network type (wireless LAN standard):</b>	Conforming to IEEE 802.11b Conforming to IEEE 802.11g Conforming to IEEE 802.11n (Wi-Fi® compliant)*1
<b>Security:</b>	WEP 64 bit, WEP 128 bit WPA/WPA2-PSK (AES) WPA/WPA2-PSK (TKIP)
<b>Radio frequency:</b>	2.4 GHz
<b>No. of channels:</b>	1 – 11 ch

\*1 The Wi-Fi® CERTIFIED Logo and the Wi-Fi CERTIFIED On-Product Logo are registered trademarks of the Wi-Fi Alliance.



## ■ Bluetooth section

<b>Communications system:</b>	Bluetooth Version 2.1 + EDR (Enhanced Data Rate)
<b>Transmission power:</b>	Maximum 2.5 mW (Class 2)
<b>Maximum communication range:</b>	Approx. 32.8 ft/10 m in line of sight*2
<b>Frequency band:</b>	2.4 GHz band
<b>Modulation scheme:</b>	FHSS (Frequency-Hopping Spread Spectrum)
<b>Supported profiles:</b>	A2DP (Advanced Audio Distribution Profile) 1.2 AVRCP (Audio Video Remote Control Profile) 1.4
<b>Corresponding codec:</b>	SBC, AAC
<b>Transmission range (A2DP):</b>	20 Hz - 20,000 Hz

\*2 The actual communication range varies depending on the influence of such factors as obstructions between devices, electromagnetic waves from microwave ovens, static electricity, cordless phones, reception sensitivity, antenna performance, operating system, application software etc.

## ■ General

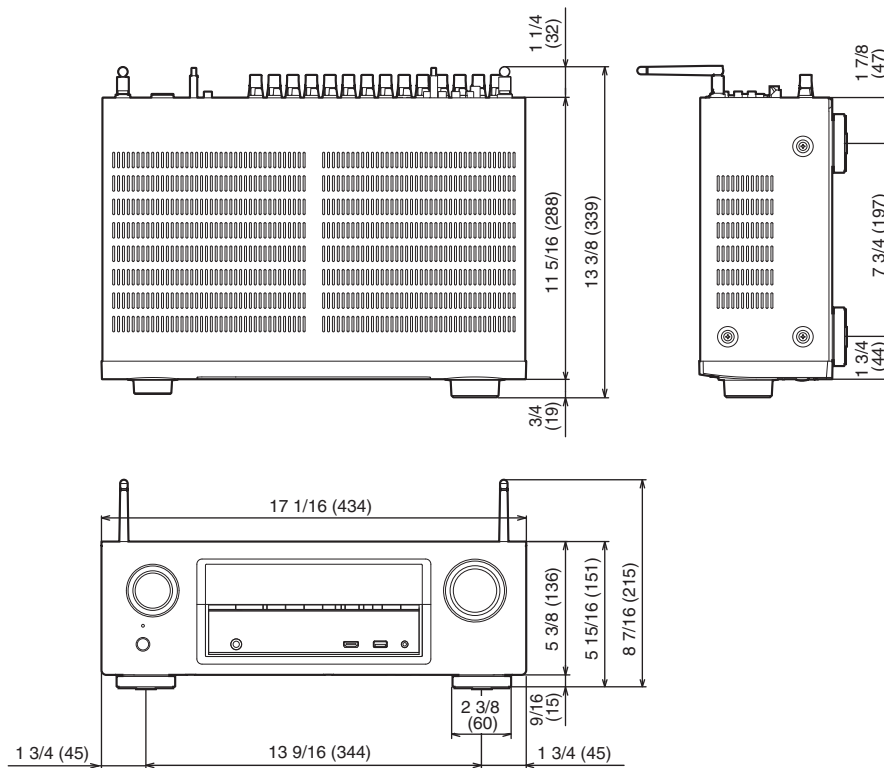
<b>Power supply:</b>	AC 120 V, 60 Hz
<b>Power consumption:</b>	430 W
<b>Power consumption in standby mode:</b>	0.1 W
<b>Power consumption in CEC standby mode:</b>	0.5 W
<b>Power consumption in network standby mode:</b>	2.7 W

For purposes of improvement, specifications and design are subject to change without notice.





## ■ Dimensions (Unit : in. (mm))



## ■ Weight : 18 lbs 12 oz (8.5 kg)

# Index

## Numerics

3D .....	236
4K .....	236
5.1-channel .....	29, 37
7.1-channel .....	29, 38

## A

AirPlay .....	105
All Zone Stereo .....	118
Audio formats .....	238, 239, 241, 242
Audio settings .....	145, 151
Audyssey Dynamic EQ® .....	250
Audyssey Dynamic Volume® .....	250
Audyssey MultEQ® XT .....	250
Audyssey settings .....	158, 177
Audyssey® Setup .....	175
Auto sound mode .....	125
Auto Standby .....	208

## B

Bi-amp .....	44
Bluetooth device .....	75
Blu-ray Disc player .....	53, 65

## C

Cable TV .....	52
----------------	----

## D

Direct sound mode .....	126
Display .....	16
DLNA .....	256
Dolby Atmos .....	250
Dolby sound mode .....	123, 251
DTS sound mode .....	124, 252
DVD player .....	53, 65

## E

ECO Mode .....	206
External control device .....	61

## F

Favorites .....	111, 112
Firmware Update .....	211
FM/AM antenna .....	57, 80
Front panel .....	13

## G

Game console .....	54
General settings .....	147, 206

## H

HDCP .....	238
HDMI Control .....	131, 165



**I**

Input Assign .....	171
Input settings .....	146, 171
Input signal .....	247
Input source .....	64
Inputting characters .....	149
Internet Radio .....	87
iPod .....	55, 66
iPod Browse Mode .....	68

**J**

JPEG .....	71, 91
------------	--------

**L**

Listening position .....	175
--------------------------	-----

**M**

Menu map .....	145
Muting .....	65

**N**

NAS .....	91
Network settings .....	146, 197

**O**

Original sound mode .....	125
---------------------------	-----

**P**

Pairing .....	75, 77
Pandora® .....	95
PC .....	91
PCM multi-channel sound mode .....	124
Protection circuit .....	258
Pure direct .....	121

**Q**

Quick select plus .....	136
-------------------------	-----

**R**

Random playback .....	70, 110
Rear panel .....	18
Remote control unit .....	21
Repeat playback .....	70, 110
Resetting factory settings .....	235
Restorer .....	156

**S**

Satellite tuner .....	52
Set-top box .....	52
Setup Assistant .....	147
SiriusXM .....	102
Sleep timer .....	134
Slideshow .....	113
Sound mode .....	120, 243, 244
Speaker connection .....	25
Speaker settings .....	146, 175
Spotify .....	108
Stereo sound mode .....	126



**T**

Text Search .....	112
Tips .....	217
Troubleshooting .....	219
TV .....	48, 49, 50

**U**

USB memory device .....	55, 71
-------------------------	--------

**V**

Video camcorder .....	54
Video Select .....	117
Video settings .....	145, 164
Volume .....	65, 115

**W**

Web control .....	139
Wi-Fi settings .....	198
Wired LAN .....	59, 197
Wireless LAN .....	60, 198

**Z**

ZONE2 .....	46, 141
-------------	---------



# License

**This section describes software license used for this unit.  
To maintain the correct content, the original (English) is used.**

## ■ Boost

<http://www.boost.org/>

Boost Software License – Version 1.0 – August 17th, 2003

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person or organization obtaining a copy of the software and accompanying documentation covered by this license (the “Software”) to use, reproduce, display, distribute, execute, and transmit the Software, and to prepare derivative works of the Software, and to permit third-parties to whom the Software is furnished to do so, all subject to the following:

The copyright notices in the Software and this entire statement, including the above license grant, this restriction and the following disclaimer, must be included in all copies of the Software, in whole or in part, and all derivative works of the Software, unless such copies or derivative works are solely in the form of machine-executable object code generated by a source language processor.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED “AS IS”, WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS OR ANYONE DISTRIBUTING THE SOFTWARE BE LIABLE FOR ANY DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

## ■ Expat

<http://www.jclark.com/xml/expat.html>

Expat License. Copyright (c) 1998, 1999, 2000 Thai Open Source Software Center Ltd

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the “Software”), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED “AS IS”, WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

## ■ FastDelegate

<http://www.codeproject.com/KB/cpp/FastDelegate.aspx>

THE WORK (AS DEFINED BELOW) IS PROVIDED UNDER THE TERMS OF THIS CODE PROJECT OPEN LICENSE (“LICENSE”). THE WORK IS PROTECTED BY COPYRIGHT AND/OR OTHER APPLICABLE LAW. ANY USE OF THE WORK OTHER THAN AS AUTHORIZED UNDER THIS LICENSE OR COPYRIGHT LAW IS PROHIBITED.

BY EXERCISING ANY RIGHTS TO THE WORK PROVIDED HEREIN, YOU ACCEPT AND AGREE TO BE BOUND BY THE TERMS OF THIS LICENSE. THE AUTHOR GRANTS YOU THE RIGHTS CONTAINED HEREIN IN CONSIDERATION OF YOUR ACCEPTANCE OF SUCH TERMS AND CONDITIONS. IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO ACCEPT AND BE BOUND BY THE TERMS OF THIS LICENSE, YOU CANNOT MAKE ANY USE OF THE WORK.



Definitions. “Articles” means, collectively, all articles written by Author which describes how the Source Code and Executable Files for the Work may be used by a user.

“Author” means the individual or entity that offers the Work under the terms of this License.

“Derivative Work” means a work based upon the Work or upon the Work and other pre-existing works.

“Executable Files” refer to the executables, binary files, configuration and any required data files included in the Work.

“Publisher” means the provider of the website, magazine, CD-ROM, DVD or other medium from or by which the Work is obtained by You.

“Source Code” refers to the collection of source code and configuration files used to create the Executable Files.

“Standard Version” refers to such a Work if it has not been modified, or has been modified in accordance with the consent of the Author, such consent being in the full discretion of the Author.

“Work” refers to the collection of files distributed by the Publisher, including the Source Code, Executable Files, binaries, data files, documentation, whitepapers and the Articles.

“You” is you, an individual or entity wishing to use the Work and exercise your rights under this License.

Fair Use/Fair Use Rights. Nothing in this License is intended to reduce, limit, or restrict any rights arising from fair use, fair dealing, first sale or other limitations on the exclusive rights of the copyright owner under copyright law or other applicable laws.

License Grant. Subject to the terms and conditions of this License, the Author hereby grants You a worldwide, royalty-free, non-exclusive, perpetual (for the duration of the applicable copyright) license to exercise the rights in the Work as stated below: You may use the standard version of the Source Code or Executable Files in Your own applications.

You may apply bug fixes, portability fixes and other modifications obtained from the Public Domain or from the Author. A Work modified in such a way shall still be considered the standard version and will be subject to this License.

You may otherwise modify Your copy of this Work (excluding the Articles) in any way to create a Derivative Work, provided that You insert a prominent notice in each changed file stating how, when and where You changed that file.

You may distribute the standard version of the Executable Files and Source Code or Derivative Work in aggregate with other (possibly commercial) programs as part of a larger (possibly commercial) software distribution.

The Articles discussing the Work published in any form by the author may not be distributed or republished without the Author’s consent. The author retains copyright to any such Articles. You may use the Executable Files and Source Code pursuant to this License but you may not repost or republish or otherwise distribute or make available the Articles, without the prior written consent of the Author.

Any subroutines or modules supplied by You and linked into the Source Code or Executable Files this Work shall not be considered part of this Work and will not be subject to the terms of this License.

Patent License. Subject to the terms and conditions of this License, each Author hereby grants to You a perpetual, worldwide, non-exclusive, no-charge, royalty-free, irrevocable (except as stated in this section) patent license to make, have made, use, import, and otherwise transfer the Work.

Restrictions. The license granted in Section 3 above is expressly made subject to and limited by the following restrictions: You agree not to remove any of the original copyright, patent, trademark, and attribution notices and associated disclaimers that may appear in the Source Code or Executable Files.

You agree not to advertise or in any way imply that this Work is a product of Your own.

The name of the Author may not be used to endorse or promote products derived from the Work without the prior written consent of the Author.

You agree not to sell, lease, or rent any part of the Work. This does not restrict you from including the Work or any part of the Work inside a larger software distribution that itself is being sold. The Work by itself, though, cannot be sold, leased or rented.



You may distribute the Executable Files and Source Code only under the terms of this License, and You must include a copy of, or the Uniform Resource Identifier for, this License with every copy of the Executable Files or Source Code You distribute and ensure that anyone receiving such Executable Files and Source Code agrees that the terms of this License apply to such Executable Files and/or Source Code. You may not offer or impose any terms on the Work that alter or restrict the terms of this License or the recipients' exercise of the rights granted hereunder. You may not sublicense the Work. You must keep intact all notices that refer to this License and to the disclaimer of warranties. You may not distribute the Executable Files or Source Code with any technological measures that control access or use of the Work in a manner inconsistent with the terms of this License.

You agree not to use the Work for illegal, immoral or improper purposes, or on pages containing illegal, immoral or improper material. The Work is subject to applicable export laws. You agree to comply with all such laws and regulations that may apply to the Work after Your receipt of the Work.

Representations, Warranties and Disclaimer. THIS WORK IS PROVIDED "AS IS", "WHERE IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE", WITHOUT ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OR GUARANTEES. YOU, THE USER, ASSUME ALL RISK IN ITS USE, INCLUDING COPYRIGHT INFRINGEMENT, PATENT INFRINGEMENT, SUITABILITY, ETC. AUTHOR EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS ALL EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION, WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, MERCHANTABLE QUALITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OR ANY WARRANTY OF TITLE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT, OR THAT THE WORK (OR ANY PORTION THEREOF) IS CORRECT, USEFUL, BUG-FREE OR FREE OF VIRUSES. YOU MUST PASS THIS DISCLAIMER ON WHENEVER YOU DISTRIBUTE THE WORK OR DERIVATIVE WORKS.

Indemnity. You agree to defend, indemnify and hold harmless the Author and the Publisher from and against any claims, suits, losses, damages, liabilities, costs, and expenses (including reasonable legal or attorneys' fees) resulting from or relating to any use of the Work by You.

Limitation on Liability. EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW, IN NO EVENT WILL THE AUTHOR OR THE PUBLISHER BE LIABLE TO YOU ON ANY LEGAL THEORY FOR ANY SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, PUNITIVE OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THIS LICENSE OR THE USE OF THE WORK OR OTHERWISE, EVEN IF THE AUTHOR OR THE PUBLISHER HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

Termination.

This License and the rights granted hereunder will terminate automatically upon any breach by You of any term of this License. Individuals or entities who have received Derivative Works from You under this License, however, will not have their licenses terminated provided such individuals or entities remain in full compliance with those licenses. Sections 1, 2, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10 and 11 will survive any termination of this License.

If You bring a copyright, trademark, patent or any other infringement claim against any contributor over infringements You claim are made by the Work, your License from such contributor to the Work ends automatically.

Subject to the above terms and conditions, this License is perpetual (for the duration of the applicable copyright in the Work). Notwithstanding the above, the Author reserves the right to release the Work under different license terms or to stop distributing the Work at any time; provided, however that any such election will not serve to withdraw this License (or any other license that has been, or is required to be, granted under the terms of this License), and this License will continue in full force and effect unless terminated as stated above.

Publisher. The parties hereby confirm that the Publisher shall not, under any circumstances, be responsible for and shall not have any liability in respect of the subject matter of this License. The Publisher makes no warranty whatsoever in connection with the Work and shall not be liable to You or any party on any legal theory for any damages whatsoever, including without limitation any general, special, incidental or consequential damages arising in connection to this license. The Publisher reserves the right to cease making the Work available to You at any time without notice

Miscellaneous

This License shall be governed by the laws of the location of the head office of the Author or if the Author is an individual, the laws of location of the principal place of residence of the Author.

If any provision of this License is invalid or unenforceable under applicable law, it shall not affect the validity or enforceability of the remainder of the terms of this License, and without further action by the parties to this License, such provision shall be reformed to the minimum extent necessary to make such provision valid and enforceable.



No term or provision of this License shall be deemed waived and no breach consented to unless such waiver or consent shall be in writing and signed by the party to be charged with such waiver or consent.

This License constitutes the entire agreement between the parties with respect to the Work licensed herein. There are no understandings, agreements or representations with respect to the Work not specified herein. The Author shall not be bound by any additional provisions that may appear in any communication from You. This License may not be modified without the mutual written agreement of the Author and You

## libogg

<http://www.xiph.org/ogg/>

Copyright (c) 2002, Xiph.org Foundation

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- Neither the name of the Xiph.org Foundation nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE FOUNDATION OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

## libvorbis

<http://www.xiph.org/vorbis/>

Copyright (c) 2002-2004 Xiph.org Foundation

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- Neither the name of the Xiph.org Foundation nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE FOUNDATION OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

## Tremolo

<http://wss.co.uk/pinknoise/tremolo>

Copyright (C) 2002 – 2009 Xiph.org Foundation Changes Copyright (C) 2009 – 2010 Robin Watts for Pinknoise Productions Ltd

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:





- Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- Neither the name of the Xiph.org Foundation nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE FOUNDATION OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

## ■ Tremor

<http://wiki.xiph.org/index.php/Tremor>

Copyright (c) 2002, Xiph.org Foundation

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- Neither the name of the Xiph.org Foundation nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE FOUNDATION OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

## ■ Mersenne Twister

<http://www.math.sci.hiroshima-u.ac.jp/~m-mat/MT/MT2002/CODES/mt19937ar.c>

Copyright (C) 1997 – 2002, Makoto Matsumoto and Takuji Nishimura,

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.

Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

The names of its contributors may not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.



THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

## ■ zlib

<http://www.zlib.net/>

zlib.h -- interface of the "zlib" general purpose compression library version 1.2.3, July 18th, 2005

Copyright (C) 1995 – 2004 Jean-loup Gailly and Mark Adler

This software is provided "as-is", without any express or implied warranty. In no event will the authors be held liable for any damages arising from the use of this software.

Permission is granted to anyone to use this software for any purpose, including commercial applications, and to alter it and redistribute it freely, subject to the following restrictions:

The origin of this software must not be misrepresented; you must not claim that you wrote the original software. If you use this software in a product, an acknowledgment in the product documentation would be appreciated but is not required.

Altered source versions must be plainly marked as such, and must not be misrepresented as being the original software.

This notice may not be removed or altered from any source distribution.

Jean-loup Gailly [jloup@gzip.org](mailto:jloup@gzip.org), Mark Adler [madler@alumni.caltech.edu](mailto:madler@alumni.caltech.edu)

## ■ cURL

<http://curl.haxx.se>

COPYRIGHT AND PERMISSION NOTICE

Copyright (c) 1996 – 2011, Daniel Stenberg, <[daniel@haxx.se](mailto:daniel@haxx.se)>.

All rights reserved.

Permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software for any purpose with or without fee is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice and this permission notice appear in all copies.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

Except as contained in this notice, the name of a copyright holder shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in this Software without prior written authorization of the copyright holder.

## ■ c-ares

<http://c-ares.haxx.se>

Copyright 1998 by the Massachusetts Institute of Technology.

Permission to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software and its documentation for any purpose and without fee is hereby granted, provided that the above copyright notice appear in all copies and that both that copyright notice and this permission notice appear in supporting documentation, and that the name of M.I.T. not be used in advertising or publicity pertaining to distribution of the software without specific, written prior permission. M.I.T. makes no representations about the suitability of this software for any purpose. It is provided "as is" without express or implied warranty.



## ■ License information for the software used in the unit

About GPL (GNU-General Public License), LGPL (GNU Lesser General Public License) License

This product uses GPL/LGPL software and software made by other companies.

After you purchase this product, you may procure, modify or distribute the source code of the GPL/LGPL software that is used in the product. Denon provides the source code based on the GPL and LPGL licenses at the actual cost upon your request to our customer service center.

However, note that we make no guarantees concerning the source code.

Please also understand that we do not offer support for the contents of the source code.





**DENON®**

[www.denon.com](http://www.denon.com)

3520 10384 00AD

Copyright © 2015 D&M Holdings Inc. All Rights Reserved.

**BOSE**<sup>®</sup>



---

# Acoustimass<sup>®</sup> 6 series V

# Acoustimass<sup>®</sup> 10 series V

## home theater speaker systems

---

Owner's Guide | Brugervejledning | Bedienungsanleitung | Gebruiksaanwijzing | Omistajan opas | Guía del usuario  
Notice d'utilisation | Manuale di istruzioni | Felhasználói útmutató | Podręcznik użytkownika | Guia dos proprietários | Bruksanvisningen

# Important Safety Information

Please read this owner's guide and save it for future reference.



The lightning flash with arrowhead symbol within an equilateral triangle alerts the user to the presence of uninsulated, dangerous voltage within the system enclosure that may be of sufficient magnitude to constitute a risk of electric shock.



The exclamation point within an equilateral triangle, as marked on the system, is intended to alert the user to the presence of important operating and maintenance instructions in this owner's guide.



## WARNINGS:

- To reduce the risk of fire or electrical shock, do not expose the product to rain or moisture.
- Do not expose this apparatus to dripping or splashing, and do not place objects filled with liquids, such as vases, on or near the apparatus. As with any electronic products, use care not to spill liquids into any part of the system. Liquids can cause a failure and/or a fire hazard.
- Do not place any naked flame sources, such as lighted candles, on or near the apparatus.



## CAUTION:

- Do not make unauthorized alterations to the product; doing so may compromise safety, regulatory compliance, system performance and may void the warranty.



**WARNING:** This product contains magnetic material. Contact your physician if you have questions on whether this might affect the operation of your implantable medical device.

## NOTES:

- Where the mains plug or appliance coupler is used as the disconnect device, such disconnect device shall remain readily operable.
- This product must be used indoors. It is neither designed nor tested for use outdoors, in recreation vehicles, or on boats.
- The speaker wire and interconnect cables included with the system are not approved for in-wall installation. Please check your local building codes for the correct type of wire and cable required for in-wall installation.



This symbol means the product must not be discarded as household waste, and should be delivered to an appropriate collection facility for recycling. Proper disposal and recycling helps protect natural resources, human health and the environment. For more information on disposal and recycling of this product, contact your local municipality, disposal service, or the shop where you bought this product.



Bose Corporation hereby declares that this product is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC and all other applicable EU directive requirements. The complete declaration of conformity can be found at: [www.Bose.com/compliance](http://www.Bose.com/compliance).

## Important Safety Instructions

1. Read these instructions.
2. Keep these instructions.
3. Heed all warnings.
4. Follow all instructions.
5. Do not use this apparatus near water.
6. Clean only with a dry cloth.
7. Do not block any ventilation openings. Install in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
8. Do not install near any heat sources such as radiators, heat registers, stoves, or other apparatus (including amplifiers) that produce heat.
9. Protect the power cord from being walked on or pinched particularly at plugs, convenience receptacles, and the point where they exit from the apparatus.
10. Only use attachments/accessories specified by the manufacturer.
11. Unplug this apparatus during lightning storms or when unused for long periods of time.
12. Refer all servicing to qualified personnel. Servicing is required when the apparatus has been damaged in a way, such as power-supply cord or plug is damaged, liquid has been spilled or objects have fallen into the apparatus, the apparatus has been exposed to rain or moisture, does not operate normally, or has been dropped.

### Names and Contents of Toxic or Hazardous Substances or Elements

Part Name	Toxic or Hazardous Substances and Elements					
	Lead (Pb)	Mercury (Hg)	Cadmium (Cd)	Hexavalent (CR(VI))	Polybrominated Biphenyl (PBB)	Polybrominated diphenylether (PBDE)
PCBs	X	0	0	0	0	0
Metal parts	X	0	0	0	0	0
Plastic parts	0	0	0	0	0	0
Speakers	X	0	0	0	0	0
Cables	X	0	0	0	0	0

0: Indicates that this toxic or hazardous substance contained in all of the homogeneous materials for this part is below the limit requirement in SJ/T 11363-2006.

X: Indicates that this toxic or hazardous substance contained in at least one of the homogeneous materials used for this part is above the limit requirement in SJ/T 11363-2006.

### Please complete and retain for your records.

The serial number and model number are located on the connector panel of the Acoustimass® module.

Serial Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Model Number: \_\_\_\_\_

Purchase date: \_\_\_\_\_

Please keep your receipt together with this owner's guide.

Blu-rat Disc™ and "Blu-Ray™" are trademarks of the Blu-Ray Disc Association.

HDMI is a trademark or registered trademark of HDMI Licensing LLC in the United States and other countries.

©2014 Bose Corporation. No part of this work may be reproduced, modified, distributed, or otherwise used without written permission.

**Introduction**

Thank You ..... 4  
 Unpacking the carton ..... 4

**Setting Up**

Placing your speakers to achieve realistic home theater sound..... 5  
     Front left and right speakers..... 6  
     Center speakers..... 6  
     Rear speakers..... 6  
     Powered Acoustimass® module..... 6  
 Making the connections ..... 7  
     Connecting speakers to the Acoustimass module ..... 7  
     Connecting the Acoustimass® module to the receiver ..... 8  
 Checking the connections ..... 9

**Using Your System**

Getting the most from your home theater speakers..... 10  
     Adjusting the bass/room compensation..... 10  
     Adjusting the LFE level ..... 10  
 Setting your digital surround sound receiver ..... 11  
     Receiving a digital audio signal..... 11  
 Setting your analog surround sound receiver ..... 11

**Reference**

Troubleshooting ..... 12  
 Customer service..... 13  
 Cleaning..... 13  
 Limited warranty information..... 13  
 Accessories ..... 13  
 Technical Information..... 14  
     Speaker driver complement..... 14  
     System power rating ..... 14  
     Connectivity ..... 14



# Introduction

## Thank You

We appreciate your choice of the Bose® Acoustimass® 6 series V or Acoustimass 10 series V home theater speaker system.

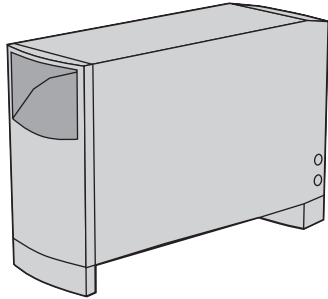
The Acoustimass 6 features five small cube speakers, while the Acoustimass 10 system features four cube speaker arrays and a center front speaker. These speakers, together with the Acoustimass module, produce a powerful and realistic home theater experience.

## Unpacking the carton

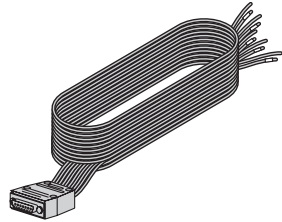
Carefully unpack the carton contents:

1. Remove the brown inner carton containing the speakers.
2. Gently roll the carton onto its side and pull out the Acoustimass module.

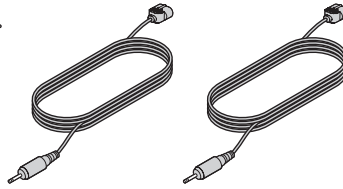
**WARNING:** To avoid injury, use care in lifting the module, which weighs roughly 30 lb (14 kg).



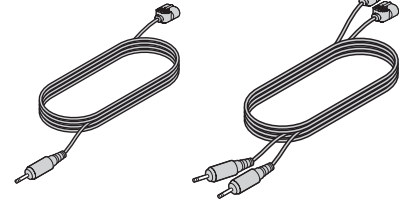
Powered acoustimass module



20-ft (6.1 m) system input cable

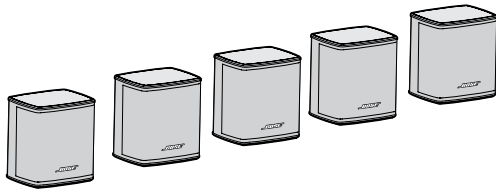


Three 20-ft (6.1 m) front speaker cables



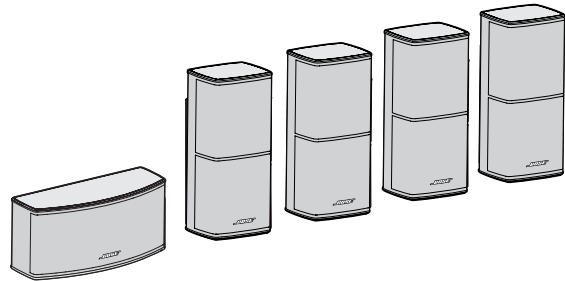
Two 50 ft (15.2 m) rear speaker cables

### With Acoustimass 6 system



Five Virtually Invisible® series II speakers

### With Acoustimass 10 system



Four Direct/Reflecting® series II speakers and one horizontal center channel speaker

### Power cord (1)



U.S./Canada



Europe



U.K./Singapore



Australia

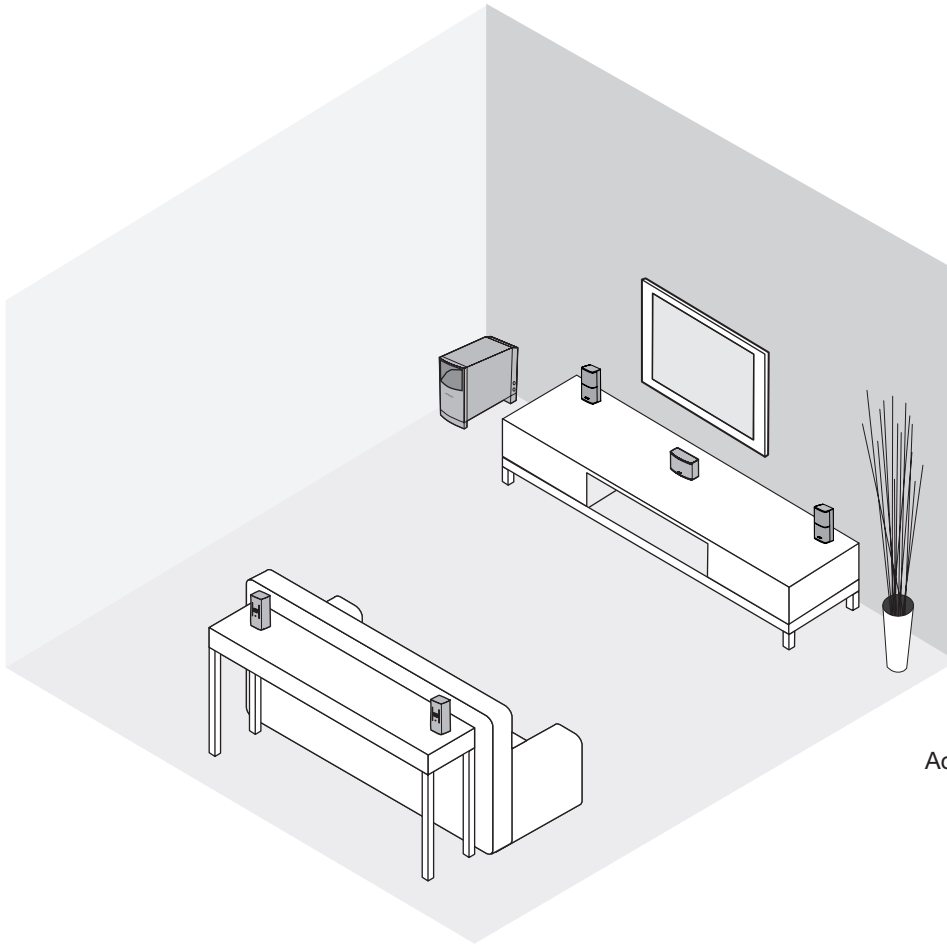
Now is a good time to record the serial number for your product on your warranty card. Save all packaging materials for possible future use.

**WARNING:** To avoid danger of suffocation, keep the plastic bags that wrap these speakers out of the reach of children.

## Placing your speakers to achieve realistic home theater sound

Keep these guidelines in mind when choosing a location for each speaker:

- The Acoustimass® module should be at least 2 feet (.6 m) from your TV set to prevent interference.
- Select a stable and level surface for each of the speakers.
- In an Acoustimass 10 system, the center channel speaker is for use at the front of the room and near the center of your TV. The other speakers are identical and can be placed interchangeably around the room.
- In the Acoustimass 6 system, all five speakers are identical and can be placed interchangeably around the room.
- The shape and size of your room and location of the furniture in it will affect your choice of speaker locations. Use the example below as a guideline for your home theater setup.



Acoustimass 10 series V system

# Setting Up

---

## Front left and right speakers

The goal for these is to create a sound image wider than the screen that seems natural to viewers sitting anywhere in the room.

- Place these two front speakers on either side of your TV.
- Keep them 6 feet (2 m) to 15 feet (5 m) apart and at least 6 inches (15 cm) away from any CRT (picture tube) TV.

## Center speaker

Sound from the center speaker should seem to come from within the picture to give the most realistic performance of on-screen action and dialogue.

- Place the center speaker above, on top of, or below your TV. Do NOT rest the weight of the TV on the speaker.
- Keep the speaker in line with the vertical center of the screen, if possible, for the most accurate reproduction of dialogue.
- Keep the speaker at least 6 inches (15 cm) away from any CRT (picture tube) TV.

## Rear speakers

While the rear (surround) speakers may deliver some dialogue, they serve primarily to deliver discrete sounds and special effects that expand the visual image. They help bring the viewer into the center of the action.

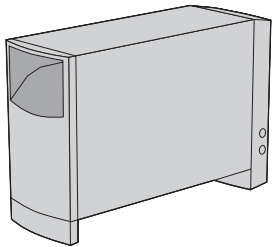
Choose locations that are practical and convenient, while considering these recommended guidelines:

- Position the left and right rear speakers so they can deliver sound on both sides of the viewer, rather than from directly behind.
- Place these speakers at the same height as the ears of a seated viewer or higher.

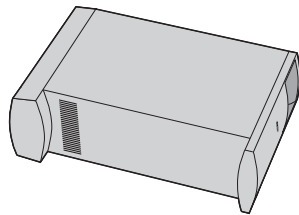
## Powered Acoustimass® module

Acoustimass speaker technology makes it difficult to locate the source of low-frequency sound from this module. So feel free to hide it from view. Place the module according to the following guidelines:

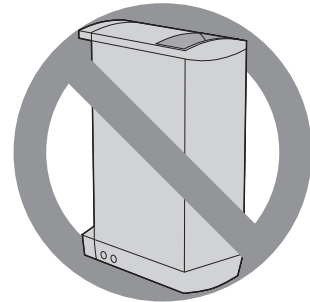
- At the same end of the room as the TV screen.
- At least 2 feet (.6 m) from your TV set to prevent interference.
- To increase bass effects, turn the front opening toward a wall; turn it away from the wall to decrease bass effects.
- Keep both the front opening and the ventilation grille on the bottom of the module at least 2 inches (5 cm) from any other surface.
- Do not block the ventilation grilles located on the bottom of the module. Impeding ventilation can cause a reduction in the bass-frequency output from the module.



Preferred



Alternate



## Making the connections

Only the Acoustimass® module connects to your receiver. The speakers all connect directly to the Acoustimass module.

**WARNING:** Do not connect the speakers to a receiver. This can result in damage to your system and possible electric shock.

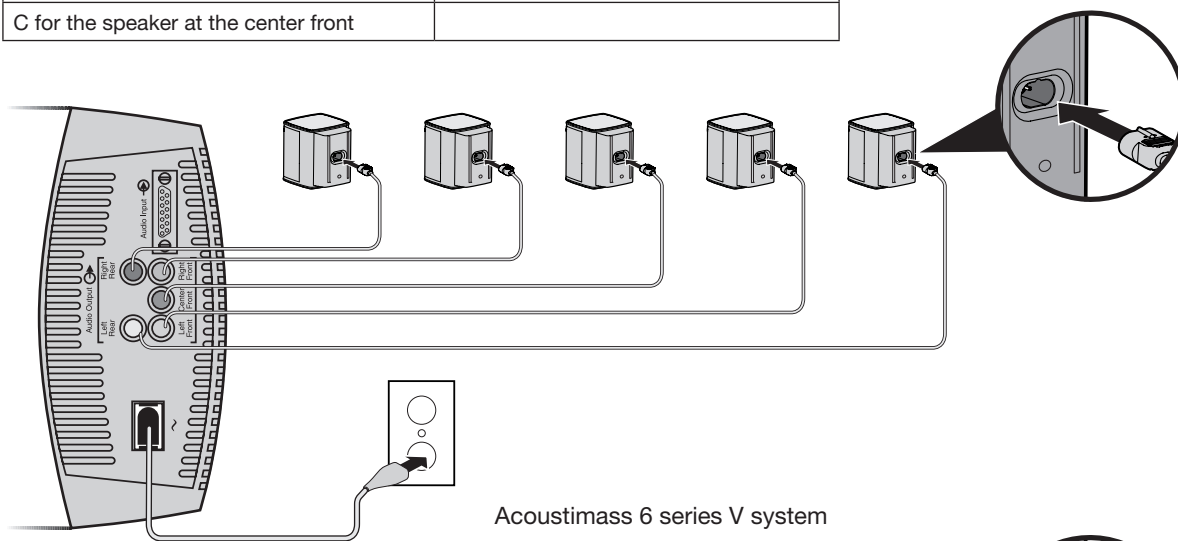
### Connecting speakers to the Acoustimass module

Insert the plug on each speaker cable into the connector on the module. Match the label on the plug to the proper connector.

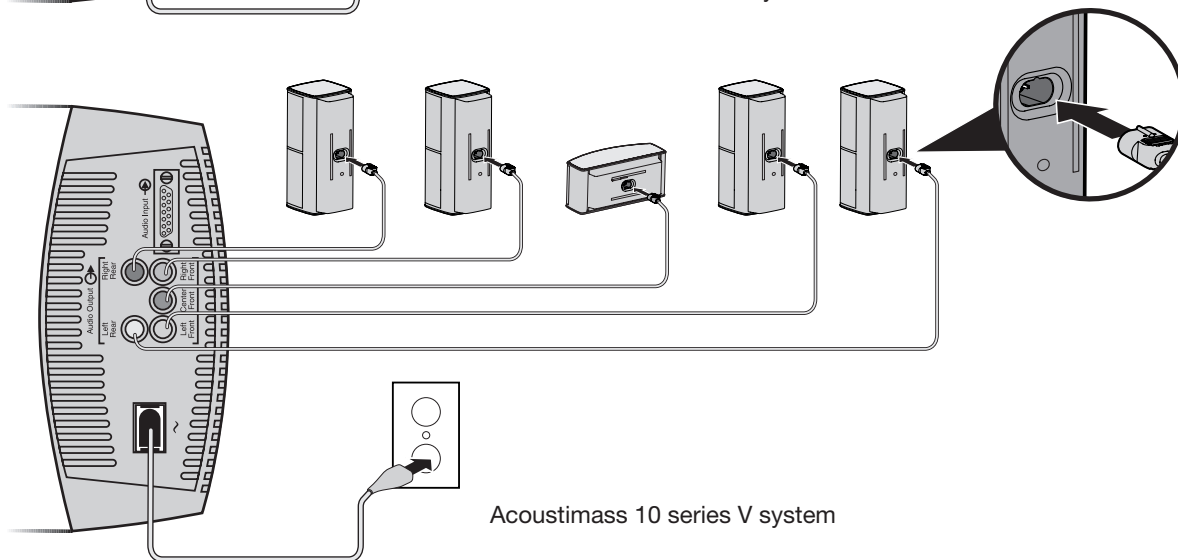
1. Use the supplied 20-ft (6.1 m) speaker cables for the three front speakers.
  - Insert the **R** plug into the connector labeled **Right Front**.
  - Insert the **C** plug into the connector labeled **Center Front**.
  - Insert the **L** plug into the connector labeled **Left Front**.
2. Use the supplied 50-ft (15.2 m) speaker cables for the speakers at the rear of your room.
  - Insert the **RR** plug into the connector labeled **Right Rear**.
  - Insert the **LR** plug into the connector labeled **Left Rear**.
3. Insert the other end of each cable into the connector on each speaker, with the label facing down.

**Note:** Find the label on each speaker cable that matches it to the proper speaker:

Speaker cable label	
L for the speaker at the left front	LR for the speaker at the left rear
R for the speaker at the right front	RR for the speaker at the right rear
C for the speaker at the center front	



Acoustimass 6 series V system



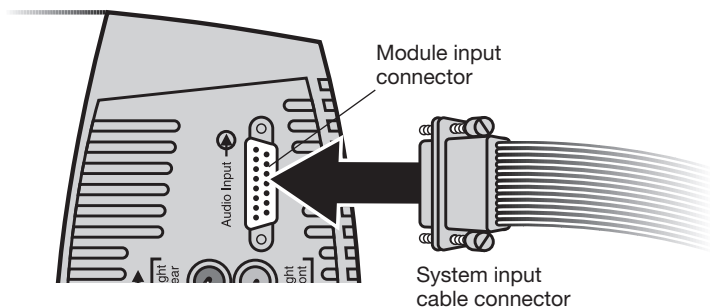
Acoustimass 10 series V system

## Setting Up

### Connecting the Acoustimass® module to the receiver

**CAUTION:** Before making these connections, turn off your receiver to prevent unwanted noises when you plug the Acoustimass® module into it.

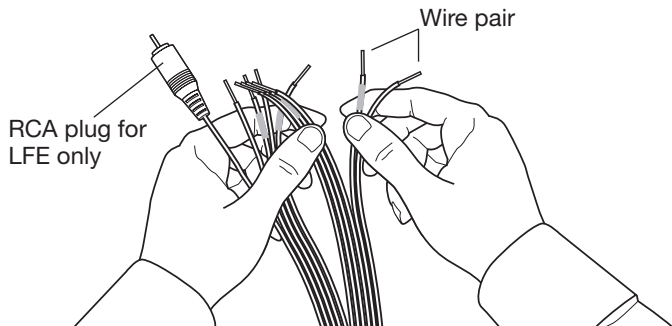
The system input cable is 20 feet (6.1 m) long and connects to your surround receiver. Unlike the speaker cables, this input cable has a multi-pin connector that inserts into the **Audio Input** connector on the module.



At the other end of the system input cable, multiple wire pairs “unzip” for easy reach and insertion into terminals on your receiver. A red collar marks a wire as positive (+) wire.

**CAUTION:** Do NOT connect your module to the TV, which lacks the required amplification.

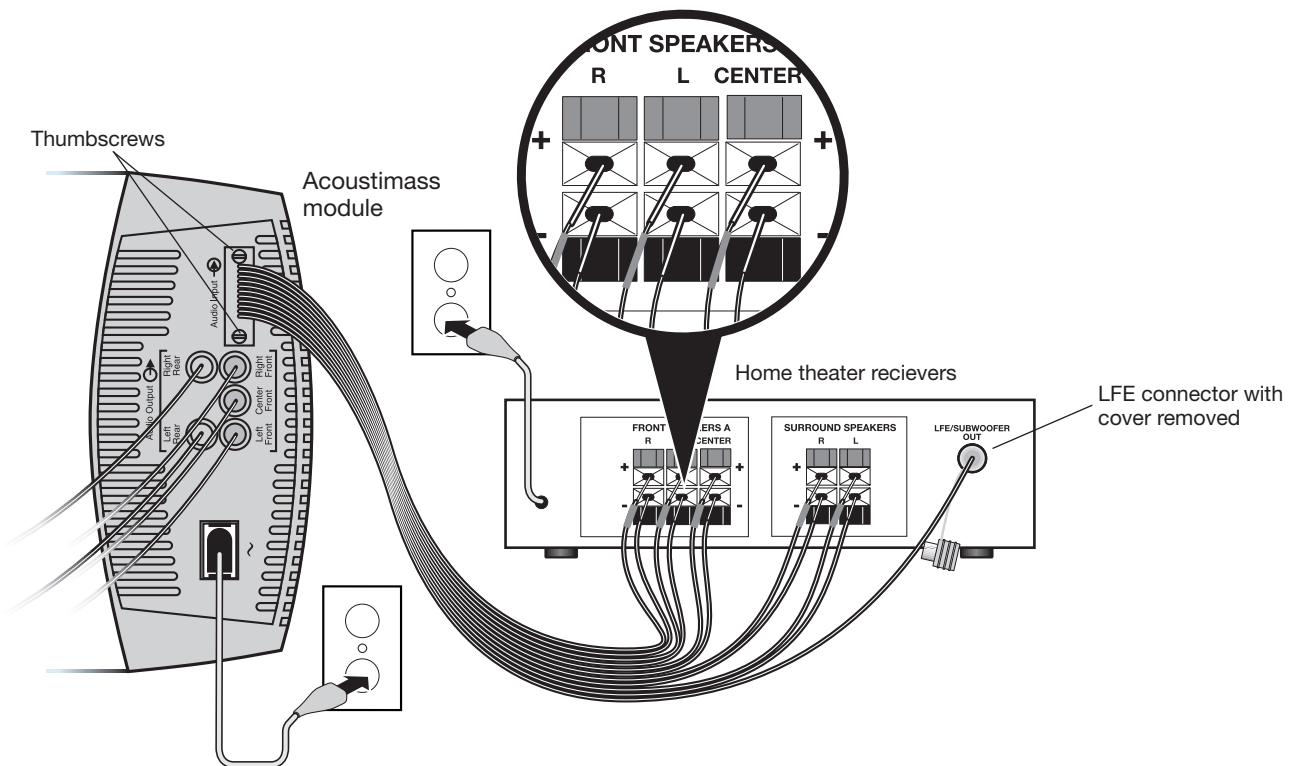
The single RCA plug at that end is for use ONLY with a receiver that handles low-frequency effects and provides an **LFE/SUBWOOFER** connector.



## To make the connections:

1. Insert the multi-pin connector on the system input cable into the input connector on the Acoustimass® module. Tighten the two thumbscrews to secure the connection.
2. Connect each wire pair on the other end of the system input cable to your surround receiver, which should have audio output terminals labeled:
  - Right, Left, and Center for the front audio channels.
  - Right Surround and Left Surround for the rear channels. The specific labels on your receiver may differ slightly.

**CAUTION:** Do not allow exposed wires to brush against each other; this could damage your receiver.
3. Carefully match the polarity of the connections (+ to + and – to –).
  - Attach each red-collared wire (+) to the appropriate + terminal.
  - Attach each plain wire (–) to the appropriate – terminal.
4. If applicable to your receiver, insert the RCA plug marked **LFE** on the system input cable into the **LFE/SUBWOOFER OUT** connector on your surround receiver. Remove the cover first.



## Checking the connections

Before plugging in the Acoustimass module, check all connections from the receiver to the module and the module to the speakers.

- Make sure all speakers are connected to the proper terminals according to their position in your room.
- Check to be sure all wires are connected to your surround receiver with the proper polarity (+ to + and – to – wires). Incorrect wiring can result in a total loss of module output.
- Correct any wiring problems before you plug in your receiver and turn it on.

When all the connections check out, plug the power cord from the Acoustimass module into an AC (mains) outlet. Plug in the receiver also.

**Note:** Bose recommends using a quality surge suppressor on all electronics equipment. Voltage variations and spikes can damage electronic components in any system. Using a high-quality suppressor (available at electronics stores) can eliminate the vast majority of failures caused by a power surge.

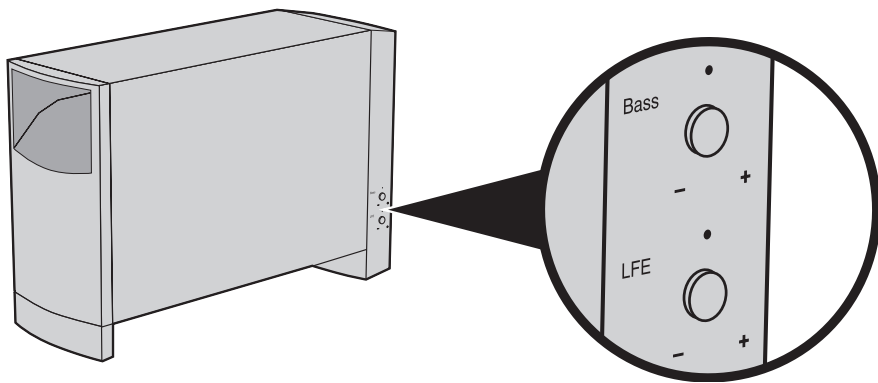
## Using Your System

### Getting the most from your home theater speakers

With system connections completed and the module plugged in, your Acoustimass® system is now ready for use.

Familiarize yourself with the controls and built-in protections that adjust the audio of this system. They offer options to suit your particular style of use and preferences.

**CAUTION:** This system provides an automatic protection circuit to help guard against damage from electrical stresses and overload of the system. At high volume levels, the circuit activates to reduce output, which slightly decreases the volume. If you notice this decrease, be aware that your system is functioning as designed. This volume reduction also indicates that power input to the system may exceed safe levels. Sustained listening at these levels is not recommended.



#### Adjusting the bass/room compensation

After placing the Acoustimass module where you want it, you can fine-tune it for that location. Make this adjustment only as necessary.

For example:

- If the system performance lacks bass, turn the BASS control (shown above) clockwise to increase the low-frequency output of the module.
- If the audio overemphasizes bass, turn the knob counter-clockwise to reduce the low-frequency output of the module.

The setting made at the factory is meant for use in the most common room arrangements.

#### Adjusting the LFE level

The LFE level control (shown above) is for use only with receivers that provide an LFE/SUBWOOFER channel.

By turning the knob, you can adjust the relative level of the low-frequency effects from movie soundtracks. Use it to match the volume level of the LFE channel with volume levels of your other speaker channels.

You can check all levels by using the “test tones” feature on your digital surround sound receiver. For details on using this feature, refer to the owner’s guide provided with your surround receiver.

## Setting your digital surround sound receiver

Speakers in your Acoustimass® 6 series V or Acoustimass 10 series V system are fully compatible with the audio output of digital surround receivers. The system's integrated signal processing supports full low-frequency reproduction from all channels.

To gain complete advantage of these system capabilities, you may want to adjust some settings on your receiver. To make changes, use the digital display menu on the receiver and refer to the list of recommended settings below.

Speaker	Receiver setting
Left and right	LARGE
Center	LARGE
Left and right surround	LARGE
LFE/Subwoofer	ON

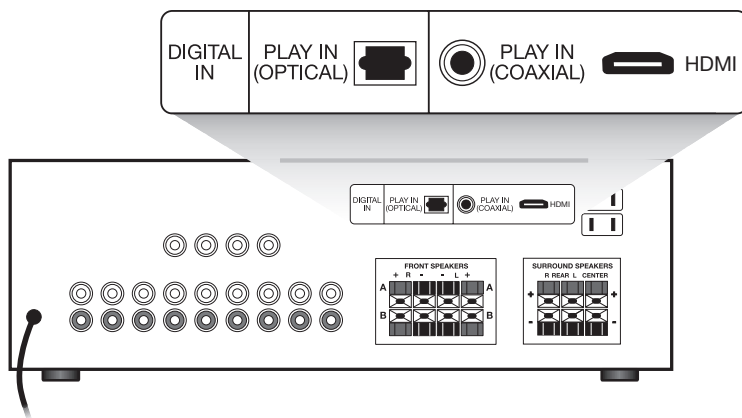
**Note:** If your receiver provides it, the LFE or Subwoofer option setting should be ON and the crossover value at the lowest number possible, which is typically 80 Hz.

### Receiving a digital audio signal

For the digital audio signal from additional sources (Blu-ray™ or DVD player, CBL/SAT box, gaming system, etc.) to reach your surround receiver, you need a digital audio connection between the additional source and receiver.

- Use either the HDMI™, Optical or Coaxial input on the receiver to connect to the digital output from the additional source. Do not use more than one connection.
- Be sure to select the digital output in the setup menu of your additional source.

For additional setup and operating information, please refer to the owner's guide that came with your surround receiver.



## Setting your analog surround sound receiver

For analog (non-digital) surround sound applications, we recommend that you set the surround sound center mode of your receiver to Wide. For instructions on how to change this setting, refer to the owner's guide provided with your surround receiver.



## Reference

# Troubleshooting

If you have a problem with your Acoustimass® speaker system, turn off your sound source and try the following solutions. If you still have a problem, contact your Bose® dealer to arrange for service. To contact Bose directly, refer to the contact sheet in the carton.

Problem	What to do
System does not function at all	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Make sure the receiver and powered Acoustimass module are plugged into an operating AC outlet and that the receiver is turned on.</li><li>• Be sure to select an audio source on the receiver (Blu-ray or DVD player, CBL/SAT box, gaming system, etc.).</li></ul>
No sound	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Increase the volume.</li><li>• Disconnect any headphones.</li><li>• Check the speaker connections at the bass module, receiver, and speakers.</li><li>• Make sure that both the powered Acoustimass module and the receiver are plugged in.</li><li>• For digital sound, be sure an HDMI, coaxial or optical cable connects the digital output of the audio source with the digital input on your receiver.</li><li>• Be sure the audio source selected is correct. For example, select DVD audio on your receiver to hear the DVD sound.</li></ul>
No surround sound	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Make sure the source material contains surround sound.</li><li>• If you are using the Dolby Pro-Logic mode on your receiver, make sure surround sound is turned on.</li><li>• Be sure the source material (Blu-ray™ or DVD player, CBL/SAT box, gaming system, etc.) is Dolby Digital encoded.</li><li>• Be sure your receiver is processing a signal from a stereo TV, laserdisc, Blu-ray player or DVD player, or other surround sound source.</li><li>• If you are using digital programming, verify that the settings are correct at the receiver.</li></ul>
No bass	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Be sure the speaker connections from the receiver to the amplifier are in the correct phase, red-collared wire to red connector (+ to + and – to –).</li><li>• Verify that the speaker size in the receiver is set to large.</li></ul>
Not enough or too much bass	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Move your Acoustimass module closer to a wall or corner to increase bass. Move it farther from a wall or corner to decrease bass.</li><li>• Adjust the LFE level or Room Compensation control.</li></ul>
Sound is distorted	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Make sure speaker wire is not damaged.</li><li>• Reduce the volume of external components connected to the receiver.</li></ul>

---

## Customer service

---

For additional help in solving problems, contact the Bose® Customer Service office appropriate to your area. See the contact sheet in the carton.

## Cleaning

---

The cabinets of your Acoustimass® speaker system may be cleaned only with a soft dry cloth. Do not use any sprays near the system or allow liquids to spill into any openings. Also, do not use any solvents, chemicals, or cleaning solutions containing alcohol, ammonia, or abrasives.

The grille assemblies on the speakers may be carefully vacuumed, if necessary. Please note that the drivers are located directly behind the grille and are easily damaged if reasonable care is not taken.

## Limited warranty information

---

Your Acoustimass® speaker system is covered by a limited warranty. Details of the warranty are provided on the warranty card that came with your system. Please fill out the information section on the card and mail it to Bose. Failure to do so, however, does not affect your rights.

The warranty information provided with this product does not apply in Australia or New Zealand. See our website at [www.bose.com.au/warranty](http://www.bose.com.au/warranty) or [www.bose.com.nz/warranty](http://www.bose.com.nz/warranty) for details of the Australia and New Zealand warranty.

## Accessories

---

You can place system speakers on wall brackets, table stands or floor stands. To purchase these accessories, contact your local Bose® dealer or visit [www.Bose.com](http://www.Bose.com).

For the following accessories:

- Input cable adapter for use with in-wall wiring from the Acoustimass module to the receiver
- 20-ft (6.1 m) extension cable for use between the Acoustimass module and the receiver
- Speaker cable adapters for use with in-wall wiring

Contact your authorized Bose dealer. Or to contact Bose directly, refer to the contact sheet in the carton.

### Speaker driver complement

#### Acoustimass® 10 system:

- Cube speaker arrays and center front speaker:  
Two 2.5" (6.35 cm) Twiddler™ speakers
- Powered Acoustimass module:  
Two 5.25" (13 cm) woofers

#### Acoustimass 6 system:

- Cube speakers:  
One 2.5" (6.35 cm) Twiddler™ speaker
- Powered Acoustimass module:  
One 5.25" (13 cm) woofers

### System power rating

#### Acoustimass 10 system:

U.S./Canada: 100-127V ~ 50/60 Hz 270W

Europe/Australia: 220-240V ~ 50/60 Hz 270W

#### Acoustimass 6 system:

U.S./Canada: 100-127V ~ 50/60 Hz 135W

Europe/Australia: 220-240V ~ 50/60 Hz 135W

### Connectivity

#### Acoustimass 10 system:

Compatible with A/V receivers and amplifiers rated from 10 to 200 watts per channel, rated from 4 to 8 ohms

#### Acoustimass 6 system:

Compatible with A/V receivers and amplifiers rated from 10 to 150 watts per channel, rated from 4 to 8 ohms

#### Acoustimass 10 system:

Cube speaker array and center front speaker: 2.2 lb (1kg) each

cube speaker array: 7.4"H x 3.2"W x 3.3"D (15.7 cm x 7.9 cm x 10.2 cm)

center front speaker: 3.4"H x 7.3"W x 3.2"D (15.7 cm x 7.9 cm x 10.2 cm)

Module: 35 lb (15.8 kg)

16.3"H x 8.1"W x 25.3"D (41.4 cm x 20.6 cm x 64.3 cm)

#### Acoustimass 6 system:

Cube speaker: 1.18 lb (0.45 kg) each

3.7"H x 3.2"W x 3.3"D (9.5 cm x 8.3 cm x 8.4 cm)

Module: 27 lb (12.2 kg)

16.3"H x 8.1"W x 22.3"D (41.4 cm x 20.6 cm x 56.6 cm)



# Vigtige sikkerhedsoplysninger

## Læs venligst denne brugervejledning, og gem den, så du har adgang til den senere.



Lynet med et pilehoved indeni en ligesidet trekant gør brugeren opmærksom på, at der i systemets kabinet kan være uisoleret farlig spænding, som kan være så kraftig, at der er risiko for elektrisk stød.



Mærket med et udårbstegn i en ligesidet trekant skal gøre brugeren opmærksom på vigtige betjenings- og vedligeholdelsesinstruktioner i denne brugervejledning.



### ADVARSLER:

- Produktet må ikke udsættes for regn eller fugtighed af hensyn til risikoen for brand eller elektrisk stød.
- Udsæt ikke dette apparat for dryp eller stænk, og placer ikke genstande, der er fyldt med væske, på eller nær ved apparatet. Som ved alle elektriske apparater skal du passe på ikke at spilde væske på nogen af systemdelene. Væsker kan forårsage fejl i systemet og/eller medføre fare for brand.
- Placer ikke nogen form for åben ild (f.eks. stearinlys) på eller tæt ved apparatet.



### FORSIGTIG!

- Foretag ikke nogen uautoriserede ændringer af produktet. Dette kan kompromittere sikkerheden, regeloverholdelsen og systemets ydeevne og kan medføre, at garantien bortfalder.



**ADVARSEL:** Dette produkt indeholder magnetisk materiale. Kontakt din læge, hvis du er i tvivl om, hvorvidt dette kan påvirke din implanterbare medicinske enheds funktion.

### NOTER:

- Hvis netstikket eller stikdåsen anvendes som afbryder, skal denne afbryder være let at komme til.
- Dette produkt skal anvendes inden døre. Det er hverken designet eller testet til udendørs brug, brug i fritidskøretøjer eller i både.
- Den højttalerledning og de tilslutningskabler, som følger med systemet, er ikke godkendt til installation i væggen. Kontroller de lokale bygningsregler for at få oplysninger om den type ledning og kabel, der kræves ved installation i væggen.



Dette symbol betyder, at produktet ikke må smides ud som husholdningsaffald og bør indleveres til en passende indsamlingsordning med henblik på genanvendelse. Korrekt bortskaffelse og genanvendelse bidrager til at beskyttelse naturressourcer, menneskets sundhed og miljøet. Hvis du ønsker flere oplysninger om bortskaffelse og genanvendelse af dette produkt, kan du kontakte din kommune, dit renovationsselskab eller den butik, hvor du har købt dette produkt.



Bose Corporation erklærer hermed, at dette produkt stemmer overens med de væsentlige krav og andre relevante bestemmelser i direktiv 1999/5/EF og alle andre relevante krav i EU-direktiver. Den fulde overensstemmelseserklæring kan findes på [www.Bose.com/compliance](http://www.Bose.com/compliance).

## Vigtige sikkerhedsinstruktioner

1. Læs disse instruktioner.
2. Gem disse instruktioner.
3. Ret dig efter alle advarsler.
4. Følg alle instruktioner.
5. Anvend ikke dette apparat i nærheden af vand.
6. Rengør kun med en tør klud.
7. Undgå at blokere ventilationsåbningerne. Installer i overensstemmelse med producentens instruktioner.
8. Installer ikke i nærheden af varmekilder som f.eks. radiatorer, varmeovne, komfurer eller andre apparater (herunder forstærkere), der producerer varme.
9. Beskyt netledningen mod at blive trådt på eller klemt, specielt ved stikket, stikkontakter, og hvor den kommer ud af udstyret.
10. Brug kun tilslutningsudstyr/tilbehør, der er angivet af producenten.
11. Afbryd strømmen til apparatet under tordenvejr, eller når det står ubrugt i lang tid.
12. Overlad al service til kvalificeret servicepersonale. Indlevering til service er nødvendig, hvis apparatet på nogen måde er beskadiget, f.eks. hvis netledningen eller stikket er beskadiget, hvis der er blevet spildt væske, hvis der er kommet genstande ind i apparatet, hvis apparatet er blevet udsat for regn eller fugt, hvis det ikke virker normalt, eller hvis det er blevet tabt.

### Navne på og indhold af giftige eller farlige stoffer eller elementer

Delens navn	Giftige eller farlige stoffer og elementer					
	Bly (Pb)	Kviksølv (Hg)	Cadmium (Cd)	Hexavalent (CR(VI))	Polybromeret biphenyl (PBB)	Polybromeret diphenylether (PBDE)
PCB'er	X	0	0	0	0	0
Metaldele	X	0	0	0	0	0
Plastikdele	0	0	0	0	0	0
Højttalere	X	0	0	0	0	0
Kabler	X	0	0	0	0	0

0: Angiver, at dette giftige eller skadelige stof, som findes i alle de homogene materialer for denne del, er under grænsekravet i SJ/T 11363-2006.

X: Angiver, at dette giftige eller skadelige stof, som findes i mindst ét af de homogene materialer, der anvendes til denne del, er over grænsekravet i SJ/T 11363-2006.

### Bedes udfyldt og opbevaret, så du har det til rådighed.

Serienummeret og modelnummeret findes på Acoustimass®-modulets stikpanel.

Serienummer: \_\_\_\_\_

Modelnummer: \_\_\_\_\_

Købsdato: \_\_\_\_\_

Opbevar kvitteringen sammen med denne brugervejledning.

Blu-ray Disc™ og Blu-ray™ er varemærker, som tilhører Blu-ray Disc Association.

HDMI er et varemærke eller et registreret varemærke, som tilhører HDMI Licensing LLC i USA og andre lande.

©2014 Bose Corporation. Gengivelse, ændring, distribution eller anden brug af denne publikation eller dele deraf er forbudt uden skriftlig tilladelse.

**Indledning**

Tak .....	4
Udpakning af kassen .....	4

**Opstilling**

Placering af højttalerne for opnåelse af realistisk hjemmebiograflyd .....	5
Venstre og højre fronthøjttaler .....	6
Midterste højttaler.....	6
Baghøjttalere .....	6
Elektrisk Acoustimass®-modul .....	6
Foretagelse af tilslutninger .....	7
Tilslutning af højttalerne til Acoustimass-modulet.....	7
Tilslutning af Acoustimass®-modulet til modtageren .....	8
Kontrol af tilslutningerne .....	9

**Sådan bruges systemet**

Få mest muligt ud af din hjemmebiografs højttalere.....	10
Justering af bassen/rumkompensation.....	10
Justering af LFE-niveauet .....	10
Indstilling af den digitale surroundsound-modtager.....	11
Modtagelse af et digitalt lydsignal.....	11
Indstilling af den analoge surroundsound-modtager .....	11

**Reference**

Fejlfinding .....	12
Kundeservice.....	13
Rengøring.....	13
Information om den begrænsede garanti .....	13
Tilbehør .....	13
Tekniske oplysninger .....	14
Højttalerdriverkomplement.....	14
Systemets nominelle effekt .....	14
Forbindelsesmuligheder.....	14

# Indledning

## Tak

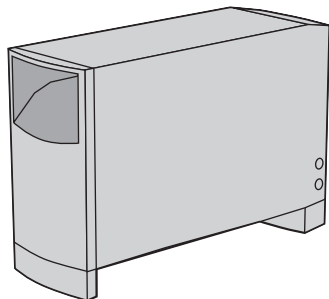
Det glæder os, at du har valgt Bose® Acoustimass® 6 series V eller Acoustimass 10 series V højttalersystemet til hjemmebiograf. Acoustimass 6 har fem små kubehøjttalere, mens Acoustimass 10-systemet har fire rækker med kubehøjttalere og en midterste fronthøjttaler. Disse højttalere leveres sammen med Acoustimass-modulet en effektiv og realistisk hjemmebiografoplevelse.

## Udpakning af kassen

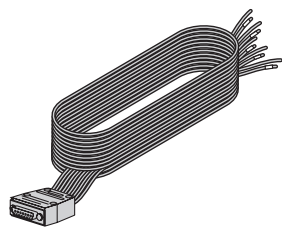
Tag forsigtigt indholdet ud af kassen:

1. Fjern den indvendige brune kasse, der indeholder højttalerne.
2. Vip forsigtigt kassen om på siden, og træk Acoustimass-modulet ud.

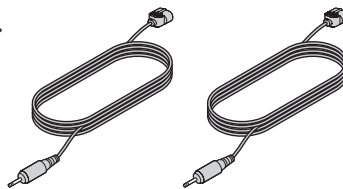
**ADVARSEL:** Vær forsigtig, så du undgår at komme til skade, når du løfter modulet, som vejer ca. 14 kg.



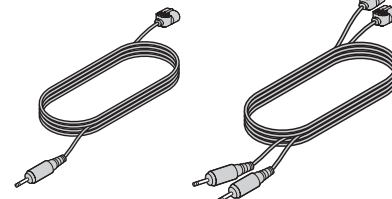
Elektrisk Acoustimass-modul



6,1 m systemindgangskabel

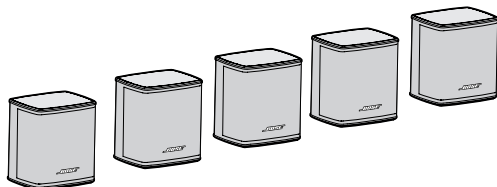


Tre 6,1 m fronthøjttalerkabler



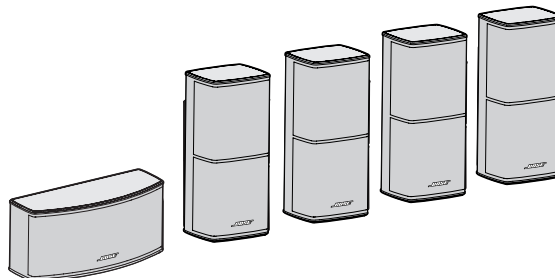
To 15,2 m baghøjttalerkabler

### Med Acoustimass 6 system



Fem Virtually Invisible® series II-højttalere

### Med Acoustimass 10 system



Fire Direct/Reflecting® series II-højttalere og en vandret centerhøjttaler

### Netkabel (1)



USA/Canada



Europa



UK/Singapore



Australien

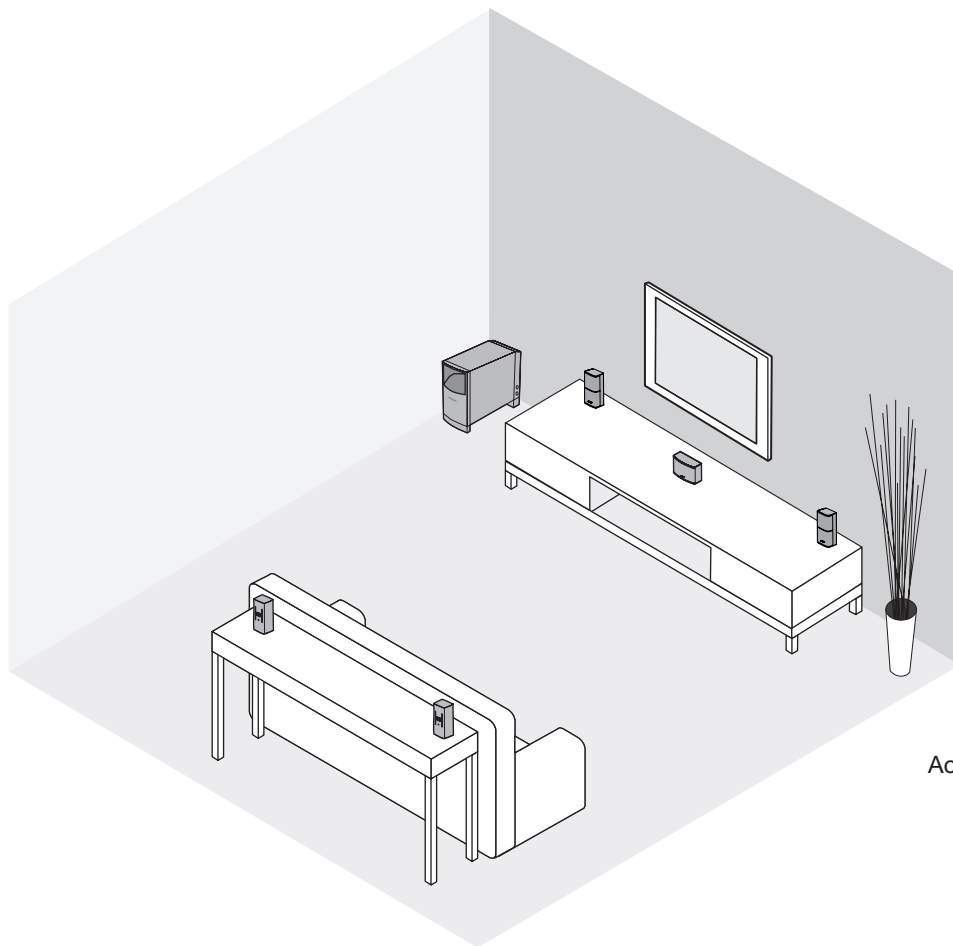
Nu er det et godt tidspunkt at skrive produktets serienummer på dit garantikort. Gem al emballage til eventuel senere brug.

**ADVARSEL:** Opbevar de plastikposer, som højttalerne er pakket ind i, utilgængelige for børn for at undgå risiko for kvælning.

## Placering af højttalerne for opnåelse af realistisk hjemmebiograflyd

Tag disse retningslinjer i betragtning, når du vælger en placering til hver højttaler.

- Acoustimass®-modulet skal være mindst 0,6 m fra dit tv for at forhindre interferens.
- Vælg en stabil og plan overflade til hver af højttalerne.
- I et Acoustimass 10-system er centerhøjttaleren beregnet til brug forrest i rummet og i nærheden af midten af dit tv. Den andre højttalere er identiske, og det er lige meget, hvilken der placeres hvor i rummet.
- I Acoustimass 6-systemet er alle fem højttalere identiske, og det er lige meget, hvilken der placeres hvor i rummet.
- Dit rums facon og størrelse samt møblernes placering vil påvirke, hvor du vælger at placere højttalerne. Brug nedenstående eksempel som en retningslinje til opsætning af din hjemmebiograf.



Acoustimass 10 Series V-system



# Opstilling

## Venstre og højre fronthøjtaler

Målet er at skabe et lydbillede, der er bredere end skærmen, og som virker naturligt for seere, der sidder et eller andet sted i rummet.

- Placer disse to forreste højttalere på hver side af tv'et.
- Hold dem 2 meter til 5 meter fra hinanden og mindst 15 cm væk fra ethvert CRT-tv (billedrør).

## Midterste højttaler

Lyden fra den midterste højttaler skal synes at komme fra selve billedet for at give den mest realistiske lyd for handlingen og dialogen på skærmen.

- Placer den midterste højttaler over, oven på eller under tv'et. Lad IKKE tv'et hvile oven på højttaleren.
- Hold højttaleren på linje med skærmens lodrette midte, hvis det er muligt, for at give den mest nøjagtige gengivelse af dialogen.
- Hold højttaleren mindst 15 cm væk fra et CRT-tv (billedrør).

## Baghøjtalere

Selvom de bagerste (surround) højttalere kan levere nogen dialog, er deres primære formål at levere diskrete lyde og specialeffekter, der udvider det visuelle billede. De hjælper med at bringe seeren ind midt i handlingen.

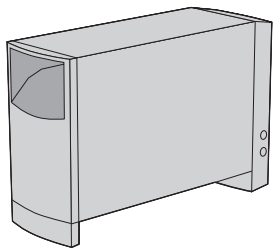
Vælg placeringer, der er praktiske og passende, mens du tager følgende anbefalede retningslinjer i betragtning:

- Placer den venstre og højre baghøjtaler, så de leverer lyd på begge sider af seeren, og ikke fra direkte bag ham eller hende.
- Disse højttalere bør placeres i samme højde som ørerne på en siddende seer eller hører.

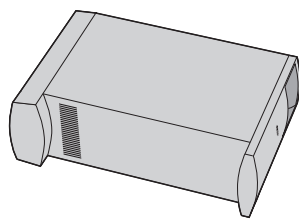
## Elektrisk Acoustimass®-modul

Acoustimass-højtalerteknologien gør det svært at lokalisere, hvor dette moduls lavfrekvenslyd kommer fra. Så gem det blot et sted, hvor det ikke ses. Placer modulet i overensstemmelse med følgende retningslinjer:

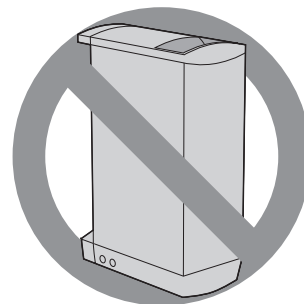
- I samme ende af rummet som tv-højtalerne.
- Hold modulet mindst 0,6 m fra dit tv for at forhindre interferens.
- For at forøge baseeffekterne skal den forreste åbning vendes mod en væg. Eller drej den bort fra væggen for at mindske baseeffekten.
- Hold både frontåbningen og ventilationsgitteret i bunden af modulet mindst 5 cm væk fra andre overflader.
- Undlad at blokere de ventilationsgittere, der sidder i bunden af modulet. Hindring af ventilation kan forårsage en reduktion af basfrekvensudgangen fra modulet.



Foretrukket



Alternativ



## Foretagelse af tilslutninger

Kun Acoustimass®-modulet tilsluttes direkte til din modtager. Alle højttalere tilsluttes direkte til Acoustimass-modulet.

**ADVARSEL:** Tilslut ikke højttalerne til en modtager. Dette kan resultere i skader på dit system og elektrisk stød.

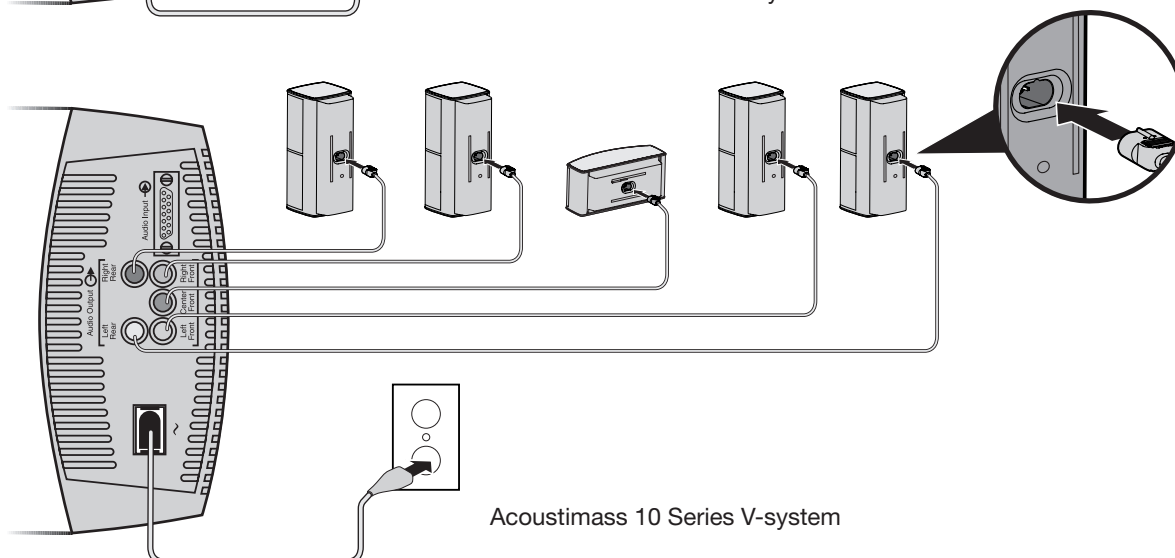
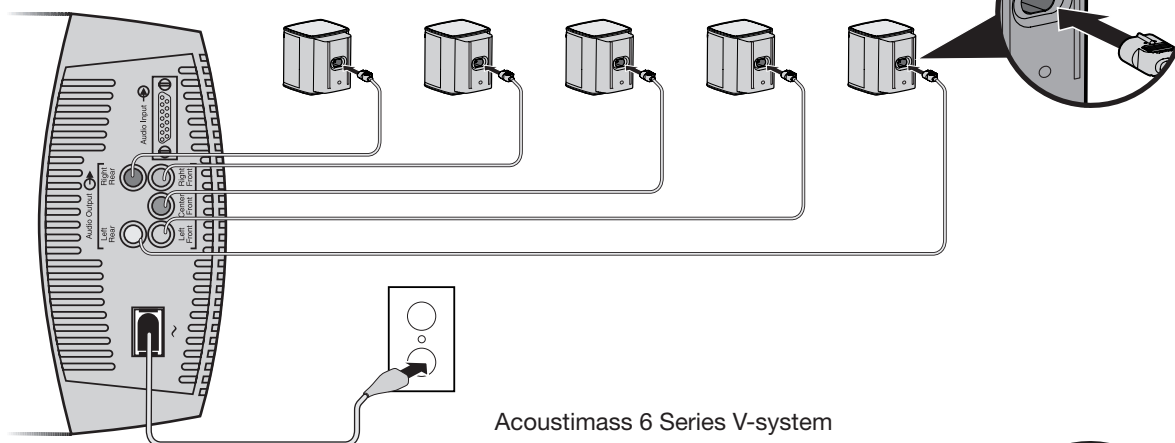
### Tilslutning af højttalerne til Acoustimass-modulet

Sæt stikket på hvert højttalerkabel ind i stikket på modulet. Sørg for, at mærket på stikket passer til det rigtige stik.

1. Brug de medfølgende 6,1 meter lange højttalerkabler til de tre fronthøjttalere.
  - Sæt **R** stikket i stikket, der er mærket **Right Front**
  - Sæt **C** stikket i stikket, der er mærket **Center Front**.
  - Sæt **L** stikket i stikket, der er mærket **Left Front**.
2. Brug de medfølgende 15,2 meter lange højttalerkabler til højttalerne bagest i rummet.
  - Sæt **RR** stikket i stikket, der er mærket **Right Rear**.
  - Sæt **LR** stikket i stikket, der er mærket **Left Rear**.
3. Sæt den anden ende af hvert kabel i stikket på hver højttaler, hvor mærket vender nedad.

**Bemærk:** Find det mærke på hvert højttalerkabel, der passer til den rigtige højttaler:

Mærke på højttalerkabel	
L for højttaleren forrest til venstre	LR for højttaleren bagest til venstre
R for højttaleren forrest til højre	RR for højttaleren bagest til højre
C for højttaleren forrest i midten	

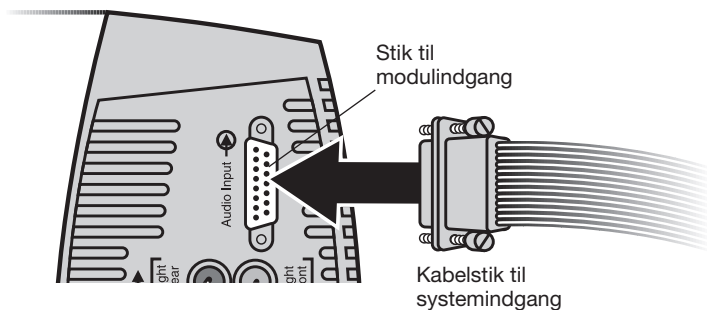


# Opstilling

## Tilslutning af Acoustimass®-modulet til modtageren

**FORSIGTIG:** Inden disse tilslutninger foretages, skal der slukkes for modtageren for at forhindre uønsket støj, når du sætter Acoustimass®-modulet til.

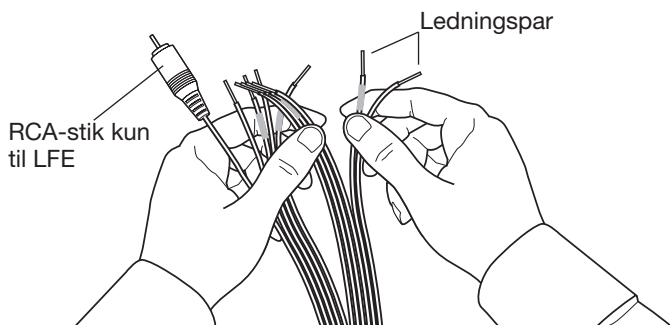
Systemindgangskablet er 6,1 meter langt og tilsluttes surroundmodtageren. I modsætning til højttalerkablerne har dette indgangskabel et stik med mange stikben, der skal ind i **Audio Input**-stikket på modulet.



I den anden ende af systemindgangskablet sidder der flere ledningspar, der er lette at trække fra hinanden, så de kan nå, når de sættes ind i klemmerne på din modtager. En rød krave angiver, at en ledning er positiv (+).

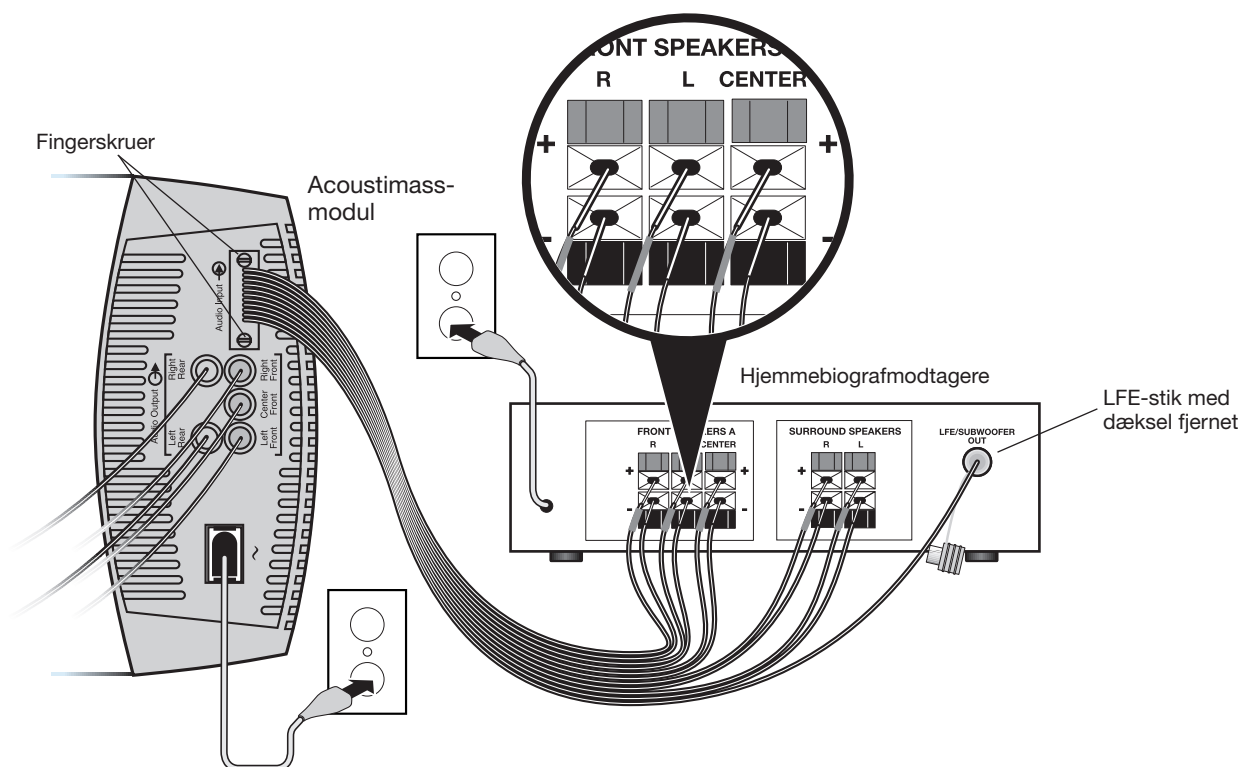
**FORSIGTIG:** Tilslut IKKE dit modul til tv'et, idet det ikke har den nødvendige forstærkning.

RCA-stikket i denne ende er KUN beregnet til brug med en modtager, der håndterer lavfrekvens-effekter og har et **LFE/SUBWOOFER**-stik.



### Sådan foretages tilslutningerne:

1. Sæt det flerbenede stik på systemindgangskablet i indgangsstikket på Acoustimass®-modulet. Stram de to fingerskruer for at sikre en forsvarlig forbindelse.
  2. Tilslut hvert ledningspar i den anden ende af systemindgangskablet til surround-modtageren, som bør have lydudgangsklemmer med mærkningen:
    - Right, Left og Center for de forreste lydkanaler.
    - Right Surround og Left Surround for de bageste kanaler. De specifikke mærkninger på netop din modtager kan være lidt anderledes.
- FORSIGTIG:** Lad ikke blotlagte ledninger røre ved hinanden, da dette kan beskadige modtageren.
3. Sørg omhyggeligt for, at forbindelsernes polaritet passer sammen (+ til + og – til –).
    - Slut hver ledning med rød krave (+) til den korrekte + klemme.
    - Slut hver ledning markeret med (–) til den korrekte – klemme.
  4. Slut systemindgangskablets RCA-stik markeret **LFE** til LFE/SUBWOOFER OUT-stikket på surround-modtageren, hvis dette er relevant for din modtager. Fjern først dækslet.



### Kontrol af tilslutningerne

Før tilslutning af Acoustimass-modulet skal alle forbindelser fra modtageren til modulet og modulet til højttalerne kontrolleres.

- Kontrollér, at alle højttalerne er forbundet til de korrekte klemmer i henhold til deres placering i rummet.
- Sørg for, at alle ledninger er tilsluttet til din surround-modtager med den korrekte polaritet (+ til + og – til –). Forkert ledningsføring kan bevirke totalt tab af udgangssignal fra modulet.
- Korrigér evt. forbindelsesproblemer, før modtageren tilsluttes og tændes.

Når alle forbindelser er korrekte, så sæt netledningen fra Acoustimass-modulet ind i en stikkontakt. Tilslut også modtageren til en stikkontakt.

**Bemærk:** Bose anbefaler at bruge en overspændingsafleder af god kvalitet til alle elektriske apparater. Spændingsvariationer og -spidser kan beskadige elektroniske komponenter i alle systemer. Hvis der benyttes en overspændingsafleder af høj kvalitet (fås i elektronikforretninger), kan man undgå langt de fleste svigt, der skyldes strømstød.

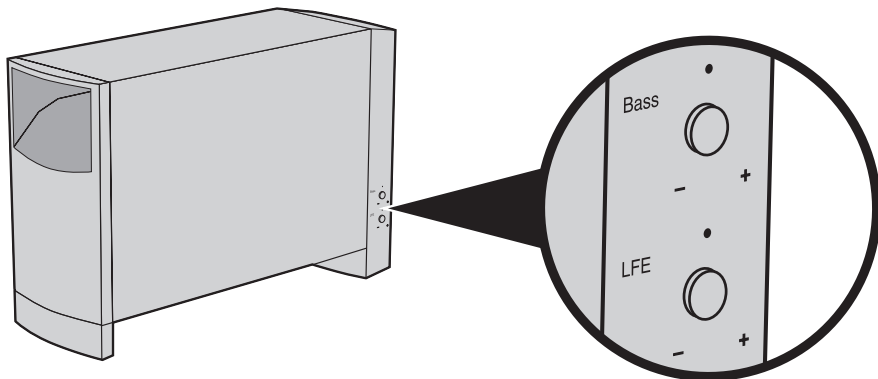
## Sådan bruges systemet

### Få mest muligt ud af din hjemmebiograf's højttalere

Nu hvor systemforbindelserne er færdige, og modulet tilsluttet en stikkontakt, er Acoustimass®-systemet parat til brug.

Sæt dig ind i de betjeningsfunktioner og indbyggede beskyttelsesanordninger, der justerer dette systems lyd. De tilbyder muligheder, der passer til netop den måde, du bruger systemet på og dine præferencer.

**FORSIGTIG:** Dette system har et automatisk beskyttelseskredsløb, der hjælper med til at beskytte mod beskadigelse fra elektrisk belastning og overbelastning af systemet. Kredsløbet aktiveres ved høj lydstyrke for at reducere den afgivne effekt, hvilket bevirker en lettere nedgang i lydstyrken. Hvis du bemærker denne nedgang, skal du være klar over, at systemet fungerer som det er designet til. Denne nedgang i lydstyrken angiver også, at indgangseffekten til systemet eventuelt overskrider det sikre niveau. Det anbefales ikke, at man lytter på dette niveau i længere tid.



#### Justering af bassen/rumkompensation

Når du har placeret Acoustimass-modulet, hvor du ønsker det, kan du finindstille det til den pågældende placering. Foretag kun denne justering efter behov.

For eksempel:

- Hvis systemydelsen mangler bas, så drej BASS-knappen (vist ovenfor) med uret for at forøge modulets lavfrekvensudgang.
- Hvis lyden har for kraftig bas, så drej knappen mod uret for at reducere lavfrekvensudgangen fra modulet.

Fabriksindstillingen er beregnet til brug i de fleste almindelige rumindretninger.

#### Justering af LFE-niveauet

Knappen til regulering af LFE-niveauet (vist ovenfor), er kun beregnet til brug sammen med modtagere, der har en LFE/SUBWOOFER-kanal.

Du kan justere det relative niveau for lavfrekvensvirkningen fra filmlydspor ved at dreje på knappen. Brug den til at tilpasse lydstyrkeniveauet fra LFE-kanalen med dine andre højttalerkanalers lydstyrkeniveau.

Du kan kontrollere alle niveauer ved at bruge de "testtoner", der findes i den digitale surroundsound-modtager. Se den brugervejledning, der følger med din surround-modtager, for at få flere oplysninger om, hvordan man benytter denne funktion.

## Indstilling af den digitale surroundsound-modtager

Højtalerne i dit Acoustimass® 6 serie V- eller Acoustimass 10 Serie V-system er fuldt kompatible med lydudgangen fra digitale surround-modtagere. Systemets integrerede signalbehandling understøtter fuld lavfrekvensgengivelse fra alle kanaler.

For at få fuldt udbytte af disse systemfunktioner kan du eventuelt justere nogle indstillinger på modtageren. Brug den digitale displaymenu på modtageren til at foretage ændringerne, og se listen over anbefalede indstillinger nedenfor.

højtaler	Indstilling af modtageren
Venstre og højre	LARGE
Midt	LARGE
Venstre og højre surround	LARGE
LFE/Subwoofer	ON

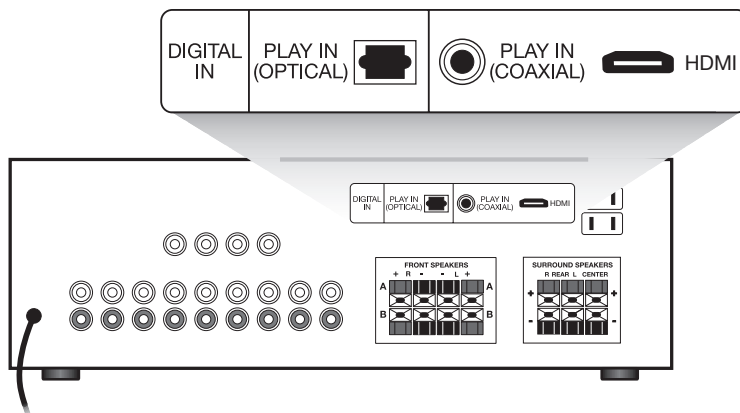
**Bemærk:** Hvis din modtager har muligheden, bør LFE- eller Subwoofer-indstillingen være ON og crossover-værdien på det laveste tal, der er muligt, hvilket typisk er 80 Hz.

### Modtagelse af et digitalt lydsignal

For at det digitale lydsignal fra flere kilder (Blu-ray™ eller dvd-afspiller, CBL/SAT-modtager, spilsystem osv.) skal kunne nå din surround-modtager, har du brug for en digital lydforbindelse mellem den ekstra kilde og modtageren.

- Brug enten HDMI™, den optiske eller koaksiale indgang på modtageren til at tilslutte den digitale udgang fra den ekstra kilde. Brug ikke mere end en tilslutning.
- Sørg for at vælge digital udgang i opsætningsmenuen på den ekstra enhed.

Yderligere oplysninger om opstilling og drift findes i den brugervejledning, der følger med surround-modtageren.



## Indstilling af den analoge surroundsound-modtager

Til analog surroundsound-anvendelse (ikke digital) anbefaler vi, at du indstiller modtagerens surroundsound-midtertilstand til Wide (bred). Se den brugervejledning, der følger med din surround-modtager, for at få oplysninger om, hvordan man ændrer denne indstilling.

### Fejlfinding

Hvis du har et problem med dit Acoustimass®-højtalersystem, bør du slukke for lyd-kilden og forsøge at løse problemet på en af følgende måder. Hvis problemet fortsætter, bør du kontakte Bose®-forhandleren og aftale service. Se kontaklisten i æsken, hvis du ønsker oplysninger om, hvordan du kontakter Bose direkte.

Problem	Gør følgende
Systemet fungerer slet ikke	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Kontrollér, at modtageren og det elektriske Acoustimass-modul er sluttet til en stikkontakt, der fungerer, og at modtageren er tændt.</li> <li>• Sørg for at vælge en lyd-kilde på modtageren (Blu-ray- eller dvd-afspiller, CBL/SAT-modtager, spilsystem osv.).</li> </ul>
Ingen lyd	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Forøg lydstyrken.</li> <li>• Kobl evt. hovedtelefoner fra.</li> <li>• Tjek højtalertilslutningerne til basmodulet, modtageren og højttalerne.</li> <li>• Sørg for, at både det elektriske Acoustimass-modul og modtageren er sat til.</li> <li>• Kontrollér, at lyd-kildens digitale udgang for digital lyd er forbundet til modtagerens digitale indgang med et HDMI-kabel, koaksialkabel eller optisk kabel.</li> <li>• Kontrollér, at den valgte lyd-kilde er korrekt. Vælg f.eks. dvd-lyd på modtageren for at høre dvd-lyd.</li> </ul>
Ingen surroundsound	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Sørg for, at kildematerialet indeholder surroundsound.</li> <li>• Hvis du anvender Dolby Pro-Logic-tilstanden på modtageren, bør du kontrollere, at der er tændt for surroundsound.</li> <li>• Sørg for, at kildematerialet (Blu-ray™- eller dvd-afspiller, CBL/SAT-modtager, spilsystem osv.) er Dolby Digital-kodet.</li> <li>• Kontrollér, at modtageren bearbejder et signal fra et stereo-tv, en laserdisc, Blu-ray-afspiller eller en dvd-afspiller eller anden surroundsound-kilde.</li> <li>• Hvis du anvender digital programmering, bør du kontrollere, at modtageren er indstillet korrekt.</li> </ul>
Ingen bas	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Sørg for, at højtalerforbindelsen fra modtageren/forstærkeren er i den korrekte fase, rød krave tilsluttet rødt stik (+ til + og - til -).</li> <li>• Kontrollér, at højtalerstørrelsen i modtageren er indstillet til stor.</li> </ul>
Ikke tilstrækkelig eller for meget bas	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Flyt Acoustimass-modulet tættere på en væg eller et hjørne for at øge bassen. Flyt det længere væk fra væggen eller hjørnet for at nedsætte bassen.</li> <li>• Justér LFE-niveauet eller rumkompensationsreguleringen.</li> </ul>
Lyden er forvrænget	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Kontrollér, at højtalerledningen ikke er beskadiget.</li> <li>• Skru ned for lydstyrken på eksterne komponenter, der er forbundet til modtageren.</li> </ul>

---

## Kundeservice

---

Hvis du har behov for yderligere hjælp med at løse problemer, kan du kontakte Bose® kundeservice i dit område. Se den kontakliste, der ligger i kassen.

---

## Rengøring

---

Acoustimass®-højtalersystemets kabinet må kun rengøres med en tør, blød klud. Brug ikke nogen form for spray i nærheden af systemet, og undgå at spilde væske i åbningerne. Brug heller ikke opløsningsmidler, kemikalier eller rengøringsmidler, der indeholder alkohol, ammoniak eller slibemiddel.

Gitterkonstruktionerne på højttalerne kan om nødvendigt støvsuges forsigtigt. Bemærk, at driverne er placeret lige bag gitteret og nemt kan beskadiges, hvis man ikke er forsigtig.

---

## Information om den begrænsede garanti

---

Dit Acoustimass®-højtalersystem er dækket af en begrænset garanti. En nærmere beskrivelse af garantien findes på det garantikort, der er vedlagt systemet. Udfyld oplysningsafsnittet på kortet, og send det til Bose. Hvis ikke du gør det, har det imidlertid ingen betydning for din garanti.

Garantioplysningerne til dette produkt gælder ikke for Australien eller New Zealand. Se vores websted på [www.bose.com.au/warranty](http://www.bose.com.au/warranty) eller [www.bose.com.nz/warranty](http://www.bose.com.nz/warranty) for at få flere oplysninger om garantien i Australien og New Zealand.

---

## Tilbehør

---

Du kan placere systemhøjtalere på vægbeslag, bordstativer eller gulvfødder. Hvis du vil købe disse typer tilbehør, skal du kontakte din lokale Bose®-forhandler eller besøge [www.Bose.com](http://www.Bose.com).

Til følgende tilbehør:

- Indgangskabeladapter til brug ved ledningsføring i væggen fra Acoustimass-modulet til modtageren
- Forlængerkabel på 6,1 meter til brug mellem Acoustimass-modulet og modtageren
- Højtalerkablets adaptere, der bruges til ledningsføring i væggen

Kontakt din autoriserede Bose-forhandler. Se kontaklisten i æsken, hvis du ønsker oplysninger om, hvordan du kontakter Bose direkte.



## Højtalerdriverkomplement

### Acoustimass® 10-system:

- Rækker med kubehøjtalere og midterste fronthøjtaler:  
To 6,25 cm Twiddler™-højtalere
- Elektrisk Acoustimass-modul:  
To 13 cm bashøjtalere

### Acoustimass 6-system:

- Kubehøjtalere:  
En 6,35 cm Twiddler™-højtaler
- Elektrisk Acoustimass-modul:  
En 13 cm bashøjtaler

## Systemets nominelle effekt

### Acoustimass 10-system:

USA/Canada: 100-127 V ~ 50/270 Hz 60W

Europa/Australien: 220-240 V ~ 50/270 Hz 60W

### Acoustimass 6-system:

USA/Canada: 100-127 V ~ 50/135 Hz 60W

Europa/Australien: 220-240 V ~ 50/135 Hz 60W

## Forbindelsesmuligheder

### Acoustimass 10-system:

Kompatible med A/V-modtagere og -forstærkere med en effekt fra 10 til 200 W pr. kanal, effekt fra 4 til 8 ohm

### Acoustimass 6-system:

Kompatible med A/V-modtagere og -forstærkere med en effekt fra 10 til 150 watt pr. kanal, effekt fra 4 til 8 ohm

### Acoustimass 10-system:

Række med kubehøjtalere og midterste fronthøjtaler: 1 kg for hver

Række med kubehøjtalere: 15,7 cm H x 7,9 cm B x 10,2 cm D (7,4" x 3,2" x 3,3")

Centerfronthøjtaler: 15,7 cm H x 7,9 cm B x 10,2 cm D (3,4" x 7,3" x 3,2")

Modul: 15,8 kg

41,4 cm H x 20,6 cm B x 64,3 cm D (16,3" x 8,1" x 25,3")

### Acoustimass 6-system:

Kubehøjtaler: 0,45 kg pr. stk.

9,5 cm H x 8,3 cm B x 8,4 cm D (3,7" x 3,2" x 3,3")

Modul: 12,2 kg

41,4 cm H x 20,6 cm B x 56,6 cm D (16,3" x 8,1" x 22,3")



# Wichtige Sicherheitshinweise

**Bitte lesen Sie diese Bedienungsanleitung durch und bewahren Sie sie zum späteren Nachschlagen auf.**



Das Blitzsymbol mit Pfeilspitze in einem gleichseitigen Dreieck weist den Benutzer auf nicht isolierte, gefährliche elektrische Spannung innerhalb des Systemgehäuses hin. Es besteht die Gefahr von Stromschlägen!



Das Ausrufezeichen in einem gleichseitigen Dreieck, wie es auf dem System angebracht ist, soll den Benutzer auf wichtige Bedienungs- und Wartungsanweisungen in dieser Bedienungsanleitung aufmerksam machen.



**WARNUNG:**

- Um Brände und Stromschläge zu vermeiden, darf dieses Produkt weder Regen noch Feuchtigkeit ausgesetzt werden.
- Schützen Sie das Gerät vor tropfenden oder spritzenden Flüssigkeiten, und stellen Sie keine mit Flüssigkeiten gefüllten Gefäße (z. B. Vasen) auf das Gerät oder in die Nähe des Geräts. Wie bei allen elektronischen Geräten dürfen niemals Flüssigkeiten ins Innere gelangen. Dadurch kann es zu Fehlfunktionen und/oder Bränden kommen.
- Stellen Sie keine brennenden Kerzen oder ähnliches auf das Gerät oder in die Nähe des Geräts.



**VORSICHT:**

- Keine nicht autorisierten Veränderungen am Produkt vornehmen. Diese können die Sicherheit, die Einhaltung von Richtlinien und die Systemleistung beeinträchtigen. In diesem Fall kann die Garantie ungültig werden.



**WARNUNG:** Dieses Produkt enthält magnetische Materialien. Wenden Sie sich an Ihren Arzt, wenn Sie wissen möchten, ob dies den Betrieb Ihres implantierten medizinischen Geräts beeinflussen kann.

**HINWEISE:**

- Falls Sie den Netzstecker oder eine Mehrfachsteckdose verwenden, um das Gerät von der Stromversorgung zu trennen, sollten Sie sicherstellen, dass Sie jederzeit auf den Stecker zugreifen können.
- Dieses Produkt ist nicht zum Einsatz im Freien geeignet. Verwenden Sie es nur innerhalb von Gebäuden und nicht in Campingfahrzeugen, auf Booten o. ä.
- Die mit dem System mitgelieferten Lautsprecherdrähte und Verbindungskabel sind nicht für den Wandeinbau zugelassen. Bitte sehen Sie in Ihren örtlichen Bauvorschriften wegen des korrekten Draht- und Kabeltyps nach, der für den Wandeinbau erforderlich ist.



Dieses Symbol bedeutet, dass das Produkt nicht mit dem Hausmüll entsorgt werden darf, sondern bei einer geeigneten Sammelstelle für das Recycling abgegeben werden muss. Die ordnungsgemäße Entsorgung und das Recycling tragen dazu bei, die natürlichen Ressourcen, die Gesundheit und die Umwelt zu schützen. Weitere Informationen zur Entsorgung und zum Recycling dieses Produkts erhalten Sie von Ihrer zuständigen Kommune, Ihrem Entsorgungsdienst oder dem Geschäft, in dem Sie dieses Produkt gekauft haben.



Die Bose Corporation erklärt hiermit, dass dieses Produkt die wesentlichen Anforderungen und andere relevante Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/CE und weitere geltende EU-Richtlinien erfüllt. Die vollständige Konformitätserklärung ist einsehbar unter [www.bose.com/compliance](http://www.bose.com/compliance).

## Wichtige Sicherheitshinweise

1. Lesen Sie die folgenden Anweisungen.
2. Bewahren Sie die Anweisungen auf.
3. Beachten Sie alle Warn- und Sicherheitshinweise.
4. Befolgen Sie alle Anweisungen.
5. Verwenden Sie dieses Gerät nicht in der Nähe von Wasser.
6. Reinigen Sie das Gerät nur mit einem sauberen, trockenen Tuch.
7. Achten Sie darauf, dass die Lüftungsöffnungen nicht blockiert sind. Stellen Sie das Gerät nur in Übereinstimmung mit den Herstelleranweisungen auf.
8. Stellen Sie das Gerät nicht in der Nähe von Wärmequellen auf, wie Heizkörpern, Wärmespeichern, Öfen oder anderen Geräten (auch Verstärkern), die Wärme erzeugen.
9. Verlegen Sie das Netzkabel so, dass es keine Stolpergefahr darstellt und nicht beschädigt werden kann – insbesondere im Bereich von Steckern und Steckdosen und dort, wo das Netzkabel aus dem Gerät herausgeführt wird.
10. Verwenden Sie nur Zubehör-/Anbauteile, die vom Hersteller zugelassen sind.
11. Ziehen Sie das Netzkabel bei Gewitter oder bei längerer Nichtbenutzung des Gerätes aus der Steckdose.
12. Wenden Sie sich bei allen Reparatur- und Wartungsarbeiten nur an qualifiziertes Personal. Wartungsarbeiten sind in folgenden Fällen nötig: bei Beschädigungen wie z. B. des Netzkabels oder Netzsteckers, wenn Flüssigkeiten oder Gegenstände in das Gehäuse gelangt sind, das Gerät Regen oder Feuchtigkeit ausgesetzt wurde, fallen gelassen wurde oder nicht ordnungsgemäß funktioniert.

### Namen und Inhalt der giftigen oder gefährlichen Stoffe oder Elemente

Name des Teils	Gefährliche Stoffe oder Elemente					
	Blei (Pb)	Quecksilber (Hg)	Kadmium (Cd)	Sechswertig (CR(VI))	Polybromiertes Biphenyl (PBB)	Polybromiertes Diphenylether (PBDE)
PCBs	X	0	0	0	0	0
Metallteile	X	0	0	0	0	0
Kunststoffteile	0	0	0	0	0	0
Lautsprecher	X	0	0	0	0	0
Kabel	X	0	0	0	0	0

0: Gibt an, dass dieser giftige oder gefährliche Stoff, der in allen homogenen Materialien für dieses Teil enthalten ist, unter den Grenzwerten gemäß SJ/T 11363-2006 liegt.

X: Gibt an, dass dieser giftige oder gefährliche Stoff, der in mindestens einem der homogenen Materialien enthalten ist, die für dieses Teil verwendet wurden, über den Grenzwerten gemäß SJ/T 11363-2006 liegt.

### Bitte füllen Sie Folgendes aus und bewahren Sie es für Ihre Unterlagen auf.

Die Seriennummer und Modellnummer befinden sich auf der Rückseite des Acoustimass® -Moduls.

Seriennummer: \_\_\_\_\_

Modellnummer: \_\_\_\_\_

Kaufdatum: \_\_\_\_\_

Bewahren Sie die Kaufquittung zusammen mit dieser Bedienungsanleitung auf.

Blu-ray Disc™ und Blu-ray™ sind Marken der Blu-ray Disc Association.

HDMI ist eine Marke oder eingetragene Marke von HDMI Licensing LLC in den Vereinigten Staaten und anderen Ländern.

© 2014 Bose Corporation. Dieses Dokument darf ohne schriftliche Genehmigung weder ganz noch teilweise reproduziert, verändert, vertrieben oder auf andere Weise verwendet werden.

**Einführung**

Vielen Dank .....4  
 Auspacken des Kartons .....4

**Aufbau**

Aufstellen der Lautsprecher für realistischen Heimkino-Sound.....5  
     Vordere linke und rechte Lautsprecher .....6  
     Center-Lautsprecher .....6  
     Hintere Lautsprecher .....6  
     Aktives Acoustimass®-Modul .....6  
 Anschließen der Kabel ..... 7  
     Anschließen der Lautsprecher an das Acoustimass-Modul ..... 7  
     Anschließen des Acoustimass®-Moduls an den Receiver ..... 8  
 Überprüfen der Anschlüsse .....9

**Verwendung Ihres Systems**

Optimale Nutzung der Heimkinolautsprecher ..... 10  
     Einstellen der Bass-/Raumanpassung..... 10  
     Anpassen des LFE-Pegels ..... 10  
 Einstellungen für den digitalen Surround Sound-Receiver .....11  
     Empfang von digitalen Audiosignalen.....11  
 Einstellungen für den analogen Surround Sound-Receiver .....11

**Referenz**

Fehlerbehebung..... 12  
 Kundendienst..... 13  
 Reinigung..... 13  
 Eingeschränkte Garantie..... 13  
 Zubehör ..... 13  
 Technische Daten..... 14  
     Lautsprecher-Treiber ..... 14  
     Systemnennleistung..... 14  
     Anschlussmöglichkeiten ..... 14

## Vielen Dank

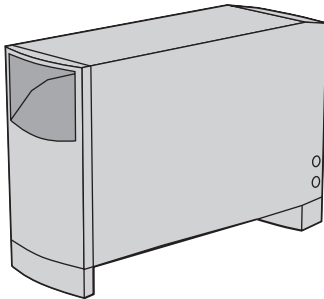
Mit dem Heimkino-Lautsprechersystem Bose® Acoustimass® 6 Serie V oder Acoustimas 10 Serie V haben Sie eine gute Wahl getroffen. Das Acoustimass 6 umfasst fünf kleine Cube-Lautsprecher, während das System Acoustimass 10 vier Cube Speaker Array und einen vorderen Center-Lautsprecher beinhaltet. Zusammen mit dem Acoustimass-Modul sorgen diese Lautsprecher für kräftigen und realistischen Heimkino-Sound.

## Auspacken des Kartons

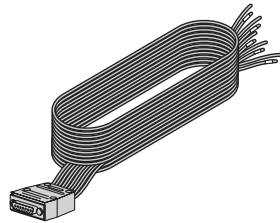
Packen Sie den Inhalt vorsichtig aus:

1. Entnehmen Sie den braunen inneren Karton, der die Lautsprecher enthält.
2. Kippen Sie den Karton vorsichtig auf die Seite und ziehen Sie das Acoustimass-Modul heraus.

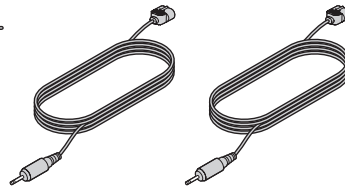
**WARNUNG:** Um Verletzungen zu vermeiden, seien Sie beim Hochheben des Moduls vorsichtig – es wiegt ca. 14 kg.



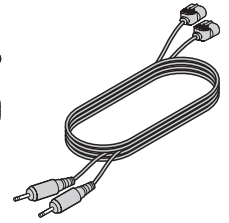
Aktives Acoustimass-Bassmodul



Systemeingangskabel  
(6,1 m)

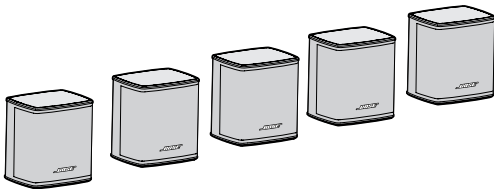


Drei Kabel für die vorderen Lautsprecher (6,1 m)



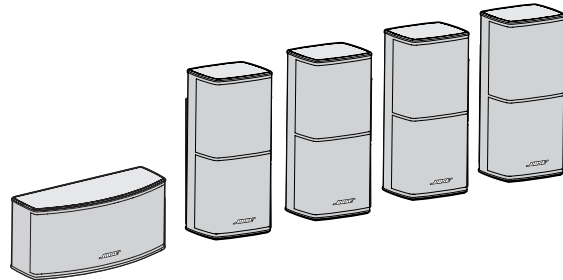
Zwei Kabel für  
die hinteren  
Lautsprecher (15,2 m)

### Beim System Acoustimass 6



Fünf Virtually Invisible® Serie II-Lautsprecher

### Beim System Acoustimass 10



Vier Direct/Reflecting® Serie II-Lautsprecher und ein horizontaler Center Channel-Lautsprecher

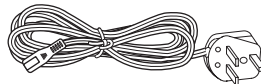
### Netzkabel (1)



USA/Kanada



Europa



GB/Singapur



Australien

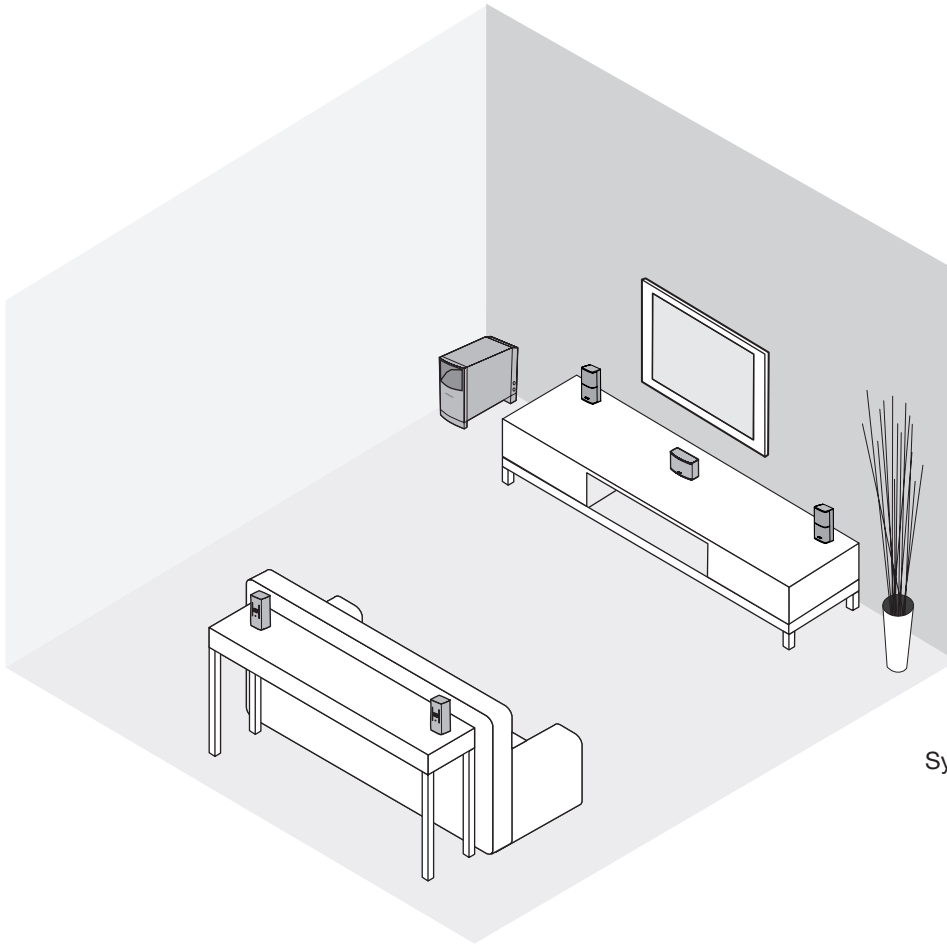
Sie sollten sich nun die Seriennummern des Produkts auf der Garantiekarte notieren. Bewahren Sie das Verpackungsmaterial zur späteren Verwendung auf.

**WARNUNG:** Halten Sie die Plastikverpackung der Lautsprecher von Kindern fern, um Erstickungsgefahr zu vermeiden.

## Aufstellen der Lautsprecher für realistischen Heimkino-Sound

Beachten Sie die folgenden Richtlinien, wenn Sie sich entscheiden, wo Sie die Lautsprecher aufstellen:

- Das Acoustimass®-Modul sollte mindestens 60 cm vom Fernsehgerät entfernt aufgestellt werden, um Störungen zu vermeiden.
- Wählen Sie für die Lautsprecher jeweils eine stabile und ebene Oberfläche aus.
- Bei einem Acoustimass 10-System wird der Center Channel-Lautsprecher im vorderen Bereich des Raums und in der Nähe der Mitte des Fernsehgeräts aufgestellt. Die anderen Lautsprecher sind baugleich und können austauschbar im Raum aufgestellt werden.
- Bei einem Acoustimass 6-System sind alle fünf Lautsprecher baugleich und können austauschbar im Raum aufgestellt werden.
- Grundriss und Größe des Raums sowie die Aufstellung der Möbel darin sollten die Wahl des Standorts für die Lautsprecher ebenfalls beeinflussen. Das Beispiel unten ist als Orientierungshilfe für die Einrichtung eines Heimkinos gedacht.



System Acoustimass 10 Serie V

# Aufbau

## Vordere linke und rechte Lautsprecher

Diese Lautsprecher sollen ein Klangbild erzeugen, das breiter als der Bildschirm ist und Zuschauern überall im Raum natürlich vorkommt.

- Stellen Sie diese beiden vorderen Lautsprecher auf beiden Seiten des Fernsehgeräts auf.
- Stellen Sie sie 2 m bis 5 m voneinander entfernt und mindestens 15 cm von CRT-Fernsehgeräten (Röhrengeräten) entfernt auf.

## Center-Lautsprecher

Der Klang vom Center-Lautsprecher sollte scheinbar vom Bild des Fernsehgeräts kommen, damit Dialoge und Sound möglichst realistisch wirken.

- Stellen Sie den Center-Lautsprecher über, auf oder unter dem Fernseher auf. Lassen Sie das Gewicht des Fernsehgeräts dabei aber NICHT auf dem Lautsprecher lasten.
- Stellen Sie den Lautsprecher möglichst in einer Linie mit der vertikalen Mitte des Bildschirms auf, um Dialoge naturgetreu wiederzugeben.
- Stellen Sie die Lautsprecher mindestens 15 cm von CRT-Fernsehgeräten (Röhrengeräten) entfernt auf.

## Hintere Lautsprecher

Die rückwärtigen (Surround-) Lautsprecher übertragen zwar ggf. auch Dialog, hauptsächlich jedoch Sound und Spezialeffekte, die das Bild erweitern. Der Zuschauer hat so das Gefühl, in die Mitte des Geschehens versetzt zu werden.

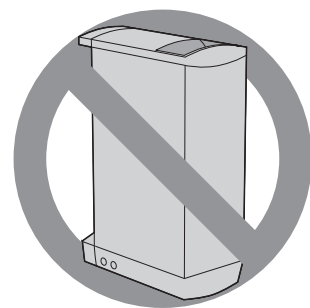
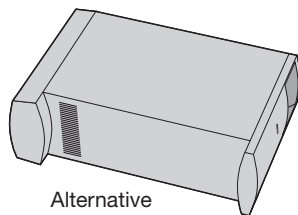
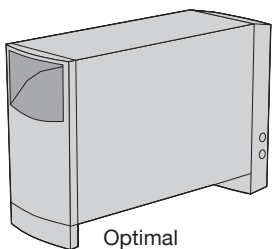
Wählen Sie praktische Aufstellungsorte und orientieren Sie sich dabei an diesen Empfehlungen:

- Stellen Sie die linken und rechten Lautsprecher so auf, dass sie den Klang zu beiden Seiten des Zuschauers statt direkt hinter ihm übertragen.
- Stellen Sie diese Lautsprecher ungefähr in Ohrhöhe des sitzenden Zuschauers oder höher auf.

## Aktives Acoustimass®-Modul

Dank der Acoustimass-Lautsprechertechnologie ist es schwierig, die Quelle der tiefen Töne zu orten. Sie können das Modul also nach Belieben verstecken. Beachten Sie beim Aufstellen des Moduls die folgenden Richtlinien:

- Am gleichen Ende des Raums wie der Fernsehbildschirm.
- Mindestens 60 cm vom Fernsehgerät entfernt, um Störungen zu vermeiden.
- Um die Basseffekte zu verstärken, drehen Sie die Öffnung zur Wand hin; um die Basseffekte abzuschwächen, drehen Sie die Öffnung von der Wand weg.
- Achten Sie darauf, dass die vordere Öffnung und das Lüftungsgitter unten am Modul jeweils mindestens 5 cm Abstand zu jeder anderen Oberfläche haben.
- Blockieren Sie die Lüftungsgitter unten am Modul nicht. Durch mangelnde Lüftung kann die Ausgabe der Bassfrequenzen vom Modul beeinträchtigt werden.



## Anschließen der Kabel

Nur das Acoustimass®-Modul wird an den Receiver angeschlossen. Die Lautsprecher werden alle direkt an das Acoustimass-Modul angeschlossen.

**WARNUNG:** Schließen Sie die Lautsprecher nicht an einen Receiver an. Dies könnte das System beschädigen oder sogar zu einem Stromschlag führen.

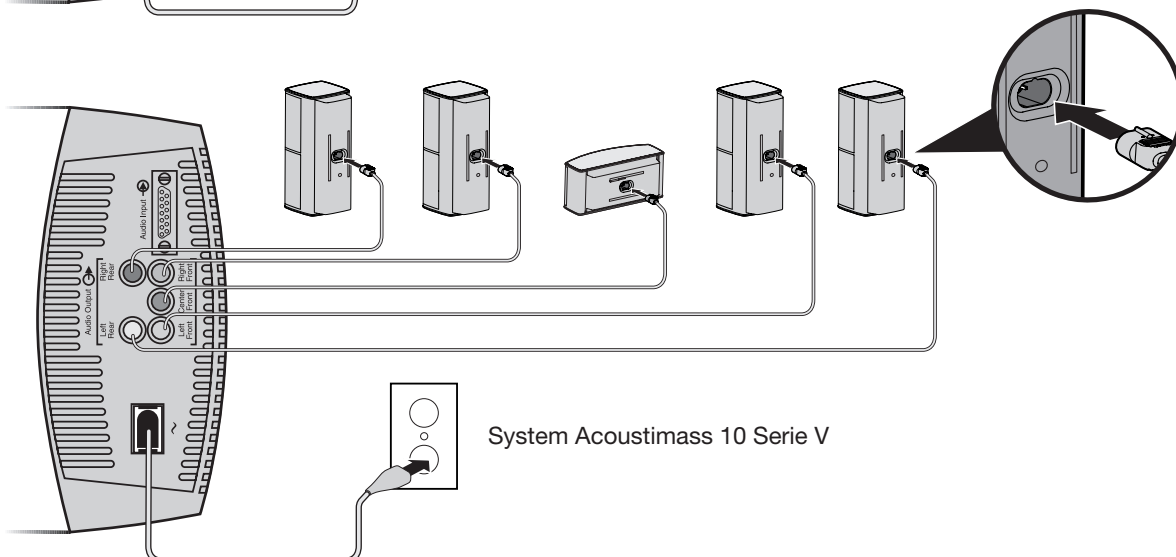
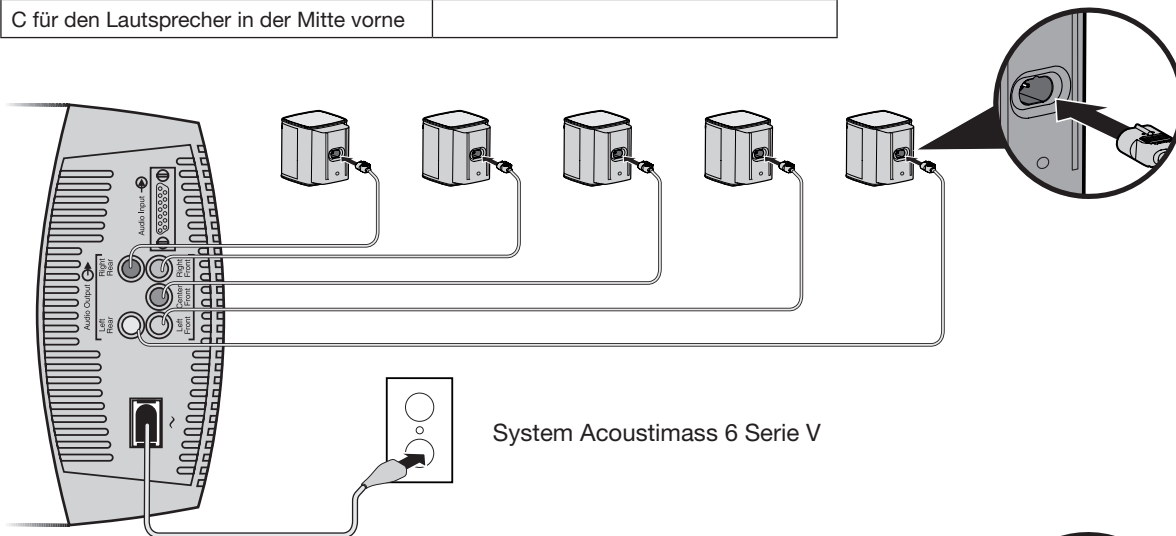
### Anschließen der Lautsprecher an das Acoustimass-Modul

Stecken Sie den Stecker der einzelnen Lautsprecherkabel in den Anschluss am Modul. Richten Sie beim Anschließen nach der Beschriftung am Stecker.

1. Verwenden Sie die mitgelieferten Lautsprecherkabel (6,1 m) für die vorderen Lautsprecher.
  - Schließen Sie den Stecker **R** an den Anschluss mit der Bezeichnung **Right Front** an.
  - Schließen Sie den Stecker **C** an den Anschluss mit der Bezeichnung **Center Front** an.
  - Schließen Sie den Stecker **L** an den Anschluss mit der Bezeichnung **Left Front** an.
2. Verwenden Sie die mitgelieferten Lautsprecherkabel (15,2 m) für die Lautsprecher im rückwärtigen Raumbereich.
  - Schließen Sie den Stecker **RR** an den Anschluss mit der Bezeichnung **Right Rear** an.
  - Schließen Sie den Stecker **LR** an den Anschluss mit der Bezeichnung **Left Rear** an.
3. Schließen Sie die einzelnen Kabel an den Anschluss am jeweiligen Lautsprecher und mit der Beschriftung nach unten an.

**Hinweis:** Suchen Sie die Beschriftung auf dem Lautsprecherkabel, das dem Lautsprecher entspricht:

Beschriftung des Lautsprecherkabels	
L für den Lautsprecher links vorne	LR für den Lautsprecher links hinten
R für den Lautsprecher rechts vorne	RR für den Lautsprecher rechts hinten
C für den Lautsprecher in der Mitte vorne	



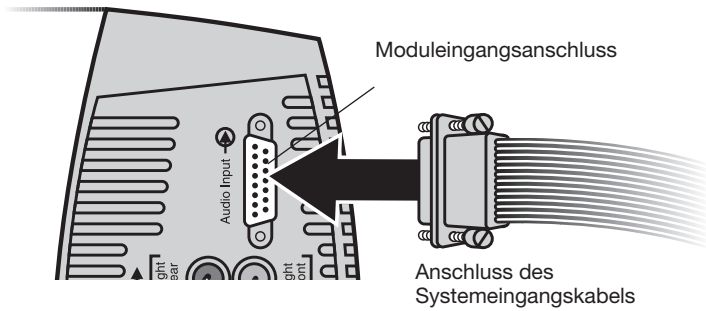


## Aufbau

### Anschließen des Acoustimass®-Moduls an den Receiver

**ACHTUNG:** Schalten Sie den Receiver aus, bevor Sie das Acoustimass®-Modul daran anschließen, um unerwünschte Geräusche zu verhindern.

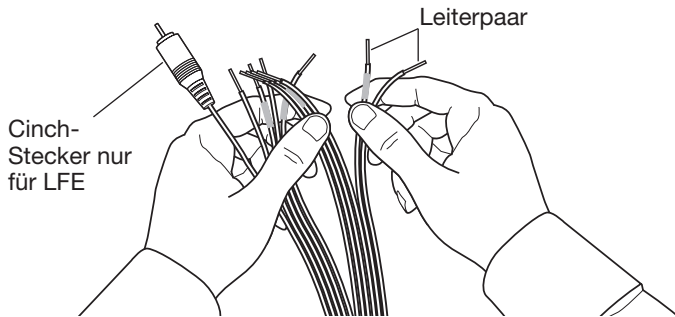
Das Systemeingangskabel ist 6,1 m lang und wird an den Surround Receiver angeschlossen. Anders als die Lautsprecherkabel verfügt dieses Eingangskabel über einen mehrpoligen Stecker, der in den Anschluss **Audio Input** des Moduls gesteckt wird.



Am anderen Ende des Systemeingangskabels lassen sich mehrere Leitungspaare wie ein Reißverschluss leicht auseinanderziehen. Diese werden in die Anschlüsse am Receiver gesteckt. Die rote Markierung kennzeichnet positive (+) Leiter.

**ACHTUNG:** Schließen Sie das Modul **NICHT** an das Fernsehgerät an, da dieses nicht über die erforderliche Verstärkung verfügt.

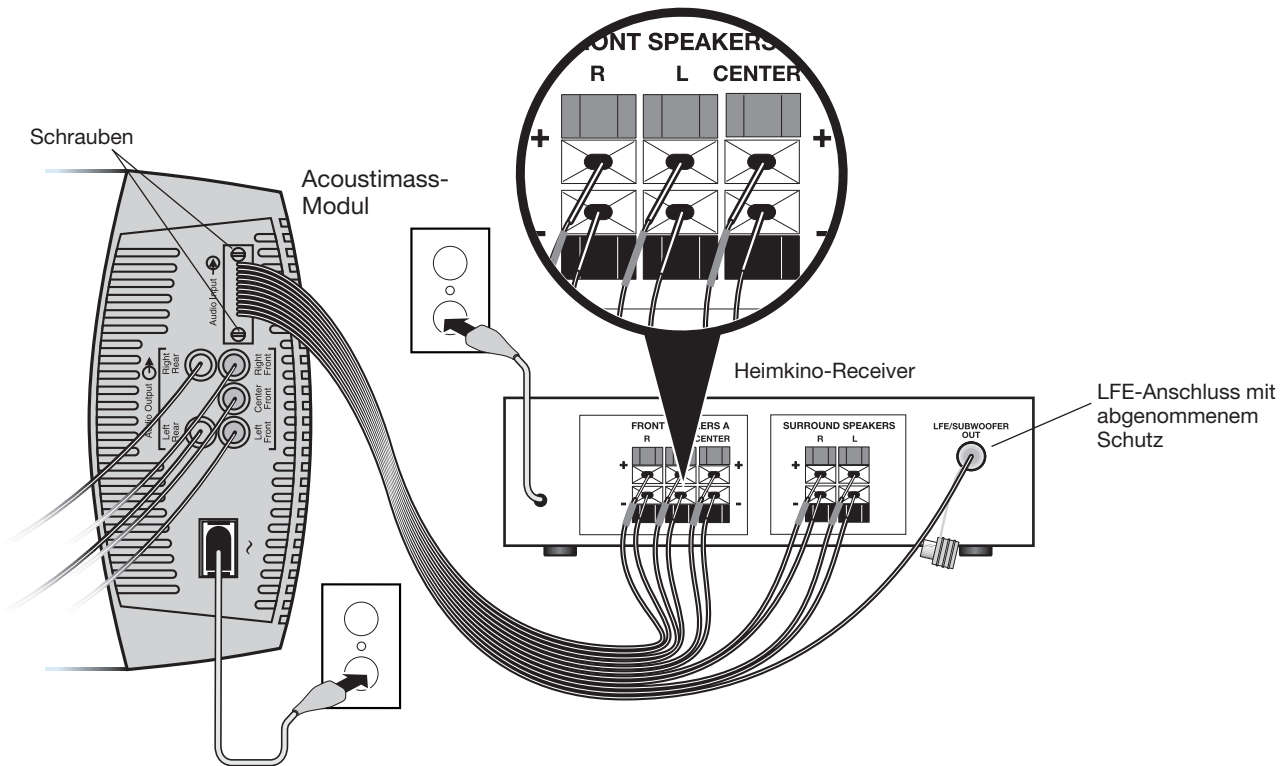
Der einzelne Cinch-Stecker an diesem Ende ist **NUR** für die Verwendung mit einem Receiver gedacht, der mit Tieftoneffekten umgehen kann und über einen Anschluss **LFE/SUBWOOFER** verfügt.



**So stellen Sie die Verbindungen her:**

1. Schließen Sie den mehrpoligen Stecker des Systemeingangskabels an den Eingangsanschluss am Acoustimass®-Modul an. Ziehen Sie die beiden Schrauben fest, um die Verbindung zu sichern.
2. Schließen Sie die einzelnen Kabelpaare am anderen Ende des Systemeingangskabels an den Surround-Receiver an, dessen Audioausgänge wie folgt gekennzeichnet sein sollten:
  - Right, Left und Center für die vorderen Audiokanäle
  - Right Surround und Left Surround für die rückwärtigen Kanäle. Ihr Receiver ist möglicherweise leicht abweichend gekennzeichnet.

**ACHTUNG:** Freiliegende Kabel dürfen einander nicht berühren, da dies den Receiver beschädigen könnte.
3. Achten Sie dabei auf die richtige Polarität (+ an + und – an –).
  - Schließen Sie die rot markierten Kabel (+) an die entsprechenden Anschlüsse (+) an.
  - Schließen Sie die nicht gekennzeichneten Kabel (–) an die entsprechenden Anschlüsse (–) an.
4. Schließen Sie den mit **LFE** gekennzeichneten Cinch-Stecker des Systemeingangskabels an den Anschluss **LFE/SUBWOOFER OUT** des Surround-Receiver an, falls vorhanden. Nehmen Sie zuerst die Schutzvorrichtung ab.



**Überprüfen der Anschlüsse**

Bevor Sie das Acoustimass-Modul anschließen, überprüfen Sie noch einmal alle Verbindungen vom Receiver zum Modul und vom Modul zu den Lautsprechern.

- Stellen Sie sicher, dass alle entsprechend ihrer Position im Raum mit den richtigen Anschlüssen verbunden sind.
- Vergewissern Sie sich, dass alle Kabel mit der richtigen Polarität (+ an + und – an –) an den Surround Receiver angeschlossen sind. Eine falsche Verkabelung kann zu einer völligen Auslöschung des Signals führen.
- Beheben Sie etwaige Verkabelungsfehler, bevor Sie den Receiver einschalten.

Nachdem Sie alle Verbindungen überprüft und ggf. korrigiert haben, stecken Sie das Netzkabel des Acoustimass-Moduls in eine Steckdose. Schließen Sie auch den Receiver an eine Steckdose an.

**Hinweis:** Bose empfiehlt die Verwendung eines Marken-Spannungsschutzgeräts an jedem elektronischen Gerät. Spannungsschwankungen und -spitzen können elektronische Komponenten in den allermeisten Systemen beschädigen. Durch die Verwendung eines hochwertigen Spannungsschutzes (im Elektronikfachhandel erhältlich) lassen sich die meisten durch Spannungsschwankungen verursachten Schäden vermeiden.

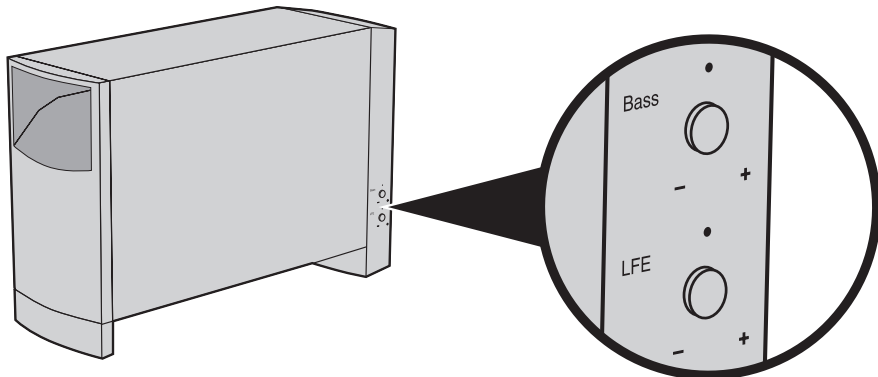
# Verwendung Ihres Systems

## Optimale Nutzung der Heimkinolautsprecher

Nachdem Sie die Systemverbindungen hergestellt und das Modul an die Stromversorgung angeschlossen haben, ist Ihr Acoustimass®-System jetzt einsatzbereit.

Machen Sie sich mit den Steuerungen und integrierten Schutzvorrichtungen vertraut, mit denen das Audio des Systems geregelt wird. Mithilfe dieser Einrichtungen können Sie das System an Ihre Art der Verwendung und an Ihre Vorlieben anpassen.

**ACHTUNG:** Dieses System ist mit einer automatische Überlastschutzschaltung ausgestattet, um Schäden durch elektrische Überlastung zu vermeiden. Diese Schaltung reduziert bei sehr hohen Lautstärkepegeln die Tonwiedergabe, was sich in einem leichten Abfallen der Lautstärke bemerkbar macht. Falls Ihnen die Verringerung der Lautstärke auffällt, handelt es sich nicht um einen Systemfehler. Die verringerte Lautstärke ist auch ein Zeichen dafür, dass die Stromaufnahme des Systems möglicherweise außerhalb des sicheren Bereichs liegt. Von längerem Hören solcher Lautstärkepegel ist abzuraten.



### Einstellen der Bass-/Raumanpassung

Nachdem Sie das Acoustimass-Modul am gewünschten Platz aufgestellt haben, können Sie bei Bedarf die Feinabstimmung für diesen Standort vornehmen. Nehmen Sie diese Einstellungen nur dann vor, wenn es notwendig ist.

Beispiel:

- Wenn das System zu wenig Bass liefert, drehen Sie den Regler BASS (oben dargestellt) im Uhrzeigersinn, um den Tieftonpegel des Moduls zu erhöhen.
- Wenn der Klang zu basslastig ist, drehen Sie diesen Regler gegen den Uhrzeigersinn, um den Tieftonpegel des Moduls zu verringern.

Die werkseitige Einstellung eignet sich für die meisten Räume.

### Anpassen des LFE-Pegels

Der Regler für die LFE-Einstellung (oben abgebildet) ist nur für die Verwendung mit Receivern, die mit einem LFE/SUBWOOFER-Kanal ausgestattet sind.

Durch Drehen des Reglers stellen Sie den relativen Pegel von Tieftoneffekten bei Filmsoundtracks ein. Stellen Sie damit die Lautstärke des LFE-Kanals entsprechend der Lautstärke der anderen Lautsprecherkanäle ein.

Sie können alle Pegel mithilfe der Testtonfunktion Ihres digitalen Surround Sound-Receivers überprüfen. Nähere Informationen zur Verwendung dieser Funktion finden Sie in der Bedienungsanleitung des Receivers.

## Einstellungen für den digitalen Surround Sound-Receiver

Die Lautsprecher der Systeme Acoustimass® 6 Serie V oder Acoustimass 10 Serie IV sind mit dem Audioausgang von digitalen Surround-Receiver vollständig kompatibel. Die integrierte Signalverarbeitung des Systems unterstützt die volle Tieftonwiedergabe von allen Kanälen.

Um diese Vorteile optimal zu nutzen, möchten Sie möglicherweise einige Einstellungen an Ihrem Receiver ändern. Verwenden Sie dazu das digitale Display-Menü des Receivers. Orientieren Sie sich an der nachstehenden Liste der empfohlenen Einstellungen.

Lautsprecher	ReceiverEinstellung
Links und rechts	LARGE
Center	LARGE
Surround links und rechts	LARGE
LFE/Subwoofer	ON

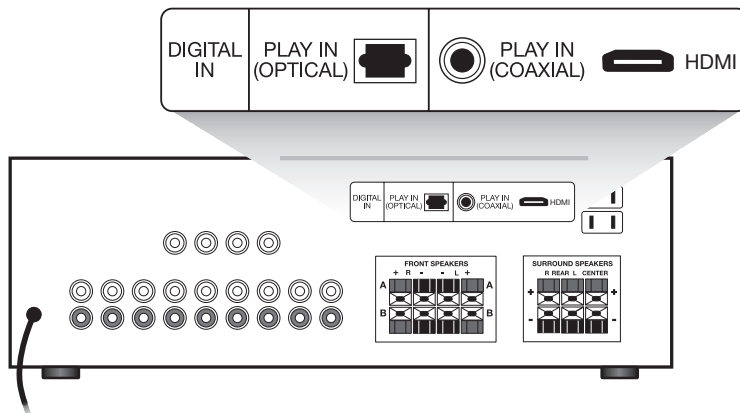
**Hinweis:** Falls diese Option bei Ihrem Receiver vorhanden ist, sollte die Einstellung für LFE oder Subwoofer ON lauten und die Frequenzweiche (Crossover) auf den kleinstmöglichen Wert, in der Regel 80 Hz, gesetzt werden.

### Empfang von digitalen Audiosignalen

Damit das digitale Audiosignal von zusätzlichen Quellen (Blu-ray™- oder DVD-Player, Kabel-/Satellitenanlage, Spielesystem usw.) den Surround-Receiver erreichen kann, benötigen Sie eine digitale Audioverbindung zwischen der zusätzlichen Quelle und dem Receiver.

- Verwenden Sie entweder den HDMI™-, optischen oder koaxialen Eingang des Receivers, um den digitalen Ausgang von der zusätzlichen Quelle anzuschließen. Verwenden Sie nicht mehr als eine Verbindung.
- Wählen Sie im Setup-Menü der zusätzlichen Quelle den digitalen Ausgang.

Weitere Hinweise zur Einstellung und zum Betrieb finden Sie im Benutzerhandbuch, das Sie mit Ihrem Surround-Receiver erhalten haben.



## Einstellungen für den analogen Surround Sound-Receiver

Bei analogen (nicht digitalen) Surround Sound-Anwendungen empfiehlt es sich, den Surround Sound-Center-Modus des Receivers auf WIDE (Breit) zu stellen. Nähere Informationen zum Ändern dieser Einstellung finden Sie in der Bedienungsanleitung des Receivers.

## Fehlerbehebung

Falls es Probleme mit Ihrem Acoustimass®-Lautsprechersystem gibt, schalten Sie die Audioquelle ab, und orientieren Sie sich an den folgenden Lösungsvorschlägen. Falls das Problem weiterhin besteht, vereinbaren Sie mit Ihrem Bose®-Fachhändler einen Wartungstermin. Wenn Sie sich direkt an Bose wenden möchten, verwenden Sie das Blatt mit Kontaktinformationen im Karton.

Problem	Lösung
System funktioniert überhaupt nicht	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Vergewissern Sie sich, dass Receiver und aktives Acoustimass Modul an eine funktionierende Steckdose angeschlossen sind und dass der Receiver eingeschaltet ist.</li><li>• Wählen Sie am Receiver eine Audioquelle (Blu-ray- oder DVD-Player, Kabel-/Satellitenanlage, Spielesystem usw.) aus.</li></ul>
Kein Ton	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Erhöhen Sie die Lautstärke.</li><li>• Falls Kopfhörer angeschlossen sind, entfernen Sie diese.</li><li>• Überprüfen Sie die Lautsprecheranschlüsse am Bassmodul, am Receiver und an den Lautsprechern.</li><li>• Vergewissern Sie sich, dass das Acoustimass-Modul und der Receiver an Steckdosen angeschlossen sind.</li><li>• Stellen Sie bei digitalem Sound sicher, dass der digitale Ausgang der Audioquelle über ein HDMI-, optisches oder koaxiales Kabel mit dem digitalen Eingang des Receivers verbunden ist.</li><li>• Überprüfen Sie, ob die ausgewählte Audioquelle korrekt ist. Wählen Sie z. B. DVD-Audio am Receiver, um DVD-Sound zu hören.</li></ul>
Kein Surround Sound	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Vergewissern Sie sich, dass das Quellmaterial Surround Sound enthält.</li><li>• Wenn Sie am Receiver den Dolby Pro Logic-Modus verwenden, stellen Sie sicher, dass Surround Sound eingeschaltet ist.</li><li>• Achten Sie darauf, dass das Quellenmaterial (Blu-ray™- oder DVD-Player, Kabel-/Satellitenanlage, Spielesystem usw.) Dolby Digital-kodiert ist.</li><li>• Stellen Sie sicher, dass der Receiver ein Signal von einem Stereofernseher, LaserDisc-, Blue-ray- oder DVD-Player oder einer anderen Surround Sound-Quelle verarbeitet.</li><li>• Achten Sie auf die richtigen Einstellungen am Receiver, falls Sie eine digitale Quelle verwenden.</li></ul>
Keine Basswiedergabe	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Überprüfen Sie, ob die Lautsprecherverbindungen vom Receiver zum Verstärker korrekt hergestellt wurden: die rot markierten Leitungen müssen mit dem roten Anschluss verbunden sein (+ an + und – an –).</li><li>• Überprüfen Sie, ob die Lautsprechergröße im Receiver zu groß eingestellt ist.</li></ul>
Zu schwache oder zu starke Basswiedergabe	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Stellen Sie das Acoustimass-Modul näher an eine Wand oder in eine Ecke, um den Bass zu verstärken. Stellen Sie es weiter entfernt von Wänden oder Ecken auf, um den Basseffekt zu verringern.</li><li>• Ändern Sie den LFE-Pegel oder die Klangregelung zur Raumanpassung.</li></ul>
Ton ist verzerrt	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Vergewissern Sie sich, dass die Lautsprecherkabel nicht beschädigt sind.</li><li>• Verringern Sie die Lautstärke von externen Komponenten, die an den Receiver angeschlossen sind.</li></ul>

---

## Kundendienst

---

Sollten Sie weitere Unterstützung bei der Fehlerbehebung benötigen, wenden Sie sich an den Bose®-Kundendienst, der für Ihre Region zuständig ist. Ein Blatt mit Kontaktinformationen finden Sie im Karton.

---

## Reinigung

---

Die Gehäuse des Acoustimass®-Lautsprechersystems dürfen nur mit einem weichen, trockenen Tuch gereinigt werden. Benutzen Sie keine Sprays in der Nähe des Systems, und achten Sie darauf, dass keine Flüssigkeiten in die Öffnungen gelangen. Verwenden Sie außerdem weder Lösungsmittel noch Chemikalien noch Reinigungsmittel, die Alkohol, Ammoniak oder Polituren enthalten.

Die Gitterabdeckungen an den Lautsprechern können bei Bedarf vorsichtig mit einem Staubsauger gereinigt werden. Beachten Sie, dass sich die Treiber direkt hinter den Gittern befinden und bei unvorsichtiger Behandlung leicht beschädigt werden können.

---

## Eingeschränkte Garantie

---

Für das Acoustimass®-Lautsprechersystem gilt eine eingeschränkte Garantie. Einzelheiten zu den Garantiebedingungen finden Sie auf der Garantiekarte, die dem System beiliegt. Füllen Sie bitte den Informationsteil der Karte aus, und schicken Sie diese an Bose. Ihre Garantierechte sind jedoch unabhängig davon gültig.

Die mit diesem Produkt angegebenen Garantieinformationen gelten nicht in Australien und Neuseeland. Nähere Informationen zu unserer Garantie in Australien und Neuseeland finden Sie auf unserer Website unter [www.bose.com.au/warranty](http://www.bose.com.au/warranty) oder [www.bose.com.nz/warranty](http://www.bose.com.nz/warranty).

---

## Zubehör

---

Sie können die Systemlautsprecher auf Wandhalterungen, Tischständer oder Bodenständer stellen. Diese Zubehörteile können Sie bei Ihrem Bose®-Händler oder unter [www.Bose.com](http://www.Bose.com) erwerben.

Für das folgende Zubehör:

- Eingangskabeladapter zur Verwendung mit Unterputzkabeln vom Acoustimass-Modul zum Receiver
- Verlängerungskabel (6,1 m) zur Verwendung zwischen dem Acoustimass-Modul und dem Receiver
- Lautsprecherkabeladapter für die Verwendung mit Unterputzkabeln.

Setzen Sie sich mit Ihrem Bose-Vertragshändler in Verbindung. Oder, wenn Sie sich direkt an Bose wenden möchten, verwenden Sie das Blatt mit Kontaktinformationen im Karton.

## Lautsprecher-Treiber

### Acoustimass® 10-System:

- Cube Speaker Arrays und vorderer Center-Lautsprecher:  
Zwei 2,5" (6,35 cm) Twiddler™-Lautsprecher
- Aktives Acoustimass Modul:  
Zwei 5,25" (13 cm) Woofer

### System Acoustimass 6:

- Cube-Lautsprecher:  
Ein 2,5" (6,35 cm) Twiddler™-Lautsprecher
- Aktives Acoustimass Modul:  
Ein 5,25" (13 cm) Woofer

## Systemnennleistung

### System Acoustimass 10:

USA/Kanada: 100 - 127 V ~ 50/270 Hz, 60 W

Europa/Australien: 220 - 240 V ~ 50/270 Hz, 60 W

### System Acoustimass 6:

USA/Kanada: 100 - 127 V ~ 50/135 W, 60 W

Europa/Australien: 220 - 240 V ~ 50/135 W, 60 W

## Anschlussmöglichkeiten

### System Acoustimass 10:

Kompatibel mit AV-Receiver und Verstärkern mit 10 - 200 Watt Leistung pro Kanal an 4 - 8 Ohm.

### System Acoustimass 6:

Kompatibel mit AV-Receiver und Verstärkern mit 10 - 150 Watt Leistung pro Kanal an 4 - 8 Ohm.

### System Acoustimass 10:

Cube Speaker Arrays und vorderer Center-Lautsprecher: jeweils 1 kg

Cube Speaker Array: 15,7 cm x 7,9 cm x 10,2 cm (B x T x H)

Mittlerer vorderer Lautsprecher: 15,7 cm x 7,9 cm x 10,2 cm (B x T x H)

Modul: 15,8 kg

41,4 cm x 20,6 cm x 64,3 cm (B x T x H)

### System Acoustimass 6:

Cube-Lautsprecher: jeweils 0,45 kg

9,5 cm x 8,3 cm x 8,4 cm (B x T x H)

Modul: 12,2 kg

41,4 cm x 20,6 cm x 56,6 cm (B x T x H)





# Belangrijke veiligheidsinformatie

## Lees deze gebruikershandleiding zorgvuldig door en bewaar deze voor toekomstig gebruik.



De bliksemschicht met pijlpunt in een gelijkzijdige driehoek waarschuwt de gebruiker voor de aanwezigheid van niet-geïsoleerde gevaarlijke spanning in de behuizing van het systeem, die zo hoog kan zijn dat er een risico op elektrische schokken bestaat.



Het uitroepteken in een gelijkzijdige driehoek, als afgebeeld op het systeem, is bedoeld om de gebruiker attent te maken op belangrijke instructies voor gebruik en onderhoud in deze gebruikershandleiding.



### WAARSCHUWINGEN:

- Stel het apparaat niet bloot aan regen of vocht, om het risico op brand of elektrische schokken te verlagen.
- Stel dit apparaat niet bloot aan druipende of spattende vloeistoffen en plaats geen met vloeistof gevulde voorwerpen, zoals vazen, op of bij het apparaat. Evenals bij andere elektronische producten dient u op te letten dat er geen vloeistof in enig deel van het systeem terecht komt. Vloeistoffen kunnen leiden tot defecten en/of brandgevaar.
- Plaats geen open vlammen, zoals brandende kaarsen, op of bij het apparaat.



### WAARSCHUWING:

- Er mogen geen wijzigingen aan het product worden aangebracht door onbevoegden. Dergelijke wijzigingen kunnen de veiligheid, de naleving van wetten en voorschriften en de werking van het systeem in gevaar brengen en kunnen ertoe leiden dat de garantie vervalt.



**WAARSCHUWING:** Dit product bevat magnetisch materiaal. Neem contact op met uw arts als u vragen hebt over de invloed die dit kan hebben op de werking van uw implanteerbare medische hulpmiddel.

### OPMERKINGEN:

- Wanneer de netstekker of aansluiting van een apparaat als stroomonderbreker wordt gebruikt, dient deze stroomonderbreker steeds goed bereikbaar te zijn.
- Dit product moet binnenshuis worden gebruikt. Het is niet ontworpen of getest voor gebruik buitenshuis, in recreatievoertuigen of op boten.
- De bij het systeem geleverde luidsprekerkabels en aansluitkabels zijn niet goedgekeurd voor installatie in een muur. Raadpleeg de plaatselijke bouwvoorschriften voor het juiste type bedrading en kabels voor installatie in een muur.



Dit symbool betekent dat het product niet mag worden weggegooid als huishoudelijk afval en naar een geschikt inzamelpunt voor recycling moet worden gebracht. Het op de juiste wijze afvoeren en recyclen helpt natuurlijke hulpbronnen, de menselijke gezondheid en het milieu te beschermen. Voor meer informatie over het afvoeren en recyclen van dit product neemt u contact op met de gemeente waar u woont, de afvalverwerkingsdienst, of de winkel waar u dit product hebt gekocht.



Bose Corporation verklaart hierbij dat dit product voldoet aan de essentiële vereisten en andere relevante bepalingen van richtlijn 1999/5/EG en alle andere vereisten van van toepassing zijnde EU-richtlijnen. De volledige conformiteitsverklaring kunt u vinden op [www.Bose.com/compliance](http://www.Bose.com/compliance).

## Belangrijke veiligheidsinstructies

1. Lees deze instructies door.
2. Bewaar deze instructies.
3. Neem alle waarschuwingen in acht.
4. Volg alle instructies.
5. Gebruik dit apparaat niet in de buurt van water.
6. Uitsluitend schoonmaken met een droge doek.
7. De ventilatieopeningen niet blokkeren. Installeer het apparaat volgens de instructies van de fabrikant.
8. Installeer het niet in de buurt van warmtebronnen zoals radiatoren, verwarmingsroosters, kachels of andere apparaten (waaronder versterkers) die warmte produceren.
9. Zorg dat er niet op het netsnoer wordt gelopen en dat het niet wordt afgekneld, vooral bij stekkers, stopcontacten en het punt waar deze uit het apparaat komen.
10. Gebruik uitsluitend randapparatuur/accessoires die door de fabrikant worden gespecificeerd.
11. Verwijder de stekker van dit apparaat uit het stopcontact bij onweer of als het langere tijd niet wordt gebruikt.
12. Laat alle onderhoud over aan bevoegde medewerkers. Onderhoud is vereist als het apparaat is beschadigd, als bijvoorbeeld een netsnoer of stekker van het apparaat is beschadigd, als er vloeistof in het apparaat is terechtgekomen of voorwerpen in het apparaat zijn gevallen, als het apparaat is blootgesteld aan regen of vocht, niet normaal werkt of is gevallen.

### Namen van en gehalte aan giftige of gevaarlijke stoffen of elementen

Naam onderdeel	Giftige of gevaarlijke stoffen en elementen					
	Lood (Pb)	Kwik (Hg)	Cadmium (Cd)	Zeswaardig chroom (Cr(VI))	Polybroombifenyyl (PBB)	Polybroomdifenyylether (PBDE)
PCB's	X	0	0	0	0	0
Metalen onderdelen	X	0	0	0	0	0
Plastic onderdelen	0	0	0	0	0	0
Luidsprekers	X	0	0	0	0	0
Kabels	X	0	0	0	0	0

0: Geeft aan dat het gehalte aan deze giftige of gevaarlijke stof in alle homogene materialen van dit onderdeel onder de maximaal toegelaten waarden in SJ/T 11363-2006 ligt.

X: Geeft aan dat de giftige of gevaarlijke stof in minstens één van de voor dit onderdeel gebruikte homogene materialen boven de maximaal toegelaten waarden in SJ/T 11363-2006 ligt.

### Vul het volgende in en bewaar deze informatie voor uw administratie.

De serienummers en modelnummers kunt u vinden op het aansluitpaneel van de Acoustimass®-module.

Serienummer: \_\_\_\_\_

Modelnummer: \_\_\_\_\_

Aankoopdatum: \_\_\_\_\_

Bewaar uw ontvangstbewijs samen met deze gebruikershandleiding.

Blu-ray Disc™ en Blu-ray™ zijn handelsmerken van de Blu-ray Disc Association.

HDMI is een handelsmerk of gedeponerd handelsmerk van HDMI Licensing LLC in de Verenigde Staten en andere landen.

©2014 Bose Corporation. Niets in deze uitgave mag worden gereproduceerd, gewijzigd, gedistribueerd of op andere wijze gebruikt zonder voorafgaande schriftelijke toestemming.

**Inleiding**

Hartelijk dank .....	4
De doos uitpakken .....	4

**Installatie**

De luidsprekers plaatsen voor een realistisch thuisbioscoopgeluid .....	5
De luidsprekers links- en rechtsvoor .....	6
Middelste luidspreker .....	6
Achterste luidsprekers .....	6
De versterkte Acoustimass®-module .....	6
De aansluitingen maken .....	7
De luidsprekers op de Acoustimass-module aansluiten .....	7
De Acoustimass®-module aansluiten op de receiver .....	8
De aansluitingen controleren .....	9

**Uw systeem gebruiken**

Optimaal genieten van uw thuisbioscoopluidsprekers .....	10
De lage tonen/kamercompensatie aanpassen .....	10
Het LFE-niveau instellen .....	10
Uw digitale surround-sound-receiver instellen .....	11
Een digitaal audiosignaal ontvangen .....	11
Uw analoge surround-sound-receiver instellen .....	11

**Aanvullende informatie**

Problemen oplossen .....	12
Klantenservice .....	13
Schoonmaken .....	13
Informatie over de beperkte garantie .....	13
Accessoires .....	13
Technische informatie .....	14
Luidsprekerdrivergegevens .....	14
Elektrische gegevens systeem .....	14
Connectiviteit .....	14

# Inleiding

## Hartelijk dank

Wij stellen het op prijs dat u voor het Bose® Acoustimass® 6 series V- of Acoustimass 10 series V-thuisbioscoopuidsprekersysteem hebt gekozen.

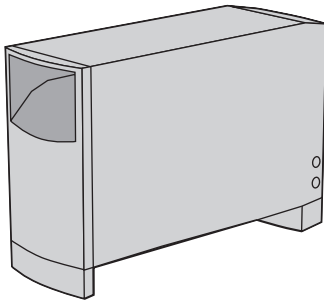
De Acoustimass 6 heeft vijf kleine cube-luidsprekers en het Acoustimass 10-systeem heeft vier cube-luidsprekers en één luidspreker voor plaatsing middenvoor. Deze luidsprekers zorgen samen met de Acoustimass-module voor een krachtige en realistische thuisbioscoopervaring.

## De doos uitpakken

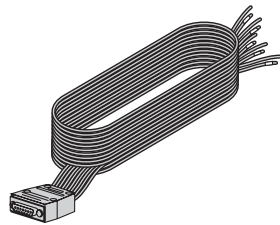
Pak de doos voorzichtig uit:

1. Haal de bruine binnendoos met de luidsprekers eruit.
2. Zet de doos voorzichtig op zijn kant en neem de Acoustimass-module uit de doos.

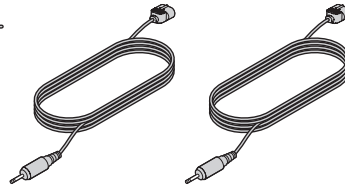
**WAARSCHUWING:** De module weegt ongeveer 14 kg. Ga daarom voorzichtig te werk wanneer u de module optilt.



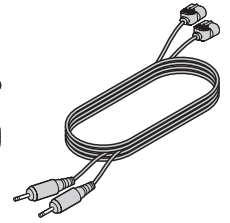
Acoustimass-module met versterking



Ingangskabel voor het systeem (6,1 m)

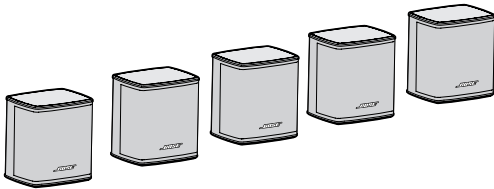


Drie kabels voor de voorste luidsprekers (6,1 m)



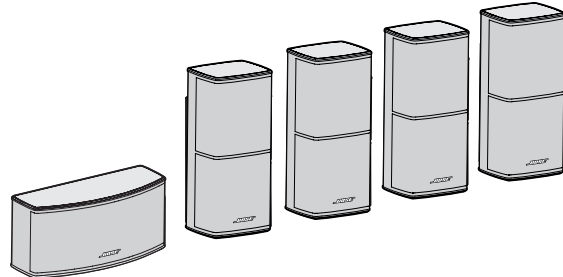
Twee kabels voor de achterste luidsprekers (15,2 m)

### Bij het Acoustimass 6-systeem



Vijf Virtually Invisible® series II-luidsprekers

### Bij het Acoustimass 10-systeem



Vier Direct/Reflecting® series II-luidsprekers aan één horizontale luidspreker voor het middelste kanaal

### Netsnoer (1)



VS/Canada



Europa



Verenigd Koninkrijk/Singapore



Australië

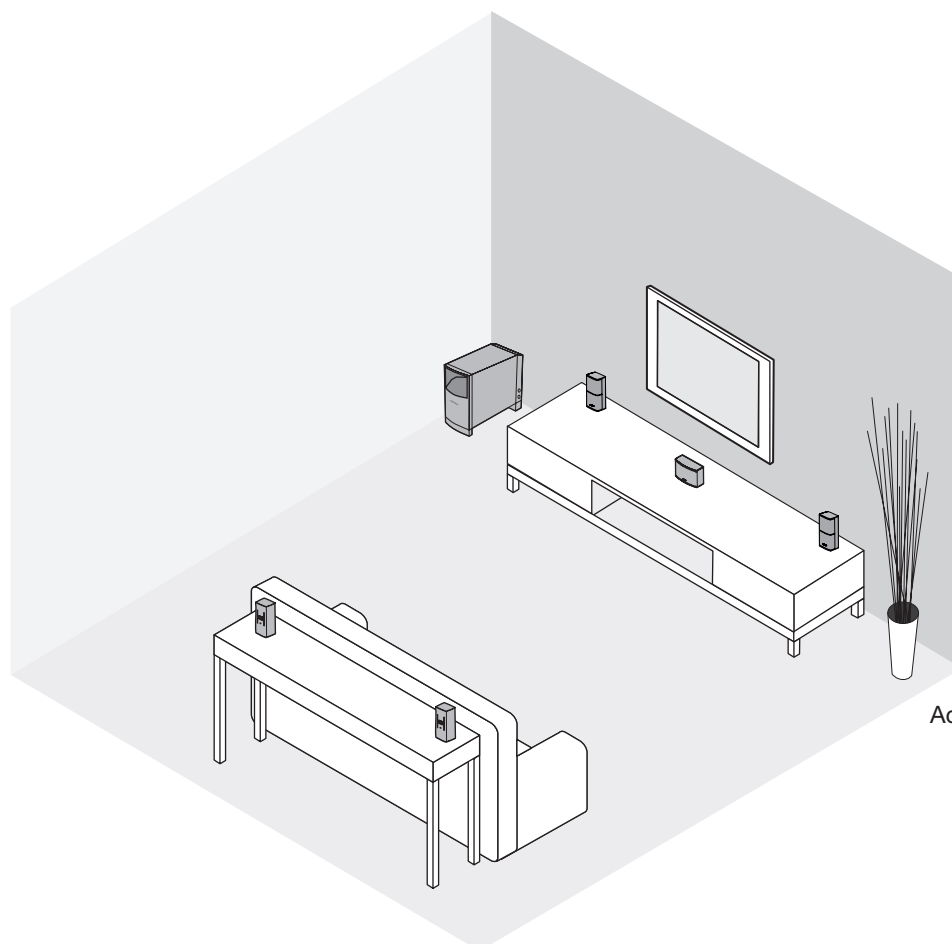
Nu is een goed moment om het serienummer voor uw product op de garantiekaart te noteren. Bewaar al het verpakkingsmateriaal voor eventueel toekomstig gebruik.

**WAARSCHUWING:** Houd de plastic zakken waarin de luidsprekers gewikkeld zijn buiten het bereik van kinderen, om verstikkingsgevaar te vermijden.

## De luidsprekers plaatsen voor een realistisch thuisbioscoopgeluid

Houd rekening met deze richtlijnen wanneer u een locatie voor de verschillende luidsprekers kiest:

- De afstand tussen de Acoustimass®-module en de tv moet ten minste 60 cm bedragen om storing te voorkomen.
- Selecteer een stabiel en vlak oppervlak voor elk van de luidsprekers.
- Bij een Acoustimass 10-systeem dient de luidspreker voor het middelste kanaal aan de voorkant van de kamer en bij het midden van de tv te worden geplaatst. De andere luidsprekers zijn allemaal hetzelfde en het maakt niet uit welke luidspreker waar in de kamer wordt geplaatst.
- Bij het Acoustimass 6-systeem zijn alle vijf de luidsprekers hetzelfde en het maakt niet uit welke luidspreker waar in de kamer wordt geplaatst.
- Waar u de luidsprekers plaatst, is afhankelijk van de vorm en de afmetingen van de kamer en van de plaats van de meubels. Gebruik het onderstaande voorbeeld als richtlijn voor het opstellen van uw thuisbioscoop.



Acoustimass 10 series V-systeem

# Installatie

## De luidsprekers links- en rechtsvoor

Deze luidsprekers zijn bedoeld om een geluidsbeeld te creëren dat breder is dan het scherm en dat natuurlijk overkomt bij luisteraars, onafhankelijk van waar ze in de kamer zitten.

- Plaats deze twee voorste luidsprekers links en rechts van de tv.
- Plaats de luidsprekers 2 m tot 5 m uit elkaar en op een afstand van minimaal 15 cm van een CRT-tv (beeldbuis).

## Middelste luidspreker

Het geluid van de middelste luidspreker moet uit het beeld lijken te komen om de meeste realistische combinatie van bewegende beelden en geluid te verkrijgen.

- Plaats de middelste luidspreker boven, op of onder de tv. Zorg dat de tv NIET op de luidspreker rust.
- Plaats de luidspreker op één lijn met het verticale midden van het scherm, voor de meest nauwkeurige weergave van dialoog.
- Plaats de luidsprekers minimaal 15 cm van een CRT-tv (beeldbuis).

## Achterste luidsprekers

Hoewel de achterste (surround) luidsprekers wel wat dialoog kunnen laten horen, zijn deze op de eerste plaats bedoeld voor afzonderlijke geluiden en speciale effecten als aanvulling op het visuele beeld. Dit helpt de kijker midden in de actie te plaatsen.

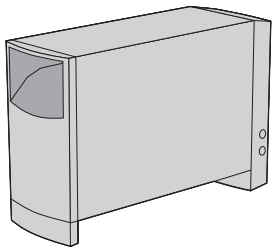
Kies plaatsen die praktisch en gemakkelijk zijn, maar houd wel rekening met de volgende richtlijnen:

- Plaats de linker en rechter achterste luidsprekers zodanig dat deze geluid aan weerszijden van de kijker weergeven en niet recht achter de kijker.
- Plaats deze luidsprekers op oorhoogte van de kijker (als deze zit) of hoger.

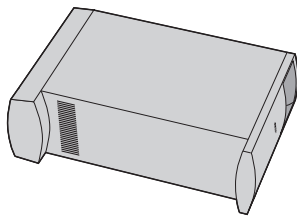
## De versterkte Acoustimass®-module

De Acoustimass-luidsprekertechnologie maakt het moeilijk om te horen waar geluiden met lage frequentie van deze module vandaan komen. U kunt de module daarom rustig uit het gezicht plaatsen. Plaats de module volgens de volgende richtlijnen:

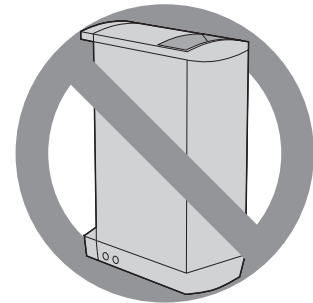
- Aan dezelfde kant van de kamer als het tv-scherm.
- Ten minste 60 cm van de tv om storingen te voorkomen.
- Voor meer lage tonen draait u de voorste opening naar een muur en voor minder lage tonen draait u de opening van de muur weg.
- Zorg dat zowel de opening aan de voorkant als het ventilatierooster aan de onderkant van de module zich op een afstand van ten minste 5 cm van andere oppervlakken bevinden.
- Zorg dat de ventilatieroosters aan de onderkant van de module niet worden geblokkeerd. Belemmeren van de ventilatie kan ertoe leiden dat de module minder lage tonen te horen geeft.



Aanbevolen



Alternatief



## De aansluitingen maken

Alleen de Acoustimass®-module wordt op uw receiver aangesloten. Alle luidsprekers worden rechtstreeks op de Acoustimass-module aangesloten.

**WAARSCHUWING:** Sluit luidsprekers niet op een receiver aan. Dit kan leiden tot schade aan uw systeem en mogelijk elektrische schokken.

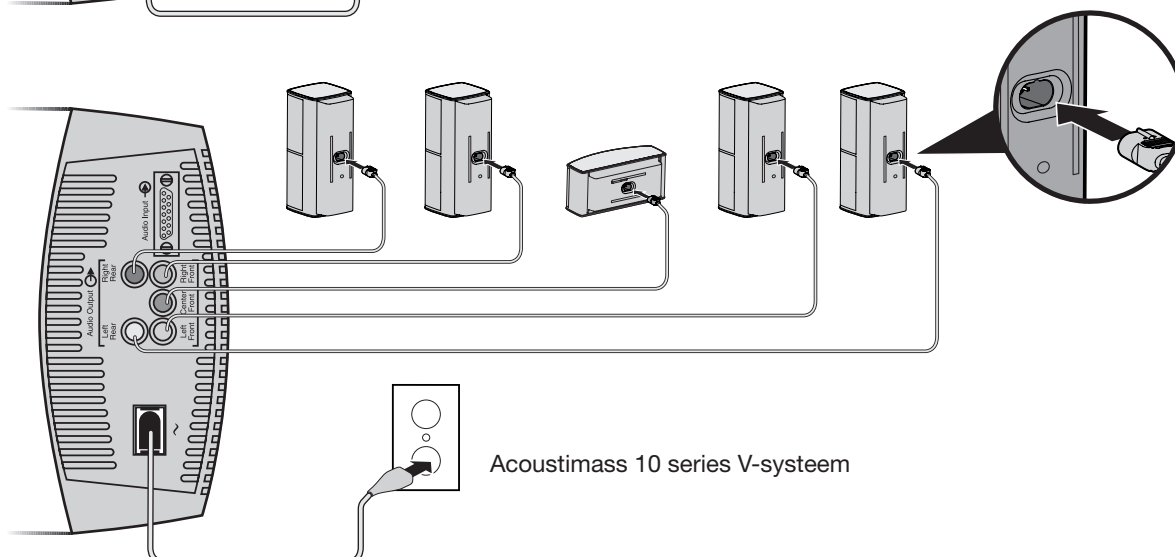
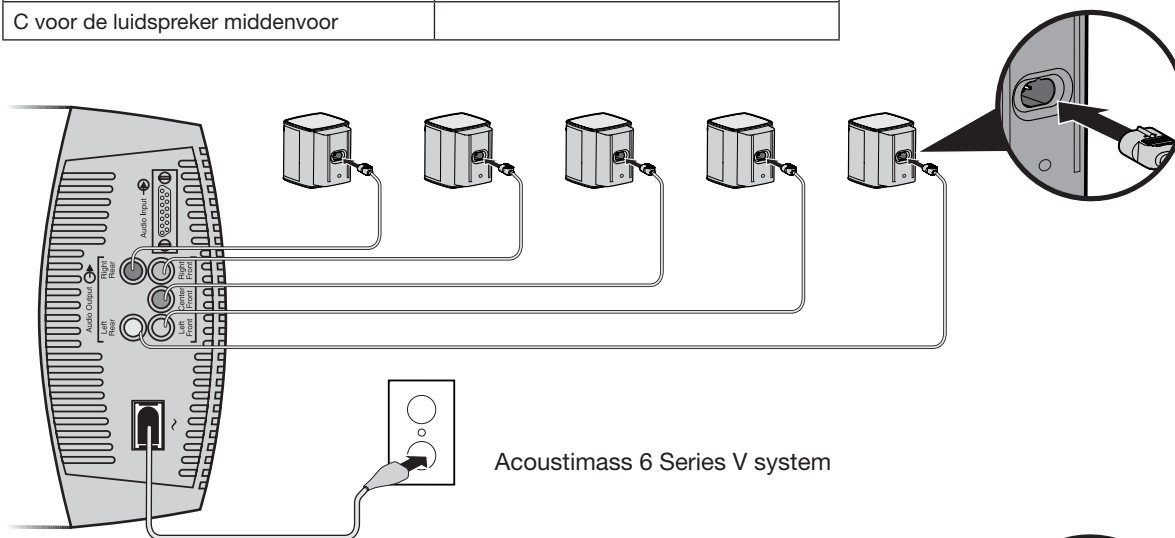
### De luidsprekers op de Acoustimass-module aansluiten

Sluit de stekker van elke luidsprekerkabel aan op de aansluiting op de module. Zorg dat het label op de stekker overeenkomt met de juiste aansluiting.

1. Gebruik de bijgeleverde luidsprekerkabels van 6,1 m voor de drie voorste luidsprekers.
  - Sluit de **R**-stekker aan op de aansluiting met het label **Right Front**.
  - Sluit de **C**-stekker aan op de aansluiting met het label **Center Front**.
  - Sluit de **L**-stekker aan op de aansluiting met het label **Left Front**.
2. Gebruik de bijgeleverde luidsprekerkabels van 15,2 m voor de luidsprekers achter in de kamer.
  - Sluit de **RR**-stekker aan op de aansluiting met het label **Right Rear**.
  - Sluit de **LR**-stekker aan op de aansluiting met het label **Left Rear**.
3. Sluit de andere stekker van elke kabel aan op de aansluiting op elke luidspreker, met het label omlaag gericht.

**Opmerking:** Zoek het label op elke luidspreker ook dat overeenkomt met de juiste luidspreker:

Label luidsprekerkabel	
L voor de luidspreker linksvoor	LR voor de luidspreker linksachter
R voor de luidspreker rechtsvoor	RR voor de luidspreker rechtsachter
C voor de luidspreker middenvoor	

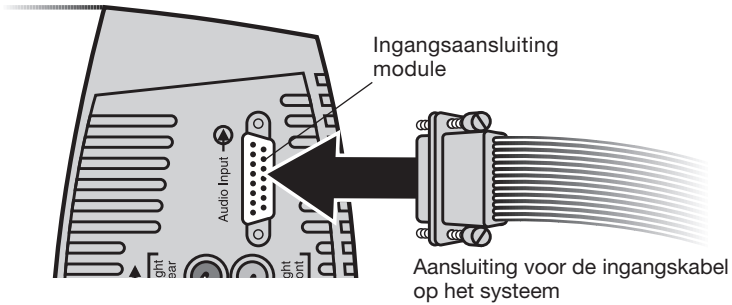


# Installatie

## De Acoustimass®-module aansluiten op de receiver

**LET OP:** Voordat u deze aansluitingen maakt, moet u de receiver uitschakelen om ongewenste geluiden te voorkomen bij het aansluiten van de Acoustimass®-module op de receiver.

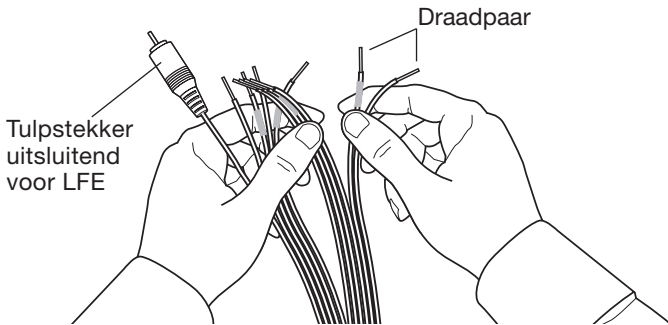
De ingangskabel van het systeem is 6,1 m lang en moet worden aangesloten op de surround-receiver. In tegenstelling tot de luidsprekerkabels heeft deze ingangskabel een veelpolige stekker die wordt aangesloten op de aansluiting **Audio Input** op de module.



Aan het ander uiteinde van de ingangskabel kunt u de diverse draadparen "uit elkaar halen" en aansluiten op de aansluitklemmen van de receiver. Draden met een rode manchet zijn positief (+).

**LET OP:** Sluit de module NIET aan op de tv. Deze kan niet zorgen voor de nodige versterking.

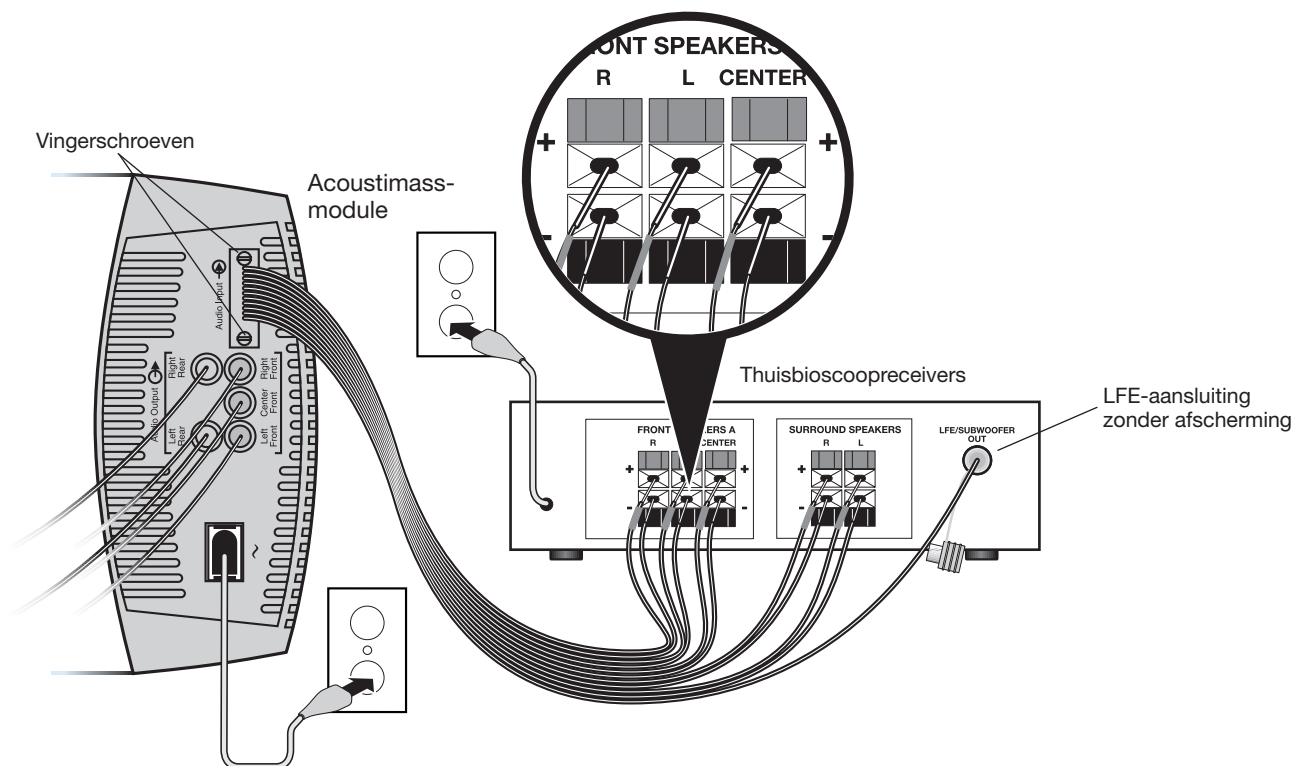
De enkele tulpstekker aan dat uiteinde dient uitsluitend voor gebruik met een receiver die geschikt is voor lagefrequentie-effecten en voorzien is van een aansluiting **LFE/SUBWOOFER**.



## De aansluitingen maken:

1. Sluit de veelpolige stekker op de ingangskabel aan op de ingangsaansluiting op de Acoustimass®-module. Draai de twee vingerschroeven aan om de aansluiting vast te maken.
2. Sluit elk draadpaar aan het andere uiteinde van de ingangskabel aan op de surround-receiver. Deze moet voorzien zijn van audio-uitgangen met de labels:
  - Right, Left en Center voor de voorste audiokanalen.
  - Right Surround en Left Surround voor de achterste kanalen. De labels op uw receiver kunnen enigszins anders zijn.

**LET OP:** Zorg dat blootliggende draden elkaar niet aanraken, aangezien dit kan leiden tot schade aan de receiver.
3. Zorg dat de polariteit van de aansluitingen overeenkomt (+ op + en – op –).
  - Sluit elke draad met een rode manchet (+) aan op de juiste aansluitklem (+).
  - Sluit elke draad zonder aanduiding (–) aan op de juiste aansluitklem (–).
4. Als dit van toepassing is op uw receiver, sluit dan de tulpstekker met de aanduiding **LFE** op de ingangskabel aan op de aansluiting **LFE/SUBWOOFER OUT** op de surround-receiver. Verwijder eerst de afscherming.



## De aansluitingen controleren

Voordat u de Acoustimass-module aansluit, controleert u alle aansluitingen van de receiver naar de module en van de module naar de luidsprekers.

- Zorg dat alle luidsprekers op de juiste aansluitklemmen zijn aangesloten, volgens hun plaats in de kamer.
- Controleer of alle draden op de surround-receiver zijn aangesloten in overeenstemming met de juiste polariteit (+ op + en – op –). Als draden verkeerd zijn aangesloten, geeft de module mogelijk geen uitgangssignaal.
- Corrigeer eventuele verkeerde aansluitingen voordat u de receiver op het lichtnet aansluit en aanzet.

Wanneer alle aansluitingen correct zijn, sluit de netstekker van de Acoustimass-module op een stopcontact aan. Sluit de receiver ook op het stop op een stopcontact aan.

**Opmerking:** Bose adviseert een overspanningsbeveiliging van goede kwaliteit te gebruiken voor alle elektronische apparatuur. Spanningsschommelingen en spanningspieken kunnen elektronische componenten in elk systeem beschadigen. Gebruik van een overspanningsbeveiliging van goede kwaliteit (verkrijgbaar in elektronikawinkels) kan de overgrote meerderheid van storingen als gevolg van spanningspieken voorkomen.



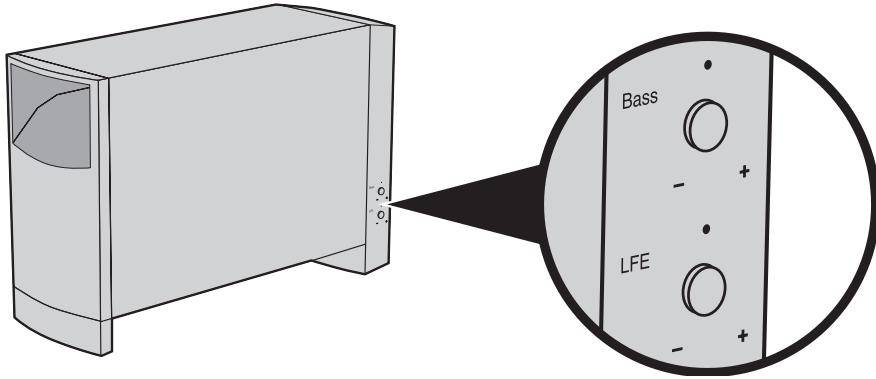
## Uw systeem gebruiken

### Optimaal genieten van uw thuisbioscoopluidsprekers

Nu alles is aangesloten en de stekker van de module in het stopcontact zit, is het Acoustimass®-systeem klaar voor gebruik.

Zorg dat u vertrouwd bent met de knoppen en ingebouwde beveiligingen die de audio van dit systeem aanpassen. Deze bieden opties om het systeem aan uw gebruik en voorkeuren aan te passen.

**LET OP:** Het systeem is voorzien van een automatische beveiliging die voorkomt dat er schade kan ontstaan als gevolg van elektrische belasting en overbelasting van het systeem. De beveiliging wordt geactiveerd bij hoge volumes om het uitgangsvermogen te reduceren, wat leidt tot een ietwat lager volume. Als u een dergelijke volumedaling vaststelt, dan weet u dat het systeem normaal werkt. Deze verlaging van het volume duidt er ook op dat het een gansvermogen naar het systeem mogelijk de veilige waarden overschrijdt. Het wordt afgeraden om voortdurend op dergelijke volumes te luisteren.



#### De lage tonen/kamercompensatie aanpassen

Nadat u de Acoustimass-module op de gewenste plaats hebt gezet, kunt u deze fijnregelen voor die plaats. Doe dit alleen als het nodig is.

Bijvoorbeeld:

- Als het systeem niet voldoende lage tonen weergeeft, draait u de BASS-knop (hierboven afgebeeld) rechtsom om het volume van de lage tonen van de module hoger te zetten.
- Als het systeem te veel lage tonen weergeeft, draait u de BASS-knop (hierboven afgebeeld) linksom om het volume van de lage tonen van de module lager te zetten.

De fabrieksinstelling is bedoeld voor de meest voorkomende situaties.

#### Het LFE-niveau instellen

De knop voor het LFE-niveau (hierboven afgebeeld) is alleen bedoeld voor receivers met een LFE/SUBWOOFER-kanaal.

Door deze knop te draaien, kunt u het relatieve volume van de lagefrequentie-effecten van soundtracks hoger of lager zetten. Gebruik deze knop om het volume van het LFE-kanaal aan te passen aan het volume van de andere luidsprekerkanalen.

U kunt alle volumes controleren met de functie "testtonen" van uw digitale surround-sound-receiver. Voor meer informatie over deze functie, raadpleegt u de gebruikershandleiding van uw surround-receiver.

## Uw digitale surround-sound-receiver instellen

De luidsprekers in uw Acoustimass® 6 series V- of Acoustimass 10 series V-systeem zijn volledig compatibel met de audio-uitgang van digitale surround-receivers. De geïntegreerde signaalverwerking van het systeem ondersteunt volledige weergave van lage tonen van alle kanalen.

Als u volledig wilt profiteren van deze mogelijkheden van het systeem, kan het nodig zijn sommige instellingen van de receiver aan te passen. Om wijzigingen aan te brengen, gebruikt u het menu op de digitale display op de receiver en raadpleegt u de lijst met aanbevolen instellingen hieronder.

Luidspreker	Instelling van receiver
Links en rechts	LARGE
Midden	LARGE
Links en rechts surround	LARGE
LFE/Subwoofer	ON

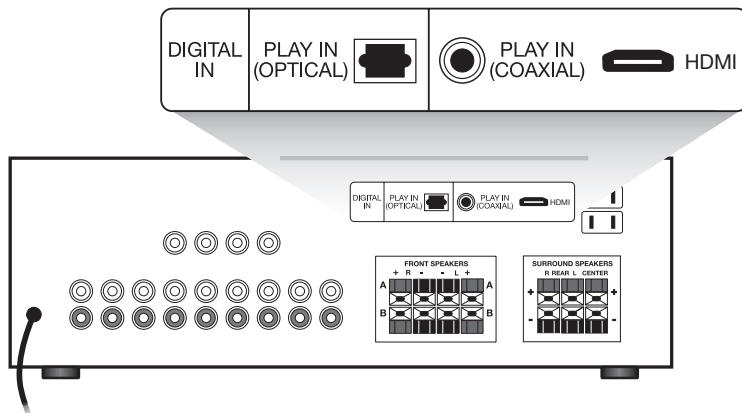
**Opmerking:** Als dit mogelijk is bij uw receiver, moet de optie LFE of Subwoofer wordt ingesteld op ON en moet de crossover-waarde zo laag mogelijk worden ingesteld, meestal is dit op 80 Hz.

### Een digitaal audiosignaal ontvangen

Om te zorgen dat het digitale audiosignaal van bijkomende bronnen (Blu-ray™- of dvd-speler, CBL/SAT-box, gamesysteem, etc.) uw surround-receiver bereikt, hebt u een digitale audioaansluiting nodig tussen de bijkomende bron en de receiver.

- Gebruik de HDMI™-, optische of coaxiale ingang op de receiver om deze aan te sluiten op de digitale uitgang van de bijkomende bron. Gebruik niet meer dan één aansluiting.
- Zorg dat u de digitale uitgang selecteert in het installatiemenu van uw bijkomende bron.

Raadpleeg de gebruiksaanwijzing van uw surround-receiver voor verdere installatie- en bedieningsinformatie.



## Uw analoge surround-sound-receiver instellen

Voor analoge (niet digitale) surround-sound-toepassingen adviseren wij om de surround-sound-centermodus van uw receiver op Wide (breed) in te stellen. Raadpleeg de gebruikershandleiding van uw surround-receiver voor meer informatie over deze instelling.

## Aanvullende informatie

### Problemen oplossen

Als er een probleem optreedt met uw Acoustimass®-luidsprekersysteem, dan dient u de geluidsbron uit te zetten en onderstaande oplossingen te proberen. Blijft er toch nog een probleem bestaan, neem dan contact op met uw geautoriseerde Bose® dealer om een service-afspraak te maken. U kunt ook rechtstreeks contact opnemen met Bose. Zie hiervoor het blad met contactgegevens in de doos.

Probleem	Wat te doen
Systeem werkt helemaal niet	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Zorg dat de netsnoeren van de receiver en Acoustimass-module met versterking zijn aangesloten op een werkend stopcontact en dat de receiver aanstaat.</li><li>• Zorg dat u een audiobron selecteert op de receiver (Blu-ray- of dvd-speler, CBL/SAT-box, gamesysteem, etc.).</li></ul>
Geen geluid	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Zet het volume hoger.</li><li>• Maak alle hoofdtelefoons los.</li><li>• Controleer de luidsprekeraansluitingen op de basmodule, receiver en luidsprekers.</li><li>• Controleer of de stekkers van de Acoustimass-module met versterking en de receiver in het stopcontact zitten.</li><li>• Voor digitale geluid dient u een HDMI-, coaxiale of optische kabel aan te sluiten op de digitale uitgang van de audiobron en de digitale ingang op uw receiver.</li><li>• Controleer of de geselecteerde audiobron juist is. Selecteer bijvoorbeeld DVD audio op uw receiver om het dvd-geluid te horen.</li></ul>
Geen surround sound	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Controleer of het uitgangsmateriaal wel surround sound bevat.</li><li>• Als u de modus Dolby Pro-Logic gebruikt op de receiver, controleer dan of de surround sound aanstaat.</li><li>• Zorg dat het bronmateriaal (Blu-ray™- of dvd-speler, CBL/SAT-box, gamesysteem, etc.) geëncodeerd is voor Dolby Digital.</li><li>• Zorg dat uw receiver een signaal verwerkt van een stereo-tv, laserdisc-speler, Blu-ray-speler of dvd-speler of andere surround-sound-bron.</li><li>• Als u digitale programmering gebruikt, verifieer dan of de instellingen op de receiver juist zijn.</li></ul>
Geen lage tonen	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Zorg dat de luidsprekeraansluitingen van de receiver naar de versterker in de juiste fase staan, draad met rode manchet op rode aansluiting (+ op + en – op –).</li><li>• Verifieer of de maat van de luidspreker in de receiver is ingesteld op large.</li></ul>
Niet genoeg of te veel lage tonen	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Plaats de Acoustimass-module dicht bij een muur of hoek om meer lage tonen te krijgen. Zet de module verder weg van een wand of hoek voor minder lage tonen.</li><li>• Pas het LFE-niveau of de kamercompensatieregelaar aan.</li></ul>
Het geluid is vervormd	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Controleer of de luidsprekerdraad niet beschadigd is.</li><li>• Zet het volume van externe componenten die op de receiver zijn aangesloten lager.</li></ul>

---

## Klantenservice

---

Voor verdere hulp bij het oplossen van problemen neemt u contact op met de vestiging van de Bose®-klantenservice voor uw regio. Zie het blad met contactgegevens in de doos.

---

## Schoonmaken

---

De behuizingen van het Acoustimass®-luidsprekersysteem mogen uitsluitend met een zachte droge doek worden schoongemaakt. Gebruik geen sprays in de buurt van het systeem en mors geen vloeistoffen in de openingen. Gebruik ook geen oplosmiddelen, chemicaliën of schoonmaakmiddelen met alcohol, ammoniak of schuurmiddelen.

Zo nodig kunt u de roosters op de luidsprekers voorzichtig stofzuigen. De drivers bevinden zich direct achter het rooster en kunnen gemakkelijk worden beschadigd als u deze niet voorzichtig behandelt.

---

## Informatie over de beperkte garantie

---

Het Acoustimass®-luidsprekersysteem wordt gedekt door een beperkte garantie. Informatie over de garantie vindt u op de garantietafel die u bij het systeem hebt ontvangen. Vul het informatiegedeelte van de kaart in en stuur dit naar Bose. Als u dit nalaat, is dit niet van invloed op uw rechten.

De bij dit product verstrekte garantie-informatie is niet van toepassing in Australië en Nieuw-Zeeland. Zie onze website op [www.bose.com.au/warranty](http://www.bose.com.au/warranty) of [www.bose.com.nz/warranty](http://www.bose.com.nz/warranty) voor informatie over de garantie voor Australië en Nieuw-Zeeland.

---

## Accessoires

---

U kunt de luidsprekers aan wandsteunen, vloerstandaarden of tafelstandaarden bevestigen. Als u deze accessoires wilt aanschaffen, neem dan contact op met uw plaatselijke Bose®-dealer of ga naar [www.Bose.com](http://www.Bose.com).

Voor de volgende accessoires:

- Adapter voor ingangskabel voor gebruik bij in de muur geïnstalleerde bedrading van de Acoustimass-module naar de receiver
- Verlengkabel van 6,1 m voor gebruik tussen de Acoustimass-module en de receiver
- Luidsprekerkabel adapters voor gebruik bij in de muur geïnstalleerde bedrading

Neem contact op met een erkende Bose-dealer. U kunt ook rechtstreeks contact opnemen met Bose. Zie hiervoor het blad met contactgegevens in de doos.

### Luidsprekerdrivergegevens

#### Acoustimass® 10-systeem:

- Cube-luidsprekerarrays en luidspreker middenvoor:  
Twee Twiddler™-luidsprekers van 6,35 cm
- Acoustimass-module met versterking:  
Twee woofers van 13 cm

#### Acoustimass 6-systeem:

- Cube-luidsprekers:  
Eén Twiddler™-luidspreker van 6,35 cm
- Acoustimass-module met versterking:  
Eén woofer van 13 cm

### Elektrische gegevens systeem

#### Acoustimass 10-systeem:

VS/Canada: 100-127 V ~ 50/60 Hz 270 W

Europa/Australië: 220-240 V ~ 50/60 Hz 270 W

#### Acoustimass 6-systeem:

VS/Canada: 100-127 V ~ 50/60 Hz 135 W

Europa/Australië: 220-240 V ~ 50/60 Hz 135 W

### Connectiviteit

#### Acoustimass 10-systeem:

Compatibel met AV-receivers en versterkers van 10 tot 200 watt per kanaal, bij een nominale impedantie van 4 tot 8 ohm

#### Acoustimass 6-systeem:

Compatibel met AV-receivers en versterkers van 10 tot 150 watt per kanaal, bij een nominale impedantie van 4 tot 8 ohm

#### Acoustimass 10-systeem:

Cube-luidsprekers en luidspreker middenvoor: 1 kg per stuk

cube-luidspreker-array: 15,7 cm H x 7,9 cm B x 10,2 cm D

luidspreker middenvoor: 15,7 cm H x 7,9 cm B x 10,2 cm D

Module: 15,8 kg

41,4 cm H x 20,6 cm B x 64,3 cm D

#### Acoustimass 6-systeem:

Cube-luidspreker: 0,45 kg per stuk

9,5 cm H x 8,3 cm B x 8,4 cm D

Module: 12,2 kg

41,4 cm H x 20,6 cm B x 56,6 cm D



# Información de seguridad importante

## Lea esta guía del usuario y guárdela para consultarla en el futuro.



El símbolo de relámpago con punta de flecha dentro de un triángulo equilátero indica al usuario que la caja del sistema puede contener una tensión sin aislar de magnitud suficiente para constituir un riesgo de descarga eléctrica.



El signo de exclamación dentro de un triángulo equilátero, tal como aparece marcado en el sistema, avisa al usuario de que existen instrucciones de operación y mantenimiento importantes en esta guía del usuario.



### ADVERTENCIAS:

- Con el fin de reducir el riesgo de descargas eléctricas, no exponga el producto a la lluvia o la humedad.
- No exponga este aparato a salpicaduras o goteo. No coloque encima o cerca del aparato objetos que contengan líquidos, como jarrones. Al igual que con cualquier producto electrónico, evite que se derramen líquidos en los componentes del sistema, ya que pueden provocar averías o riesgo de incendio.
- No coloque sobre el aparato o cerca de éste llamas vivas, por ejemplo, velas.



### PRECAUCIÓN:

- No realice modificaciones no autorizadas del producto; en caso contrario puede poner en riesgo la seguridad, el cumplimiento normativo, el rendimiento del sistema y anular la garantía.



**ADVERTENCIA:** Este producto contiene material magnético. Consulte a su médico si tiene alguna duda acerca de los efectos que esto pudiera tener en el funcionamiento de un dispositivo médico implantado.

### NOTAS:

- Si se utiliza la clavija de red o el conector del aparato como dispositivo de desconexión, deberá poder accionarse fácilmente.
- Este producto debe utilizarse en espacios interiores. No está diseñado ni se ha probado para uso al aire libre, en vehículos de recreo o embarcaciones.
- El cable del altavoz y los cables de interconexión incluidos con el sistema no están homologados para instalación dentro de la pared. Consulte las normas de construcción locales para conocer el tipo correcto de cables requeridos para instalación dentro de la pared.



Este símbolo significa que el producto no debe desecharse como residuos domésticos y que debe llevarse a un centro de recogida adecuado para su reciclaje. La eliminación y el reciclado adecuados ayuda a proteger los recursos naturales, la salud de las personas y el medio ambiente. Para obtener más información sobre la eliminación y el reciclado de este producto, póngase en contacto con su ayuntamiento, servicio de recogida de residuos o el establecimiento donde compró este producto.



Bose Corporation declara por la presente que este producto cumple los requisitos esenciales y otras disposiciones relevantes de la Directiva 1999/5/CE y todos los demás requisitos de directivas aplicables de la UE. Encontrará la declaración de conformidad completa en [www.Bose.com/compliance](http://www.Bose.com/compliance).

## Instrucciones de seguridad importantes

1. Lea las siguientes instrucciones.
2. Guarde estas instrucciones.
3. Tenga presentes todas las advertencias.
4. Siga todas las instrucciones.
5. No utilice este aparato cerca del agua.
6. Límpielo solo con un trapo seco.
7. No bloquee las aberturas de ventilación. Realice la instalación de acuerdo con las instrucciones del fabricante.
8. No lo instale cerca de fuentes de calor, tales como radiadores, salidas de aire caliente, cocinas u otros aparatos (incluidos amplificadores) que generen calor.
9. Proteja el cable de alimentación de forma que nadie lo pise ni quede pinzado, en particular cerca de enchufes, receptáculos de tomas múltiples y en el lugar en que sale del aparato.
10. Utilice solo conexiones y accesorios suministrados por el fabricante.
11. Desenchufe el aparato si se produce una tormenta eléctrica o si no lo va a utilizar durante periodos prolongados de tiempo.
12. Toda reparación debe ser realizada por personal cualificado. Lleve el dispositivo a reparar si presenta algún daño, por ejemplo, si el cable de alimentación o el enchufe están dañados, si se han vertido líquidos o se han caído objetos sobre el dispositivo o ha estado expuesto a la lluvia o humedad, si no funciona correctamente o ha caído al suelo.

### Nombres y contenido de sustancias o elementos tóxicos o peligrosos

Nombre de la pieza	Sustancias y elementos tóxicos o peligrosos					
	Plomo (Pb)	Mercurio (Hg)	Cadmio (Cd)	Hexavalente (CR(VI))	Bifenilo polibromado (PBB)	Éter difenílico polibromado (PBDE)
PCB	X	0	0	0	0	0
Piezas metálicas	X	0	0	0	0	0
Piezas de plástico	0	0	0	0	0	0
Altavoces	X	0	0	0	0	0
Cables	X	0	0	0	0	0

0: Indica que esta sustancia tóxica o peligrosa contenida en todos los materiales homogéneos usados para esta pieza está por debajo del requisito límite en SJ/T 11363-2006.

X: Indica que esta sustancia tóxica o peligrosa contenida en al menos uno de los materiales homogéneos usados para esta pieza está por encima del requisito límite en SJ/T 11363-2006.

### Cumplimente y conserve como referencia.

El número de serie y de modelo se encuentran en el panel de conectores del módulo Acoustimass®.

Número de serie: \_\_\_\_\_

Modelo: \_\_\_\_\_

Fecha de compra: \_\_\_\_\_

Conserve el recibo de compra junto con esta guía del usuario.

Blu-ray Disc™ y Blu-ray™ son marcas comerciales de Blu-ray Disc Association.

HDMI es una marca comercial o una marca comercial registrada de HDMI Licensing LLC en Estados Unidos y otros países.

©2014 Bose Corporation. Este documento no se puede reproducir, modificar, distribuir ni usar de otra forma sin el permiso por escrito.

**Introducción**

Gracias .....4  
 Desembalar el sistema .....4

**Instalación**

Ubicación de los altavoces para lograr un sonido realista de cine en casa .....5  
     Altavoces frontales izquierdo y derecho .....6  
     Altavoz central.....6  
     Altavoces posteriores.....6  
     Módulo autoamplificado Acoustimass® .....6  
 Conexiones ..... 7  
     Conexión de los altavoces al módulo Acoustimass..... 7  
     Conexión del módulo Acoustimass® al receptor ..... 8  
 Comprobación de las conexiones .....9

**Uso del sistema**

Cómo sacar el máximo partido de los altavoces de cine en casa ..... 10  
     Ajuste de la compensación de graves/ambiente ..... 10  
     Ajuste del nivel de LFE ..... 10  
 Configuración del receptor de sonido envolvente digital.....11  
     Recepción de una señal de audio digital.....11  
 Configuración del receptor de sonido envolvente analógico .....11

**Referencia**

Resolución de problemas..... 12  
 Atención al cliente..... 13  
 Limpieza..... 13  
 Información sobre la garantía limitada ..... 13  
 Accesorios..... 13  
 Información técnica ..... 14  
     Complemento del cono del altavoz ..... 14  
     Tensión nominal del sistema..... 14  
     Conectividad ..... 14



# Introducción

## Gracias

Gracias por elegir el sistema de altavoces para cine en casa Acoustimass® 6 Serie III o Acoustimass 10 Serie III de Bose®.

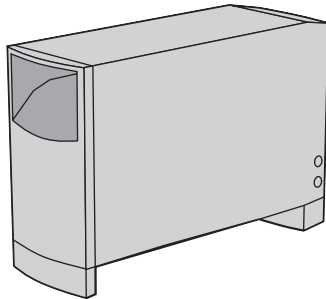
El sistema Acoustimass 6 incorpora cinco pequeños altavoces cúbicos, mientras que el sistema Acoustimass 10 incluye cuatro conjuntos de altavoces cúbicos y un altavoz frontal central. Estos altavoces, junto con el módulo Acoustimass, proporcionan una experiencia de cine en casa impactante y realista.

## Desembalar el sistema

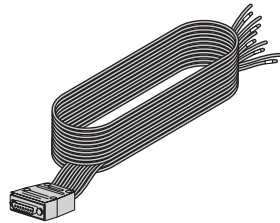
Desembale el contenido de la caja cuidadosamente:

1. Saque la caja interior de color marrón que contiene los altavoces.
2. Coloque suavemente la caja sobre uno de los lados y extraiga el módulo Acoustimass.

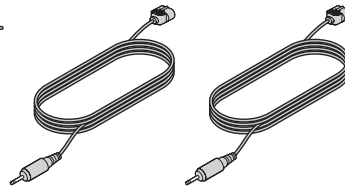
**ADVERTENCIA:** Tenga cuidado al levantar el módulo (pesa 14 kg) para evitar lastimarse.



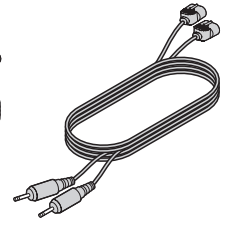
Módulo autoamplificado Acoustimass



Cable de entrada del sistema de 6,1 m

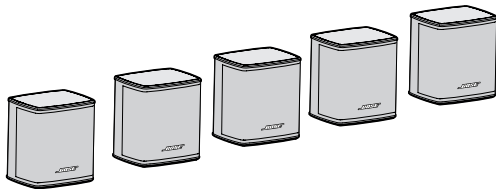


Tres cables para altavoces frontales de 6,1 m



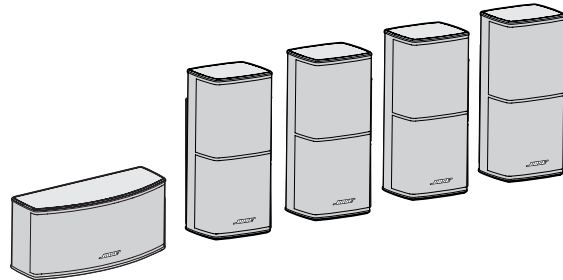
Dos cables de 15,2 m para los altavoces traseros

### Con sistema Acoustimass 6



Cinco altavoces Virtually Invisible® Serie II

### Con sistema Acoustimass 10



Cuatro altavoces Direct/Reflecting® Serie II y un altavoz horizontal del canal central

### Cable de alimentación (1)



EE.UU./Canadá



Europa



Reino Unido/Singapur



Australia

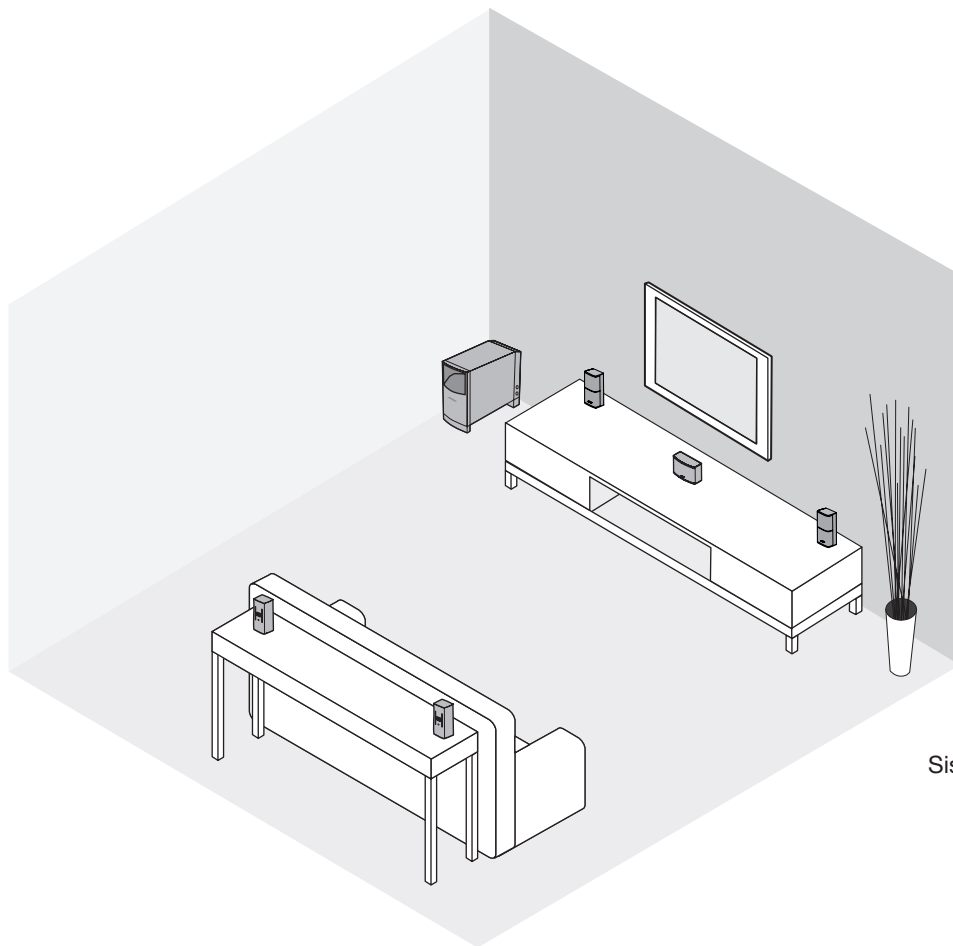
Ahora es el momento adecuado para anotar el número de serie de este producto en la tarjeta de garantía. Guarde los materiales de embalaje por si tuviera que usarlos en el futuro.

**ADVERTENCIA:** Mantenga fuera del alcance de los niños las bolsas de plástico que envuelven los altavoces para evitar el peligro de asfixia.

## Ubicación de los altavoces para lograr un sonido realista de cine en casa

Tenga en cuenta estas directrices a la hora de seleccionar una ubicación para cada altavoz:

- El módulo Acoustimass® debe situarse a un mínimo de 0,6 m del televisor para evitar interferencias.
- Seleccione una superficie estable y plana para cada uno de los altavoces.
- En el sistema Acoustimass 10, el altavoz central del canal se emplea en la parte delantera de la habitación y cerca del centro del televisor. El resto de altavoces son idénticos y se pueden colocar indistintamente en la habitación.
- En el sistema Acoustimass 6, los cinco altavoces son idénticos y pueden ubicarse de manera intercambiable en la habitación.
- El forma y el tamaño de la sala y la ubicación del mobiliario afectarán a la ubicación de los altavoces. Utilice el ejemplo siguiente como guía para la instalación del sistema de cine en casa.



Sistema Acoustimass 10 Serie V

# Instalación

## Altavoces frontales izquierdo y derecho

El objetivo de estos altavoces es crear un espacio acústico que sea más ancho que la pantalla y que proporcione un sonido más natural a los espectadores independientemente de en qué parte de la habitación se encuentren.

- Sitúe los dos altavoces frontales a los lados del televisor.
- Deje una separación de entre 2 y 5 m, y al menos a 15 cm de un televisor CRT (con tubo de imagen).

## Altavoz central

El sonido del altavoz central debe parecer que procede del interior de la imagen para dar una sensación más realista en la acción y el diálogo de la pantalla.

- Coloque el altavoz central por encima, por debajo o directamente sobre su televisor. NO coloque el peso del televisor sobre el altavoz.
- Si es posible, mantenga el altavoz en línea con el centro vertical de la pantalla para conseguir la reproducción más precisa del diálogo.
- Deje al menos 15 cm de distancia con un televisor CRT (tubo de imagen).

## Altavoces posteriores

Si bien los altavoces traseros (de sonido envolvente) pueden emitir algunos diálogos, su función básica es proporcionar sonidos diferenciados y efectos especiales que amplíen la imagen visual. Ayudan a transportar al espectador al centro mismo de la acción.

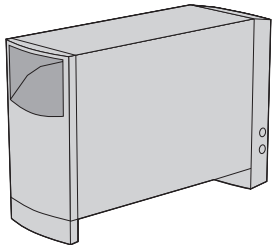
Elija ubicaciones que sean prácticas y cómodas, teniendo en cuenta estas recomendaciones:

- Sitúe los altavoces traseros izquierdo y derecho para que el sonido le llegue al espectador desde ambos lados, en lugar de directamente desde atrás.
- Sitúe estos altavoces como mínimo a la altura de los oídos de un espectador sentado.

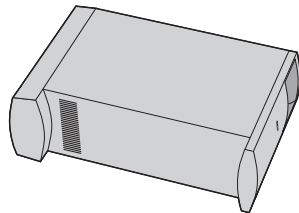
## Módulo autoamplificado Acoustimass®

La tecnología de los altavoces Acoustimass hace que resulte difícil localizar la fuente del sonido de baja frecuencia de este módulo. Por tanto, puede ocultarlo de la vista. Coloque el módulo de acuerdo con las directrices siguientes:

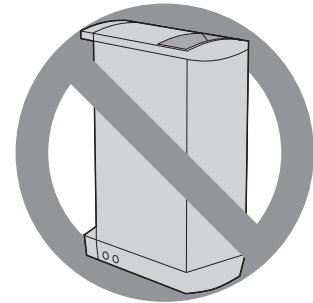
- En el mismo extremo de la habitación que la pantalla del televisor.
- Al menos a 0,6 m del televisor para evitar interferencias.
- Para incrementar el efecto de los graves, gire la abertura frontal hacia una pared; para reducirlo, apártela de la pared.
- Mantenga la abertura frontal y la rejilla de ventilación de la parte inferior del módulo a un mínimo de 5 cm de cualquier otra superficie.
- No bloquee las rejillas de ventilación situadas en la parte inferior del módulo. Si bloquea la ventilación puede producirse una reducción de la salida de las frecuencias de graves desde el módulo.



Preferida



Alternativa



## Conexiones

Solo el módulo Acoustimass® se conecta al receptor. Todos los altavoces se conectan directamente al módulo Acoustimass.

**ADVERTENCIA:** No conecte los altavoces a un receptor. Si lo hace, podría averiar el sistema y recibir una descarga eléctrica.

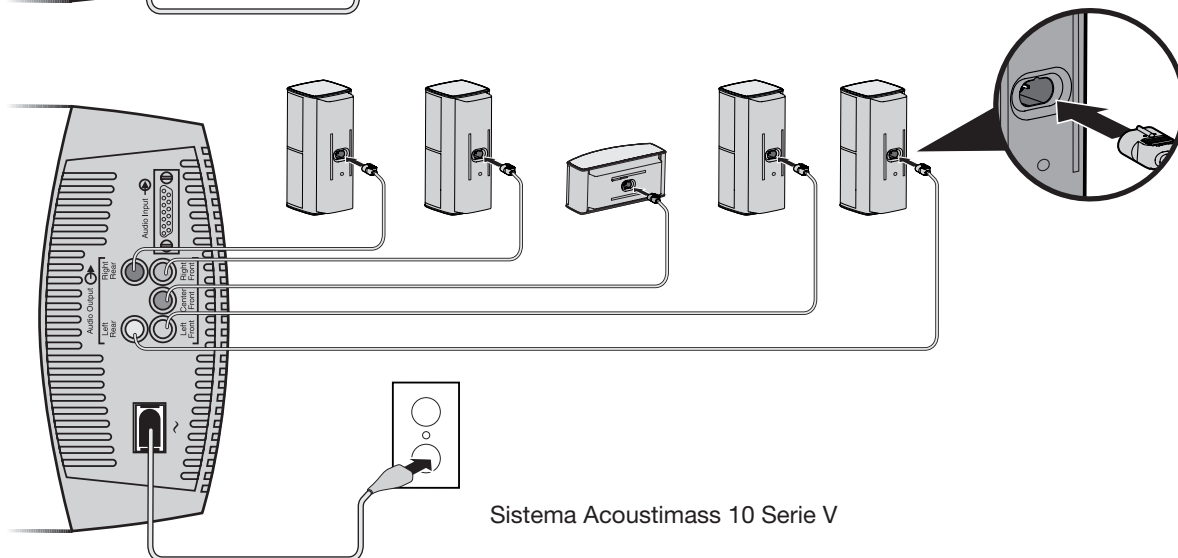
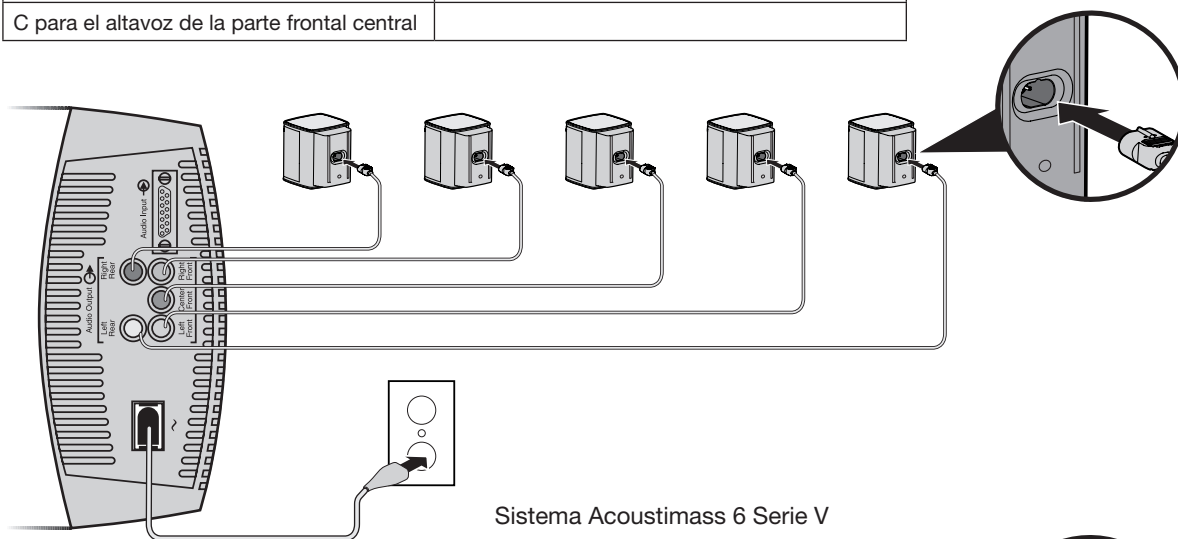
### Conexión de los altavoces al módulo Acoustimass

Inserte la toma de cada cable para altavoces en el conector del módulo. Conecte cada toma a su conector correspondiente.

1. Utilice los cables para altavoces de 6,1 m suministrados para los tres altavoces frontales.
  - Inserte la toma **R** al conector **Right Front**.
  - Inserte la toma **C** al conector **Center Front**.
  - Inserte la toma **L** al conector **Left Front**.
2. Utilice los cables de 15,2 m suministrados para los altavoces de la parte posterior de la habitación.
  - Inserte la toma **RR** al conector **Right Rear**.
  - Inserte la toma **LR** al conector **Left Rear**.
3. Inserte el otro extremo de cada cable en el conector de cada altavoz con la etiqueta mirando hacia abajo.

**Nota:** Localice la etiqueta de cada cable para altavoces y conéctelo a la toma correspondiente:

Etiqueta del cable para altavoces	
L para el altavoz de la parte frontal izquierda	LR para el altavoz de la parte trasera izquierda
R para el altavoz de la parte frontal derecha	RR para el altavoz de la parte trasera derecha
C para el altavoz de la parte frontal central	

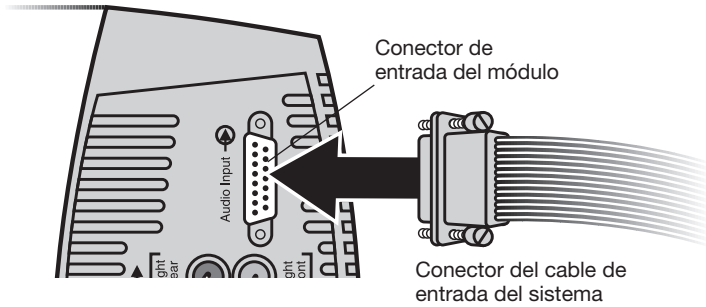


# Instalación

## Conexión del módulo Acoustimass® al receptor

**PRECAUCIÓN:** Antes de realizar estas conexiones, apague el receptor para evitar ruidos no deseados cuando conecte el módulo Acoustimass® en él.

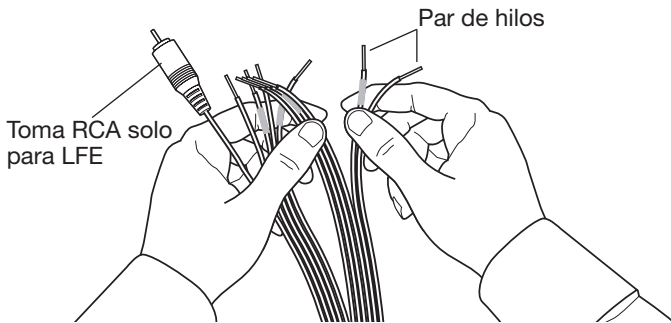
El cable de entrada del sistema tiene 6,1 metros de largo y se conecta al receptor de sonido envolvente. A diferencia de los cables para altavoces, este cable de entrada dispone de un conector de múltiples contactos que se inserta en el conector **Audio Input** del módulo.



En el otro extremo del cable de entrada del sistema, múltiples pares de hilos que se separan para facilitar el acceso y la inserción en los terminales del receptor. Un collarín rojo indica que el hilo es positivo (+).

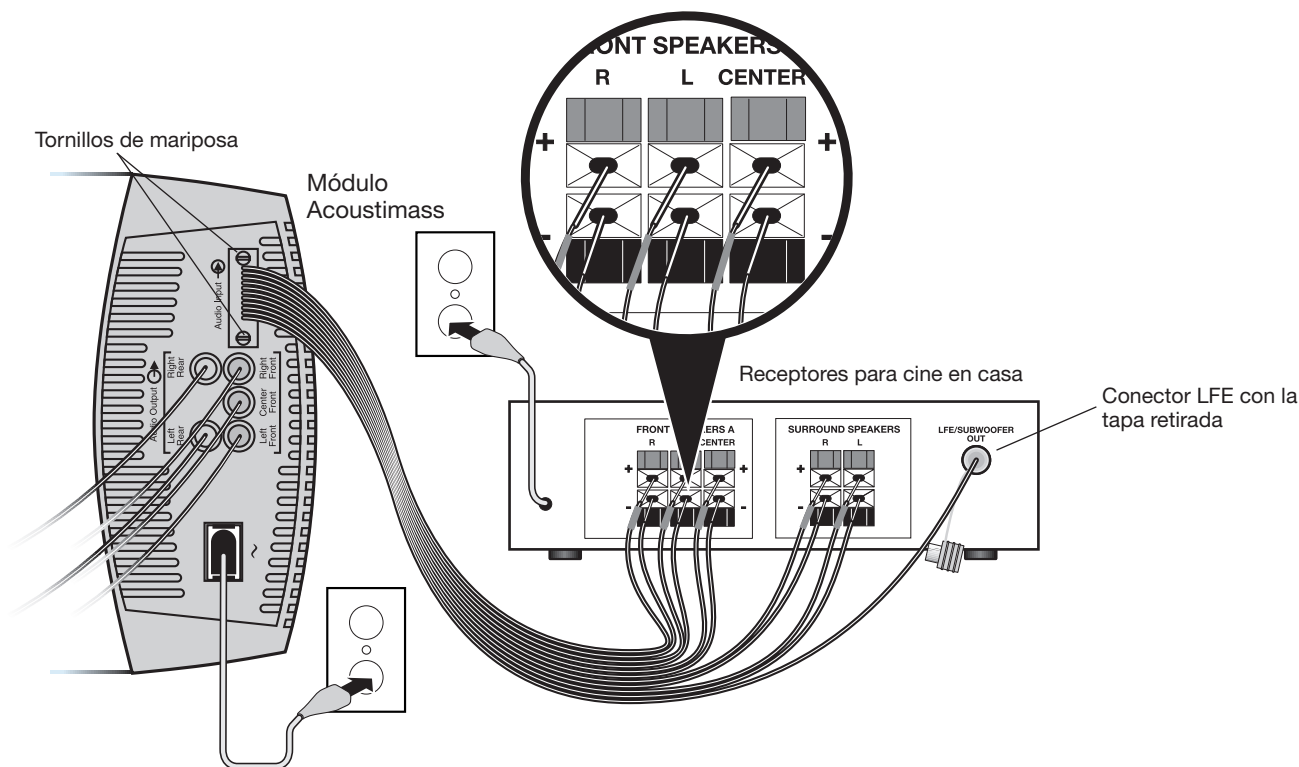
**PRECAUCIÓN:** NO conecte el módulo al televisor, que carece de la amplificación necesaria.

La toma RCA individual de ese extremo debe emplearse ÚNICAMENTE con un receptor que gestione efectos de baja frecuencia y proporcione una toma **LFE/SUBWOOFER**.



## Para realizar las conexiones:

1. Inserte el conector de múltiples contactos del cable de entrada del sistema en la entrada del módulo Acoustimass®. Ajuste los dos tornillos de mariposa para fijar la conexión.
2. Conecte los pares de hilos del otro extremo del cable de entrada del sistema al receptor de sonido envolvente, que deberá tener terminales de salida de audio con las etiquetas:
  - Right (derecho), Left (izquierdo) y Center (centro) para los canales de audio frontales.
  - Right Surround (envolvente derecho) y Left Surround (envolvente izquierdo) para los canales traseros. Las etiquetas específicas de su receptor pueden variar ligeramente.
- PRECAUCIÓN:** No permita que los hilos conductores expuestos entren en contacto entre sí, ya que podría dañarse el receptor.
3. Asegúrese de hacer coincidir la polaridad de las conexiones (+ a + y - a -).
  - Conecte cada hilo con collarín rojo (+) al terminal + correspondiente.
  - Conecte cada par de conductores (-) al terminal - apropiado.
4. Si lo permite su receptor, inserte la toma RCA del cable de entrada del sistema que lleva la marca **LFE** al conector **LFE/ SUBWOOFER** del receptor de sonido envolvente. Primero retire la tapa.



## Comprobación de las conexiones

Antes de conectar el módulo Acoustimass, compruebe todas las conexiones del receptor al módulo y de éste a los altavoces.

- Asegúrese de que todos los altavoces estén conectados a los terminales apropiados con arreglo a sus posiciones en la habitación.
- Compruebe que todos los hilos están conectados al receptor de sonido envolvente con la polaridad adecuada (cables de + a + y de - a -). Si conecta incorrectamente los hilos, puede producirse una pérdida total de salida del módulo.
- Corrija cualquier problema de cableado antes de conectar el receptor y luego enciéndalo.

Después de comprobar todas las conexiones, conecte el cable de alimentación desde el módulo Acoustimass hasta la toma de la red eléctrica. Conecte también el receptor.

**Nota:** Bose le recomienda utilizar supresores de sobretensiones de calidad en todos los equipos electrónicos. Las variaciones y picos de tensión pueden dañar los componentes electrónicos de cualquier sistema. Los supresores de calidad (disponibles en tiendas de electrónica) son capaces de eliminar la inmensa mayoría de las averías causadas por sobretensiones.

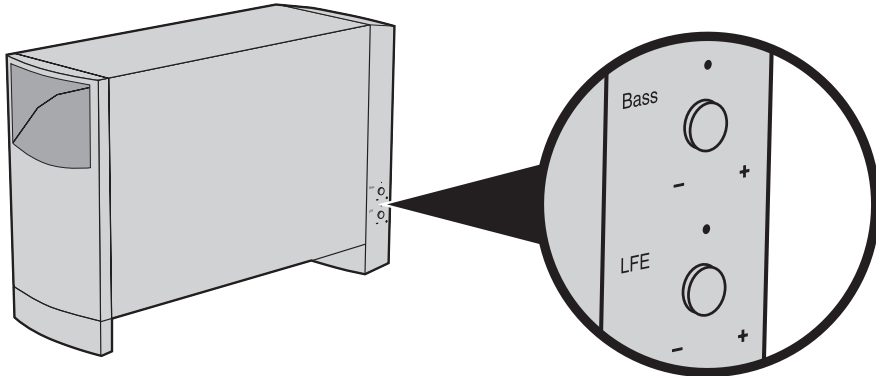
## Uso del sistema

# Cómo sacar el máximo partido de los altavoces de cine en casa

Después de realizar las conexiones del sistema y de conectar el módulo, el sistema Acoustimass® está listo para utilizar.

Familiarícese con los controles y las protecciones incorporadas que ajustan el audio de este sistema. ya que ofrecen opciones que se adaptan a su estilo específico de uso y a sus preferencias.

**PRECAUCIÓN:** Este sistema proporciona un circuito de protección automática que le ayuda a evitar daños ocasionales por tensiones eléctricas y sobrecargas del sistema. Cuando el volumen es muy alto, el circuito se activa para reducir la salida, reduciendo ligeramente el volumen. Si observa esta reducción del volumen, el sistema está funcionando correctamente. Esta reducción también indica que la entrada de potencia al sistema puede superar los niveles de seguridad. No se recomienda la audición continua a estos niveles.



## Ajuste de la compensación de graves/ambiente

Después de colocar el módulo Acoustimass en el lugar deseado, puede ajustarlo para esta ubicación específica. Realice este ajuste sólo si es necesario.

Por ejemplo:

- Si no se aprecian los graves, gire el control BASS (mostrado más arriba) en el sentido de las agujas del reloj para incrementar la salida de baja frecuencia del módulo.
- Si los graves están sobrecargados, gire el mando en el sentido contrario al de las agujas del reloj para reducir la salida de baja frecuencia del módulo.

El ajuste de fábrica está destinado a las disposiciones de habitación más comunes.

## Ajuste del nivel de LFE

El control del nivel de LFE (mostrado más arriba) se utiliza con receptores que proporcionan un canal LFE/SUBWOOFER.

Si gira el mando podrá ajustar el nivel relativo de los efectos de baja frecuencia de las bandas sonoras de las películas. Utilícelo para ajustar el nivel del volumen del canal LFE a los niveles de los otros canales del altavoz.

Puede comprobar todos los niveles empleando la función "tonos de prueba" del receptor de sonido envolvente digital. Para obtener más información sobre el uso de esta función, consulte la guía del usuario suministrada con el receptor de sonido envolvente.

## Configuración del receptor de sonido envolvente digital

Los altavoces del sistema Acoustimass® 6 Serie V o Acoustimass 10 Serie V son totalmente compatibles con la salida de audio de los receptores de sonido envolvente digital. El procesamiento integrado de señales del sistema permite la reproducción completa de bajas frecuencias desde todos los canales.

Para aprovechar al máximo estas funciones del sistema, puede realizar algunos ajustes en el receptor. Para realizar cambios, utilice el menú de la pantalla del receptor y consulte a continuación la lista de ajustes recomendados.

Sustitución	Ajuste del receptor
Izquierdo y derecho	LARGE
Centro	LARGE
Sonido envolvente izquierdo y derecho	LARGE
LFE/Subwoofer	ON

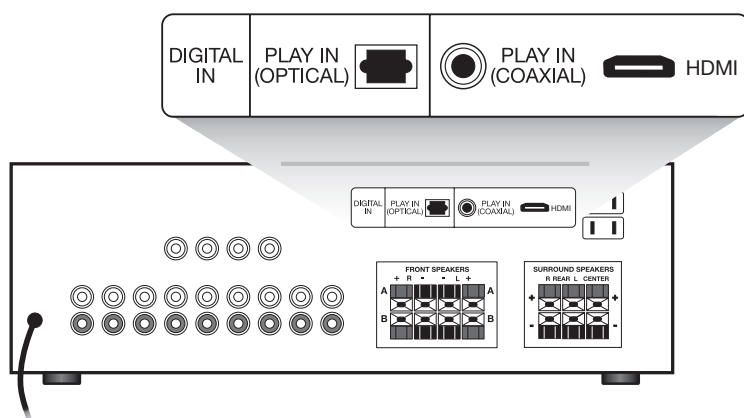
**Nota:** Si su receptor lo permite, la opción LFE o Subwoofer deberá ajustarse como ON (ACTIVO) y el valor del separador, con el número más bajo posible, que suele ser 80 Hz.

### Recepción de una señal de audio digital

Para que la señal de audio digital de otras fuentes (reproductor de Blu-ray™ o DVD, receptor CBL/SAT, videoconsola, etc.) llegue al receptor de sonido envolvente, necesita establecer una conexión de audio digital entre la fuente adicional y el receptor.

- Utilice la entrada HDMI™, óptica o coaxial del receptor para conectar la salida digital desde la fuente adicional. No utilice más de una conexión.
- Asegúrese de seleccionar la salida digital en el menú de configuración de la fuente adicional.

Para obtener información adicional referente a la configuración y el manejo del receptor, por favor, consulte la guía del usuario del receptor de sonido envolvente.



## Configuración del receptor de sonido envolvente analógico

Para aplicaciones de sonido envolvente analógico (no digital), le recomendamos que establezca el modo central de sonido envolvente del receptor en Wide (ancho). Si desea instrucciones sobre cómo cambiar este ajuste, consulte la guía del usuario suministrada con el receptor de sonido envolvente.



# Resolución de problemas

En caso de problemas con el sistema de altavoces Acoustimass®, apague la fuente de sonido e intente las soluciones indicadas a continuación. Si el problema persiste, solicite asistencia técnica a su distribuidor Bose®. Para ponerse en contacto directamente con Bose, consulte la lista de contactos incluida en la caja.

Problema	Solución
El sistema no funciona en absoluto	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Asegúrese de que el receptor y el módulo autoamplificado Acoustimass estén enchufados en una toma de corriente alterna que funcione correctamente y de que el receptor esté encendido.</li><li>• Asegúrese de que seleccione una fuente de audio en el receptor (reproductor de Blu-ray o DVD, receptor CBL/SAT, videoconsola, etc.).</li></ul>
No hay sonido	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Suba el volumen.</li><li>• Desconecte los auriculares.</li><li>• Compruebe las conexiones del altavoz en el módulo de graves, en el receptor y en los altavoces.</li><li>• Asegúrese de que el módulo autoamplificado Acoustimass y el receptor están conectados.</li><li>• Para obtener sonido digital, asegúrese de conectar la salida digital de la fuente de audio a la entrada digital del receptor mediante un cable HDMI, coaxial u óptico.</li><li>• Asegúrese de que la fuente de audio seleccionada es la correcta. Por ejemplo, seleccione audio de DVD en el receptor para obtener sonido de DVD.</li></ul>
No hay sonido envolvente	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Compruebe que el material de la fuente contiene sonido envolvente.</li><li>• Si está utilizando el modo Dolby Pro-Logic en el receptor, compruebe que el sonido envolvente está activado.</li><li>• Asegúrese de que el material de la fuente (reproductor de Blu-ray™ o DVD, receptor CBL/SAT, videoconsola, etc.) está codificado para Dolby Digital.</li><li>• Asegúrese de que el receptor está procesando una señal procedente de un televisor estéreo, un disco láser, un reproductor de Blu-ray o DVD, u otra fuente de sonido envolvente.</li><li>• Si está utilizando programación digital, verifique que los ajustes son correctos en el receptor.</li></ul>
Los graves no suenan	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Compruebe que las conexiones de altavoces del receptor al amplificador se encuentran en la fase correcta, el hilo con collarín rojo con la toma roja (de + a + y de - a -).</li><li>• Verifique que el tamaño del altavoz en el receptor está ajustado en grande.</li></ul>
Graves insuficientes o exagerados	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Para aumentar los graves, acerque más el módulo Acoustimass a una pared o a una esquina. Para reducir los graves, sepárelo más de la pared o de la esquina.</li><li>• Ajuste el nivel de LFE o el control de compensación ambiental.</li></ul>
El sonido está distorsionado	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Asegúrese de que los cables de los altavoces no estén dañados.</li><li>• Reduzca el volumen de los componentes externos conectados al receptor.</li></ul>

---

## Atención al cliente

---

Si desea obtener ayuda adicional para resolver un problema, póngase en contacto con el Servicio de atención al cliente Bose® de su zona. Consulte la hoja de contactos incluida en la caja.

---

## Limpieza

---

Solo debe limpiar las cajas del sistema de altavoces Acoustimass® con un paño suave y seco. No use ningún aerosol cerca del sistema ni permita la entrada de ningún líquido por abertura alguna. No use disolventes, sustancias químicas ni soluciones detergentes que contengan alcohol, amoníaco o abrasivos.

Si es necesario, puede limpiar con un aspirador los conjuntos de rejillas presentes en los altavoces, pero con mucho cuidado. Tenga en cuenta que, justo detrás de la rejilla, hay altavoces que se pueden dañar fácilmente si no procede con cautela.

---

## Información sobre la garantía limitada

---

Su sistema de altavoces Acoustimass® está cubierto por una garantía limitada. Los detalles sobre la garantía constan en la tarjeta de garantía que viene incluida junto con el sistema. Rellene la sección de información de la tarjeta y remítala a Bose. A pesar de que no la envíe, sus derechos no se verán afectados.

La información de garantía incluida con este producto no se aplica a Australia y Nueva Zelanda. Visite nuestro sitio web [www.bose.com.au/warranty](http://www.bose.com.au/warranty) o [www.bose.com.nz/warranty](http://www.bose.com.nz/warranty) si desea más información sobre la garantía en Australia y Nueva Zelanda.

---

## Accesorios

---

Puede colocar los altavoces del sistema en soportes de pared, de sobremesa o en pedestales. Para adquirir estos accesorios, póngase en contacto con su distribuidor Bose® o visite [www.Bose.com](http://www.Bose.com).

Para los siguientes accesorios:

- Adaptador de cables de entrada para uso con cables empotrados desde el módulo Acoustimass hasta el receptor
- Cable alargador de 6,1 m para uso entre el módulo Acoustimass y el receptor
- Adaptadores de cable para altavoces para instalación dentro de la pared

Póngase en contacto con su distribuidor Bose autorizado. Para ponerse en contacto directamente con Bose, consulte la lista de contactos incluida en la caja.

## Complemento del cono del altavoz

### Sistema Acoustimass® 10:

- Conjuntos de altavoces cúbicos y altavoz frontal central:  
Dos altavoces Twiddler™ de 6,35 cm
- Módulo autoamplificado Acoustimass:  
Dos woofers de 13 cm

### Sistema Acoustimass 6:

- Altavoces cúbicos:  
Un altavoz Twiddler™ de 6,35 cm
- Módulo autoamplificado Acoustimass:  
Un woofer de 13 cm

## Tensión nominal del sistema

### Sistema Acoustimass 10:

EE.UU./Canadá: 100-127 V ~ 50/270 Hz 60 W

Europa/Australia: 220-240 V ~ 50/270 Hz 60 W

### Sistema Acoustimass 6:

EE.UU./Canadá: 100-127 V ~ 50/135 Hz 60 W

Europa/Australia: 220-240 V ~ 50/135 Hz 60 W

## Conectividad

### Sistema Acoustimass 10:

Compatible con receptores audiovisuales y amplificadores con una potencia nominal de 10 a 200 vatios por canal, de 4 a 8 ohmios

### Sistema Acoustimass 6:

Compatible con receptores audiovisuales y amplificadores con una potencia nominal de 10 a 150 vatios por canal, de 4 a 8 ohmios

### Sistema Acoustimass 10:

Conjunto de altavoces cúbicos y altavoz frontal central: 1 kg cada uno

Conjunto de altavoces cúbicos: 15,7 x 7,9 x 10,2 cm (alto x ancho x fondo)

Altavoz frontal central: 15,7 x 7,9 x 10,2 cm (alto x ancho x fondo)

Módulo: 15,8 kg

41,4 x 20,6 x 64,3 cm (alto x ancho x fondo)

### Sistema Acoustimass 6:

Altavoz cúbico: 0,45 kg cada uno

9,5 x 8,3 x 8,4 cm (alto x ancho x fondo)

Módulo: 12,2 kg


41,4 x 20,6 x 56,6 cm (alto x ancho x fondo)




# Tärkeitä turvallisuustietoja

## Lue tämä käyttöohje huolellisesti ja säästä se tulevaa käyttöä varten.

 Nuolisalama ja tasasivuinen kolmio varoittavat käyttäjää laitteen sisällä olevasta vaarallisesta eristämättömästä jännitteestä ja sähköiskun vaarasta.

 Tasakulmisen kolmion sisälläoleva huutomerkki muistuttaa käyttäjää tärkeitä käyttö- ja huolto-ohjeista, jotka ovat tässä käyttöohjeessa.

 **VAROITUKSIA:**

- Älä altista tätä tuotetta sateelle tai kosteudelle tulipalon tai sähköiskun vaaran välttämiseksi.
- Älä sijoita vuotavia, roiskuvia tai nesteitä sisältäviä esineitä, kuten maljakoita, laitteen päälle tai lähelle. Varo, että laitteeseen ei roisku nestettä. Nesteet voivat aiheuttaa vian tai tulipalon vaaran.
- Älä laita laitteen päälle tai lähelle avotulta, esimerkiksi palavaa kynttilää.

 **HUOMIO:**


- Ilman lupaa tehdyt muutokset voivat vaarantaa turvallisuuden, yhdenmukaisuuden vaatimusten kanssa ja järjestelmän tehokkuuden sekä mitätöidä takuun.

 **VAARA:** Tämä laite sisältää magneetin. Jos mielessäsi on kysymyksiä vaikutuksesta lääketieteelliseen implantiin, ota yhteys lääkäriin.

### HUOMAUTUKSIA:

- Jos laitteesta katkaistaan virta pistorasian virtakytkimen avulla, tähän kytkimeen on päästävä helposti käsiksi.
- Tätä tuotetta on käytettävä sisätiloissa. Sitä ei ole suunniteltu ulkona, ajoneuvoissa tai veneissä käytettäväksi, eikä ulkona käyttämistä ole testattu.
- Tämän järjestelmän kaiutinjohtoja ei ole hyväksytty asennettaviksi seinän sisään. Tarkista paikallisista rakennusmääräyksistä, millaisia johtoja ja kaapeleita on käytettävä, kun ne asennetaan seinän sisään.

 Tämä symboli merkitsee, että tuotetta ei saa hävittää kotitalousjätteen mukana, vaan se on toimitettava kierrätykseen. Kierrättäminen auttaa estämään vahingollisia seurauksia ympäristölle, luonnolle ja ihmisten terveydelle. Saat lisätietoja kierrättämisestä paikallisilta viranomaisilta, kotitalousjätteen kierrätyspalvelusta tai liikkeestä, josta tuote ostettiin.

 Bose Corporation vakuuttaa täten, että tämä tuote täyttää direktiivin 1999/5/CE (R&TTE-direktiivi) sekä muiden sovellettavien EU-direktiivien vaatimukset. Täydellinen vaatimustenmukaisuusvakuutus on osoitteessa [www.Bose.com/compliance](http://www.Bose.com/compliance).

## Tärkeitä turvaohjeita

1. Lue nämä ohjeet.
2. Säilytä nämä ohjeet.
3. Huomioi kaikki varoitukset.
4. Noudata kaikkia ohjeita.
5. Älä käytä tätä laitetta veden lähetyksillä.
6. Puhdista ainoastaan kuivalla pyyheliinalla.
7. Älä sulje tuuletusaukkoja. Asenna laite valmistajan ohjeiden mukaisesti.
8. Älä sijoita laitetta minkään lämmönlähteen kuten lämpöpattereiden, lämpövaraajien, uunien tai muiden lämpöä tuottavien laitteiden (vahvistimet mukaan lukien) lähelle.
9. Sijoita virtajohto siten, ettei sen yli kävellä eikä se ole puristuksissa pistokkeen, muuntajan tai laitteen virtajohdon kiinnityspisteen läheisyydessä.
10. Käytä ainoastaan valmistajan määrittämiä lisävarusteita.
11. Irrota laite pistorasiasta ukkosmyrskyjen aikana ja laitteen ollessa pidemmän aikaa käyttämättömänä.
12. Vain koulutettu huoltohenkilöstö saa tehdä huoltotyöt. Jos laite vaurioituu, se on huollettava.

## Myrkyllisten tai vaarallisten aineiden tai alkuaineiden nimet ja sisältö

Osan nimi	Myrkylliset tai vaaralliset aineiden tai alkuaineet					
	Lyijy (Pb)	Elohopea (Hg)	Kadmium (Cd)	Kuusiarvoinen (CR(VI))	Polybromoitu bifenyylä (PBB)	Polybromoitu difenyyleetteri (PBDE)
PCB-yhdisteet	X	0	0	0	0	0
Metalliosat	X	0	0	0	0	0
Muoviosat	0	0	0	0	0	0
Kaiuttimet	X	0	0	0	0	0
Johdot	X	0	0	0	0	0

0: Ilmaisee, että tätä myrkyllistä tai vaarallista ainetta on kaikissa tästä materiaalista valmistetuissa osissa alle SJ/T 11363-2006 -raja-arvon.

X: Ilmaisee, että tätä myrkyllistä tai vaarallista ainetta on kaikissa tästä materiaalista valmistetuissa osissa yli SJ/T 11363-2006 -raja-arvon.

## Säilytystiedot.

Sarja- ja mallinumero sijaitsevat Acoustimass®-moduulin liitäntäpaneelissa.

Sarjanumero: \_\_\_\_\_

Mallinumero: \_\_\_\_\_

Ostopäivä: \_\_\_\_\_

Säilytä ostokuitti tämän käyttöohjeen välissä.

Blu-ray Disc™ ja Blu-ray™ ovat Blu-ray Disc Associationin tavaramerkkejä.

HDMI on HDMI Licensing LLC:n rekisteröity tavaramerkki Yhdysvalloissa ja muissa maissa.

©2014 Bose Corporation. Mitään osaa tästä julkaisusta ei saa kopioida, muokata, jaella tai käyttää ilman etukäteen saatua kirjallista lupaa.

## Johdanto

Kiitos .....	4
Pakkauksen purkaminen .....	4

## Ottaminen käyttöön

Kaiuttimien sijoittaminen todentuntuisen kotiteatterinäköisen aikaansaamiseksi.....	5
Vasen ja oikea etukaiutin.....	6
Keskikaiutin.....	6
Takakaiuttimet .....	6
Vahvistava Acoustimass®-moduuli.....	6
Liitosten tekeminen .....	7
Kaiuttimien yhdistäminen Acoustimass-moduuliin.....	7
Acoustimass®-moduulin yhdistäminen vastaanottimeen .....	8
Liitosten tarkistaminen.....	9

## Järjestelmän käyttäminen

Kotiteatterikaiuttimien hyödyntäminen parhaalla mahdollisella tavalla .....	10
Basso- tai huonekorjauksen säätäminen.....	10
LFE-tason säätäminen .....	10
Digitaalisen surround-vastaanottimen säädöt .....	11
Digitaalisen äänisignaalin vastaanottaminen .....	11
Analogisen surround-vastaanottimen säädöt .....	11

## Viite

Ongelmanratkaisu .....	12
Asiakaspalvelu .....	13
Puhdistaminen .....	13
Rajoitetun takuun tiedot .....	13
Tarvikkeet.....	13
Tekniset tiedot.....	14
Kaiutinelementti .....	14
Järjestelmän virransyöttö.....	14
Liitettävyyss.....	14

## Kiitos

Kiitos, että valitsit Bose® Acoustimass® 6 series V- tai Acoustimass 10 series V -kotiteatterikaiutinjärjestelmän.

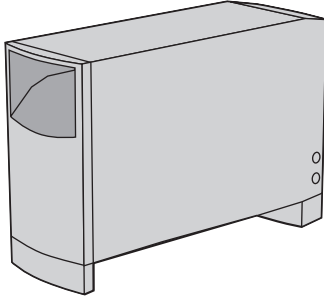
Acoustimass 6 koostuu viidestä pienestä kuutiokaiuttimesta. Acoustimass 10 koostuu neljästä kuutiokaiuttimesta ja keskikaiuttimesta. Nämä kaiuttimet yhdessä Acoustimass-moduulin kanssa tuottavat tehokkaan ja todentuntuisen kotiteatterikokemuksen.

## Pakkauksen purkaminen

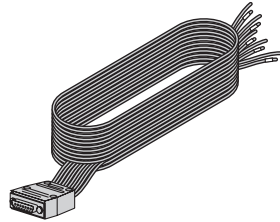
Avaa pakkaus varovaisesti:

1. Poista ruskea sisäpakkaus, joka sisältää kaiuttimet.
2. Käännä pakkaus varovasti kyljelleen ja vedä Acoustimass-moduuli ulos.

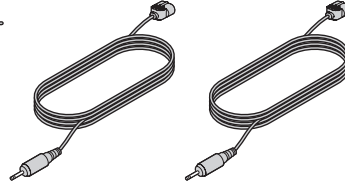
**VAARA:** Loukkaantumisen välttämiseksi nosta moduulia varovaisesti, sillä se painaa noin 14 kg.



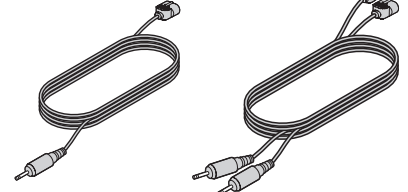
Sähkökäyttöinen Acoustimass-moduuli



6,1 m:n tulojohto

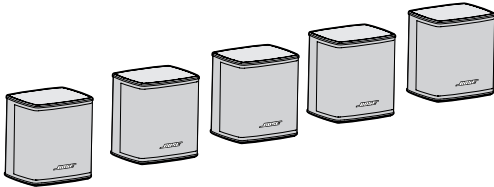


Kolme 6,1 m:n etukaiutinjohtoa



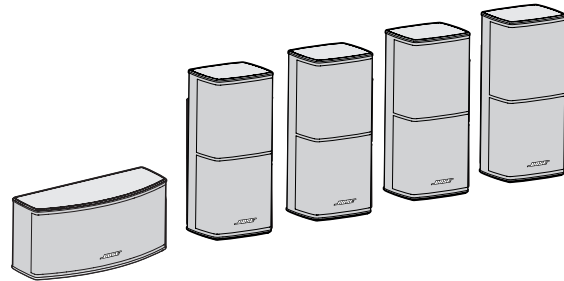
Kaksi 15,2 m:n takakaiutinjohtoa

### Acoustimass 6 -järjestelmä



Viisi Virtually Invisible® series II -kaiutinta

### Acoustimass 10 -järjestelmä



Neljä Direct/Reflecting® series II -kaiutinta ja yksi vaakasuuntainen keskikanavakaiutin

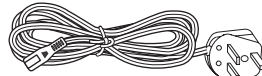
### Virtajohto (1)



USA/Kanada



Eurooppa



Iso-Britannia/Singapore



Australia

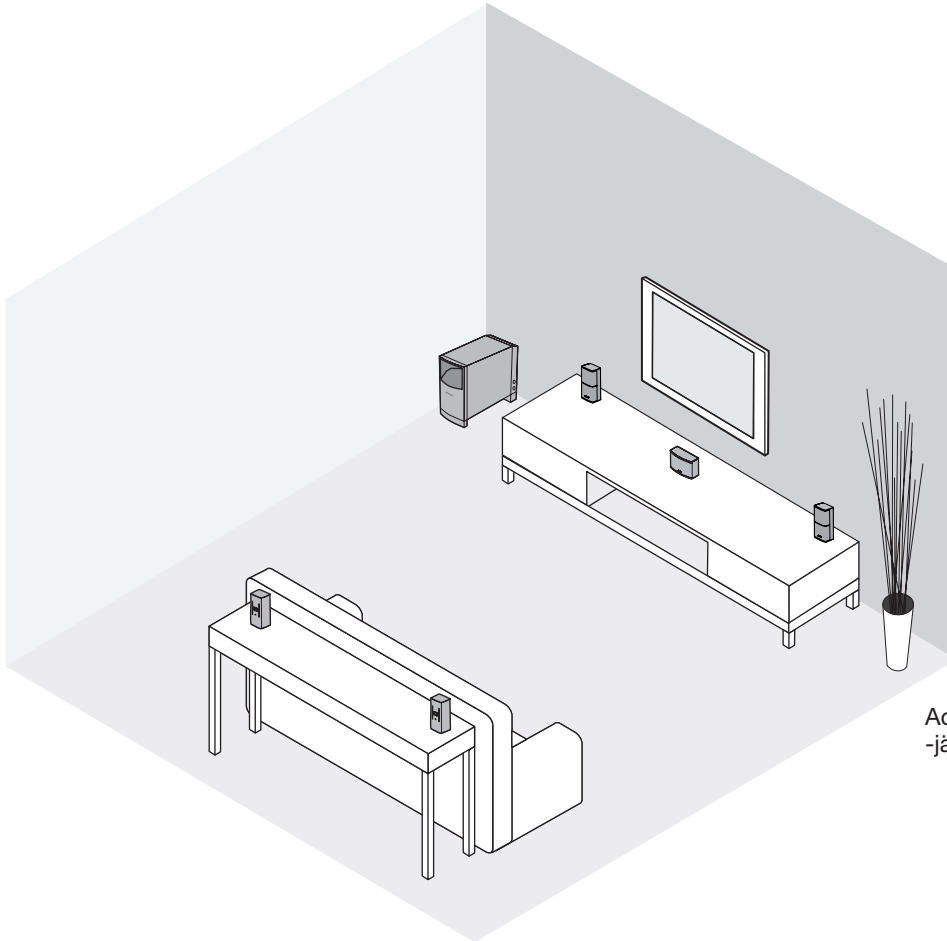
Laitteen sarjanumero kannattaa kirjoittaa takuukorttiin nyt. Säilytä kaikki pakkausmateriaali mahdollista myöhempää käyttöä varten.

**VAARA:** Pidä kaiuttimien pakkauksissa olleet muovipussit lasten ulottumattomissa tukehtumisvaaran välttämiseksi.

## Kaiuttimien sijoittaminen todentuntuisen kotiteatteriäänän aikaansaamiseksi

Noudata seuraavia ohjeita, kun valitset kaiuttimien paikat:

- Acoustimass®-moduuli on sijoitettava vähintään 60 cm:n päähän televisiosta häiriöiden ehkäisemiseksi.
- Valitse kaiuttimille vakaa ja tasainen alusta.
- Acoustimass 10 -järjestelmän keskikaiutin sijoitetaan huoneen etuosaan television keskikohdan lähelle. Muut kaiuttimet ovat samanlaisia. Ne voidaan sijoittaa eri puolille huonetta.
- Kaikki Acoustimass 6 -järjestelmän viisi kaiutinta ovat samanlaisia. Ne voidaan sijoittaa eri puolille huonetta.
- Kaiuttimien paikkoja valittaessa on otettava huomioon huoneen koko ja muoto sekä huonekalujen sijainti. Alla näkyy esimerkkejä kotiteatterin kaiuttimien sijoittamisesta.



Acoustimass 10 series V  
-järjestelmä



# Ottaminen käyttöön

## Vasen ja oikea etukaiutin

Tavoitteena on saada aikaa televisiota laajempi äänielämys, joka vaikuttaa luonnolliselta kaikkialla huoneessa.

- Aseta nämä kaksi etukaiutinta television molemmille puolille.
- Niiden välisen etäisyyden tulee olla 2 - 5 metriä. Jos televisio on kuvaputkityyppinen, kaiuttimien tulee olla vähintään 15 cm:n päässä siitä.

## Keskikaiutin

Keskikaiuttimen äänen on vaikutettava tulevan kuvasta, jotta toiminnan äänet ja puhe kuulostavat luonnollisilta.

- Aseta keskikaiutin television ylä- tai alapuolelle. ÄLÄ anna television painon rasittaa kaiutinta.
- Puhe kuulostaa luonnollisimmalta, jos asetat kaiuttimen television keskiliinjan kohdalle.
- Jos televisio on kuvaputkityyppinen, kaiuttimen tulee olla vähintään 15 cm:n päässä siitä.

## Takakaiuttimet

Vaikka takakaiuttimista (surround) voi kuulua hieman puhetta, niistä kuuluu lähinnä taustäääniä ja kuvaa laajentavia erikoistehosteita. Ne saavat katsojan tuntemaan olevansa toiminnan keskipisteessä.

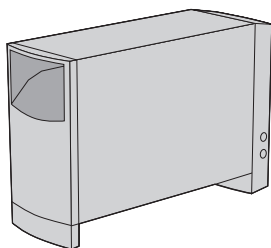
Valitse niille käytännölliset sijainnit. Ota seuraavat seikat huomioon.

- Aseta vasen ja oikea takakaiutin mieluummin katsojien molemmille puolelle kuin suoraan taakse.
- Aseta nämä kaiuttimet istuvien katsojien korvien korkeudelle tai korkeammalle.

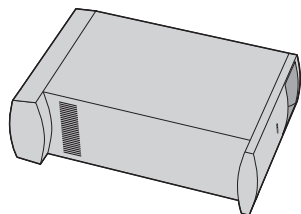
## Vahvistava Acoustimass®-moduuli

Acoustimass-kaiutintekniikka laajentaa matalien äänien tilavaikutelmaa. Siksi voit piilottaa sen näkyvistä. Moduulin sijoittaminen:

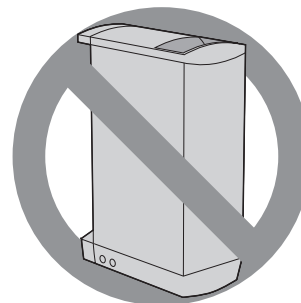
- Samaan osaan huonetta kuin televisio.
- Moduuli on sijoitettava vähintään 60 cm:n päähän televisiosta häiriöiden ehkäisemiseksi.
- Voit tehostaa bassoääniä kääntämällä etuaukon kohti seinää ja vähentää niitä kääntämällä sen pois päin seinästä.
- Etuaukon ja moduulin pohjan ilmanvaihtoaukon on oltava vähintään 5 cm:n päässä muista pinnoista.
- Älä tuki moduulin pohjan ilmanvaihtoaukkoja. Muutoin moduulin bassoäänten toisto voi heikentyä.



Ensisijainen



Mahdollinen



## Liitosten tekeminen

Vain Acoustimass®-moduuli yhdistetään vastaanottiin. Kaikki kaiuttimet yhdistetään suoraan Acoustimass-moduuliin.

**VAARA:** Älä yhdistä kaiuttimia vastaanottiin. Muutoin järjestelmä voi vaurioitua, ja voi aiheutua sähköisku.

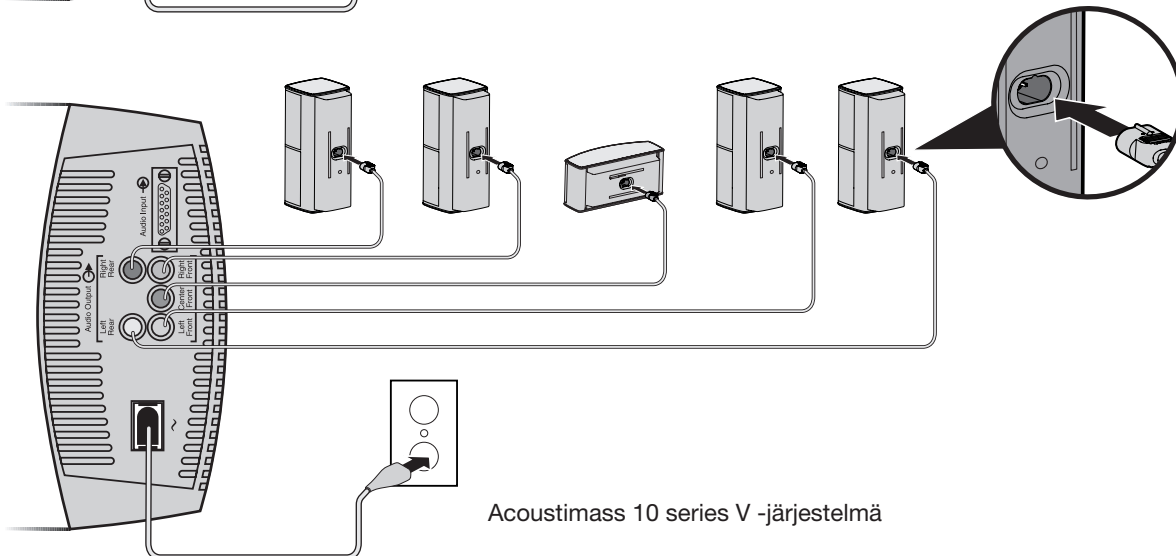
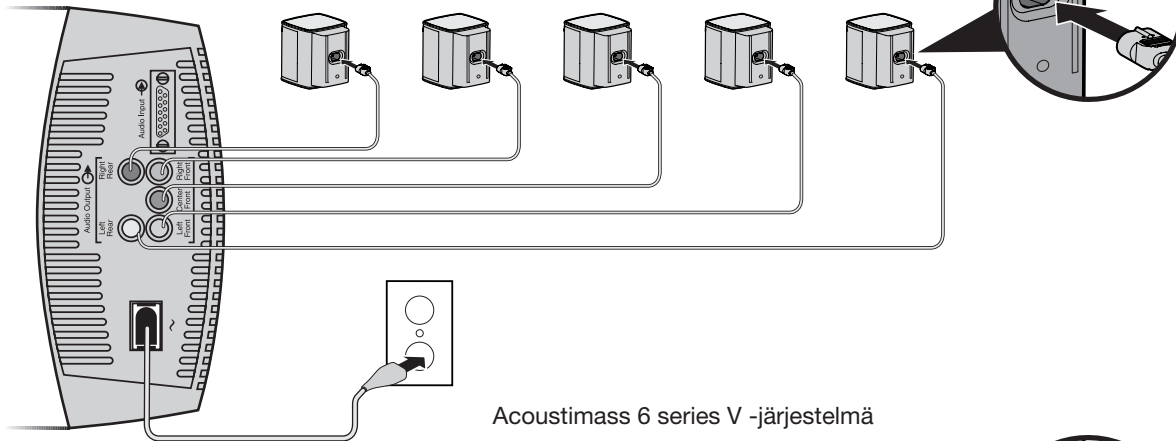
### Kaiuttimien yhdistäminen Acoustimass-moduuliin

Yhdistä kaiutinjohtojen liitännät moduulin ääniliitäntään. Sovita liittimen tarra oikeaan liitäntään.

1. Yhdistä kolme etukaiutinta mukana toimitettujen 6,1 metrin mittaisten kaiutinjohtojen avulla.
  - Yhdistä **R**-liitin **Right Front** -liitäntään.
  - Yhdistä **C**-liitin **Center Front** -liitäntään.
  - Yhdistä **L**-liitin **Left Front** -liitäntään.
2. Yhdistä takakaiuttimet mukana toimitettujen 15,2 metrin mittaisten kaiutinjohtojen avulla.
  - Yhdistä **RR**-liitin **Right Rear** -liitäntään.
  - Yhdistä **LR**-liitin **Left Rear** -liitäntään.
3. Yhdistä kunkin johdon toinen pää kaiuttimen liitäntään tarra alaspäin.

**Huomautus:** Paikanna kaiutinjohdoista kaiutinta vastaavat merkinnät:

Kaiutinjohdon merkintä	
L yhdistetään vasempaan etukaiuttimeen.	LR yhdistetään vasempaan takakaiuttimeen.
R yhdistetään oikeaan etukaiuttimeen.	RR yhdistetään oikeaan takakaiuttimeen.
C yhdistetään keskikaiuttimeen.	

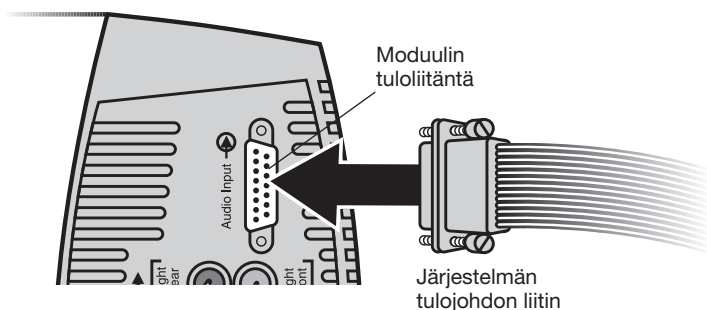


# Ottaminen käyttöön

## Acoustimass®-moduulin yhdistäminen vastaanottimeen

**VAROITUS:** Ennen näiden liitosten tekemistä katkaise vastaanottimesta virta, jotta Acoustimass®-moduulin yhdistäminen siihen ei aiheuta epätoivottavia ääniä.

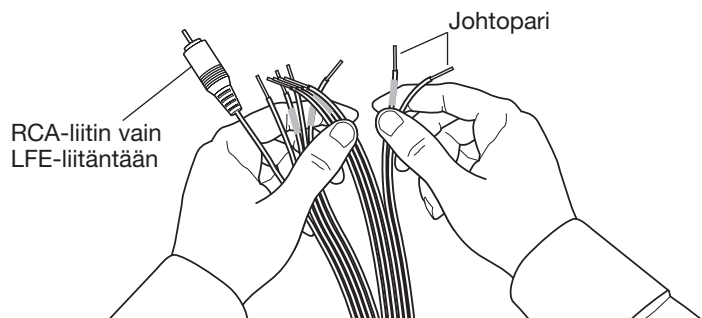
Järjestelmän 6,1 metrin mittainen tulojohto yhdistetään surround-vastaanottimeen. Kaiutinjohdoista poiketen tässä johdossa on moninastainen liitin, joka yhdistetään moduulin **Audio Input** -liitäntään.



Järjestelmän tulojohdon toisessa päässä on useita johtopareja. Ne yhdistetään vastaanottimeen liitäntöihin. Punainen merkintä ilmaisee, että johto on plusjohto (+).

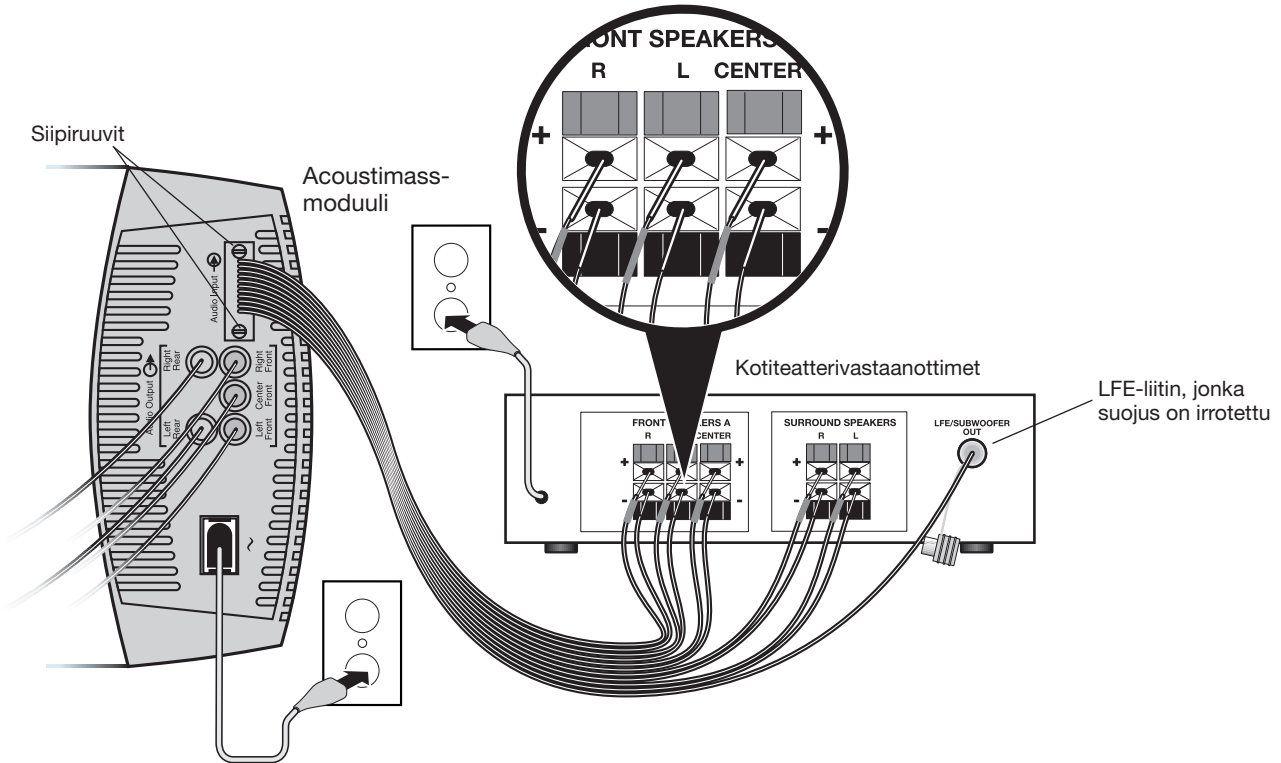
**VAROITUS:** ÄLÄ yhdistä moduulia suoraan televisioon. Se ei vahvista ääntä riittävästi.

Johdon RCA-liitin on tarkoitettu VAIN vahvistinta varten, jossa on **LFE/SUBWOOFER**-liitäntä.



**Yhdistäminen:**

1. Yhdistä järjestelmän tulojohdon moninastainen liitin Acoustimass®-moduuliin. Varmista liitos kiristämällä kaksi ruuvia.
  2. Yhdistä johdon toisen pään johdinparit surround-vahvistimeen. Sen äänen lähtöliitännät on merkitty seuraavasti:
    - Right, Left ja Center etuäänikanavia varten.
    - Right Surround ja Left Surround takakanavia varten. Vastaanottimessa näkyvät merkinnät voivat vaihdella.
- VAROITUS:** Älä päästä paljaita johtoja koskettamaan toisiaan. Muutoin vastaanotin voi vaurioitua.
3. Tarkista liitosten napaisuudet (plus ja miinus) huolellisesti.
    - Kiinnitä punaisella merkityt johdot (+) plusmerkillä merkittyihin liitäntöihin.
    - Kiinnitä merkitsemättömät johdot miinusmerkillä merkittyihin liitäntöihin.
  4. Jos surround-vastaanottimessa on **LFE/SUBWOOFER OUT** -liitäntä, yhdistä siihen **LFE**-merkitty RCA-liitin. Poista ensin suojus.

**Liitosten tarkistaminen**

Ennen virran kytkemistä Acoustimass-moduuliin tarkista kaikki vastaanottimen ja moduulin sekä moduulin ja kaiuttimien väliset liitokset.

- Varmista, että kaikki kaiuttimet on yhdistetty oikeisiin liitäntöihin sen mukaan, missä osassa huonetta ne sijaitsevat.
- Tarkista, että kaikki johdot on yhdistetty surround-vastaanottimeen napaisuuden suhteen oikein. Jos johdot on yhdistetty väärin, moduulista ei ehkä kuulu ääntä.
- Korjaa kaikki liitosongelmat ennen virran kytkemistä vastaanottimeen.

Kun kaikki liitokset on tarkistettu, työnnä Acoustimass-moduulin pistoke virtapistorasiaan. Työnnä myös vastaanottimen pistoke virtapistorasiaan.

**Huomautus:** Bose suosittelee varustamaan kaikkien elektroniset laitteiden virransyötöt häiriöpoistajilla. Jännitevaihtelu ja -piikit voivat vaurioittaa kaikkien järjestelmien sähköisiä osia. Kodintekniikkaliikkeissä myytävien laadukkaiden häiriöpoistajien käyttäminen poistaa useimmat virtapiikkien aiheuttamat viat.

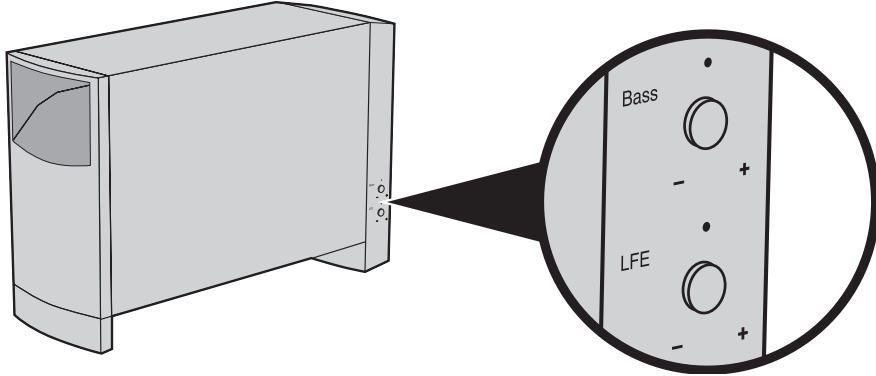
## Järjestelmän käyttäminen

### Kotiteatterikaiuttimien hyödyntäminen parhaalla mahdollisella tavalla

Kun liitännät on tehty ja moduulin pistoke työnnetty sähköpistorasiaan, Acoustimass®-järjestelmä on nyt käyttövalmis.

Tutustu järjestelmän äänensäätimiin ja ääntä säätäviin suojauksiin. Voit mukauttaa järjestelmän niiden avulla käyttötottumuksiisi.

**VAROITUS:** Järjestelmässä on automaattinen suojauspiiri, joka auttaa estämään järjestelmän ylikuormittumista. Suurilla äänenvoimakkuuksilla piiri kytkeytyy toimintaan ja vähentää tuotosta, jolloin äänenvoimakkuus vaimenee hieman. Jos huomaat tällaista vaimenemista, huomaa, että järjestelmäsi toimii oikein. Vaimeneminen ilmaisee myös, että tehonsyöttö järjestelmään voi ylittää turvallisen tason. Ei ole suositeltavaa jatkaa kuuntelemista näin kovalla voimakkuudella.



### Basso- tai huonekorjauksen säätäminen

Kun olet asettanut Acoustimass-moduulin sen käyttöpaikkaan, voit hienosäätää sen ominaisuuksia sijainnin mukaan. Tee tämä säätö vain tarvittaessa.

Esimerkki:

- Jos bassoäänet kuuluvat vaimeasti, voit tehostaa matalien äänien toistoa kääntämällä yllä näkyvää BASS -säädintä myötäpäivään.
- Jos ääni bassoäänet kuuluvat liian voimakkaasti, voit vaimentaa matalien äänien toistoa kääntämällä säädintä vastapäivään.

Tehdasasetukset ovat yleensä oikea valinta.

### LFE-tason säätäminen

Yllä näkyvällä LFE-tasonsäätimellä on vaikutusta vain, jos vastaanottimesta lähtee LFE/SUBWOOFER-kanava.

Kääntämällä tätä säädintä voit säätää elokuvien matalien tehostäänien voimakkuutta. Sen avulla voit tasapainottaa LFE-kanavan äänenvoimakkuuden muihin kanaviin.

Voit tarkistaa tasapainon käyttämällä digitaalisen surround-vahvistimen testiääntä. Tämän ominaisuuden käyttämisestä on lisätietoja surround-vastaanottimen käyttöohjeessa.

## Digitaalisen surround-vastaanottimen säädöt

Acoustimass® 6 series V- tai Acoustimass 10 series V -järjestelmän kaiuttimet ovat täysin yhteensopivia digitaalisten surround-vastaanottimien äänitulon kanssa. Järjestelmän sisäinen signaaliprosessori toistaa kaikkien kanavien matalat äänet.

Voit hyödyntää järjestelmän ominaisuuksia säätämällä vastaanotinta. Voit tehdä muutokset käyttämällä vastaanottimen valikkoa. Alla on luettelo suosituista asetuksista.

Kaiutin	Vastaanottimen asetus
Vasen ja oikea	SUURI
Keskikaiutin	SUURI
Vasen ja oikea surround-kaiutin	SUURI
LFE/Subwoofer	ON (päällä)

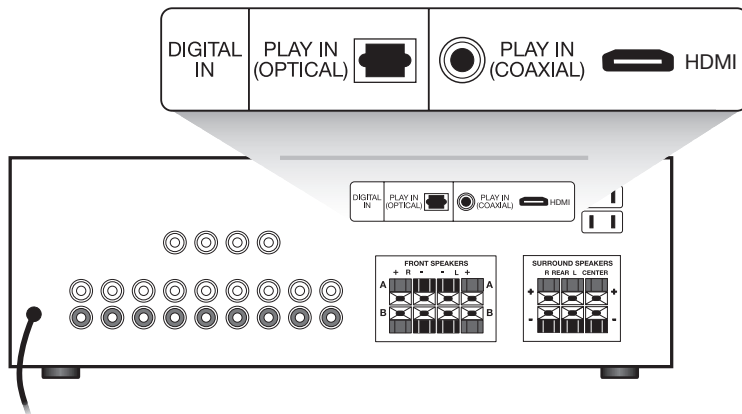
**Huomautus:** Jos vastaanottimesi on LFE- tai Subwoofer-asetus, sen tulee olla ON (käytössä). Valitse mahdollisimman alhainen leikkaustaajuus, tavallisesti 80 Hz.

## Digitaalisen äänisignaalin vastaanottaminen

Digitaalisen äänisignaalin siirtäminen surround-vastaanottimeen muista lähteistä, kuten Blu-ray™- tai DVD-soitin, kaapeli-/satelliittivastaanotin tai pelijärjestelmä, edellyttää digitaalista yhteyttä lähteen ja vastaanottimen välille.

- Yhdistä lähteen digitaalinen lähtöliitäntä vastaanottimen HDMI™-, optiseen tai koaksiaaliliitäntään. Käytä enintään yhtä liitäntää.
- Valitse digitaalinen lähtö lähteen asetusvalikossa.

Muista asetuksista ja käyttämisestä on lisätietoja surround-vastaanottimen käyttöohjeessa.



## Analogisen surround-vastaanottimen säädöt

Jos käytössä on analoginen (ei-digitaalinen) surround-äänijärjestelmä, on suositeltavaa asettaa vastaanottimen surround-tilaksi Wide (leveä). Tästä asetuksesta on lisätietoja surround-vastaanottimen käyttöohjeessa.

## Ongelmanratkaisu

Jos Acoustimass®-kaiutinjärjestelmässä esiintyy ongelma, katkaise äänilähteestä virta ja kokeile seuraavia ratkaisuja. Jos ongelma ei korjaannu, ota yhteys Bose®-jälleenmyyjään huollon saamiseksi. Voit myös ottaa yhteyden suoraan Boseen. Yhteystiedot ovat pakkauksessa.

Ongelma	Toimintaohjeet
Järjestelmä ei toimi lainkaan	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Varmista, että vastaanotin ja Acoustimass-moduuli on yhdistetty toimivaan sähköpistorasiaan ja että vastaanottimeen on kytketty virta.</li> <li>Valitse äänilähde vastaanottimessa (esimerkiksi Blu-ray- tai DVD-soitin, kaapeli-/satelliittivastaanotin tai pelikonsoli).</li> </ul>
Ei ääntä	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Lisää äänenvoimakkuutta.</li> <li>Irrota kuulokkeet.</li> <li>Tarkista bassomoduulin, vastaanottimen ja kaiuttimien kaiutinliitännät.</li> <li>Varmista, että Acoustimass-moduulin ja vastaanottimen pistokkeet ovat sähköpistorasioissa.</li> <li>Jos käytössä on digitaalinen äänilähde, varmista, että HDMI-, koaksiaali- tai optinen johto on yhdistetty äänilähteen digitaaliseen lähtöliitântään ja vastaanottimen digitaaliseen tuloliitântään.</li> <li>Varmista, että on valittu oikea äänilähde. Voit kuunnella esimerkiksi DVD-ääntä valitsemalla vastaanottimen äänilähteeksi DVD-soittimen.</li> </ul>
Surround-ääntä ei kuulu.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Varmista, että äänilähde sisältää surround-äänen.</li> <li>Jos vastaanottimessa on valittu Dolby Pro-Logic -tila, varmista, että surround-ääni on otettu käyttöön.</li> <li>Varmista, että Blu-ray™- tai DVD-soittimen, kaapeli-/satelliittivastaanottimen tai pelikonsolin kaltainen lähde lähettää Dolby Digital -koodattua ääntä.</li> <li>Varmista, että vastaanotin pystyy käsittelemään stereotelevision, laserlevysoittimen, Blu-ray-soittimen tai DVD-soittimen tai muun surround-lähteen ääntä.</li> <li>Jos käytössä on digitaalinen ohjelmointi, varmista, että vastaanottimessa käytetään oikeita asetuksia.</li> </ul>
Bassoääni ei kuulu.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Varmista, että kaiutinjohdot on yhdistetty oikein (punaisella merkityt johdot punaisella merkittyihin liitântöihin).</li> <li>Tarkista, että vastaanottimessa ei ole valittu liian suuria kaiuttimia.</li> </ul>
Liian vähän tai liikaa bassoääniä.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Voit tehostaa bassoääniä siirtämällä Acoustimass-moduulin lähemmäksi seinää tai nurkkaa. Voit vaimentaa bassoääniä siirtämällä sen kauemmas seinästä tai nurkasta.</li> <li>Säädä LFE-tasoa tai korjaa säätöjä huoneen vaatimalla tavalla.</li> </ul>
Äänessä on häiriöitä.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Varmista, että kaiutinjohto ei ole vahingoittunut.</li> <li>Vähennä vastaanottimeen yhdistettyjen ulkoisten laitteiden äänenvoimakkuutta.</li> </ul>

---

## Asiakaspalvelu

---

Saat lisätietoja ongelmien ratkaisemisesta ottamalla yhteyden Bosen® asiakaspalveluun. Yhteystiedot ovat pakkauksessa.

## Puhdistaminen

---

Acoustimass®-kaiutinjärjestelmän saa puhdistaa vain pyyhkimällä kuivalla pehmeällä kankaalla. Älä käytä suihkeita. Varo, ettei aukkoihin pääse nesteitä. Älä käytä liuottimia, kemikaaleja tai puhdistusaineita, joissa on alkoholia, ammoniakkia tai hankausaineita.

Kaiuttimien ritilät voidaan tarvittaessa imuroida varovaisesti. Huomaa, että ritilöiden suojusten takana sijaitsevat osat vaurioituvat helposti.

## Rajoitetun takuun tiedot

---

Acoustimass®-kaiutinjärjestelmällä on siirrettävä rajoitettu takuu. Rajoitetun takuun lisätiedot ovat järjestelmän mukana toimitetussa takuukortissa. Täytä tiedot korttiin ja postita se Boselle. Sen jättäminen tekemättä ei kuitenkaan vaikuta oikeuksiisi.

Tämän tuotteen mukana toimitetut takuutiedot eivät ole voimassa Australiassa eivätkä Uusi-Seelannissa. Osoitteessa [www.bose.com.au/warranty](http://www.bose.com.au/warranty) ja [www.bose.com.nz/warranty](http://www.bose.com.nz/warranty) kerrotaan Australiassa ja Uusi-Seelannissa voimassa olevasta takuusta.

## Tarvikkeet

---

Järjestelmän kaiuttimet voidaan kiinnittää seinä- tai pöytätelineisiin tai lattiajalustoihin. Voit ostaa näitä tarvikkeita ottamalla yhteyden Bose®-jälleenmyyjään tai osoitteesta [www.Bose.com](http://www.Bose.com).

Seuraavat tarvikkeet:

- Tulojohdon sovitin Acoustimass-moduulin yhdistämiseksi vastaanottimeen seinän sisällä kulkevan johdon avulla
- 6,1 metrin mittainen jatkojohto Acoustimass-moduulin yhdistämiseksi vastaanottimeen
- Kaiutinjohtosovittimet seinän sisällä kulkevaa asennusta varten

Ota yhteys valtuutettuun Bose-jälleenmyyjään. Voit myös ottaa yhteyden suoraan Boseen. Yhteystiedot ovat pakkauksessa.



### Kaiutinelementti

#### Acoustimass® 10 -järjestelmä:

- Kuutiokaiuttimet ja keskikaiutin:  
Kaksi 6,35 cm:n Twiddler™-kaiutinta
- Sähkökäyttöinen Acoustimass-moduuli:  
Kaksi 13 cm:n woofer-kaiutinta

#### Acoustimass 6 -järjestelmä:

- Kuutiokaiuttimet:  
Yksi 6,35 cm:n Twiddler™-kaiutin
- Sähkökäyttöinen Acoustimass-moduuli:  
Yksi 13 cm:n woofer-kaiutin

### Järjestelmän virransyöttö

#### Acoustimass 10 -järjestelmä:

USA/Kanada: 100-127 V ~ 50/270 Hz 60 W

Eurooppa/Australia: 220-240 V ~ 50/270 Hz 60 W

#### Acoustimass 6 -järjestelmä:

USA/Kanada: 100-127 V ~ 50/135 Hz 60 W

Eurooppa/Australia: 220-240 V ~ 50/135 Hz 60 W

### Liitettävyys

#### Acoustimass 10 -järjestelmä:

Yhteensopiva AV-vastaanottimien ja vahvistimien kanssa, joiden teho on 10–200 wattia kanavaa kohden, 4–8 ohmia.

#### Acoustimass 6 -järjestelmä:

Yhteensopiva AV-vastaanottimien ja vahvistimien kanssa, joiden teho on 10–150 wattia kanavaa kohden, 4–8 ohmia.

#### Acoustimass 10 -järjestelmä:

Kuutiokaiuttimet ja keskikaiutin: 1 kg kappaleelta

Kuutiokaiuttimet: 7.4"K x 3.2"L x 3.3"S (15.7 cm x 7.9 cm x 10.2 cm)

Keskikaiutin: 3.4"K x 7.3"L x 3.2"S (15.7 cm x 7.9 cm x 10.2 cm)

Yksikkö: 15.8 kg (35 lb)

16.3"K x 8.1"L x 25.3"S (41.4 cm x 20.6 cm x 64.3 cm)

#### Acoustimass 6 -järjestelmä:

Kuutiokaiutin: 0,45 kg kappaleelta

3.7"K x 3.2"L x 3.3"S (9.5 cm x 8.3 cm x 8.4 cm)

Yksikkö: 12.2 kg (27 lb)

16.3"K x 8.1"L x 22.3"S (41.4 cm x 20.6 cm x 56.6 cm)



# Informations importantes pour la sécurité

Consultez attentivement cette notice d'utilisation et conservez-la pour toute référence future.



Le symbole représentant un éclair avec une flèche à l'intérieur d'un triangle équilatéral est utilisé pour prévenir l'utilisateur de la présence d'une tension électrique dangereuse non isolée à l'intérieur de l'appareil. Cette tension est d'un niveau suffisamment élevé pour représenter un risque d'électrocution.



Le symbole représentant un point d'exclamation à l'intérieur d'un triangle équilatéral, tel qu'il figure sur le système, signale à l'utilisateur la présence d'instructions importantes relatives au fonctionnement et à l'entretien de l'appareil dans cette notice d'installation.



## AVERTISSEMENTS :

- Pour limiter les risques d'incendie ou d'électrocution, n'exposez pas l'appareil à la pluie ou à l'humidité.
- Protégez l'appareil de tout risque de ruissellement ou d'éclaboussure. Ne placez pas d'objets contenant des liquides, tels que des vases, sur l'appareil. Comme avec tout appareil électronique, veillez à ne pas renverser de liquides sur une partie quelconque de l'appareil. Les liquides peuvent provoquer des pannes et/ou un risque d'incendie.
- Ne placez jamais d'objets enflammés, tels que des bougies allumées, sur l'appareil.



## ATTENTION :

- Toute modification non autorisée peut compromettre votre sécurité, le respect des réglementations et le bon fonctionnement de l'appareil, et en invalidera la garantie.



**AVERTISSEMENT :** ce produit contient des composants magnétiques. Contactez votre médecin pour toute question relative à l'effet de ces composants sur le fonctionnement d'un appareil médical implanté.

## REMARQUES :

- Lorsque la fiche d'alimentation ou la prise multiple est utilisée comme dispositif de débranchement de l'appareil, elle doit rester facilement accessible.
- Ce produit doit être utilisé à l'intérieur. Il n'a pas été conçu ni testé pour une utilisation en extérieur, dans des véhicules ou sur des bateaux.
- Les câbles d'enceintes et d'interconnexion fournis avec cet appareil ne sont pas approuvés pour une installation encastrée. Consultez la réglementation locale pour connaître le type de câblage correct pour une installation encastrée.



Ce symbole signifie que le produit ne doit pas être jeté avec les déchets ménagers mais doit être déposé dans un centre de collecte approprié pour recyclage. La mise au rebut adéquate et le recyclage permettent de protéger les ressources naturelles, la santé humaine et l'environnement. Pour plus d'informations sur l'élimination et le recyclage de ce produit, contactez votre mairie, votre service de ramassage des ordures ou le magasin où vous avez acheté ce produit.



Bose Corporation déclare que ce produit est conforme aux critères essentiels et autres dispositions de la Directive 1999/5/CE et des autres directives européennes applicables. L'attestation complète de conformité est disponible à l'adresse [www.bose.com/compliance/](http://www.bose.com/compliance/)

## Instructions importantes relatives à la sécurité

1. Veuillez lire ces instructions.
2. Veuillez conserver ces instructions.
3. Respectez tous les avertissements.
4. Suivez toutes les instructions.
5. N'utilisez pas cet appareil à proximité d'eau ou d'une source d'humidité.
6. Utilisez uniquement un chiffon sec pour le nettoyage.
7. Ne bloquez jamais les orifices d'aération. Suivez les instructions du fabricant pour l'installation.
8. N'installez pas cet appareil à proximité d'une quelconque source de chaleur, telle qu'un radiateur, une arrivée d'air chaud, un four ou tout autre appareil (notamment les amplificateurs) produisant de la chaleur.
9. Protégez le cordon d'alimentation contre les risques de piétinement ou de pincement, notamment au niveau des fiches, des prises de courant et des branchements à l'appareil.
10. Utilisez uniquement les accessoires spécifiés par le fabricant.
11. Débranchez cet appareil pendant les orages ou au cours des longues périodes de non utilisation.
12. Confiez toute réparation à du personnel qualifié. Une réparation est nécessaire lorsque l'appareil a été endommagé de quelque façon que ce soit (endommagement du cordon d'alimentation ou de la fiche électrique, renversement d'un liquide ou de tout objet sur l'appareil, exposition de l'appareil à la pluie ou à l'humidité, mauvais fonctionnement, chute de l'appareil, etc.).

## Noms et contenu des substances ou éléments toxiques ou dangereux

Nom	Substances ou éléments toxiques ou dangereux					
	Plomb (Pb)	Mercuré (Hg)	Cadmium (Cd)	Chrome hexavalent (CR(VI))	Biphényle polybromé (PBB)	Éther de diphényle polybromé (PBDE)
Polychlorobiphényles	X	0	0	0	0	0
Pièces métalliques	X	0	0	0	0	0
Pièces en plastique	0	0	0	0	0	0
Enceintes	X	0	0	0	0	0
Câbles	X	0	0	0	0	0

0 : indique que la quantité de cette substance toxique ou dangereuse contenue dans tous les composants homogènes de cette pièce est inférieure à la limite définie dans SJ/T 11363-2006.

X : indique que la quantité de cette substance toxique ou dangereuse contenue dans au moins un des composants homogènes de cette pièce est supérieure à la limite définie dans SJ/T 11363-2006.

## Renseignements à noter et conserver :

Le numéro de série et le numéro de modèle se trouvent sur le panneau de connecteurs du module Acoustimass®.

Numéro de série : \_\_\_\_\_

Modèle : \_\_\_\_\_

Date d'achat : \_\_\_\_\_

Conservez votre facture avec cette notice d'utilisation.

Blu-ray Disc™ et « Blu-Ray™ » sont des marques de commerce de Blu-Ray Disc Association.

HDMI est une marque commerciale ou une marque déposée de HDMI Licensing LLC, aux USA et dans d'autres pays.

©2014 Bose Corporation. Toute reproduction, modification, distribution ou autre utilisation, même partielle, de ce document est interdite sans autorisation écrite préalable.

**Introduction**

Merci !.....	4
Déballage .....	4

**Installation**

Mise en place des enceintes pour obtenir un son home cinéma réaliste.....	5
Enceintes avant droite et gauche .....	6
Enceinte centrale .....	6
Enceintes arrière .....	6
Module Acoustimass® amplifié .....	6
Branchements .....	7
Connexion des enceintes au module Acoustimass .....	7
Branchement du module Acoustimass® sur l'ampli-tuner .....	8
Vérification des connexions .....	9

**Utilisation du système**

Comment tirer le meilleur parti de vos enceintes home cinéma.....	10
Réglage du niveau de compensation des graves en fonction de la pièce .....	10
Réglage du niveau LFE .....	10
Réglage de l'ampli-tuner numérique .....	11
Réception d'un signal audio numérique .....	11
Réglage de l'ampli-tuner analogique .....	11

**Référence**

Résolution des problèmes .....	12
Service client.....	13
Nettoyage.....	13
Garantie limitée .....	13
Accessoires .....	13
Informations techniques .....	14
Informations complémentaires sur les haut-parleurs.....	14
Puissance nominale du système .....	14
Connectivité .....	14

# Introduction

## Merci !

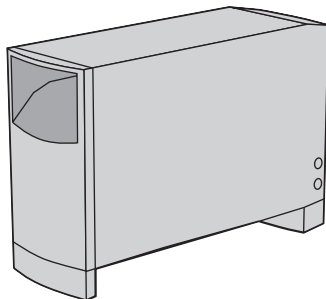
Nous vous remercions d'avoir porté votre choix sur ce système d'enceintes home cinéma Bose® Acoustimass® 6 série V ou 10 série V. Le système Acoustimass 6 comporte cinq petites enceintes cube, alors que le système Acoustimass 10 compte quatre enceintes cube et une enceinte centrale avant. Utilisées en combinaison avec le module Acoustimass, ces enceintes offrent une expérience home cinéma réaliste et d'une grande qualité sonore.

## Déballage

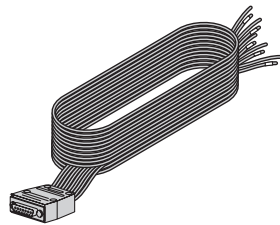
Déballiez le contenu du carton avec précaution :

1. Sortez le carton marron contenant les enceintes.
2. Faites rouler avec précaution le carton sur le côté et dégagez le module Acoustimass.

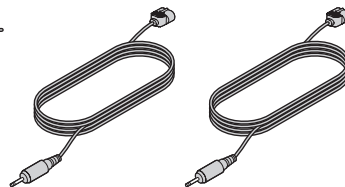
**ATTENTION** : soulevez le module avec prudence, car il pèse 14 kg.



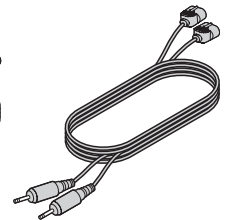
Module Acoustimass amplifié



Câble d'entrée du système  
(6,10 mètres)

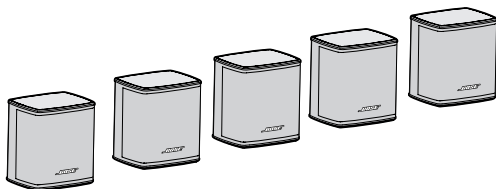


Câbles de l'enceinte centrale (6,10 mètres)



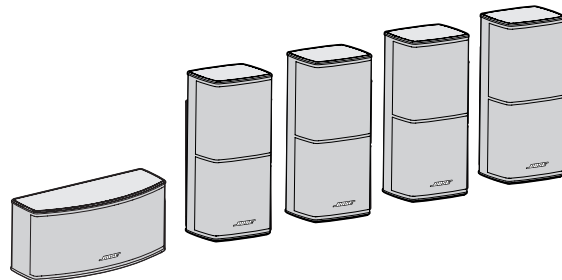
Deux câbles de l'enceinte arrière  
(15,20 mètres)

### Avec le système Acoustimass 6



Cinq enceintes Virtually Invisible® série II

### Avec le système Acoustimass 10



Quatre enceintes Direct/Reflecting® série II et une enceinte de canal central horizontale

### Cordon d'alimentation (1)



États-Unis/Canada



Europe



Royaume-Uni/Singapour



Australie

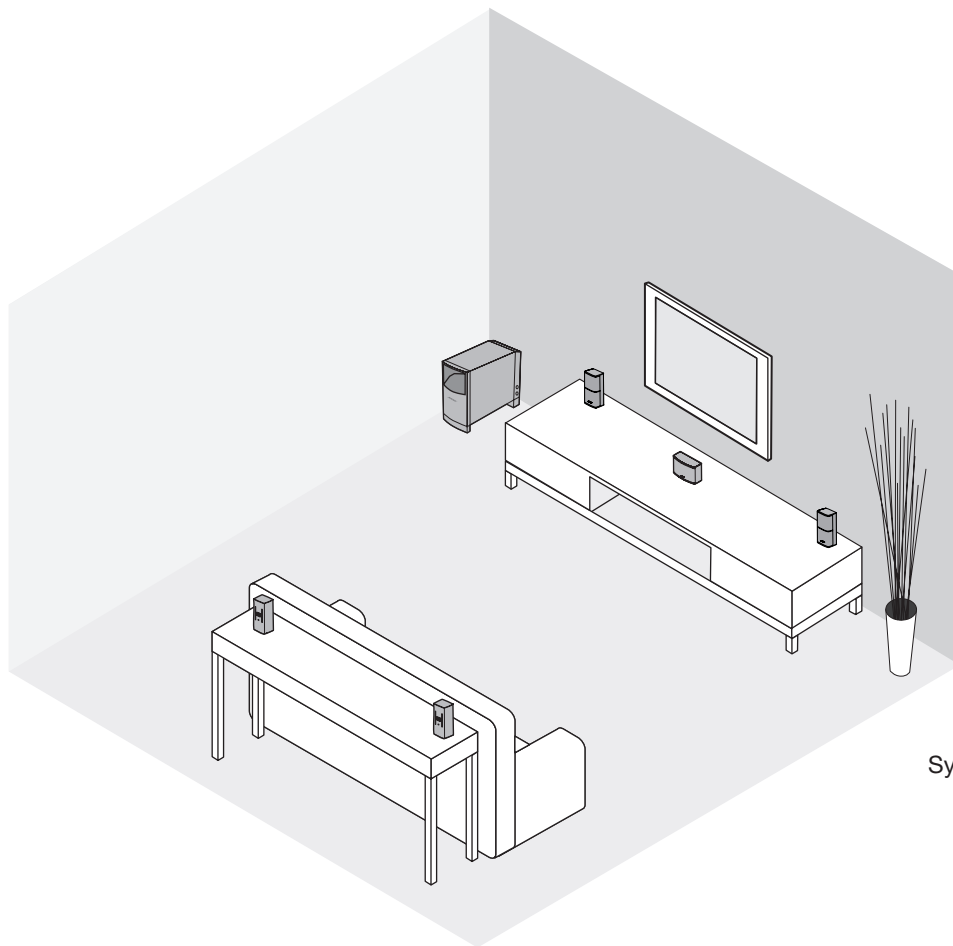
Il est recommandé de noter dès maintenant le numéro de série de votre produit sur votre carte de garantie. Conservez tous les emballages pour une utilisation ultérieure.

**AVERTISSEMENT** : afin d'éviter tout risque d'étouffement, les sacs plastique qui protègent les enceintes doivent être tenus hors de portée des enfants.

## Mise en place des enceintes pour obtenir un son home cinéma réaliste

Lors du choix de l'emplacement de chaque enceinte, suivez ces quelques conseils :

- Pour éviter toute interférence, placez le module Acoustimass® à au moins 0,60 m de votre téléviseur.
- La surface sur laquelle reposent les enceintes doit être stable et plane.
- Dans un système Acoustimass 10, l'enceinte de canal central est destinée à être utilisée dans la partie frontale de la pièce, et à proximité du centre du téléviseur. Les autres enceintes sont identiques et peuvent être placées dans la pièce de façon interchangeable.
- Dans le système Acoustimass 6, les cinq enceintes sont identiques et peuvent être placées dans la pièce de façon interchangeable.
- Le choix de l'emplacement des enceintes doit être déterminé par la forme et les dimensions de votre pièce d'une part, et l'emplacement des meubles d'autre part. Utilisez l'exemple ci-dessous comme guide pour installer votre système home cinéma.



Système Acoustimass 10 série V

# Installation

## Enceintes avant droite et gauche

Ces enceintes créent une image sonore dépassant les dimensions de l'écran tout en restant cohérente et naturelle pour le spectateur, quelle que soit la position de celui-ci dans la pièce.

- Placez ces deux enceintes frontales de part et d'autre du téléviseur.
- Éloignez-les de 2 à 5 m de tout téléviseur à tube cathodique.

## Enceinte centrale

Pour obtenir un rendu réaliste de l'action et des dialogues, le son de l'enceinte centrale doit sembler provenir de l'image.

- Placez l'enceinte cube centrale au-dessus, au-dessous ou sur votre téléviseur. Ne faites pas reposer le poids du téléviseur sur l'enceinte !
- Pour obtenir une restitution précise des dialogues, placez l'enceinte aussi près que possible de la verticale du centre de l'écran.
- Éloignez cette enceinte d'au moins 15 cm de tout téléviseur à tube cathodique.

## Enceintes arrière

Les enceintes arrière (surround) reproduisent les dialogues, mais sont principalement destinées à restituer les sons discrets et les effets spéciaux qui donnent de l'ampleur à l'image. Elles contribuent à mettre le spectateur au cœur de l'action.

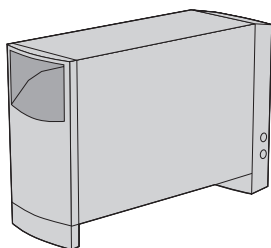
Choisissez des emplacements pratiques en tenant compte des recommandations suivantes :

- Positionnez les enceintes arrière gauche et droite de manière à ce que le son parvienne au spectateur de chaque côté, plutôt que directement derrière lui.
- Placez ces enceintes à la hauteur des oreilles d'un spectateur assis, ou légèrement plus haut.

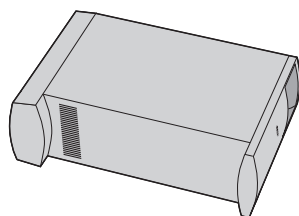
## Module Acoustimass® amplifié

Grâce à la technologie Acoustimass utilisée dans ce module, il est difficile de localiser la source des sons graves. Vous pouvez donc le dissimuler. Placez le module en respectant les conseils suivants :

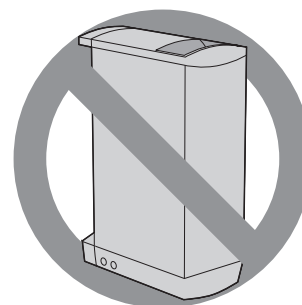
- Placez le module du même côté de la pièce que l'écran du téléviseur.
- Pour éviter toute interférence, placez le module à au moins 0,60 m de votre téléviseur.
- Pour augmenter l'effet des basses, orientez l'ouverture avant vers un mur. À l'inverse, pour réduire cet effet, orientez l'ouverture dos au mur.
- L'ouverture avant et la grille d'aération située à la base du module doivent être éloignées d'au moins 5 cm de toute autre surface.
- Ne masquez pas la grille d'aération située à la base du module. Cette ouverture est nécessaire à la restitution correcte des basses par le module.



Préférentiel



Alternatif



## Branchements

Seul le module Acoustimass® doit être connecté à l'ampli-tuner. Les enceintes se connectent toutes directement au module Acoustimass.

**AVERTISSEMENT** : ne raccordez pas les enceintes à un ampli-tuner, car vous risquez d'endommager votre système et de subir une secousse électrique.

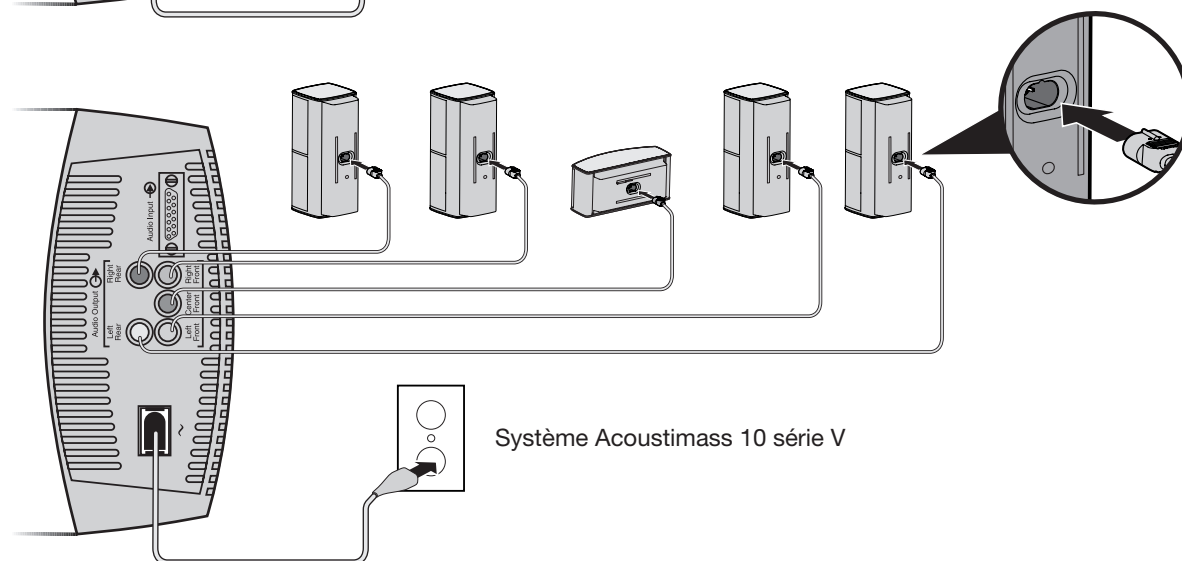
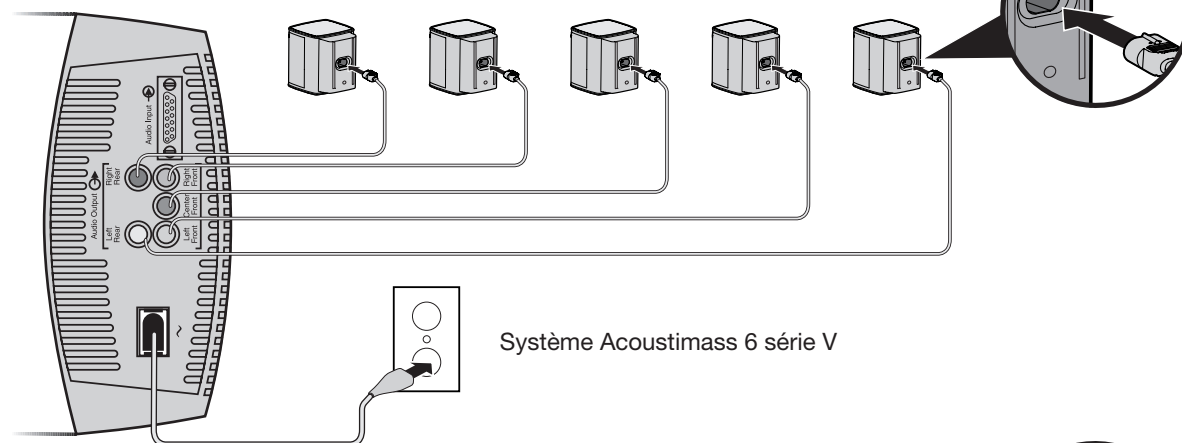
### Connexion des enceintes au module Acoustimass

Insérez la fiche de chaque câble d'enceinte dans le connecteur correspondant du module. L'étiquette sur la fiche doit correspondre au connecteur du module.

- Pour les trois enceintes avant, utilisez les câbles de 6,10 m fournis.
  - Insérez la fiche **R** dans le connecteur marqué **Right Front**.
  - Insérez la fiche **C** dans le connecteur marqué **Center Front**.
  - Insérez la fiche **L** dans le connecteur marqué **Left Front**.
- Pour les enceintes arrière, utilisez les câbles de 15,20 m fournis.
  - Insérez la fiche **RR** dans le connecteur marqué **Right Rear**.
  - Insérez la fiche **LR** dans le connecteur marqué **Left Rear**.
- Insérez l'autre extrémité de chaque câble dans le connecteur de l'enceinte correspondante, étiquette face vers le bas.

**Remarque** : Localisez l'étiquette sur chaque câble d'enceinte correspondant à l'enceinte :

Étiquette sur le câble d'enceinte	
L (Left) pour l'enceinte avant gauche	LR (Left Rear) pour l'enceinte arrière gauche
R (Right) pour l'enceinte avant droite	RR (Right Rear) pour l'enceinte arrière droite
C (Center) pour l'enceinte centrale avant	



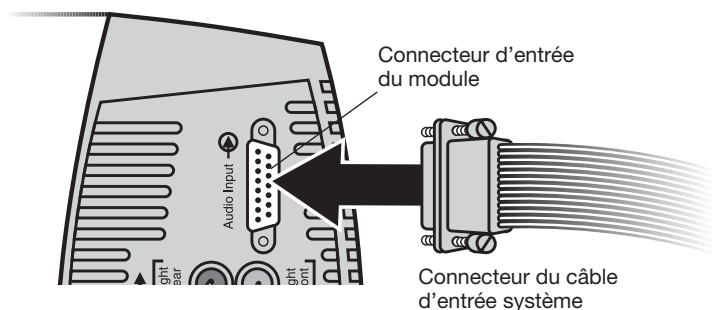


# Installation

## Branchement du module Acoustimass® sur l'ampli-tuner

**ATTENTION:** Avant d'effectuer les connexions, éteignez votre ampli-tuner afin d'éviter tous craquements intempestifs lors du branchement du module Acoustimass®.

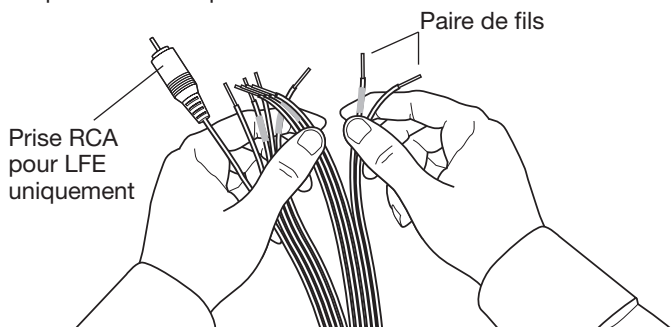
Le câble d'entrée système, long de 6,10 mètres, connecte le module Acoustimass à l'ampli-tuner. Contrairement aux câbles d'enceinte, celui-ci est doté d'un connecteur multibroches qui doit être inséré dans le connecteur **Audio Input** du module.



À l'autre extrémité du câble d'entrée système figurent des paires de brins multiples que vous pouvez séparer pour les insérer plus aisément dans les bornes de l'ampli-tuner. Une bague rouge permet d'identifier les fils positifs (+).

**ATTENTION:** Ne connectez JAMAIS votre module au téléviseur, les signaux de celui-ci ne sont pas suffisamment amplifiés.

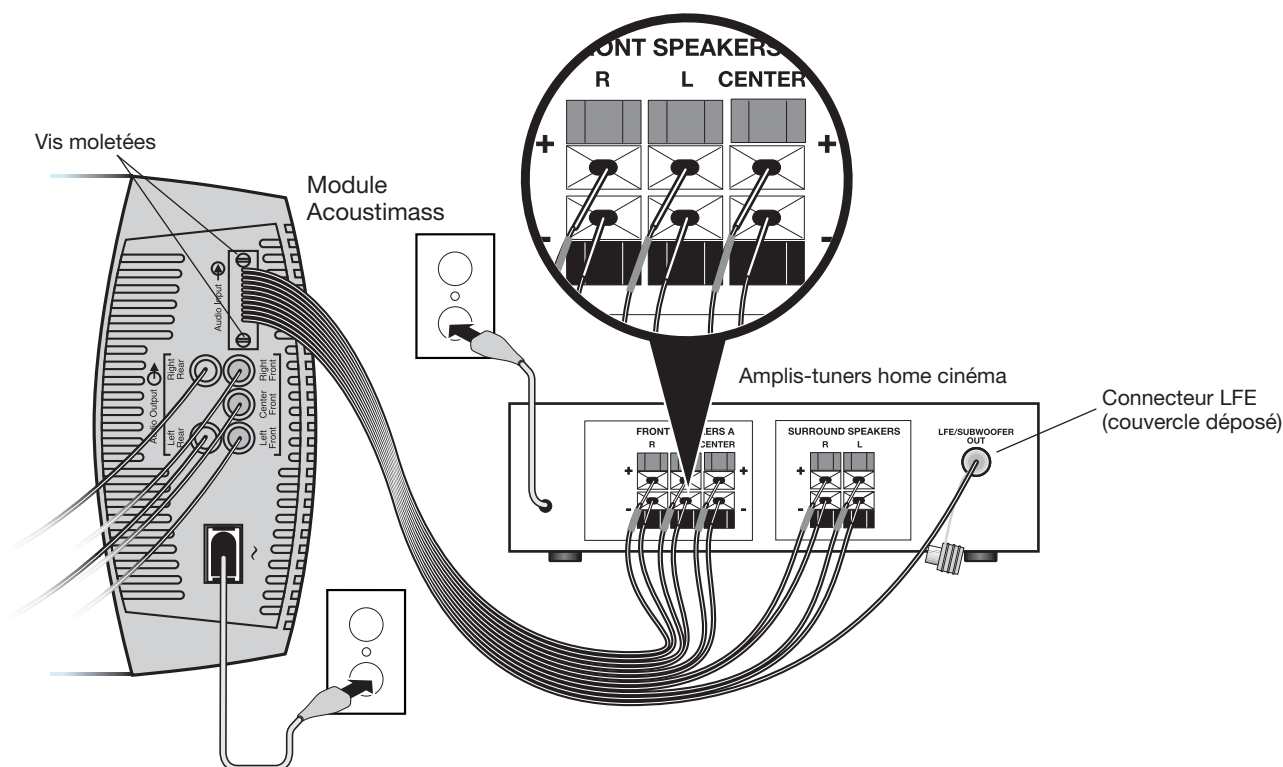
Le connecteur RCA unique qui apparaît à cette extrémité est UNIQUEMENT destiné à un ampli-tuner capable de gérer les effets basses fréquences et comportant un connecteur **LFE/SUBWOOFER**.



## Branchements :

1. Insérez le connecteur multibroches du câble d'entrée du système dans l'embase prévue à cet effet sur le module Acoustimass®. Serrez les deux vis moletées pour verrouiller la connexion.
2. Connectez chaque paire de conducteurs de l'autre extrémité du câble d'entrée système à votre ampli-tuner, dont les bornes doivent être identifiées ainsi :
  - Right, Left, Center pour les canaux audio avant.
  - Right Surround et Left Surround pour les canaux arrière. Les indications exactes peuvent différer selon le modèle.

**ATTENTION:** Veillez à ce qu'aucun conducteur ne soit effiloché afin d'empêcher qu'il n'entre en contact avec un autre. Dans le cas contraire, votre ampli-tuner peut être endommagé.
3. Respectez scrupuleusement les polarités (le + sur le + et le - sur le -).
  - Branchez chaque conducteur repéré (+) à la borne + adéquate.
  - Branchez chaque conducteur repéré (-) sur la borne - adéquate.
4. Si possible, raccordez la prise RCA marquée **LFE** du câble d'entrée du système au connecteur **LFE/SUBWOOFER OUT** de votre ampli-tuner après avoir retiré le couvercle.



## Vérification des connexions

Avant de brancher le module Acoustimass, vérifiez toutes les connexions entre l'ampli-tuner et le module, et entre le module et les enceintes.

- Assurez-vous que toutes les enceintes sont raccordées aux bornes appropriées, en fonction de leur position dans la pièce.
- Contrôlez que les câbles connectés à votre ampli-tuner surround sont bien en phase (+ au + et - au -). Un mauvais câblage peut provoquer une perte totale de puissance du module.
- Corrigez les éventuels problèmes de câblage avant de brancher le cordon secteur de votre ampli-tuner et de mettre celui-ci sous tension.

Une fois tous les raccordements du système vérifiés, branchez le cordon secteur du module Acoustimass dans la prise murale. Branchez également l'ampli-tuner.

**Remarque :** Bose recommande l'utilisation d'un dispositif de protection contre les surtensions pour protéger tous les équipements électroniques. Les variations de tension et les surcharges transitoires peuvent endommager les composants de n'importe quel système. Un équipement de ce type, capable d'éliminer la majeure partie des surtensions, peut être acheté dans un magasin spécialisé.

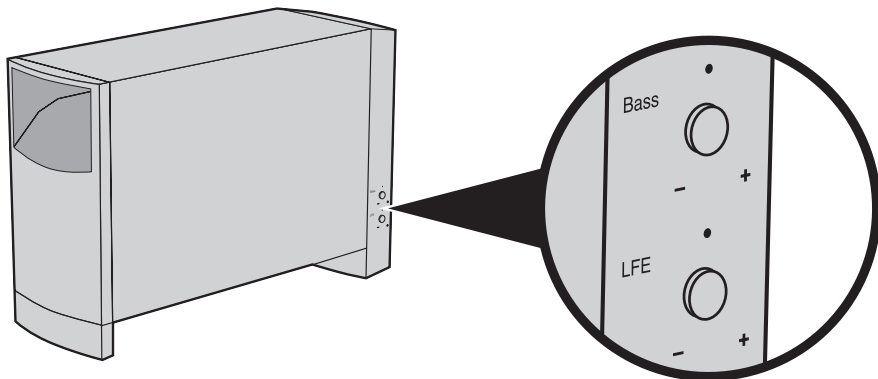
## Utilisation du système

### Comment tirer le meilleur parti de vos enceintes home cinéma

Dès que le système est connecté et que le module est raccordé au secteur, votre système Acoustimass® est prêt à fonctionner.

Commencez par vous familiariser avec les réglages qui permettent d'ajuster le son du système. Les options permettent d'adapter celui-ci à votre style d'écoute et à vos préférences.

**ATTENTION:** Le système est doté d'un circuit de protection automatique contre les surtensions électriques et les surcharges. Ce circuit est automatiquement activé lorsque le volume d'écoute est élevé. La réduction de niveau entraînée reste faible. Si vous constatez cette réduction de niveau, cela confirme que le système fonctionne normalement. Cette réduction de volume indique également que la puissance sonore du système peut dépasser les niveaux de sécurité. Il n'est pas recommandé de maintenir longtemps le niveau d'écoute à ce volume.



#### Réglage du niveau de compensation des graves en fonction de la pièce

Après avoir placé le module Acoustimass à l'endroit voulu, vous pouvez l'ajuster en fonction de cet emplacement. Utilisez ce réglage uniquement en cas de besoin.

Par exemple :

- Si le son produit vous paraît dans l'ensemble manquant de graves, tournez la molette BASS (Graves) dans le sens des aiguilles d'une montre afin d'augmenter le niveau de graves délivré par le module.
- Si le son produit est au contraire trop grave, tournez cette même molette dans le sens inverse des aiguilles d'une montre afin de diminuer le niveau de graves.

Le réglage par défaut est conçu pour les dimensions et aménagements de pièce les plus fréquents.

#### Réglage du niveau LFE

Le réglage du niveau LFE (effets basses fréquences) représenté ci-dessus est destiné uniquement aux ampli-tuners disposant d'un canal LFE/SUBWOOFER.

Tournez cette molette pour régler le niveau relatif des effets basses fréquences des pistes sonores des films. Utilisez-la de façon à ce que le volume du canal LFE soit identique aux volumes des autres enceintes.

Pour vérifier tous les niveaux, utilisez la fonction « Test tones » de votre ampli-tuner numérique. Consultez la notice d'utilisation fournie avec votre amplificateur pour toutes informations supplémentaires.

## Réglage de l'ampli-tuner numérique

Les enceintes de votre système Acoustimass® 6 série V ou Acoustimass 10 série V sont entièrement compatibles avec le signal audio des amplis-tuners numériques. Le traitement de signal intégré autorise la reproduction des basses fréquences sur tous les canaux.

Pour tirer pleinement parti de ces possibilités, il est conseillé d'ajuster certains réglages sur votre ampli-tuner. Pour ce faire, utilisez le menu de l'afficheur de l'ampli-tuner en vous reportant ci-dessous à la liste des réglages recommandés.

Enceinte	Réglage sur l'ampli-tuner
Gauche et droite	LARGE
Canal central	LARGE
Surround gauche et droite	LARGE
LFE/Subwoofer	ON

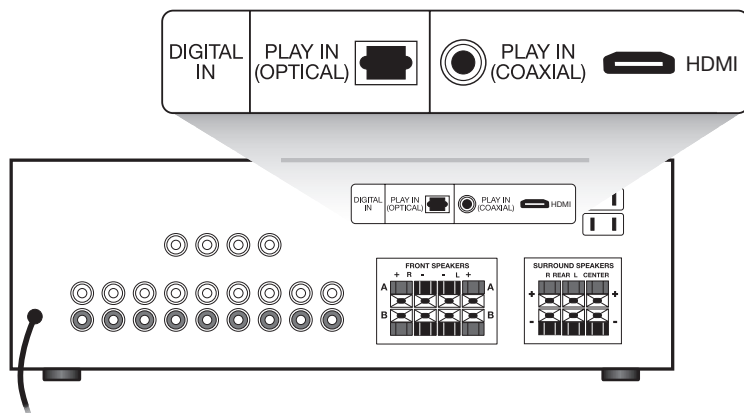
**Remarque :** si votre modèle d'ampli-tuner est doté de l'option LFE ou Subwoofer, celle-ci doit être sur réglée sur ON et la valeur de l'option Crossover (fréquence de coupure) doit être le plus bas possible, en général 80 Hz.

## Réception d'un signal audio numérique

Pour transmettre le signal audio numérique de sources supplémentaires (lecteur de disques Blu-ray™ ou de DVD, récepteur câble/satellite, console de jeux, etc.) à votre ampli-tuner surround, vous devez établir une connexion audio numérique entre la source supplémentaire et l'ampli-tuner.

- Utilisez l'entrée HDMI™, l'entrée Optical ou l'entrée Coaxial de l'ampli-tuner pour recevoir le signal numérique de la source supplémentaire. N'utilisez pas simultanément plusieurs connexions.
- N'oubliez pas de sélectionner la sortie numérique dans le menu de paramétrage de votre source supplémentaire.

Pour toutes informations supplémentaires, consultez la notice d'utilisation fournie avec votre amplificateur.



## Réglage de l'ampli-tuner analogique

Pour les applications surround analogiques (et non numériques), il est recommandé de régler le mode Surround centre de l'ampli-tuner sur WIDE (large). Consultez la notice d'utilisation fournie avec votre amplificateur pour toutes instructions relatives à ce réglage.

# Résolution des problèmes

Si vous rencontrez un problème avec votre système d'enceintes Acoustimass®, arrêtez la source sonore et essayez les solutions ci-dessous. Si le problème persiste, contactez votre revendeur Bose® afin de convenir d'un rendez-vous pour maintenance. Pour contacter Bose directement, consultez la liste des adresses figurant dans l'emballage.

Problème	Mesure corrective
Le système ne fonctionne pas du tout	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Assurez-vous que l'ampli audio/vidéo ou home cinéma et le module Acoustimass amplifié sont bien branchés sur une prise secteur murale et que l'ampli-tuner home cinéma est sous tension.</li><li>• Veillez à sélectionner une source audio sur l'ampli-tuner (lecteur Blu-ray ou DVD, récepteur câble/satellite, console de jeux, etc.).</li></ul>
Absence de son	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Augmentez le volume.</li><li>• Débranchez le casque, le cas échéant.</li><li>• Vérifiez les connexions d'enceinte sur le module de graves, l'ampli-tuner et les enceintes.</li><li>• Assurez-vous que le module Acoustimass amplifié et l'ampli-tuner sont bien alimentés.</li><li>• Pour le son numérique, assurez-vous qu'un câble HDMI, coaxial ou optique relie la sortie numérique de la source audio à l'entrée numérique de votre ampli-tuner.</li><li>• Assurez-vous que la source audio sélectionnée est correcte. Par exemple, sélectionnez bien la lecture DVD audio sur l'amplificateur et le lecteur pour qu'un son puisse être entendu à partir d'un DVD.</li></ul>
Absence de son surround	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Vérifiez que la source sonore comporte bien des effets surround.</li><li>• Si vous utilisez le mode Dolby Pro-Logic, vérifiez que le mode Surround est bien activé (ON).</li><li>• Vérifiez que la source (lecteur Blu-ray™ ou DVD, récepteur câble/satellite, console de jeux, etc.) est bien encodée Dolby Digital.</li><li>• Vérifiez que votre ampli-tuner traite un signal provenant d'un téléviseur stéréo, d'un disque laser, d'un lecteur de disques Blu-ray, d'un lecteur de DVD ou d'une quelconque autre source comportant du son surround.</li><li>• Si vous utilisez une source numérique, vérifiez que les réglages sont corrects au niveau de l'ampli-tuner home cinéma.</li></ul>
Absence de graves	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Vérifiez que les connexions d'enceinte de l'ampli-tuner vers l'amplificateur sont correctes (bague rouge sur borne rouge, + sur + et - sur -).</li><li>• Vérifiez que la taille de l'enceinte dans l'ampli-tuner n'est pas réglée sur Large.</li></ul>
Manque ou excès de graves	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Rapprochez le module Acoustimass amplifié d'un mur ou d'un angle pour augmenter le niveau de graves, ou éloignez-le pour obtenir moins de graves.</li><li>• Réglez le niveau LFE ou le niveau de compensation.</li></ul>
Le son comporte des distorsions	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Vérifiez qu'aucun câble d'enceinte n'est endommagé.</li><li>• Diminuez le volume de tous les éléments externes raccordés à l'ampli-tuner home cinéma.</li></ul>

---

## Service client

---

Pour obtenir de l'aide afin de résoudre vos éventuels problèmes, contactez le service client local de Bose®. Consultez la liste d'adresses incluse dans le carton d'emballage.

---

## Nettoyage

---

Les coffrets des enceintes Acoustimass® doivent être nettoyés uniquement à l'aide d'un chiffon doux et sec. N'utilisez aucun aérosol à proximité du système et ne laissez aucun liquide pénétrer par une des ouvertures. De même, n'utilisez pas de solvants, de produits chimiques ou de liquides de nettoyage contenant de l'alcool, de l'ammoniac ou des abrasifs.

Si nécessaire, vous pouvez passer l'aspirateur sur les grilles des enceintes, mais procédez avec précaution car les haut-parleurs se trouvent directement derrière et ils peuvent être facilement endommagés.

---

## Garantie limitée

---

Votre système d'enceintes Acoustimass® est couvert par une garantie limitée. Les conditions détaillées de la garantie sont notées sur la carte de garantie accompagnant le système. Remplissez la section « Informations » de la carte et renvoyez-la par courrier à Bose. En cas d'oubli, les droits que vous confère cette garantie ne s'en trouveront pas affectés.

Les informations de garantie qui accompagnent ce produit ne s'appliquent ni en Australie ni en Nouvelle-Zélande. Consultez notre site Web [www.bose.com.au/warranty](http://www.bose.com.au/warranty) ou [www.bose.con.nz/warranty](http://www.bose.con.nz/warranty) pour plus d'informations sur les conditions de garantie en Australie et en Nouvelle-Zélande.

---

## Accessoires

---

Les enceintes peuvent être montées sur un support mural, sur un pied de table ou sur un pied de sol. Pour acquérir ces accessoires, contactez votre revendeur Bose® ou visitez la page [www.Bose.com](http://www.Bose.com).

Pour les accessoires suivants :

- Kit adaptateur de câbles d'entrée, pour passage dans les murs de la liaison entre le module Acoustimass et l'ampli-tuner
- Câble d'extension de 6,10 m pour étendre la liaison entre le module Acoustimass et l'ampli-tuner
- Adaptateurs pour câbles d'enceinte à utiliser dans un câblage mural

Contactez votre revendeur Bose agréé. Pour contacter Bose directement, consultez la liste des adresses figurant dans l'emballage.

### Informations complémentaires sur les haut-parleurs

#### Système Acoustimass® 10 :

- Enceintes cube et enceinte centrale avant :  
Deux enceintes Twiddler™ de 6,35 cm
- Module Acoustimass amplifié :  
Deux haut-parleurs de graves de 13 cm

#### Système Acoustimass 6 :

- Enceintes cube :  
Une enceinte Twiddler™ de 6,35 cm
- Module Acoustimass amplifié :  
Un haut-parleur de graves de 13 cm

### Puissance nominale du système

#### Système Acoustimass 10 :

États-Unis/Canada : 100-127 V ~ 50/60 Hz 270 W

Europe/Australie : 220-240 V ~ 50/60 Hz 270 W

#### Système Acoustimass 6 :

États-Unis/Canada : 100-127 V ~ 50/60 Hz 135 W

Europe/Australie : 220-240 V ~ 50/60 Hz 135 W

### Connectivité

#### Système Acoustimass 10 :

Compatible avec les ampli-tuners A/V et les amplificateurs home cinéma dont la puissance est comprise entre 10 et 200 W par canal, pour une charge de 4 à 8 ohms

#### Système Acoustimass 6 :

Compatible avec les ampli-tuners et les amplificateurs A/V dont la puissance est comprise entre 10 et 150 W par canal, pour une charge de 4 à 8 ohms

#### Système Acoustimass 10 :

Enceinte cube et enceinte centrale avant : 1 kg chacune

Enceinte cube : 15,7 cm x 7,9 cm x 10,2 cm (L x H x P)

Enceinte centrale avant : 15,7 cm x 7,9 cm x 10,2 cm (L x H x P)

Module Acoustimass : 15,8 kg

41,4 cm x 20,6 cm x 64,3 cm (L x H x P)

#### Système Acoustimass 6 :

Enceinte cube : 0,45 kg chacune

9,5 cm x 8,3 cm x 8,4 cm (L x H x P)

Module Acoustimass : 12,2 kg

41,4 cm x 20,6 cm x 56,6 cm (L x H x P)





# Informazioni importanti sulla sicurezza

## Leggere questo manuale d'uso e conservarlo come riferimento per il futuro.



Il simbolo del fulmine con la punta a freccia all'interno di un triangolo equilatero mette in guardia l'utente contro tensioni pericolose non isolate all'interno del telaio del sistema, di entità tale da presentare un potenziale pericolo di scossa elettrica.



Il simbolo del punto esclamativo racchiuso all'interno di un triangolo equilatero, che appare sul sistema, rimanda l'utente alla lettura delle importanti istruzioni di uso e manutenzione contenute in questo manuale.



### AVVERTENZE:

- Per ridurre il rischio di incendio o scosse elettriche, il prodotto non deve essere esposto a pioggia o umidità.
- Non esporre l'apparecchio a gocce o schizzi e non porre oggetti colmi di liquidi, quali vasi, sopra o accanto all'apparecchio. Come per qualsiasi prodotto elettronico, è importante che all'interno delle parti del sistema non penetrino liquidi in quanto potrebbero causare guasti e/o rischio di incendio.
- Non collocare sorgenti di fiamme libere (ad esempio candele accese) sull'apparecchio o nelle vicinanze dello stesso.



### ATTENZIONE:

- Eventuali modifiche non autorizzate possono compromettere la sicurezza, la conformità alle normative e le prestazioni del sistema e quindi invalidare la garanzia.



**AVVERTENZA:** Questo prodotto contiene materiale magnetico. Rivolgersi al proprio medico per eventuali domande sui possibili effetti del prodotto sui dispositivi medici impiantati nel corpo umano.

### NOTE:

- La spina dell'alimentazione o dell'accoppiatore deve essere raggiungibile facilmente e rapidamente se è utilizzata come dispositivo di spegnimento.
- Questo prodotto è destinato all'utilizzo in ambienti interni. Non è stato progettato né collaudato per l'uso in ambienti esterni, camper o imbarcazioni.
- Il cavo dei diffusori e i cavi per i collegamenti forniti in dotazione con il sistema non sono approvati per l'installazione a parete. Consultare le norme locali per l'edilizia per individuare i tipi di cavi richiesti per l'installazione a parete.



Questo simbolo indica che il prodotto non deve essere smaltito con i rifiuti domestici, ma deve essere consegnato a una struttura di raccolta appropriata per il riciclaggio. Uno smaltimento e un riciclaggio corretti aiutano a preservare le risorse naturali, la salute e l'ambiente. Per ulteriori informazioni sullo smaltimento e sul riciclaggio di questo prodotto, rivolgersi alle autorità locali, al servizio di smaltimento dei rifiuti o al negozio presso il quale è stato acquistato.



Bose Corporation dichiara che il presente prodotto è conforme ai requisiti essenziali e ad altre disposizioni applicabili della Direttiva 1999/5/CE e di tutte le altre direttive UE applicabili. La dichiarazione di conformità completa è disponibile all'indirizzo: [www.Bose.com/compliance](http://www.Bose.com/compliance).

## Informazioni importanti sulla sicurezza

- Leggere queste istruzioni.
- Conservare queste istruzioni.
- Prestare attenzione a tutte le avvertenze.
- Seguire tutte le istruzioni.
- Non utilizzare l'apparecchio in prossimità di acqua.
- Utilizzare solo un panno asciutto per la pulizia.
- Non ostruire le aperture di ventilazione. Installare il prodotto in conformità con le istruzioni fornite dal produttore.
- Non installare i diffusori in prossimità di fonti di calore, quali termosifoni, radiatori, stufe o altri apparati (compresi gli amplificatori) che generano calore.
- Fare in modo che il cavo di alimentazione non venga calpestato o schiacciato, soprattutto in corrispondenza di spine, prese e nel punto di uscita dall'apparecchio.
- Utilizzare solo sistemi di aggancio/accessori specificati dal produttore.
- Scollegare l'apparato durante i temporali o quando rimane inutilizzato a lungo.
- Affidarsi a personale qualificato per tutti gli interventi di assistenza. Gli interventi di assistenza si rendono necessari quando l'apparato ha subito danni, ad esempio se il cavo di alimentazione o la spina sono danneggiati, se è stato versato del liquido o sono caduti oggetti sull'apparecchio, se l'apparato è stato esposto a pioggia o umidità, se non funziona normalmente o è caduto.

### Nome e contenuto delle sostanze o degli elementi tossici o pericolosi

Nome parte	Sostanze ed elementi tossici o pericolosi					
	Piombo (Pb)	Mercurio (Hg)	Cadmio (Cd)	Cromo esavalente (CR(VI))	Bifenile polibromurato (PBB)	Difenil etero polibromurato (PBDE)
Circuiti stampati	X	0	0	0	0	0
Parti di metallo	X	0	0	0	0	0
Parti di plastica	0	0	0	0	0	0
Diffusori	X	0	0	0	0	0
Cavi	X	0	0	0	0	0

0: indica che la quantità della sostanza tossica o pericolosa contenuta in tutti i materiali omogenei della parte è inferiore al limite previsto dallo standard SJ/T 11363-2006.

X: indica che la quantità della sostanza tossica o pericolosa contenuta in almeno uno dei materiali omogenei della parte è superiore al limite previsto dallo standard SJ/T 11363-2006.

### Compilare e conservare le seguenti informazioni.

Il numero di serie e il numero di modello sono riportati sul pannello dei connettori del modulo Acoustimass®.

Numero di serie: \_\_\_\_\_

Numero modello: \_\_\_\_\_

Data d'acquisto: \_\_\_\_\_

Conservare lo scontrino fiscale insieme a questo manuale di istruzioni.

Blu-ray Disc™ e "Blu-Ray™" sono marchi commerciali di Blu-Ray Disc Association.

HDMI è un marchio commerciale o registrato di HDMI Licensing LLC negli Stati Uniti e in altri paesi.

©2014 Bose Corporation. Nessuna parte di questo documento può essere riprodotta, modificata, distribuita o usata in altro modo, senza autorizzazione scritta.

**Introduzione**

Grazie .....	4
Disimballaggio .....	4

**Installazione**

Collocazione dei diffusori per ottenere un suono Home Cinema realistico .....	5
Diffusori sinistro e destro anteriori .....	6
Diffusore centrale.....	6
Diffusori posteriori.....	6
Modulo Acoustimass® amplificato.....	6
Collegamenti .....	7
Collegamento dei diffusori al modulo Acoustimass.....	7
Collegamento del modulo Acoustimass® al ricevitore .....	8
Verifica dei collegamenti.....	9

**Utilizzo del sistema**

Come ottenere il massimo dai diffusori home cinema.....	10
Regolazione del livello di compensazione ambientale dei bassi .....	10
Regolazione del livello LFE .....	10
Impostazione del ricevitore audio surround digitale .....	11
Ricezione di un segnale audio digitale.....	11
Impostazione del ricevitore audio surround analogico .....	11

**Riferimenti**

Risoluzione dei problemi.....	12
Assistenza tecnica.....	13
Pulizia .....	13
Informazioni sulla garanzia limitata.....	13
Accessori .....	13
Informazioni tecniche.....	14
Altoparlanti .....	14
Potenza nominale del sistema .....	14
Connettività .....	14

# Introduzione

## Grazie

Grazie per avere scelto il sistema di diffusori home cinema Bose® Acoustimass® 6 serie V o Acoustimass 10 serie V.

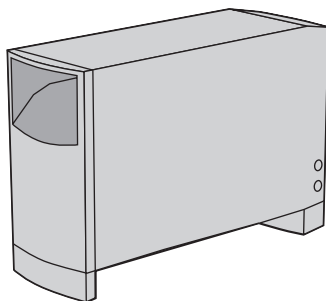
Il sistema Acoustimass 6 presenta cinque diffusori a cubetto piccoli, mentre il sistema Acoustimass 10 presenta quattro diffusori a cubetto e un diffusore frontale centrale. Questi diffusori, abbinati al modulo Acoustimass, producono un'esperienza di home cinema potente e realistica.

## Disimballaggio

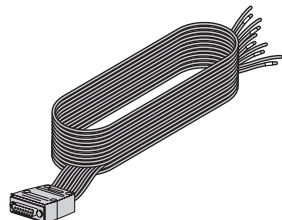
Estrarre con cura il contenuto della confezione:

1. Rimuovere la scatola marrone che si trova all'interno e che contiene i diffusori.
2. Capovolgere delicatamente il cartone appoggiandolo su un lato ed estrarre il modulo Acoustimass.

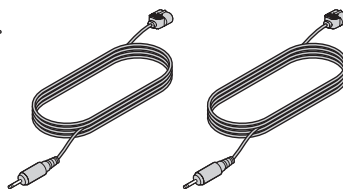
**AVVERTENZA:** Per evitare danni fisici, fare attenzione quando si solleva il modulo (pesa 14 kg).



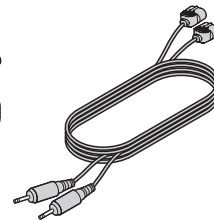
Modulo Acoustimass amplificato



Cavo di ingresso del sistema da 6,1 m

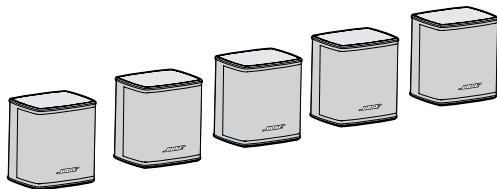


Tre cavi diffusori frontali da 6,1 m



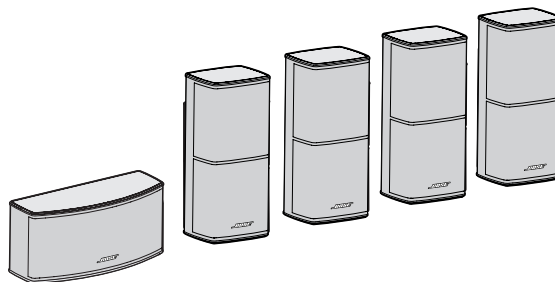
Due cavi da 15,2 m per i diffusori posteriori

### Con il sistema Acoustimass 6



Cinque diffusori Virtually Invisible® serie II

### Con il sistema Acoustimass 10



Quattro diffusori Direct/Reflecting® serie II e un diffusore orizzontale del canale centrale

### Cavo di alimentazione elettrica (1)



USA/Canada



Europa



Regno Unito/Singapore



Australia

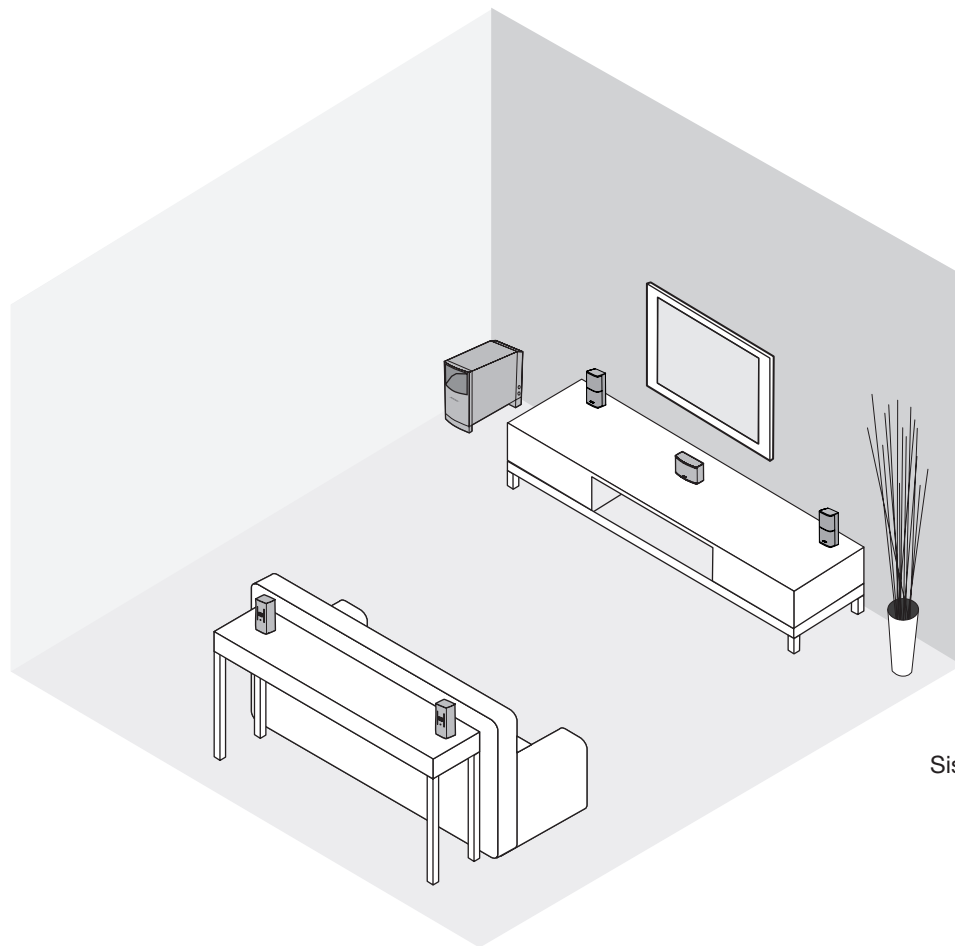
A questo punto è consigliabile annotare il numero di serie del prodotto sulla scheda di garanzia. Conservare tutto il materiale di imballaggio per un eventuale impiego futuro.

**AVVERTENZA:** per evitare rischi di soffocamento, tenere fuori dalla portata dei bambini i sacchetti di plastica che avvolgono questi diffusori.

## Collocazione dei diffusori per ottenere un suono Home Cinema realistico

Tenere presenti le seguenti indicazioni per la collocazione di ciascun diffusore:

- Per evitare interferenze, il modulo Acoustimass® deve essere a una distanza di almeno 60 cm dal televisore.
- Posizionare i diffusori su una superficie stabile e piana.
- In un sistema Acoustimass 10, collocare il diffusore del canale centrale nella parte anteriore della stanza e verso il centro del televisore. Gli altri diffusori sono identici e possono essere collocati in modo intercambiabile nella stanza.
- Nel sistema Acoustimass 6, tutti e cinque i diffusori sono identici e possono essere posizionati in modo intercambiabile nella stanza.
- La forma e le dimensioni della stanza e la disposizione dei mobili al suo interno sono determinanti per la scelta della posizione dei diffusori. Utilizzare l'esempio seguente come guida per la configurazione del proprio sistema home cinema.



Sistema Acoustimass 10 serie V

# Installazione

## Diffusori sinistro e destro anteriori

Questi diffusori sono progettati per creare un'immagine sonora più ampia dello schermo, che appare del tutto naturale agli spettatori, ovunque siano seduti.

- Collocare i due diffusori frontali su entrambi i lati del televisore.
- Mantenerli a 2-5 m di distanza l'uno dall'altro e ad almeno 15 cm da qualsiasi televisore con tubo catodico.

## Diffusore centrale

Il suono del diffusore centrale deve dare l'impressione di provenire dall'immagine per rendere più realistici i dialoghi e le azioni sullo schermo.

- Collocare il diffusore centrale al di sopra, sotto o direttamente sul televisore. Il diffusore NON deve sostenere il peso del televisore.
- Sistemare il diffusore in linea con il centro verticale dello schermo in modo da ottenere la migliore riproduzione dei dialoghi.
- Mantenere il diffusore a una distanza minima di 15 cm da qualsiasi televisore con tubo catodico.

## Diffusori posteriori

I diffusori posteriori (surround) riproducono anche alcuni dialoghi, ma il loro scopo principale è quello di aggiungere suoni ed effetti speciali che espandono l'immagine visiva, proiettando lo spettatore al centro dell'azione.

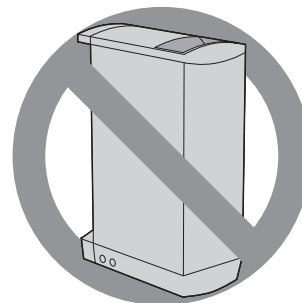
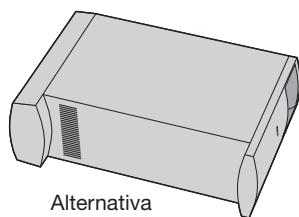
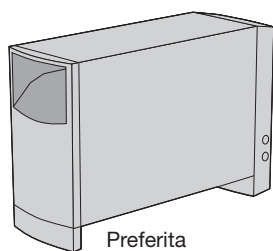
Scegliere la posizione più comoda e gradita, tenendo in considerazione le seguenti indicazioni:

- I diffusori posteriori sinistro e destro devono essere collocati in modo da permettere al suono di raggiungere lo spettatore da entrambi i lati, e non solo da dietro.
- Posizionare i diffusori all'altezza delle orecchie di uno spettatore seduto o più in alto.

## Modulo Acoustimass® amplificato

La tecnologia dei diffusori Acoustimass rende difficile individuare la sorgente dei suoni a bassa frequenza del modulo. Pertanto è possibile tranquillamente nascondere alla vista. Posizionare il modulo in base alle seguenti linee guida:

- Sullo stesso lato della stanza del televisore.
- A una distanza di almeno 60 cm dal televisore, per evitare interferenze.
- Per aumentare i bassi, orientare l'apertura frontale verso la parete, mentre per diminuirli, orientarla dalla parte opposta (verso la stanza).
- Tenere l'apertura frontale e la griglia di ventilazione posta alla base del modulo a una distanza di almeno 5 cm da qualsiasi altra superficie.
- Non ostruire la griglia di ventilazione posta alla base del modulo: l'uscita dei bassi del modulo potrebbe risultare ridotta.



## Collegamenti

Al ricevitore viene collegato solo il modulo Acoustimass®. I diffusori vengono tutti collegati direttamente al modulo Acoustimass.

**AVVERTENZA:** Non collegare i diffusori a un ricevitore. Altrimenti, si rischierebbe di danneggiare il sistema e di generare una scossa elettrica.

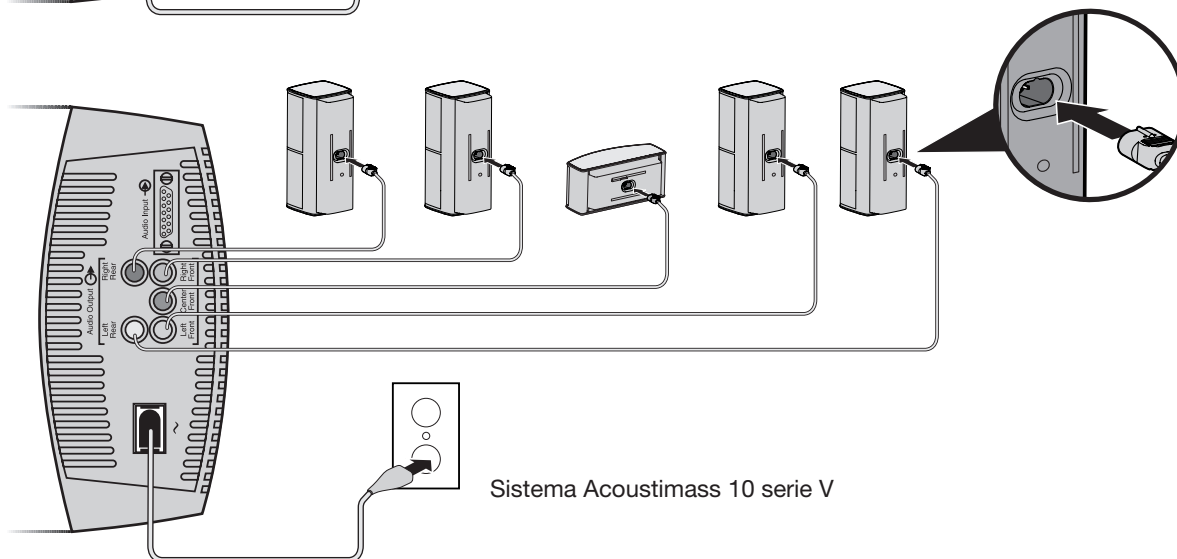
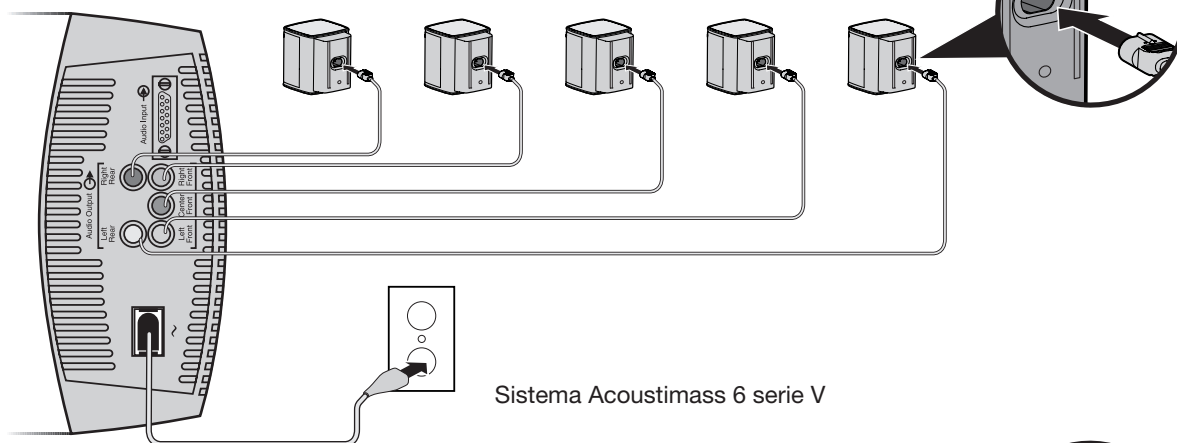
### Collegamento dei diffusori al modulo Acoustimass

Inserire lo spinotto di ogni cavo diffusore nel relativo connettore sul modulo. Far corrispondere l'etichetta sullo spinotto all'indicazione sul connettore.

1. Per i tre diffusori frontali, utilizzare i cavi diffusori da 6,1 m forniti in dotazione.
  - Inserire lo spinotto **R** nel connettore contrassegnato con **Right Front**.
  - Inserire lo spinotto **C** nel connettore contrassegnato con **Center Front**.
  - Inserire lo spinotto **L** nel connettore contrassegnato con **Left Front**.
2. Per i diffusori posteriori, utilizzare i cavi diffusori da 15,2 m forniti in dotazione.
  - Inserire lo spinotto **RR** nel connettore contrassegnato con **Right Rear**.
  - Inserire lo spinotto **LR** nel connettore contrassegnato con **Left Rear**.
3. Inserire l'altra estremità di ogni cavo nel connettore su ciascun diffusore, con l'etichetta rivolta verso il basso.

**Nota:** Individuare su ciascun cavo diffusore l'etichetta corrispondente al diffusore corretto:

Etichetta del cavo diffusore	
L per il diffusore frontale sinistro	LR per il diffusore posteriore sinistro
R per il diffusore frontale destro	RR per il diffusore posteriore destro
C per il diffusore frontale centrale	

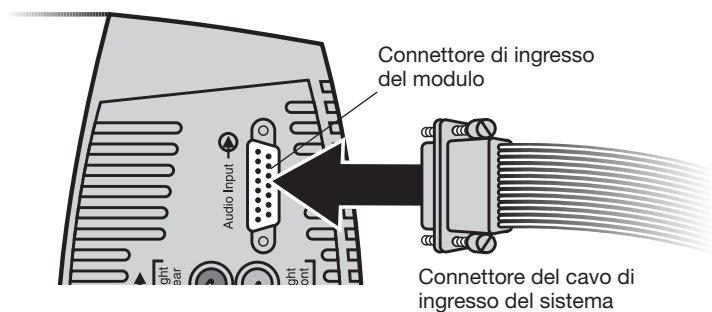


# Installazione

## Collegamento del modulo Acoustimass® al ricevitore

**ATTENZIONE:** prima di effettuare questi collegamenti, spegnere il ricevitore per evitare rumori indesiderati al momento del collegamento con il modulo Acoustimass®.

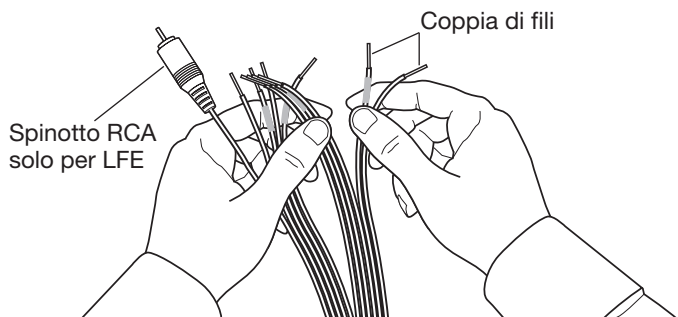
Il cavo di ingresso del sistema è lungo 6,1 metri e collega il modulo Acoustimass al ricevitore audio surround. A differenza dei cavi dei diffusori, questo cavo di ingresso è dotato di un connettore multi-pin da inserire nel connettore **Audio Input** del modulo.



L'altra estremità del cavo di ingresso del sistema è costituita da più coppie di fili che si possono facilmente separare e inserire nei terminali del ricevitore. Un colletto rosso contraddistingue il filo con polarità positiva (+).

**ATTENZIONE:** NON collegare il modulo al televisore, in quanto quest'ultimo non dispone dell'amplificazione adeguata.

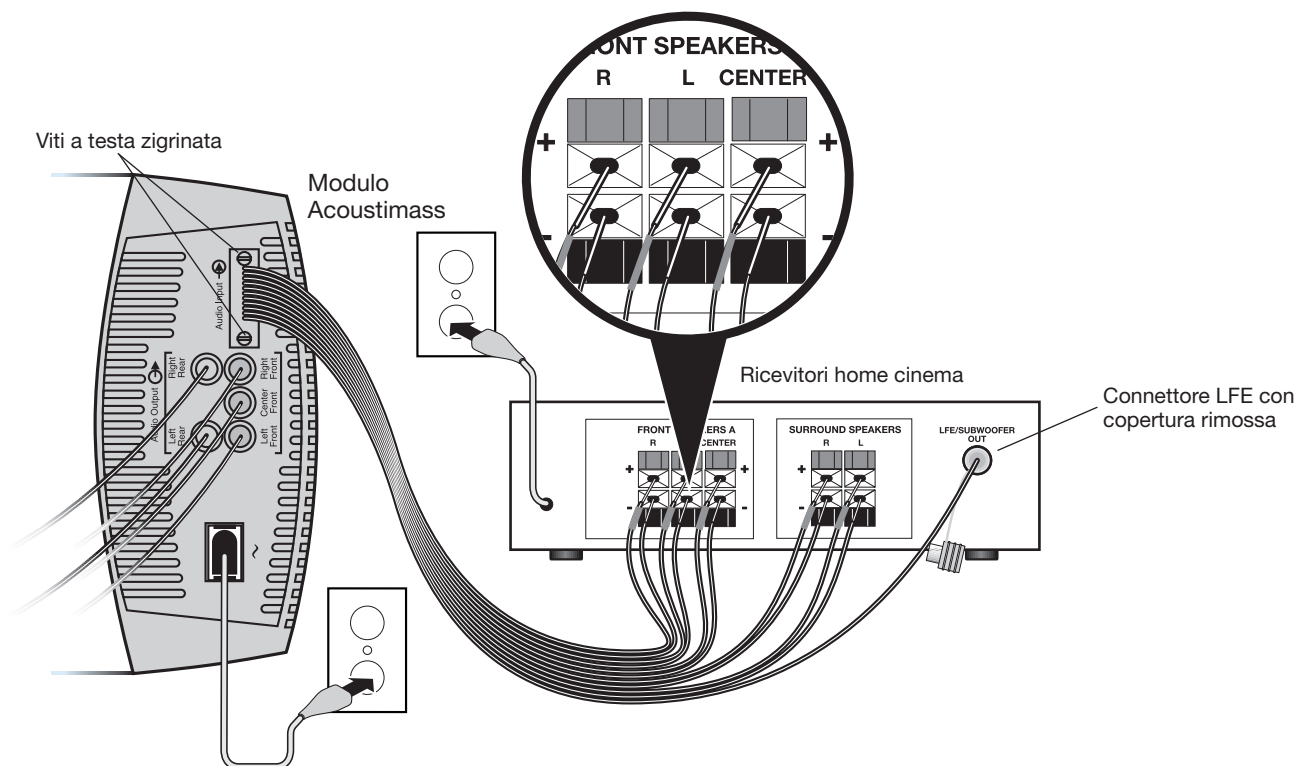
Il singolo spinotto RCA singolo posto a tale estremità è utilizzabile **ESCLUSIVAMENTE** con un ricevitore che gestisce effetti di bassa frequenza e dotato di un connettore **LFE/SUBWOOFER ()**.



## Per effettuare i collegamenti:

1. Inserire il connettore multi-pin del cavo di ingresso del sistema nel connettore di ingresso presente sul modulo Acoustimass®. Serrare le due viti a testa zigrinata per fissare saldamente il collegamento.
2. Collegare ciascuna coppia di fili del cavo di ingresso del sistema al ricevitore surround, che dovrebbe essere dotato di terminali di uscita audio con le seguenti etichette:
  - Right, Left e Center per i canali audio frontali.
  - Right Surround e Left Surround per i canali posteriori. Le etichette specifiche variano leggermente a seconda del ricevitore.

**ATTENZIONE:** si assicuri che i cavi scoperti non si tocchino, in modo da evitare danni al ricevitore.
3. Prestare attenzione alla coincidenza tra le polarità dei collegamenti (+ con + e - con -).
  - Collegare ogni filo con colletto rosso (+) al terminale + relativo.
  - Collegli ogni filo non contrassegnato (-) al terminale - del canale relativo del ricevitore.
4. Se presente, inserire lo spinotto RCA contrassegnato con **LFE** del cavo di ingresso del sistema nel connettore **LFE/SUBWOOFER OUT** del ricevitore surround. Rimuovere prima la copertura.



## Verifica dei collegamenti

Prima di collegare il modulo Acoustimass all'alimentazione elettrica, verificare tutti i collegamenti dal ricevitore al modulo Acoustimass e da quest'ultimo ai diffusori.

- Assicurarsi che tutti i diffusori siano collegati ai terminali appropriati in base alla loro posizione nella stanza.
- Verificare che tutti i fili siano collegati al ricevitore surround con la polarità adeguata (+ con + e - con -). L'esecuzione di collegamenti errati può comportare la perdita totale del segnale di uscita del modulo.
- Correggere gli eventuali errori di collegamento prima di collegare e accendere il ricevitore.

Dopo avere controllato tutti i collegamenti, collegare il cavo di alimentazione del modulo Acoustimass a una presa di corrente CA. Collegare anche il ricevitore.

**Nota:** si consiglia di collegare un soppressore di sovratensione di qualità a tutte le apparecchiature elettroniche utilizzate. Le variazioni e i picchi di tensione possono danneggiare i componenti elettronici di qualsiasi sistema. Un soppressore di buona qualità, acquistabile presso qualsiasi negozio di elettronica, è in grado di eliminare la maggior parte dei problemi attribuibili a sovratensioni.



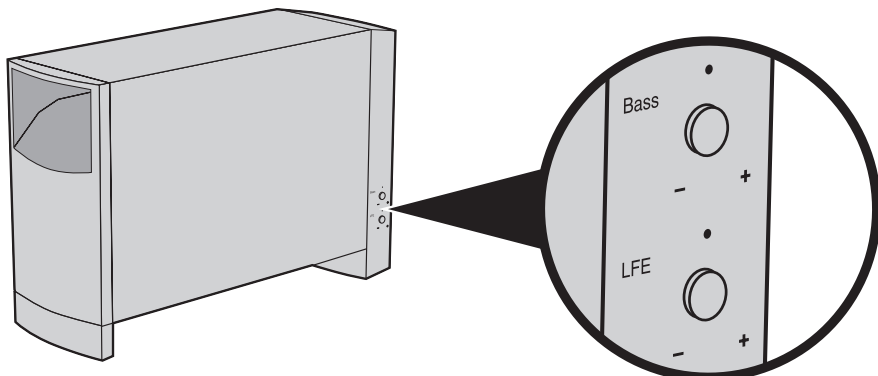
## Utilizzo del sistema

### Come ottenere il massimo dai diffusori home cinema

Una volta effettuati i collegamenti al sistema e collegato il modulo all'alimentazione elettrica, il sistema Acoustimass® è pronto per essere utilizzato.

Imparare a conoscere i controlli e le protezioni integrate per la regolazione dell'audio del sistema. Sono disponibili opzioni che si adattano a ogni particolare modo d'uso e preferenza.

**ATTENZIONE:** questo sistema è dotato di un circuito di protezione automatica contro la maggior parte dei danni causati da sollecitazioni elettriche o sovraccarico. Quando il volume è troppo alto, questo circuito si attiva riducendo il segnale di uscita, e quindi causando una leggera diminuzione del volume. Se si nota questa riduzione, significa che il sistema funziona correttamente. Inoltre, questo indica che la potenza d'ingresso supera i livelli di sicurezza. È sconsigliato l'ascolto prolungato a questi livelli.



### Regolazione del livello di compensazione ambientale dei bassi

Dopo aver sistemato il modulo Acoustimass, è possibile metterlo a punto per la posizione stabilita. Effettuare questa operazione solo se necessario.

Ad esempio:

- Se le prestazioni del sistema risultano carenti di bassi, ruotare il controllo BASS (mostrato sopra) in senso orario per aumentare l'uscita a bassa frequenza del modulo.
- Se invece il suono ha un livello eccessivo di bassi, ruotare la manopola in senso antiorario per ridurre l'uscita a bassa frequenza del modulo.

L'impostazione effettuata in fabbrica è destinata all'uso negli ambienti con le disposizioni più comuni.

### Regolazione del livello LFE

Il controllo del livello LFE (low-frequency effects, effetti di bassa frequenza), mostrato sopra, è utilizzabile solo unitamente a ricevitori che dispongono di un canale LFE/SUBWOOFER.

Ruotando questa manopola, è possibile regolare il livello relativo degli effetti a bassa frequenza delle colonne sonore dei film e impostare il livello di volume del canale LFE in base ai livelli degli altri canali dei diffusori.

Mediante la funzione "test tones" del ricevitore audio surround digitale, è possibile controllare tutti i livelli. Per ulteriori informazioni su questa funzione, consultare il manuale di istruzioni fornito con il ricevitore surround.

## Impostazione del ricevitore audio surround digitale

I diffusori dei sistemi Acoustimass® 6 Serie V e Acoustimass 10 Serie V sono pienamente compatibili con l'uscita audio dei ricevitori surround digitali. L'elaborazione del segnale integrata assicura la riproduzione completa della bassa frequenza per ogni canale.

Per sfruttare al massimo queste funzioni del sistema, si possono effettuare alcune impostazioni sul ricevitore. Per apportare modifiche, utilizzare il menu visualizzato sul display digitale del ricevitore e consultare l'elenco delle impostazioni consigliate riportato di seguito.

Diffusore	Impostazione del ricevitore
Sinistro e destro	LARGE
Centrale	LARGE
Surround sinistro e destro	LARGE
LFE/Subwoofer	ON

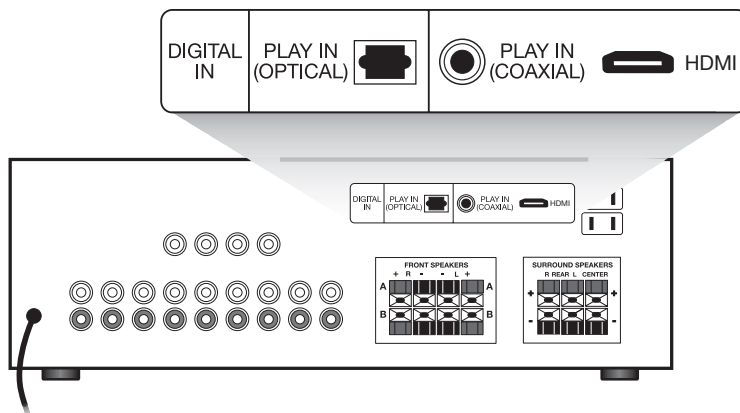
**Nota:** Se presente, l'opzione LFE o Subwoofer deve essere impostata su ON e il valore di cross-over deve essere impostato sul valore più basso possibile, in genere 80 Hz.

### Ricezione di un segnale audio digitale

Per consentire al segnale audio digitale di altre sorgenti (lettore Blu-ray™ o DVD, ricevitore via cavo o satellitare, console giochi, ecc.) di raggiungere il ricevitore surround, è necessario un collegamento audio digitale tra la sorgente in questione e il ricevitore.

- Utilizzare l'ingresso HDMI™, Optical o Coaxial del ricevitore per collegarlo all'uscita digitale della sorgente. Non usare più di un collegamento.
- Assicurarsi di selezionare l'uscita digitale nel menu di impostazione della sorgente.

Per ulteriori informazioni sulla configurazione e il funzionamento, faccia riferimento al manuale d'uso fornito con il ricevitore surround.



## Impostazione del ricevitore audio surround analogico

Per applicazioni con audio surround analogico (non digitale), è necessario impostare su Wide la modalità centrale dell'audio surround sul ricevitore. Per istruzioni su come modificare questa impostazione, consultare il manuale di istruzioni fornito con il ricevitore surround.

## Riferimenti

# Risoluzione dei problemi

In caso di problemi con il sistema di diffusori Acoustimass®, spenga la sorgente audio e provi ad adottare le soluzioni suggerite nella tabella che segue. Se il problema persiste, contattare il rivenditore Bose® locale per ottenere assistenza. Per contattare direttamente Bose, consultare l'elenco dei contatti presente nell'imballo.

Problema	Soluzione
Il sistema non funziona	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Accertarsi che il ricevitore e il modulo Acoustimass amplificato siano collegati a una presa di corrente alternata funzionante e che il ricevitore sia acceso.</li><li>• Selezionare una sorgente audio sul ricevitore (lettore Blu-ray o DVD, ricevitore via cavo o satellitare, console giochi, ecc.).</li></ul>
Non si sente alcun suono	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Aumentare il volume.</li><li>• Scollegare eventuali cuffie.</li><li>• Controllare i collegamenti dei diffusori sul modulo bassi, sul ricevitore e sui diffusori.</li><li>• Assicurarsi che il modulo Acoustimass amplificato e il ricevitore siano collegati a una presa di corrente.</li><li>• Per il suono digitale, accertarsi che l'uscita digitale della sorgente audio sia collegata all'ingresso digitale del ricevitore mediante un cavo HDMI, coassiale o ottico.</li><li>• Assicurarsi che la sorgente audio selezionata sia corretta. Per ascoltare l'audio del DVD, ad esempio, è necessario selezionare l'audio DVD sia sul ricevitore che sul lettore.</li></ul>
Non c'è audio surround	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Assicurarsi che la sorgente disponga dell'audio surround.</li><li>• Se si utilizza la modalità Dolby Pro-Logic nel ricevitore, accertarsi che l'audio surround sia attivato.</li><li>• Verificare che l'audio della sorgente (lettore Blu-ray™ o DVD, ricevitore via cavo o satellitare, console giochi, ecc.) sia codificato in Dolby Digital.</li><li>• Assicurarsi che il segnale elaborato dal ricevitore provenga da un televisore stereo, da un lettore di dischi laser, da un lettore Blu-ray o DVD oppure da un'altra sorgente con audio surround.</li><li>• Se si utilizza la decodifica digitale, verificare che le impostazioni del ricevitore siano corrette.</li></ul>
Non ci sono bassi	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Assicurarsi che i collegamenti dei diffusori tra il ricevitore e l'amplificatore siano in fase, con il filo con colletto rosso collegato al connettore rosso (+ con + e - con -).</li><li>• Verificare che la dimensione del diffusore nel ricevitore sia impostata su valore più grande.</li></ul>
I bassi sono insufficienti o eccessivi	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Per aumentare i bassi, spostare il modulo Acoustimass più vicino a una parete o a un angolo. Per ridurre i bassi, allontanarlo dalla parete o dall'angolo.</li><li>• Regolare opportunamente il livello LFE o il controllo di compensazione ambientale.</li></ul>
Il suono è distorto	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Controllare che il cavo dei diffusori non sia danneggiato.</li><li>• Ridurre il volume dei componenti esterni collegati al ricevitore.</li></ul>

---

## Assistenza tecnica

---

Per informazioni utili per la risoluzione dei problemi, rivolgersi al servizio clienti Bose® locale. Consultare l'elenco dei contatti accluso alla confezione.

## Pulizia

---

Per pulire le superfici esterne dei diffusori Acoustimass®, servirsi esclusivamente di un panno morbido e asciutto. Non utilizzare spray vicino al sistema ed evitare di versare liquidi nelle aperture. Inoltre non utilizzare solventi, prodotti chimici o soluzioni detergenti contenenti alcol, ammoniaca o sostanze abrasive.

Se necessario, le griglie dei diffusori possono essere pulite delicatamente con un aspirapolvere, prestando comunque attenzione a non danneggiare gli altoparlanti posti proprio dietro le griglie.

## Informazioni sulla garanzia limitata

---

Il sistema di diffusori Acoustimass® è coperto da una garanzia limitata trasferibile. I dettagli sulla garanzia sono riportati sulla scheda di garanzia allegata al sistema. Compilare la scheda con le informazioni richieste e spedirla a Bose. La mancata spedizione non inciderà in alcun modo sui diritti previsti.

Le informazioni sulla garanzia fornite con il prodotto non sono valide per l'Australia e la Nuova Zelanda. Per i dettagli della garanzia in Australia e Nuova Zelanda, consultare il nostro sito web all'indirizzo [www.bose.com.au/warranty](http://www.bose.com.au/warranty) o [www.bose.com.nz/warranty](http://www.bose.com.nz/warranty).

## Accessori

---

I diffusori possono essere agganciati a supporti da parete o appoggiati su piedistalli da tavolo o da pavimento. Per acquistare questi accessori, contattare il rivenditore Bose® più vicino o visitare il sito [www.Bose.com](http://www.Bose.com).

Per i seguenti accessori:

- Adattatore cavo di ingresso per il cablaggio da parete tra il modulo Acoustimass e il ricevitore
- Cavo di prolunga da 6,1 m per il collegamento del modulo Acoustimass al ricevitore
- Adattatori per cavi diffusori da usare con cablaggio da parete

Contattare il proprio rivenditore Bose autorizzato. Oppure contattare direttamente Bose (consultare l'elenco dei contatti presente nell'imballo).

## Altoparlanti

### Sistema Acoustimass® 10:

- Diffusori a cubetto e diffusore frontale centrale:  
Due diffusori Twiddler™ da 6,35 cm
- Modulo Acoustimass amplificato:  
Due woofer da 13 cm

### Sistema Acoustimass 6:

- Diffusori a cubetto:  
Un diffusore Twiddler™ da 6,35 cm
- Modulo Acoustimass amplificato:  
Un woofer da 13 cm

## Potenza nominale del sistema

### Sistema Acoustimass 10:

USA/Canada: 100-127 V ~ 270/60 Hz 50 W

Europa/Australia: 220-240 V ~ 50/60 Hz 270 W

### Sistema Acoustimass 6:

USA/Canada: 100-127 V ~ 135/60 Hz 50 W

Europa/Australia: 220-240 V ~ 50/60 Hz 135 W

## Connettività

### Sistema Acoustimass 10:

Compatibile con amplificatori e ricevitori A/V con potenza nominale da 10 a 200 watt per canale su 4-8 ohm

### Sistema Acoustimass 6:

Compatibile con amplificatori e ricevitori A/V con potenza nominale da 10 a 150 watt per canale su 4-8 ohm

### Sistema Acoustimass 10:

Diffusori a cubetto e diffusore frontale centrale: 1 kg ciascuno

Diffusori a cubetto: 15,7 cm (A) x 7,9 cm (L) x 10,2 cm (P) (7,4" x 3,2" x 3,3")

Diffusore anteriore centrale: 15,7 cm (A) x 7,9 cm (L) x 10,2 cm (P) (3,4" x 7,3" x 3,2")

Modulo: 15,8 kg

41,4 cm (A) x 20,6 cm (L) x 64,3 cm (P) (16,3" x 8,1" x 25,3")

### Sistema Acoustimass 6:

Diffusore a cubetto: 0,45 kg ciascuno

9,5 cm (A) x 8,3 cm (L) x 8,4 cm (P) (3,7" x 3,2" x 3,3")

Modulo: 12,2 kg

41,4 cm (A) x 20,6 cm (L) x 56,6 cm (P) (16,3" x 8,1" x 22,3")



# Fontos biztonsági információk

## Olvassa el ezt a használati útmutatót, és őrizze meg, ha a későbbiekben szüksége lenne segítségre.



A háromszögbe rajzolt, nyílban végződő villámszimbólum arra figyelmezteti a felhasználót, hogy a rendszer burkolatán belül veszélyes nagyságú, szigetelés nélküli feszültség található, amely elég erős ahhoz, hogy áramütést okozzon.



A rendszeren feltüntetett, háromszögben ábrázolt felkiáltójel arra hívja fel a felhasználó figyelmét, hogy a jelen használati útmutatóban fontos üzemeltetési és karbantartási utasítások találhatóak.



### VIGYÁZAT:

- Tűz vagy áramütés kockázatának csökkentése érdekében ne tegye ki a készüléket eső vagy nedvesség hatásának.
- Ügyeljen arra, hogy a készülékre ne csöpögjön, illetve ne fröccsenjen víz. A készülékre és annak közelébe ne helyezzen vázát vagy más, folyadékkal töltött edényt. Mint minden elektronikus termék esetében, ügyeljen rá, hogy a rendszer semmilyen részébe ne kerüljön folyadék. A termékbe kerülő folyadék meghibásodáshoz vezethet, és tüzet is okozhat.
- Ne helyezzen a készülékre vagy annak közelébe nyílt lánggal működő eszközt (pl. gyertyát).



### FIGYELEM!

- Ne kísérelje meg a termék illetéktelen módosítását. Az illetéktelen módosítások kedvezőtlenül befolyásolhatják a biztonságot, a jogszabályi megfelelést és a rendszer teljesítményét, valamint a garancia érvénytelenítését vonhatja maguk után.



**VIGYÁZAT:** A termék mágneses anyagot tartalmaz. Ha szeretné tudni, hogy a mágneses anyag befolyásolhatja-e az Ön beültetett orvosi eszközének működését, forduljon orvosához.

### MEGJEGYZÉSEK:

- Ha leválasztó egységként a hálózati csatlakozódugaszt vagy a készülécsatlakozót használja, az ilyen leválasztó egységnek mindig működőképes állapotban kell lennie.
- A termék csak zárt helyiségben használható. A berendezés nem használható szabadterén, lakóautóban, illetve hajón, mert az ilyen irányú használatot nem tesztelték.
- A rendszerhez mellékelt hangszóró- és összekötőkábelek fali beépítésre nincsenek jóváhagyva. Fali beépítés esetén tekintse meg a helyi építési előírásokat a megfelelő vezeték és kábel kiválasztásához.



Ez a szimbólum azt jelenti, hogy a terméket nem szabad a háztartási hulladékkal együtt kidobni, hanem egy megfelelő hulladékkezelő létesítményben kell leadni, ahol gondoskodnak a termék újrahasznosításáról. A megfelelő hulladékkezelés és újrahasznosítás hozzájárul a természeti erőforrások, az emberi egészség és a környezet védelméhez. A hulladékká vált termék kezelésével és újrahasznosításával kapcsolatos további információért forduljon a helyi önkormányzat hulladékkezeléssel megbízott szolgáltatójához, vagy ahhoz az üzlethez, ahol ezt a terméket vásárolta.



A Bose Corporation ezennel kijelenti, hogy jelen termék megfelel a rádióberendezésekre és távközlési végberendezésekre vonatkozó 1999/5/EK irányelv és minden más idevonatkozó EU-irányelv alapvető követelményeinek és egyéb rendelkezéseinek. A teljes megfeleléségi nyilatkozat megtalálható a következő címen: [www.Bose.com/compliance](http://www.Bose.com/compliance).

## Fontos biztonsági tudnivalók

1. Olvassa el ezeket az utasításokat.
2. Őrizze meg ezeket az utasításokat.
3. Tartson be minden figyelmeztetést.
4. Tartsa be az összes utasítást.
5. Ne használja a készüléket víz közelében.
6. Csak száraz ronggyal tisztítsa.
7. Ne zárja el a szellőzőnyílásokat. A készüléket a gyártó utasításainak megfelelően helyezze el.
8. Ne helyezze a készüléket hőforrások, például fűtőtest, tűzhely vagy egyéb hőtermelő berendezés (ideértve az erősítőket) közelébe.
9. A tápkábelt úgy helyezze el, hogy ne léphessenek rá, és ne csipődhesen be – főleg a dugóknál, dugaszolóaljzatoknál és azon a ponton, ahol a tápkábel kilép a készülékből.
10. Kizárólag a gyártó által meghatározott kiegészítőket/tartozékokat használja.
11. Húzza ki a készülék dugóját villámláskor, vagy ha hosszabb ideig nem fogja használni.
12. A javítási munkákat bizza szakemberre. Szervizelésre akkor van szükség, ha a készülék valamilyen módon meghibásodott, például megsérült a hálózati csatlakozószinórija vagy a csatlakozódugója, folyadék ömlött vagy nehéz tárgy esett rá, eső vagy nedvesség érte, működésében rendellenesség tapasztalható, vagy leesett.

### Méregző vagy veszélyes anyagok és vegyi elemek a termékben

Alkatrész neve	Méregző vagy veszélyes anyagok és elemek					
	Ólom (Pb)	Higany (Hg)	Kadmium (Cd)	Hat vegyértékű króm (Cr(VI))	Polibrominált bifetil (PBB)	Polibrominált difeniléter (PBDE)
NYÁK-ok	X	0	0	0	0	0
Fémrészek	X	0	0	0	0	0
Műanyag részek	0	0	0	0	0	0
Hangszórók	X	0	0	0	0	0
Kábelek	X	0	0	0	0	0

0: azt jelzi, hogy az adott méregző vagy veszélyes anyag mennyisége az adott alkatrész egyetlen homogén anyagában sem éri el az SJ/T 11363-2006 által meghatározott határértéket.  
X: Azt jelzi, hogy az adott méregző vagy veszélyes anyagot az alkatrész legalább egy homogén anyaga az SJ/T 11363-2006 korlátozó előírásait meghaladó mértékben tartalmazza.

### Kérjük, jegyezze fel és őrizze meg a következő adatokat.

A sorozatszám és a típusszám az Acoustimass® modul csatlakozópaneljén található.

Sorozatszám: \_\_\_\_\_

Típuszám: \_\_\_\_\_

A vásárlás dátuma: \_\_\_\_\_

A bizonylatot tartsa a felhasználói útmutató mellett.

A Blu-ray Disc™ és a „Blu-ray™” a Blu-ray Disc Association védjegye.

A HDMI a HDMI Licensing LLC védjegye vagy bejegyzett védjegye az Egyesült Államokban és más országokban.

©2014 Bose Corporation. A jelen kiadványt tilos írásos engedély nélkül részeiben vagy egészében sokszorosítani, módosítani, terjeszteni, illetve azt bármilyen más módon felhasználni.

**Bevezetés**

Köszönjük! .....	4
A doboz kicsomagolása .....	4

**Üzembe helyezés**

A hangszórók elhelyezése a valóság-hű házimozzi-hangzás érdekében .....	5
Bal első és jobb első hangszórók.....	6
Középső hangszóró .....	6
Hátsó hangszórók .....	6
Aktív Acoustimass® modul.....	6
Csatlakoztatás .....	7
A hangszórók csatlakoztatása az Acoustimass modulhoz .....	7
Az Acoustimass® modul csatlakoztatása a vevőegységhez .....	8
A kapcsolatok ellenőrzése .....	9

**A rendszer használata**

A házimozzi hangszórókban rejlő lehetőségek kiaknázása .....	10
A mélyhang- és elhelyezés-kompenzáció beállítása.....	10
Az LFE-szint beállítása .....	10
Digitális térhangzású vevőegység beállítása .....	11
Digitális audiojel fogadása .....	11
Analog térhangzású vevőegység beállítása .....	11

**Egyéb tudnivalók**

Hibaelhárítás .....	12
Ügyfélszolgálat .....	13
Tisztítás.....	13
A korlátozott garanciával kapcsolatos információk.....	13
Tartozékok .....	13
Műszaki adatok .....	14
Hangsugárzó összeállítás.....	14
A rendszer áramellátási paramétereit.....	14
Csatlakoztathatóság: .....	14



# Bevezetés

## Köszönjük!

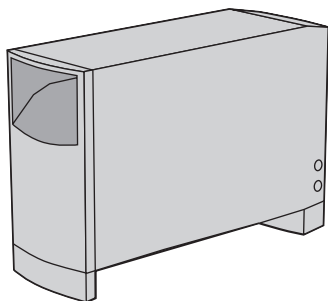
Örömkre szolgál, hogy a Bose® Acoustimass® 6 széria V vagy az Acoustimass 10 széria V házimozsi hangszórórendszert választotta. Az Acoustimass 6 öt kisméretű kockahangszóróval rendelkezik, az Acoustimass 10 rendszerhez pedig négy kockahangszóró-sor és egy középső első hangszóró tartozik. Ezek a hangszórók az Acoustimass modulal kombinálva erőteljes és valóságghű házimozziélményt biztosítanak.

## A doboz kicsomagolása

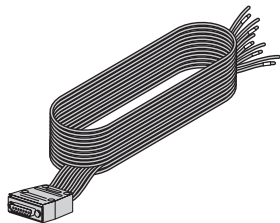
Óvatosan csomagolja ki a doboz tartalmát:

1. Vegye ki a hangszórókat tartalmazó barna belső dobozt.
2. Óvatosan fordítsa a dobozt az oldalára és húzza ki az Acoustimass modult.

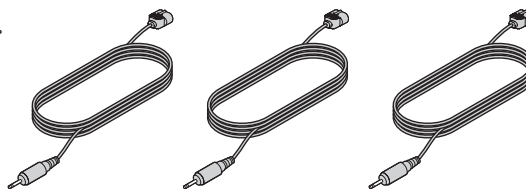
**VIGYÁZAT:** A sérülések elkerülése érdekében kellő óvatossággal emelje fel a modult, melynek tömege körülbelül 14 kg.



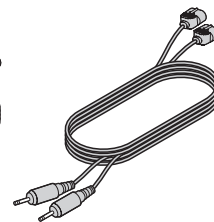
Aktív Acoustimass modul



Egy 6,1 m-es rendszerbemeneti kábel

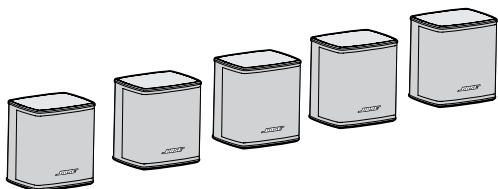


Három 6,1 m-es kábel az első hangszórókhoz



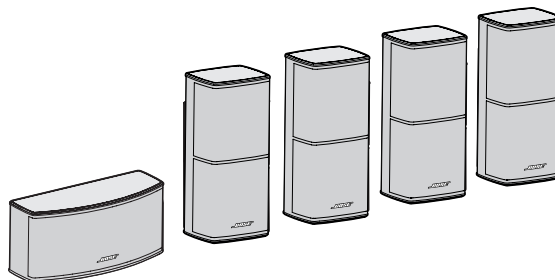
Két 15,2 m-es kábel a hátsó hangszórókhoz

### Az Acoustimass 6 rendszer része



Öt Virtually Invisible® széria II hangszóró

### Az Acoustimass 10 rendszer része



Négy Direct/Reflecting® széria II hangszóró és egy vízszintes középcsatornás hangszóró

### Tápkábel (1)



Egyesült Államok/Kanada



Európa



Egyesült Királyság/Szingapúr



Ausztrália

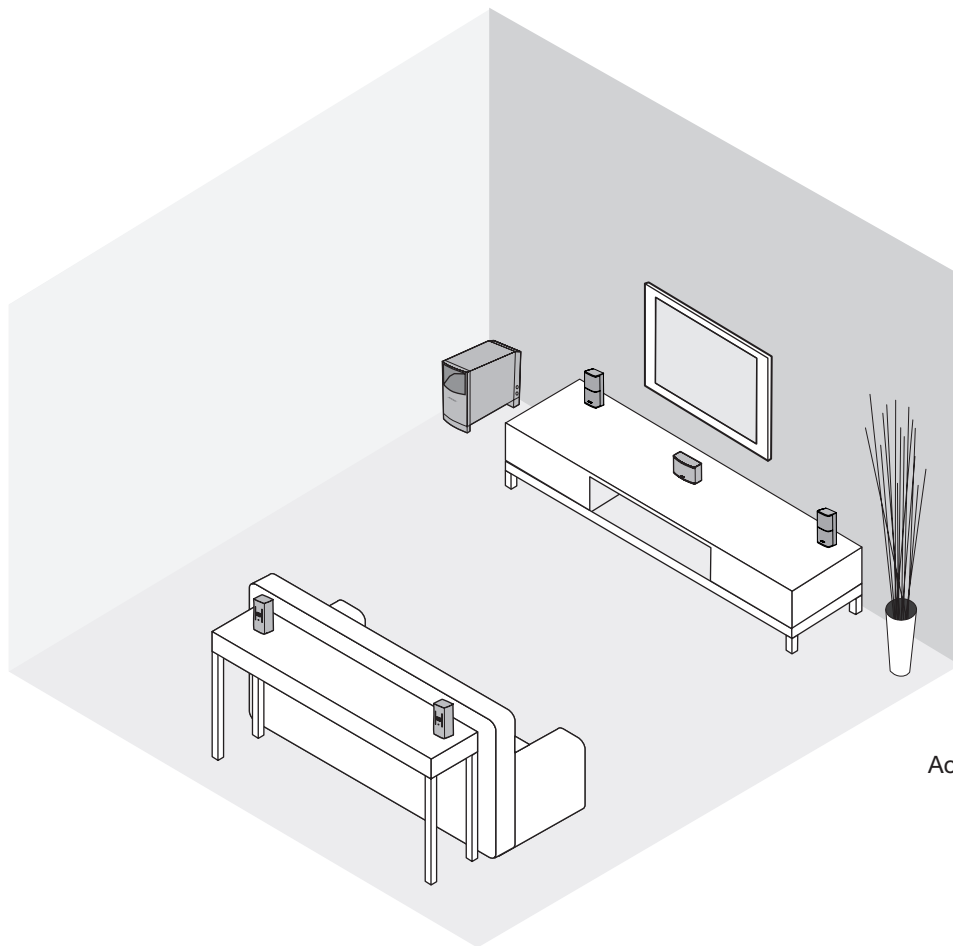
Ez egy kiváló alkalom arra, hogy ráírja a termék sorozatszámát a garanciajegyre. Őrizze meg az összes csomagolóanyagot, a jövőben szüksége lehet rá.

**VIGYÁZAT:** A hangszórók becsomagolásához használt műanyag zacskók fulladást okozhatnak, ezért tartsa őket gyermekektől elzárva.

## A hangszórók elhelyezése a valóságjú házimozsi-hangzás érdekében

Vegye figyelembe az alábbi tanácsokat a hangszórók helyének megválasztásakor:

- Az interferencia kiküszöbölése érdekében az Acoustimass® modul és a televízió között legalább 6 méteres távolságot kell hagyni.
- A hangszórókat stabil és sík felületre helyezze.
- Az Acoustimass 10 rendszer középsatornás hangszóróját a szoba első részében célszerű használni, közel a TV-készülék közepéhez. A többi hangszóró egyforma, így tetszés szerint elhelyezhetők a szobában.
- Az Acoustimass 6 rendszer esetében mind az öt hangszóró egyforma, így tetszőlegesen elhelyezhetők a szobában.
- A szoba alakja és mérete, valamint a bútorok helye befolyásolja a hangszórók elhelyezését. Az alábbi példa irányelvként szolgál a házimozsi elemeinek elhelyezéséhez.



Acoustimass 10 széria V rendszer

# Üzembe helyezés

## Bal első és jobb első hangszórók

A cél az, hogy a képernyőnél szélesebb hangképet hozzanak létre, amelyet a szoba bármely pontjáról természetesnek érzékel a néző.

- Helyezze ezt a két hangszórót a TV-készülék két oldalára.
- Hagyjon köztük legalább 2-5 m távolságot, és úgy helyezze el őket, hogy legalább 15 cm távolságra legyenek bármely CRT (képcsöves) TV-készüléktől.

## Középső hangszóró

A képernyőn látható jeltek és párbeszédok valóságú megjelenítése érdekében a középső hangszóróból szóló hangnak olyan érzetet kell keltenie, mintha a kép belsejéből érkezne.

- A középső hangszórót helyezze a TV-készülék fölé vagy alá, vagy pedig a TV tetejére. NE támassza a TV-készüléket teljes súlyával a hangszóra.
- A párbeszédok lehető legpontosabb lejátszása érdekében a hangszórót lehetőleg a TV függőleges középvonalával egy vonalban helyezze el.
- Hagyjon legalább 15 cm távolságot a hangszóró és bármely CRT (képcsöves) TV-készülék között.

## Hátsó hangszórók

Habár a hátsó (térhatású) hangszórók is részt vehetnek a párbeszédok közvetítésében, elsődleges funkciójuk az elkülönített (diszkrét) hangok és a speciális hangeffektusok megszólaltatása, melyek tágítják a hangképet. Ezzel elősegítik azt, hogy a hang körülvegye a nézőt.

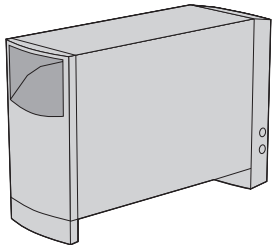
Praktikus és kényelmes helyet válasszon, figyelembe véve az alábbi ajánlásokat:

- Úgy helyezze el a jobb és bal oldali hangszórókat, hogy a néző mindkét oldalról hallja a hangot, ne csak a háta mögül.
- A hangszórókat egy ülő ember fülmagasságában vagy annál magasabban helyezze el.

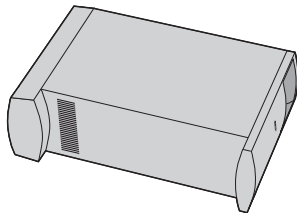
## Aktív Acoustimass® modul

Az Acoustimass hangszóró technológiájának köszönhetően nehéz beazonosítani, hogy a modul által kibocsátott alacsony frekvenciájú hang honnan érkezik. Ez azt jelenti, hogy nyugodtan elrejtetheti a modult. Helyezze el a modult az alábbi irányelveknek megfelelően:

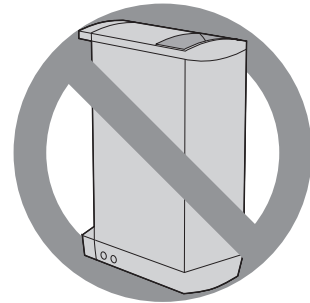
- Tegye a szobának abba a végébe, ahol a TV-készülék is van.
- Az interferencia megelőzése érdekében hagyjon legalább 6 m távolságot a modul és a TV között.
- Ha az első nyílást a fal felé fordítja, a mély hangok felerősödnek; ha pedig elfordítja a faltól, akkor mérséklődnek.
- Az első nyílás és a szellőzőrácsok egyaránt a modul alján legyenek, legalább 5 cm távolságra bármely egyéb felülettől.
- Ne zárja el a modul alján található szellőzőnyílásokat. A szellőzés akadályozása a modul mélyhang kibocsátásának csökkenéséhez vezethet.



Preferált



Másodlagos



## Csatlakoztatás

Csak az Acoustimass® modul csatlakozik a vevőegységhez. A hangszórók mind közvetlenül az Acoustimass modulhoz csatlakoznak.  
**VIGYÁZAT:** Ne csatlakoztassa a hangszórókat a vevőegységhez. Ha így tesz, az károsíthatja a rendszert és esetleg áramütéshez vezethet.

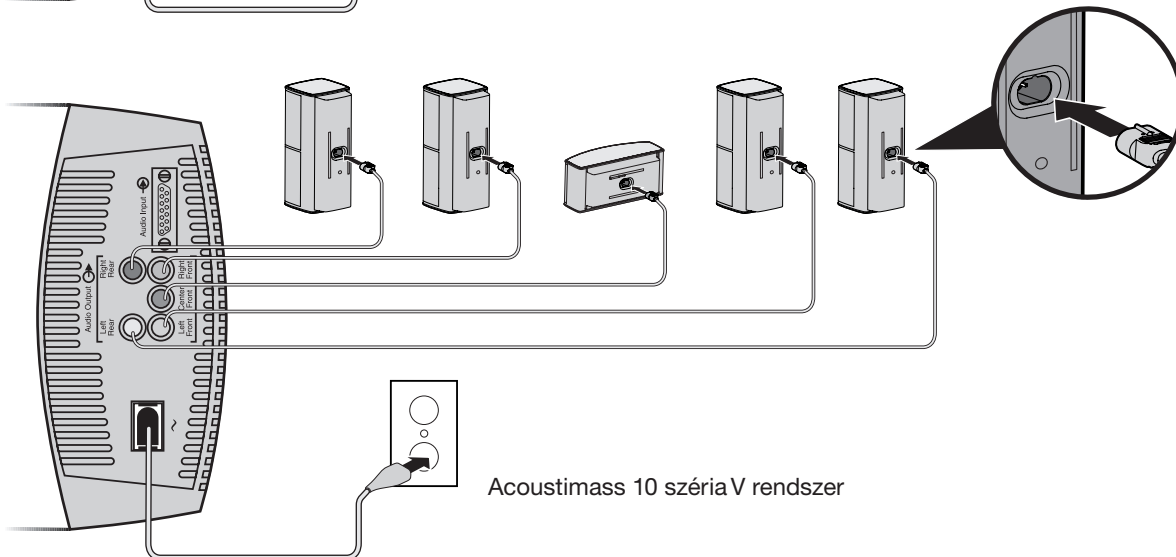
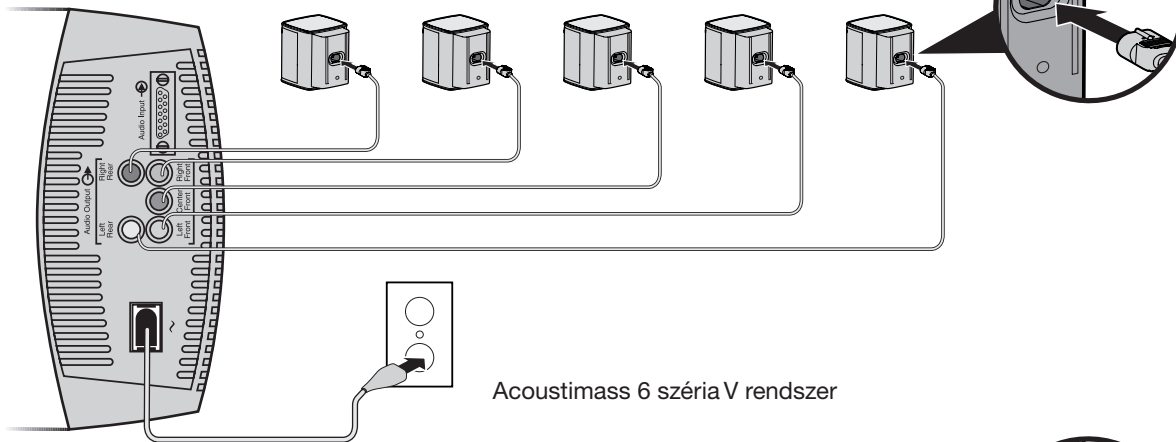
### A hangszórók csatlakoztatása az Acoustimass modulhoz

Dugja be a hangszórókábelek dugóit a modul csatlakozóiba. Az egyes csatlakozókhoz a megfelelő címkével ellátott dugókat csatlakoztassa.

1. A három első hangszóróhoz a mellékelt 6,1 m-es hangszórókábeleket használja.
  - Dugja be az **R** jelű dugót a **Right Front** (jobb első) feliratú aljzatba.
  - Dugja be a **C** jelű dugót a **Center Front** (középső első) feliratú aljzatba.
  - Dugja be az **L** jelű dugót a **Left Front** (bal első) feliratú aljzatba.
2. A mellékelt 15,2 m-es kábeleket a szoba hátsó részében elhelyezett hangszórókhoz használja.
  - Dugja be az **RR** jelű dugót a **Right Rear** (jobb hátsó) feliratú aljzatba.
  - Dugja be az **LR** jelű dugót a **Left Rear** (bal hátsó) feliratú aljzatba.
3. A kábelek másik végét dugja be a megfelelő hangfalak csatlakozóiba, úgy, hogy a jelzés lefelé nézzen.

**Megjegyzés:** Az egyes hangszórókábeleken keresse meg a feliratot, amely jelzi, hogy melyik hangszóróhoz tartozik:

A hangszórókábel jelzése	
L a bal első hangszóróhoz	LR a bal hátsó hangszóróhoz
R a jobb első hangszóróhoz	RR a jobb hátsó hangszóróhoz
C az első középső hangszóróhoz	

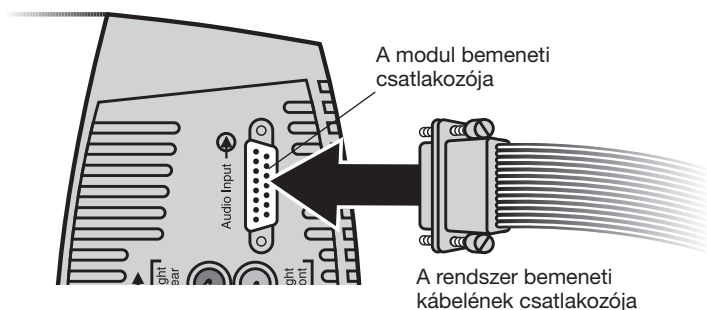


# Üzembe helyezés

## Az Acoustimass® modul csatlakoztatása a vevőegységhez

**FIGYELEM:** A csatlakoztatás előtt kapcsolja ki a vevőegységet, hogy az Acoustimass® modul csatlakoztatásakor ne keletkezzenek nem kívánt zajok.

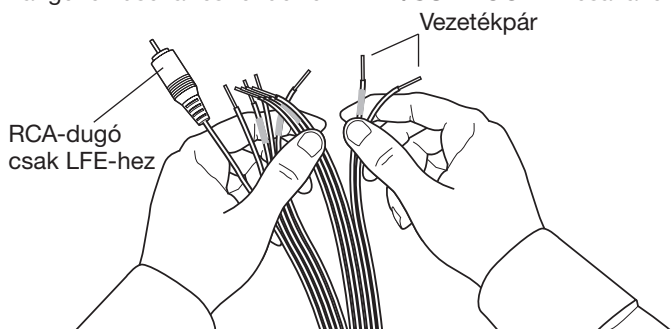
A rendszer bemeneti kábele 6,1 m hosszú, és a térhangzású vevőegységhez csatlakozik. A hangszórókábelektől eltérően ez a bemeneti kábel soktűs csatlakozóval rendelkezik, amely a modul **Audio Input** aljzatába illeszkedik.



A rendszer bemeneti kábelének másik végén a vezetékpárok szétválaszthatók, hogy könnyebben elérjenek és bedughatók legyenek a vevőegység aljzataiba. A piros perem azt jelzi, hogy a vezeték pozitív (+).

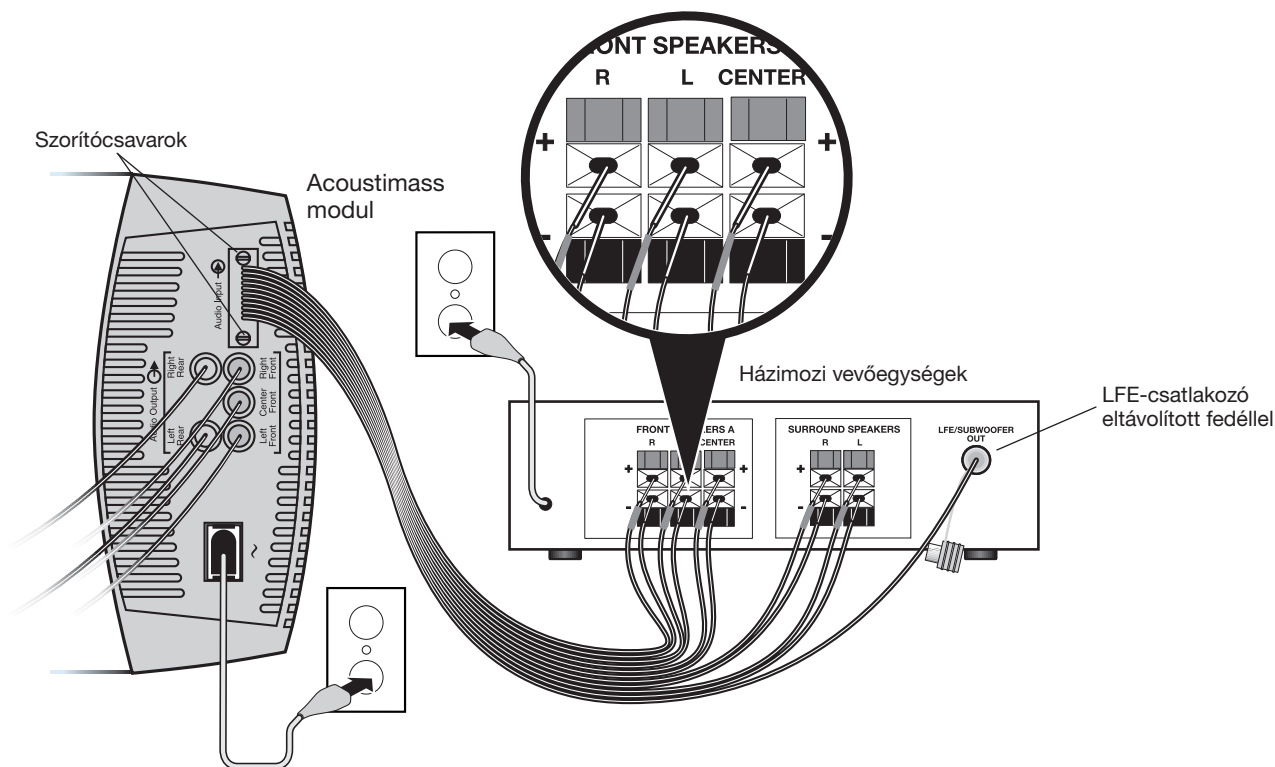
**FIGYELEM:** NE csatlakoztassa a modult olyan TV-készülékhez, amely nem rendelkezik a szükséges erősítéssel.

A szimpla RCA-dugó ezen a kábelvégen KIZÁRÓLAG olyan vevőegységgel használható, amely tudja kezelni az alacsony frekvenciájú hangeffektusokat és rendelkezik **LFE/SUBWOOFER** csatlakozóval.



## Csatlakoztatás:

1. Dugja be a rendszer bemeneti kábelének soktűs dugóját az Acoustimass® modul bemeneti csatlakozójába. A kapcsolat rögzítéséhez húzza meg a két szorítócsavart.
  2. A bemeneti kábel másik végén lévő vezetékpárokat csatlakoztassa a térhangzású vevőegységhez, amelynek az alábbiak szerint jelölt hangbemeneti csatlakozókkal kell rendelkeznie:
    - Right (jobb), Left (bal) és Center (középső) az első hangcsatornához.
    - Right Surround (jobb térhang) és Left Surround (bal térhang) a hátsó csatornához. Az Ön vevőegységén látható jelzések valamelyest eltérőek lehetnek.
- FIGYELEM:** Vigyázzon, hogy a csupasz vezetékek ne dörzsölődjenek egymáshoz. Ez károsíthatja a vevőegységet.
3. Ügyeljen rá, hogy a csatlakozásoknál a polaritásjelzések megfelelően illeszkedjenek (+ jel a + jelhez, és – jel a – jelhez).
    - Csatlakoztassa a piros karimás vezetéket (+) a megfelelő + jelzésű aljzathoz.
    - Csatlakoztassa a jelöletlen vezetéket (–) a megfelelő – jelzésű aljzathoz.
  4. Dugja be a bemeneti kábel **LFE** jelzésű RCA-dugóját a térhangzású vevőegység **LFE/SUBWOOFER OUT** aljzatába, ha van ilyen aljzat a vevőn. Először távolítsa el a fedelet.



## A kapcsolatok ellenőrzése

Mielőtt bedugná az Acoustimass modult, ellenőrizze a vevőegység és a modul, valamint a modul és a hangszórók között létrehozott összes kapcsolatot.

- Győződjön meg róla, hogy minden hangszóró a szobában elfoglalt helyének megfelelő aljzathoz csatlakozik.
- Ellenőrizze, hogy a térhangzású vevőegységhez csatlakozó vezetékek polaritásjelzései megfelelően illeszkednek-e (+ jel a + jelhez, és – jel a – jelhez). A helytelen vezetékezés következtében előfordulhat, hogy a modul egyáltalán nem szól.
- Még a vevőegység bedugása és bekapcsolása előtt javítson ki minden vezetékezési hibát.

Ha meggyőződött róla, hogy minden kapcsolat megfelelő, dugja be az Acoustimass modul tápkábelét egy váltakozó áramú hálózati aljzatba. Dugja be a vevőegységet is.

**Megjegyzés:** A Bose azt javasolja, hogy alkalmazzon megfelelő minőségű túláramvédőt minden elektronikai eszköznél.

A feszültségingadozás és a feszültségimpulzusok bármilyen rendszer elektronikus részegységeiben kárt tehetnek. Egy jó minőségű túláramvédő használatával a teljesítményimpulzus miatt jelentkező hibák túlnyomó többsége kiküszöbölhető (a túláramvédő kapható az elektronikai szaküzletekben).

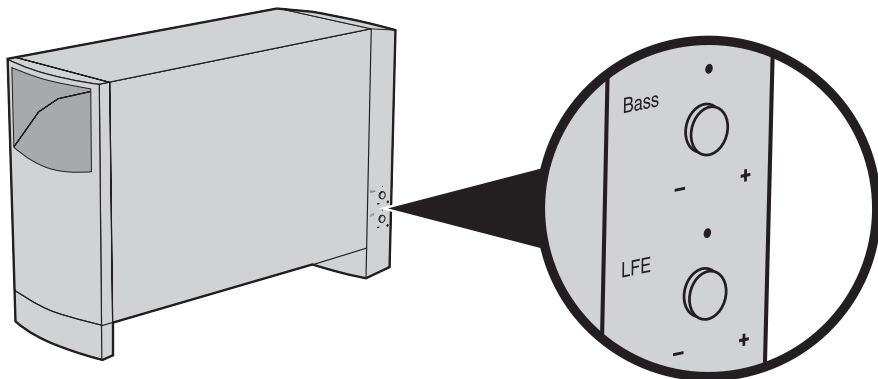
## A rendszer használata

### A házimozsi hangszórókban rejlő lehetőségek kiaknázása

Miután csatlakoztatta a rendszer elemeit és bedugta a modult, az Acoustimass® rendszer készen áll a használatra.

Ismerje meg a vezérlőelemeket és a beépített védelmi megoldásokat, amelyek szabályozzák a rendszer hangzását. Ezek olyan lehetőségeket kínálnak, amelyek megfelelnek az Ön egyéni ízlésének és használati szokásainak.

**FIGYELEM:** A rendszert ellátták egy automata védőáramkörrel, amely hozzájárul az elektromos impulzusok és rendszer túlterhelése miatti károk megelőzéséhez. Magas hangerő esetén a rendszer működésbe lép, hogy csökkentse a kimenő teljesítményt, ami kis mértékű halkulást eredményez. Ha a hangerő ilyen jellegű csökkenését tapasztalja, ne feledje, hogy a rendszer rendeltetésének megfelelően működik. A hangerő ilyen mérséklése azt is jelzi, hogy a rendszer áramfelvétele esetleg meghaladja a biztonságos szintet. Nem ajánlott huzamosabb ideig ilyen hangerőn hallgatni a rendszert.



### A mélyhang- és elhelyezés-kompenzáció beállítása

Miután elhelyezte az Acoustimass modult a kívánt helyre, elvégezheti az adott pozíciónak megfelelő finombeállításokat. Ezt a beállítást csak szükség szerint használja.

Például:

- Ha a rendszer mélyhang teljesítménye túl alacsony, fordítsa el a BASS szabályzógombot (lásd fent) az óramutató járásával megegyező irányba a modul alacsony frekvenciájú kibocsátásának növeléséhez.
- Ha túl hangsúlyosak a mélyhangok, fordítsa el a gombot az óramutató járásával ellentétesen a modul alacsony frekvenciájú kibocsátásának csökkentéséhez.

A gyári beállítások a legtöbb átlagos elrendezésű helyiségben megfelelnek.

### Az LFE-szint beállítása

Az LFE-szint szabályzója (lásd fent) csak LFE/SUBWOOFER csatornával rendelkező vevőegységekkel használható

A gomb elfordításával szabályozhatja a filmek hangsávjaíról érkező alacsony frekvenciájú effektusok relatív szintjét. Ezzel a gombbal a többi hangszóró-csatorna hangerejéhez igazíthatja az LFE-csatorna hangerejét.

A digitális térhangzású vevő „test tones” funkciójával ellenőrizheti az összes szintet. A funkció használatával kapcsolatos tudnivalókat a térhangzású vevőegység felhasználói útmutatójában találja.

## Digitális térhangzású vevőegység beállítása

Az Acoustimass® 6 széria V és az Acoustimass 10 széria V hangszórói teljes mértékben kompatibilisek a digitális térhangzású vevőegységek hangkimenetével. A rendszer beépített jelfeldolgozása minden csatornáról támogatja a teljes alacsony frekvenciás lejátszást.

Tanácsos néhány beállítást módosítani a vevőegységen, annak érdekében, hogy maximálisan kihasználhassa a rendszer képességeinek köszönhető előnyöket. A módosítások végrehajtásához használja a vevőegység digitális megjelenítő menüjét és kövesse az alábbiakban felsorolt beállítási ajánlásokat.

Hangszóró	Vevőegység beállításai
Bal és jobb	LARGE (nagy)
Középső	LARGE (nagy)
Bal és jobb térhang	LARGE (nagy)
LFE/Subwoofer	ON (be)

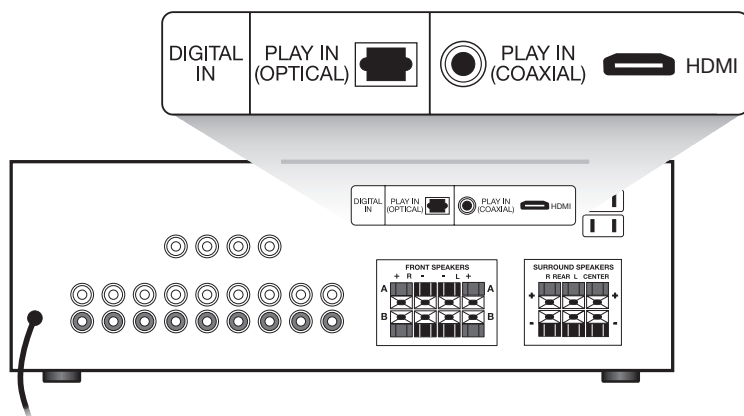
**Megjegyzés:** Ha a vevőegység rendelkezik ilyen funkcióval, akkor az LFE vagy SUBWOOFER opciót kapcsolja be (ON), és a keresztelési (crossover) értéket állítsa a lehető legalacsonyabbra, ami általában 80 Hz.

### Digitális audiojel fogadása

Ahhoz, hogy a más forrásokból érkező (Blu-ray™ vagy DVD lejátszó, CBL/SAT dekóder, játérendszer stb.) audiojel eljusson a térhangzású vevőegységhez, szükség van egy audiokapcsolatra a forrás és a vevő között.

- Használja a vevőegység HDMI®, optikai vagy koaxiális bemenetét a további forrás digitális kimenetének csatlakoztatásához. Ne használjon egynél több kapcsolatot.
- Ügyeljen rá, hogy a forrás telepítési menüjében a digitális kimenet legyen kiválasztva.

A további üzembe helyezési és kezelési információkat a térhangzású vevőegységhez mellékelt felhasználói útmutató tartalmazza.



### Analóg térhangzású vevőegység beállítása

Analóg (nem digitális) térhangzású vevőrendszerek esetében azt javasoljuk, hogy a vevőegység térhangzású üzemmódjánál a Wide (széles) lehetőséget állítsa be. A beállítás módosítására vonatkozó utasításokat a térhangzású vevőegységhez mellékelt felhasználói útmutató tartalmazza.



## Egyéb tudnivalók

### Hibaelhárítás

Az Acoustimass® hangszórórendszerrel kapcsolatos probléma esetén kapcsolja ki a hangforrást és próbálja ki az alábbi megoldásokat. Ha a probléma továbbra is fennáll, forduljon Bose® viszonteladójához a javítás megszervezése céljából. A Bose közvetlen elérhetőségeit a dobozban található elérhetőségi tájékoztató tartalmazza.

Probléma	Teendő
A rendszer egyáltalán nem működik	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Győződjön meg róla, hogy a vevőegység és az aktív Acoustimass modul be van dugva egy működő elektromos aljzatba, és a vevőegység be van kapcsolva.</li><li>• Ellenőrizze, hogy ki van-e választva a hangforrás a vevőegységen (Blu-ray vagy DVD lejátszó, CBL/SAT dekóder, játékrendszer stb.)</li></ul>
Nincs hang.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Növelje a hangerőt.</li><li>• Húzza ki a fejhallgató(ka)t.</li><li>• Ellenőrizze a hangszórók csatlakozását a mélyhang-modulnál, a vevőegységnél és a hangszóróknál.</li><li>• Győződjön meg róla, hogy az aktív Acoustimass modul és a vevőegység is be van kapcsolva.</li><li>• Digitális hang esetén figyeljen rá, hogy a hangforrás digitális kimenete egy HDMI, koaxiális, vagy optikai kábelen keresztül csatlakozzon a vevőegység digitális bemenetéhez.</li><li>• Ellenőrizze, hogy a megfelelő hangforrás van-e kiválasztva. A DVD hangjának megszólaltatásához például a DVD hangforrást válassza ki a vevőegységen.</li></ul>
Nincs térhatású hang	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Ellenőrizze, hogy a forrásként szolgáló adathordozó térhatású hangot tartalmaz-e.</li><li>• Ha a vevőegység Dolby Pro-Logic módját használja, győződjön meg róla, hogy a térhatású hang be van kapcsolva.</li><li>• Ellenőrizze, hogy a forrás (Blu-ray™ vagy DVD -lejátszó, CBL/SAT dekóder, játékrendszer stb.) Dolby Digital kódolású-e.</li><li>• Győződjön meg róla, hogy a vevőegység feldolgozza a sztereó TV-készülék, a LaserDisc, a Blue-ray lejátszó, a DVD-lejátszó vagy egyéb térhangzású hangforrás által kibocsátott jeleket.</li><li>• Ha digitális programozást alkalmaz, ellenőrizze, hogy a vevőegység beállításai megfelelőek-e.</li></ul>
Nincs mélyhang	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Győződjön meg róla, hogy a vevőegység és az erősítő kapcsolatánál helyesek a fázisok, a piros karimás vezeték a piros aljzathoz csatlakozik (+ jel a + jelhez, és – jel a – jelhez).</li><li>• Ellenőrizze, hogy a vevőegységen a hangszóró beállítása „large” (nagy).</li></ul>
Nem elég vagy túl sok mélyhang	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• A mélyhangok növeléséhez tegye az Acoustimass modult közelebb a falhoz vagy a sarokhoz. A mélyhangok csökkentéséhez húzza távolabb az Acoustimass modult a faltól vagy a saroktól.</li><li>• Állítsa át az LFE-szintet vagy az elhelyezés-kompenzációt (Room Compensation).</li></ul>
A hang torz.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Győződjön meg róla, hogy a hangszóró kábele ép.</li><li>• Halkítsa le a vevőegységhez csatlakoztatott külső komponenseket.</li></ul>

## Ügyfélszolgálat

---

A problémamegoldással kapcsolatos további segítségért forduljon a Bose® Ügyfélszolgálat helyi irodájához. Az elérhetőségi információk a dobozban találhatóak.

## Tisztítás

---

Az Acoustimass® hangszórórendszer készülékzeit csak puha, száraz kendővel szabad tisztítani. Ne használjon semmilyen spray-t a rendszer közelében, és ügyeljen rá, hogy ne kerülhessen folyadék a nyílásokba. Ne használjon semmilyen oldószert, vegyi anyagot vagy alkoholt, ammóniát vagy sűrűlőszert tartalmazó tisztítószerrel sem.

A rácsot szükség esetén óvatosan kiporszívózhatja. Ne feledje, hogy a hangszórók közvetlenül a rács mögött helyezkednek el, és megsérülhetnek, ha nem jár el kellő körültekintéssel.

## A korlátozott garanciával kapcsolatos információk

---

Az Acoustimass® hangszórórendszerre korlátozott garancia vonatkozik. A garancia részletes leírása megtalálható a rendszerhez kapott garancialevélben. Töltse ki a lap információs részét, és postázza azt a Bose címére. Ennek elmulasztása azonban nem érinti az Ön jogait.

A termékhez mellékelt garanciális útmutatón szereplő feltételek Ausztráliában és Új-Zélandon nem érvényesek. Az Ausztráliában és Új-Zélandon érvényes garanciával kapcsolatos részletes tudnivalókért keresse fel weboldalunkat a [www.bose.com.au/warranty](http://www.bose.com.au/warranty) vagy a [www.bose.com.nz/warranty](http://www.bose.com.nz/warranty) címen.

## Tartozékok

---

A rendszerhangszórókat felszerelheti a falra a fali rögzítővel, vagy elhelyezheti őket asztali állványokon vagy padlóra helyezett állványokon. A tartozékokat beszerezheti a Bose® helyi viszonteladójánál, vagy a [www.Bose.com](http://www.Bose.com) webhelyről.

Ha az alábbi tartozékokra van szüksége:

- Adapter a bementi kábelhez arra az esetre, ha az Acoustimass modult a vevőegységgel összekötő vezetékek a falban futnak
- 6,1 m-es hosszabbító kábel az Acoustimass modul és a vevőegység összekötéséhez
- Adapterek a hangszórókábelekhöz falban futó vezetékek esetén

Forduljon egy hivatalos Bose viszonteladóhoz. A közvetlen kapcsolatfelvételhez tekintse meg a dobozban megtalálható adatlapot, amelyen megtalálja a Bose elérhetőségeit.

### Hangsugárzó összeállítás

#### Acoustimass® 10 rendszer:

- Kockahangsugárzó-sorok és középső első hangsugárzó:  
Két 6,35 cm-es Twiddler™ hangsugárzó
- Aktív Acoustimass modul:  
Két 13 cm-es hangsugárzó

#### Acoustimass 6 rendszer:

- Kockahangsugárzó:  
Egy 6,35 cm-es Twiddler™ hangsugárzó
- Aktív Acoustimass modul:  
Egy 13 cm-es hangsugárzó

### A rendszer áramellátási paramétere

#### Acoustimass 10 rendszer:

Egyesült Államok/Kanada: 100-127 V ~ 50/270 Hz 60 W

Európa/Ausztrália: 220-240 V ~ 50/270 Hz 60 W

#### Acoustimass 6 rendszer:

Egyesült Államok/Kanada: 100-127 V ~ 50/135 Hz 60 W

Európa/Ausztrália: 220-240 V ~ 50/135 Hz 60 W

### Csatlakoztathatóság:

#### Acoustimass 10 rendszer:

Kompatibilis a következő névleges értékekkel bíró A/C vevőegységekkel és erősítőkkel: 10-200 watt csatornánként, 4-8 ohm

#### Acoustimass 6 rendszer:

Kompatibilis a következő névleges értékekkel bíró A/C vevőegységekkel és erősítőkkel: 10-150 watt csatornánként, 4-8 ohm

#### Acoustimass 10 rendszer:

Kockahangsugárzó-sor és középső első hangsugárzó: 1 kg darabonként

kockahangsugárzó-sor: 15,7 cm(ma.) x 7,9 cm(szé.) x 10,2 cm(mé.)

középső első hangsugárzó: 15,7 cm(ma.) x 7,9 cm(szé.) x 10,2 cm(mé.)

modul: 15,8 kg

41,4 cm(ma.) x 20,6 cm(szé.) x 64,3 cm(mé.)

#### Acoustimass 6 rendszer:

kockahangsugárzó: 0,45 kg darabonként

9,5 cm(ma.) x 8,3 cm(szé.) x 8,4 cm(mé.)

Modul: 12,2 kg

41,4 cm(ma.) x 20,6 cm(szé.) x 56,6 cm(mé.)



# Ważne informacje dotyczące bezpieczeństwa

## Należy przeczytać i zachować tę instrukcję obsługi.



Symbol błyskawicy ze strzałką w trójkącie równobocznym ostrzega użytkownika o zagrożeniach związanych z obecnością w obudowie nieizolowanych podzespołów pod napięciem, którego wartość może być przyczyną porażenia prądem elektrycznym.



Symbol wykrzyknika w trójkącie równobocznym, umieszczony na urządzeniu, wskazuje użytkownikowi ważne instrukcje dotyczące obsługi i konserwacji, zamieszczone w tym podręczniku.



### OSTRZEŻENIA:

- Aby ograniczyć ryzyko pożaru i porażenia prądem elektrycznym, należy chronić urządzenie przed deszczem i wilgocią.
- Nie należy narażać urządzenia na zachlapanie ani umieszczać w jego pobliżu naczyń wypełnionych płynami, takich jak wazony. Podobnie jak w przypadku innych urządzeń elektronicznych, należy zachować ostrożność, aby nie dopuścić do przedostania się rozlanych płynów do wnętrza urządzenia. Płyny mogą spowodować awarię i/lub zagrożenie pożarowe.
- Na urządzeniu lub w jego pobliżu nie należy umieszczać źródeł otwartego ognia, np. zapalonych świec.



### PRZESTROGA:

- Nie wolno dokonywać nieautoryzowanych modyfikacji produktu; grozi to naruszeniem bezpieczeństwa, zgodności z przepisami i działania systemu oraz może spowodować unieważnienie gwarancji.



**OSTRZEŻENIE:** Produkt zawiera elementy magnetyczne. Wszelkie wątpliwości dotyczące wpływu tych elementów na funkcjonowanie implantów medycznych należy skonsultować z lekarzem.

### UWAGI:

- Jeżeli urządzenie jest wyłączone przez wyjęcie wtyczki przewodu zasilającego lub przedłużacza z gniazda sieciowego, należy zapewnić możliwość swobodnego korzystania z tego elementu wyposażenia.
- Urządzenia należy używać wewnątrz pomieszczeń. Nie zostało zaprojektowane z myślą o używaniu na zewnątrz, w pojazdach ani na łodziach, jak również nie zostało pod tym względem przetestowane.
- Przewody głośnikowe i kable łączące dołączone do tego systemu nie zostały zatwierdzone do instalacji w ścianach. Właściwy typ przewodów i kabli wymaganych do instalacji w ścianach należy sprawdzić w lokalnych przepisach budowlanych.



Ten symbol oznacza, że produktu nie należy wyrzucać razem z innymi odpadkami z gospodarstwa domowego. Produkt należy dostarczyć do odpowiedniego miejsca zbiórki w celu recyklingu. Właściwy sposób utylizacji i recyklingu pomaga chronić zasoby naturalne, ludzkie zdrowie i środowisko naturalne. Aby uzyskać więcej informacji na temat utylizacji i recyklingu tego produktu, skontaktuj się z samorządem lokalnym, z zakładem utylizacji odpadów albo sklepem, w którym produkt został nabyty.

**CE** Firma Bose Corporation niniejszym deklaruje, że ten produkt jest zgodny z podstawowymi wymaganiami i zaleceniami określonymi w dyrektywie 1999/5/WE oraz innych obowiązujących dyrektywach UE. Pełna treść Deklaracji zgodności jest dostępna w witrynie [www.Bose.com/compliance](http://www.Bose.com/compliance).

## Ważne zalecenia dotyczące bezpieczeństwa

1. Należy przeczytać podręcznik.
2. Należy zachować instrukcję.
3. Należy stosować się do wszystkich ostrzeżeń.
4. Należy postępować zgodnie z instrukcjami.
5. Nie należy korzystać z tego urządzenia w pobliżu wody.
6. Urządzenie należy czyścić wyłącznie przy użyciu suchej ściereczki.
7. Nie wolno blokować otworów wentylacyjnych. Urządzenie należy zainstalować zgodnie z zaleceniami producenta.
8. Nie wolno instalować urządzenia w pobliżu źródeł ciepła, takich jak kaloryfery, przewody kominowe, piece lub inne urządzenia (na przykład wzmacniacze) wydzielające ciepło.
9. Należy chronić przewód zasilający przed uszkodzeniem lub deformacją, zwłaszcza wtyczki, gniazda i złącza zainstalowane w urządzeniach.
10. Należy korzystać wyłącznie z dodatków/akcesoriów zalecanych przez producenta.
11. Urządzenie należy odłączyć od sieci zasilającej podczas burzy z wyładowaniami atmosferycznymi lub wówczas, gdy nie jest używane przez dłuższy czas.
12. Wykonanie wszystkich prac serwisowych należy zlecić wykwalifikowanemu personelowi. Wykonanie prac serwisowych jest konieczne w przypadku uszkodzenia urządzenia, na przykład w następujących okolicznościach: uszkodzenie przewodu zasilającego lub wtyczki, przedostanie się cieczy lub przedmiotów do wnętrza urządzenia, narażenie urządzenia na oddziaływanie deszczu lub wilgoci, nieprawidłowe funkcjonowanie lub upadek urządzenia.

### Nazwy i zawartość toksycznych lub szkodliwych substancji albo pierwiastków

Nazwa części	Toksyczne lub szkodliwe substancje albo pierwiastki					
	Ołów (Pb)	Rtęć (Hg)	Kadm (Cd)	Sześciowartościowy chrom (Cr(VI))	Polibromowany bifenyl (PBB)	Polibromowany difenyleter (PBDE)
Polichlorowane bifenyle (PCB)	X	0	0	0	0	0
Części metalowe	X	0	0	0	0	0
Części z tworzyw sztucznych	0	0	0	0	0	0
Głośniki	X	0	0	0	0	0
Kable	X	0	0	0	0	0

0: Wskazuje, że dana substancja toksyczna lub szkodliwa, która jest zawarta we wszystkich homogenicznych materiałach dla tej części, nie przekracza limitu określonego w normie SJ/T 11363-2006.

X: Wskazuje, że dana substancja toksyczna lub szkodliwa, która jest zawarta w co najmniej jednym z homogenicznych materiałów użytych dla tej części, przekracza limit określony w normie SJ/T 11363-2006.

### Prosimy wpisać i zachować następujące informacje.

Numer seryjny i numer modelu znajdują się na panelu złączy modułu Acoustimass®.

Numer seryjny: \_\_\_\_\_

Numer modelu: \_\_\_\_\_

Data zakupu: \_\_\_\_\_

Należy zachować dowód zakupu razem z podręcznikiem użytkownika.

Blu-ray Disc™ i Blu-ray™ są znakami towarowymi organizacji Blu-ray Disc Association.

HDMI jest znakiem towarowym lub zastrzeżonym znakiem towarowym firmy HDMI Licensing LLC w Stanach Zjednoczonych i innych krajach.

©2014 Bose Corporation. Żadnej części tej publikacji nie wolno powielać, modyfikować, rozpowszechniać lub wykorzystywać w inny sposób bez uzyskania pisemnego zezwolenia.

**Wprowadzenie**

Dziękujemy.....	4
Rozpakowanie systemu .....	4

**Przygotowanie systemu**

Rozmieszczenie głośników w celu odtwarzania realistycznego dźwięku w środowisku kina domowego.....	5
Lewy i prawy głośnik przedni.....	6
Głośnik centralny .....	6
Głośniki tylne .....	6
Aktywny moduł Acoustimass® .....	6
Podłączanie wyposażenia .....	7
Podłączanie głośników do modułu Acoustimass .....	7
Podłączanie modułu Acoustimass® do odbiornika .....	8
Sprawdzanie połączeń .....	9

**Korzystanie z systemu**

Optymalne użytkowanie głośników kina domowego.....	10
Kompensacja niskich częstotliwości/charakterystyki pomieszczenia.....	10
Dostosowanie poziomu LFE .....	10
Konfiguracja cyfrowego odbiornika dźwięku przestrzennego.....	11
Odbiór cyfrowego sygnału audio .....	11
Konfiguracja analogowego odbiornika dźwięku przestrzennego .....	11

**Dodatkowe informacje**

Rozwiązywanie problemów .....	12
Dział Obsługi Klientów.....	13
Czyszczenie .....	13
Informacje dotyczące ograniczonej gwarancji.....	13
Akcesoria .....	13
Dane techniczne .....	14
Głośniki .....	14
Zasilanie systemu .....	14
Możliwości podłączenia.....	14

# Wprowadzenie

## Dziękujemy.

Dziękujemy za wybór zestawu głośników Bose® Acoustimass® 6 Seria V lub Acoustimass 10 Seria V, przeznaczonych dla systemu rozrywki domowej.

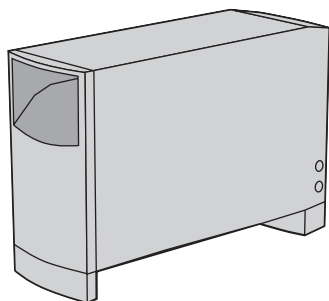
W systemie Acoustimass 6 zastosowano pięć niewielkich głośników kostkowych, podczas gdy w systemie Acoustimass 10 zastosowano cztery głośniki kostkowe i centralny głośnik przedni. Głośniki te wraz z modułem Acoustimass oferują potężne i realistyczne brzmienie dla systemu rozrywki domowej.

## Rozpakowanie systemu

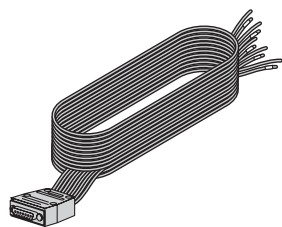
Należy ostrożnie rozpakować system:

1. Wyjmij brązowe wewnętrzne pudełko kartonowe zawierające głośniki.
2. Ostrożnie połóż pudełko kartonowe i wysuń moduł Acoustimass.

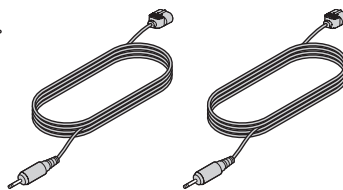
**OSTRZEŻENIE:** Aby uniknąć zranienia, należy ostrożnie ponosić moduł (waga około 14 kg).



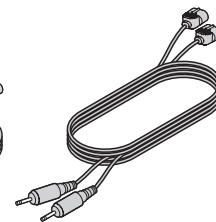
aktywny moduł Acoustimass



kabel wejściowy systemu  
6,1 m

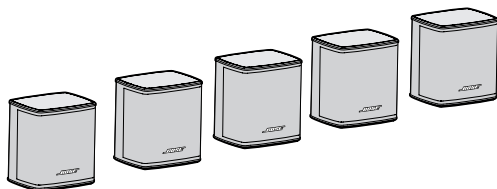


kable głośników przednich 6,1 m (3 szt.)



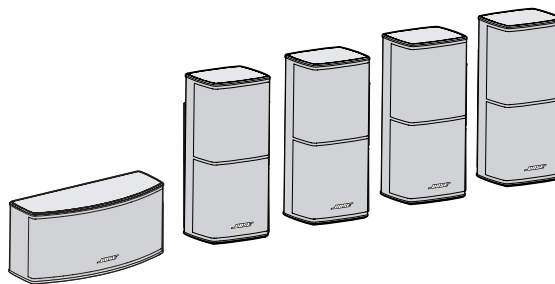
kable głośników tylnych  
15,2 m (2 szt.)

### system Acoustimass 6



głośniki Virtually Invisible® seria II (5 szt.)

### system Acoustimass 10



głośniki Direct/Reflecting® seria II (4 szt.) i jeden poziomy głośnik centralny

### przewód zasilający (1)



USA/Kanada



Europa



Wielka Brytania/Singapur



Australia

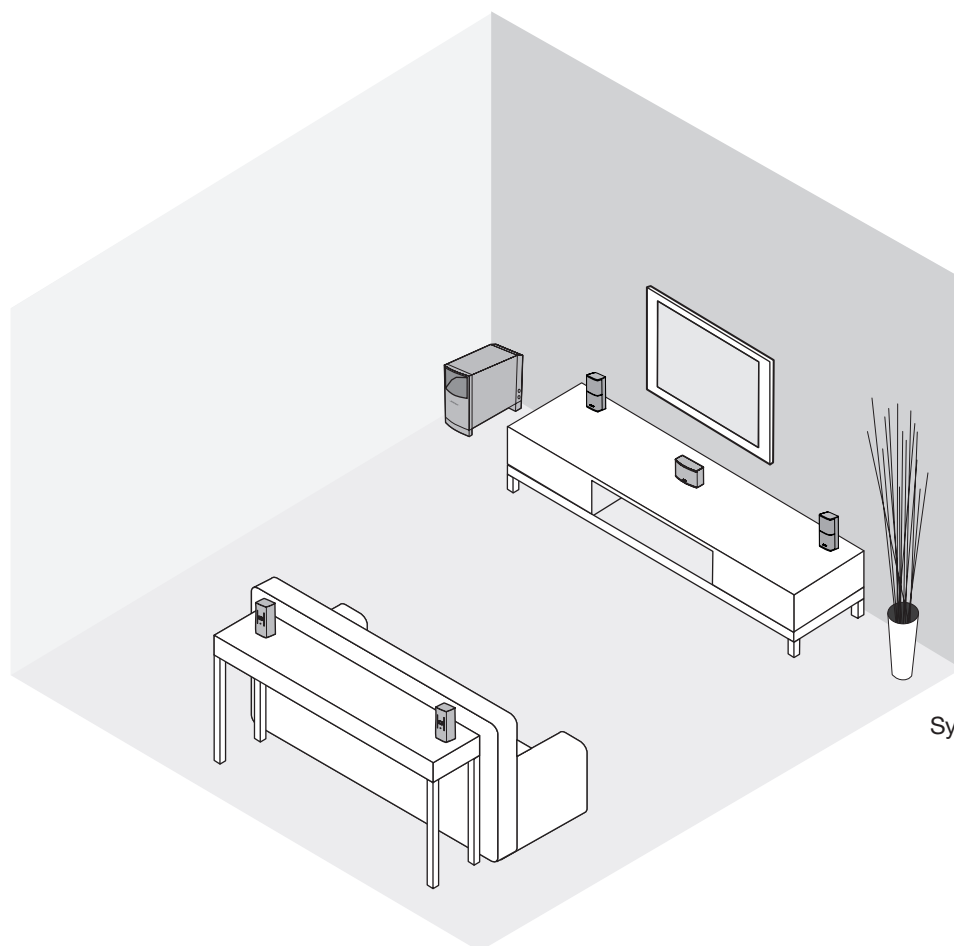
Teraz można zanotować numer seryjny produktu na karcie gwarancyjnej. Należy zachować wszystkie elementy opakowania w celu ewentualnego ponownego wykorzystania w przyszłości.

**OSTRZEŻENIE:** Folie z tworzywa sztucznego używane do pakowania tych głośników mogą być przyczyną uduszenia, dlatego powinny być przechowywane w miejscu niedostępnym dla dzieci.

# Rozmieszczenie głośników w celu odtwarzania realistycznego dźwięku w środowisku kina domowego

Podczas wyboru lokalizacji poszczególnych głośników należy uwzględnić następujące zalecenia:

- Moduł Acoustimass® należy ustawić w odległości co najmniej 0,6 m od odbiornika TV, aby zapobiec występowaniu zniekształceń obrazu.
- Każdy z głośników należy ustawić na stabilnej i poziomej powierzchni.
- W systemie Acoustimass 10 centralny głośnik należy umieścić w przedniej części pomieszczenia w pobliżu odbiornika TV. Pozostałe głośniki są identyczne i mogą być rozmieszczane zamiennie w pomieszczeniu.
- W systemie Acoustimass 6 wszystkie głośniki (5) są identyczne i mogą być rozmieszczane zamiennie w pomieszczeniu.
- Podczas wyboru lokalizacji głośników należy uwzględnić kształt i wielkość pomieszczenia oraz rozmieszczenie elementów wyposażenia wnętrza. Poniższy przykład można wykorzystać jako wzór dla ustawienia systemu rozrywki domowej.



System Acoustimass 10 Seria V



# Przygotowanie systemu

## Lewy i prawy głośnik przedni

Zadaniem tych głośników jest utworzenie obrazu dźwiękowego szerszego niż ekran i odbieranego w naturalny sposób przez osoby znajdujące się w dowolnej lokalizacji w danym pomieszczeniu.

- Te dwa głośniki przednie należy umieścić po obu stronach telewizora.
- Należy je ustawić 2–5 m od siebie i co najmniej 15 cm od telewizora CRT (kineskopowego).

## Głośnik centralny

Głośnik centralny należy ustawić w taki sposób, aby dźwięk emitowany przez ten głośnik był kojarzony z obszarem wyświetlanego obrazu. Taka konfiguracja zapewnia najbardziej realistyczne odtwarzanie ścieżki dźwiękowej i dialogów.

- Głośnik centralny należy umieścić ponad lub pod odbiornikiem TV lub na jego obudowie. NIE wolno ustawiać telewizora na głośniku.
- Głośnik powinien być ustawiony zgodnie z centralną pionową osią ekranu, jeżeli jest to możliwe, aby zapewnić najbardziej wierne odtwarzanie dialogów.
- Głośniki powinny znajdować się w odległości co najmniej 15 cm od telewizora CRT (kineskopowego).

## Głośniki tylne

Głośniki tylne (dźwięk przestrzenny) mogą emitować dźwięk związany z dialogami, jednak służą przede wszystkim do emitowania dyskretnych dźwięków i efektów specjalnych rozszerzających obraz dźwiękowy. Ułatwiają przeniesienie użytkownika do wirtualnego dźwiękowego środowiska odtwarzanego filmu.

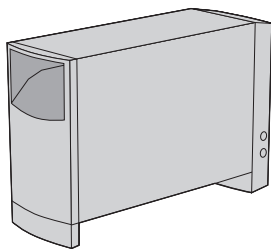
Należy wybrać lokalizacje praktyczne i wygodne, uwzględniając następujące zalecenia:

- Lewy i prawy głośnik tylny należy ustawić w taki sposób, aby zapewnić emisję dźwięku po obu stronach, a nie bezpośrednio za użytkownikiem.
- Głośniki powinny być umieszczone na wysokości głowy siedzącego użytkownika lub wyżej.

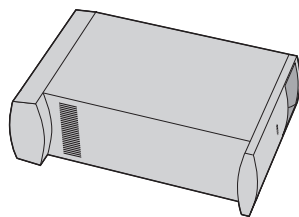
## Aktywny moduł Acoustimass®

Technologia nagłośnienia Acoustimass utrudnia lokalizację źródła dźwięków o niskiej częstotliwości emitowanych przez ten moduł. Można więc go umieścić w niewidocznym miejscu. Umieść moduł zgodnie z następującymi wytycznymi:

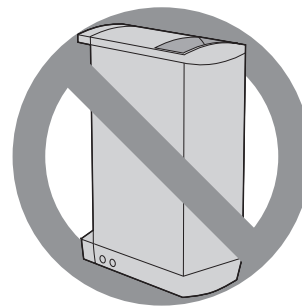
- Moduł należy umieścić w tej samej części pomieszczenia, w której znajduje się ekran telewizora.
- Moduł należy ustawić w odległości co najmniej 0,6 m od telewizora, aby zapobiec występowaniu zniekształceń obrazu.
- Aby optymalnie eksponować niskie częstotliwości, należy skierować przedni otwór w obudowie w stronę ściany (odsunięcie otworu od ściany powoduje ograniczenie ekspozycji niskich częstotliwości).
- Zarówno przedni otwór w obudowie, jak i szczelina wentylacyjna na podstawie modułu powinny znajdować się w odległości co najmniej 5 cm od innych powierzchni.
- Nie należy blokować szczeliny wentylacyjnej na podstawie modułu. Niedostateczna wentylacja może być przyczyną ograniczenia mocy niskich częstotliwości emitowanych przez moduł.



Preferowane



Alternatywne



## Podłączanie wyposażenia

Tylko moduł Acoustimass® jest podłączany do odbiornika. Wszystkie głośniki są podłączane bezpośrednio do modułu Acoustimass.

**OSTRZEŻENIE:** Nie należy podłączać głośników do odbiornika. Może to spowodować uszkodzenie systemu, a nawet porażenie prądem.

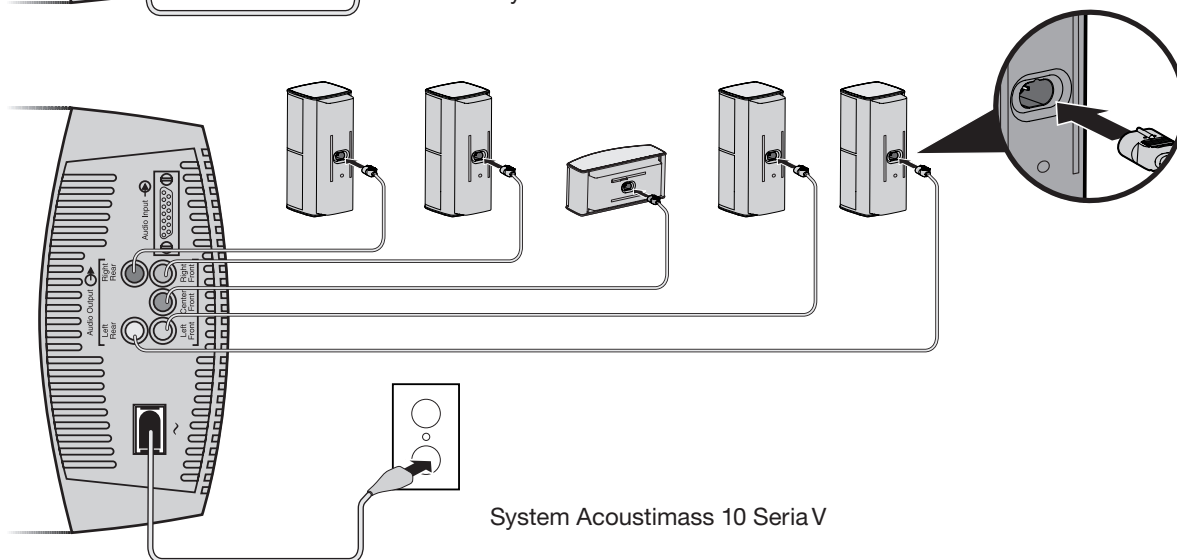
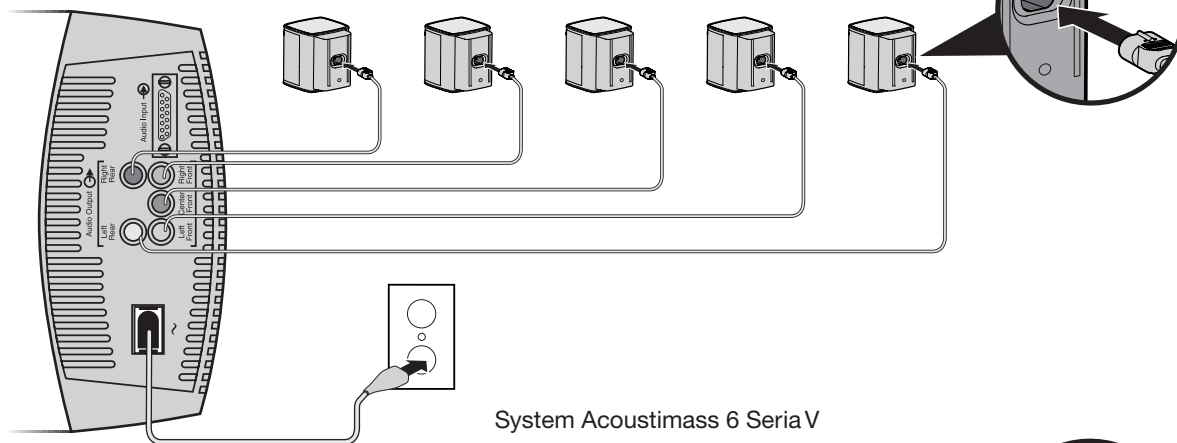
### Podłączanie głośników do modułu Acoustimass

Należy włożyć wtyczkę kabla każdego głośnika do odpowiedniego złącza modułu. Dopasuj etykietę na wtyczce do odpowiedniego złącza.

- Korzystając z dostarczonych kabli głośnikowych (6,1 m), podłącz trzy głośniki przednie.
  - Włóż wtyczkę **R** do złącza oznaczonego **Right Front** (prawy przedni).
  - Włóż wtyczkę **C** do złącza oznaczonego **Center Front** (centralny przedni).
  - Włóż wtyczkę **L** do złącza oznaczonego **Left Front** (lewy przedni).
- Korzystając z dostarczonych kabli głośnikowych (15,2 m), podłącz głośniki znajdujące się w tylnej części pomieszczenia.
  - Włóż wtyczkę **RR** do złącza oznaczonego **Right Rear** (prawy tylny).
  - Włóż wtyczkę **LR** do złącza oznaczonego **Left Rear** (lewy tylny).
- Włóż drugi koniec każdego z przewodów do złącza odpowiedniego głośnika w taki sposób, by etykieta skierowana była w dół.

**Uwaga:** Na każdym z kabli głośników znajdź etykietę pasującą do właściwego głośnika:

Etykieta kabla głośnika	
L – lewy głośnik przedni	LR – lewy głośnik tylny
R – prawy głośnik przedni	RR – prawy głośnik tylny
C – centralny głośnik przedni	

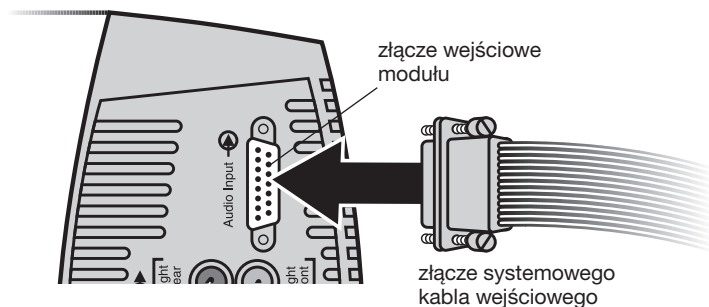


## Przygotowanie systemu

### Podłączanie modułu Acoustimass® do odbiornika

**PRZESTROGA:** Przed podłączeniem przewodów do modułu Acoustimass® należy wyłączyć odbiornik, aby wyeliminować zakłócenia dźwięku.

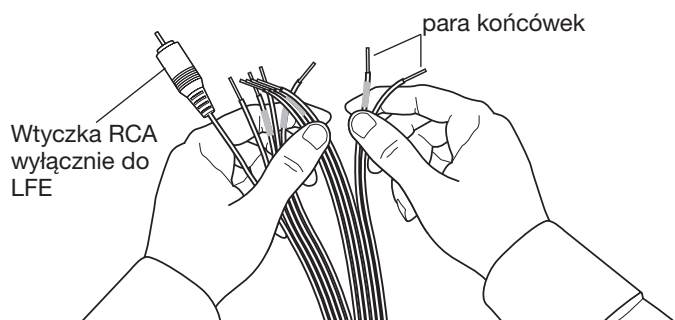
Kabel wejściowy systemu o długości 6,1 metra jest podłączany do odbiornika sygnału dźwięku przestrzennego. W przeciwieństwie do kabli głośnikowych kabel wejściowy jest zakończony wtyczką z wieloma stykami podłączaną do **wejściowego złącza** audio modułu.



Końcówki na drugim zakończeniu systemowego kabla wejściowego można rozdzielić w celu ułatwienia dostępu i podłączenia do wyjść odbiornika. Czerwoną kropką oznaczono końcówkę z polaryzacją dodatnią (+).

**PRZESTROGA:** Nie wolno podłączać modułu do telewizora, który nie jest wyposażony w odpowiedni wzmacniacz.

Pojedynczy wtyk RCA na zakończeniu kabla można podłączyć TYLKO do odbiornika obsługującego korekcję niskiej częstotliwości (LFE) i wyposażonego w złącze **LFE/SUBWOOFER**.

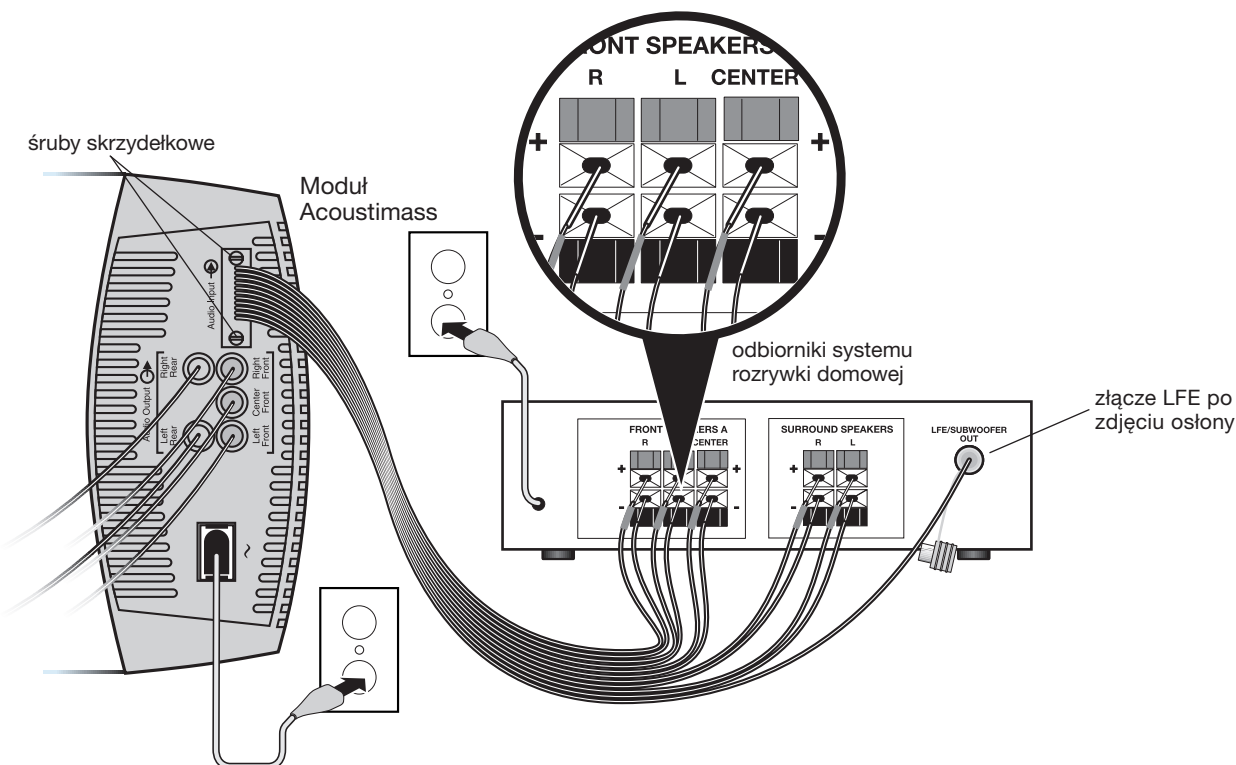


## Aby wykonać połączenia:

1. Włóż wtyczkę z wieloma stykami systemowego kabla wejściowego do złącza wejściowego modułu Acoustimass®. Dokręć dwie śruby skrzydełkowe, aby zablokować złącze.
2. Podłącz poszczególne pary końcówek na drugim zakończeniu systemowego kabla wejściowego do odbiornika dźwięku przestrzennego zgodnie z następującymi etykietami wyjściowych zacisków audio:
  - Right (Prawy), Left (Lewy) i Center (Centralny) dla przednich kanałów audio.
  - Right Surround (Prawy tylny) i Left Surround (Lewy tylny) dla kanałów tylnych. Rzeczywiste etykiety złącza odbiornika mogą różnić się nieznacznie od powyższych etykiet.

**PRZESTROGA:** Zetknięcie niez izolowanych końcówek przewodów może być przyczyną uszkodzenia odbiornika.

3. Uważnie dopasuj polaryzację złączy (+ do + i – do –).
  - Podłącz każdą czerwoną końcówkę (+) do odpowiedniego zacisku (+).
  - Podłącz każdą końcówkę (–) do odpowiedniego zacisku (–).
4. Włóż wtyk RCA oznaczony **LFE** systemowego kabla wejściowego do złącza **LFE/SUBWOOFER OUT** odbiornika dźwięku przestrzennego (jeżeli to złącze jest dostępne). Przed podłączeniem wtyku zdejmij osłonę.



## Sprawdzanie połączeń

Przed podłączeniem zasilania modułu Acoustimass należy sprawdzić sposób podłączenia wszystkich przewodów odbiornika, modułu i głośników.

- Upewnij się, że wszystkie głośniki są podłączone do odpowiednich złączy zgodnie z rozmieszczeniem w pomieszczeniu.
- Sprawdź, czy wszystkie przewody są podłączone do odbiornika dźwięku przestrzennego zgodnie z polaryzacją końcówek (+ do + i – do –). Jeżeli przewody nie zostaną podłączone prawidłowo, moduł może nie odtwarzać dźwięku.
- Usuń wszelkie usterki związane z podłączeniem przewodów przed włączeniem zasilania odbiornika.

Po sprawdzeniu wszystkich połączeń należy podłączyć przewód zasilający modułu Acoustimass do sieciowego gniazda ściennego. Należy podłączyć również przewód zasilający odbiornika.

**Uwaga:** Firma Bose zaleca używanie stabilizatora napięcia sieciowego o wysokiej jakości w układach zasilania wszystkich urządzeń elektronicznych. Zmiany i gwałtowne skoki napięcia mogą być przyczyną uszkodzenia elektronicznych podzespołów każdego systemu. Dobry ogranicznik skoków napięcia (dostępny w sklepach z artykułami elektronicznymi) pozwala wyeliminować większość awarii spowodowanych przepięciami.

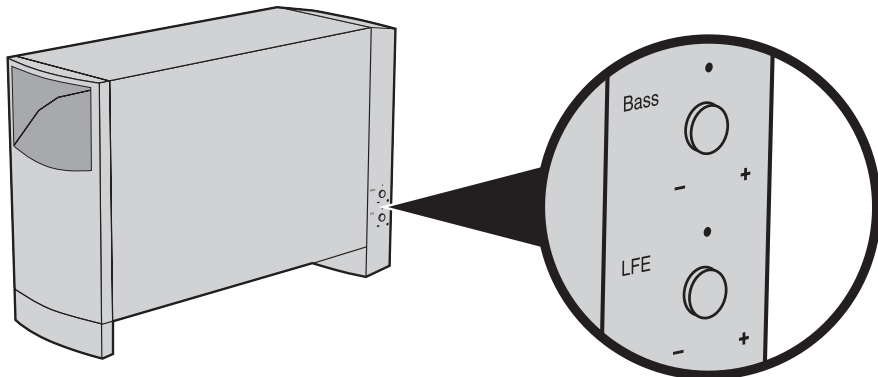
## Korzystanie z systemu

### Optymalne użytkowanie głośników kina domowego

Po podłączeniu elementów systemu i włączeniu zasilania moduł Acoustimass® jest przygotowany do użytkowania.

Konieczne będzie zapoznanie się z przyciskami, pokrętkami i wbudowanymi zabezpieczeniami służącymi do regulacji systemu audio. Dostępne opcje umożliwiają dostosowanie systemu zgodnie z określonym stylem użytkowania i preferencjami użytkownika.

**PRZESTROGA:** System jest wyposażony w automatyczny układ zapewniający ochronę podzespołów elektronicznych w przypadku przeciążenia systemu. Przy wysokim poziomie głośności ten układ jest uaktywniany w celu ograniczenia mocy wyjściowej, powodując nieznaczne zmniejszenie głośności. Należy więc zauważyć, że ewentualne zmniejszenie głośności może być zgodne z projektem systemu. Redukcja głośności oznacza również, że poziom sygnału wejściowego przekracza limit określony dla systemu. Utrzymywanie wysokiego poziomu głośności przez dłuższy czas nie jest zalecane.



### Kompensacja niskich częstotliwości/charakterystyki pomieszczenia

Po umieszczeniu modułu Acoustimass w wybranym miejscu w pomieszczeniu można precyzyjnie dostosować ustawienia dla danej lokalizacji. Należy wykonać tylko niezbędne procedury regulacyjne.

Na przykład:

- W przypadku niedostatecznego poziomu głośności niskich częstotliwości, należy obrócić pokrętło BASS (zob. rysunek) zgodnie z kierunkiem ruchu wskazówek zegara.
- W przypadku zbyt wysokiego poziomu głośności niskich częstotliwości, należy obrócić pokrętło w kierunku przeciwnym do ruchu wskazówek zegara.

To ustawienie jest regulowane fabrycznie, dlatego jest odpowiednie w przypadku typowych konfiguracji pomieszczeń.

### Dostosowanie poziomu LFE

Regulator korekcji niskiej częstotliwości (LFE) (zob. rysunek) jest przeznaczony wyłącznie dla odbiorników obsługujących kanał LFE/SUBWOOFER.

Obracając pokrętło, można dostosować względny poziom niskich częstotliwości filmowych ścieżek dźwiękowych. Korzystając z tego regulatora, można dostosować poziom głośności kanału LFE do głośności kanałów pozostałych głośników.

Wszystkie poziomy głośności można sprawdzić przy użyciu funkcji kontrolnej („test tones”) cyfrowego odbiornika dźwięku przestrzennego. Aby uzyskać szczegółowe informacje dotyczące korzystania z tej funkcji, należy przeczytać podręcznik użytkownika dostarczony razem z odbiornikiem dźwięku przestrzennego.

## Konfiguracja cyfrowego odbiornika dźwięku przestrzennego

Głośniki zastosowane w systemach Acoustimass® 6 seria V lub Acoustimass 10 Seria V są w pełni zgodne z sygnałem wyjściowym audio cyfrowych odbiorników sygnału dźwięku przestrzennego. Zintegrowany w systemie układ przetwarzania sygnału obsługuje pełny zakres reprodukcji niskich częstotliwości dla wszystkich kanałów.

Aby umożliwić optymalne wykorzystanie tych funkcji systemu, konieczne może być dostosowanie niektórych ustawień odbiornika. W celu wprowadzenia odpowiednich zmian należy skorzystać z menu dostępnego na wyświetlaczu odbiornika i następującej listy zalecanych ustawień.

Głośnik	Ustawienie odbiornika
Lewy i prawy	LARGE
centralny	LARGE
Lewy i prawy tylny	LARGE
LFE/niskotonowy	ON

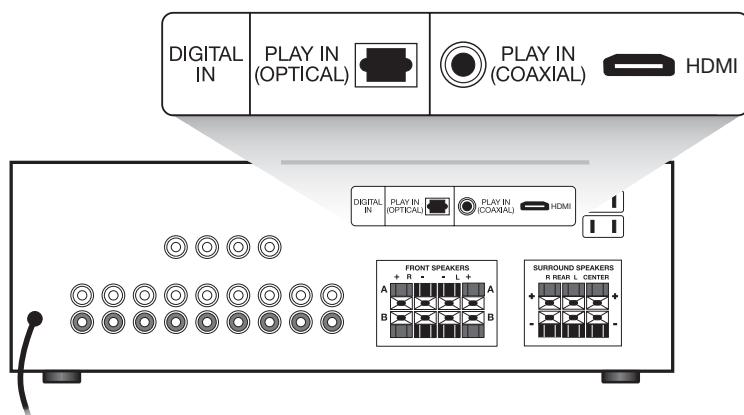
**Uwaga:** Należy włączyć (ON) opcję LFE lub głośnik niskotonowy (Subwoofer), jeżeli ta opcja jest obsługiwana przez dany dekodery, i wybrać najmniejszą dostępną wartość podziału częstotliwości (zazwyczaj 80 Hz).

### Odbiór cyfrowego sygnału audio

Aby dźwięk z dodatkowych źródeł (odtwarzacz Blu-ray™ lub DVD, dekodery telewizji kablowej/satelitarnej, konsola do gier itp.) docierał do odbiornika dźwięku przestrzennego, wymagane jest cyfrowe połączenie audio między dodatkowym źródłem a odbiornikiem.

- Podłącz cyfrowe wyjście dodatkowego źródła do wejścia HDMI™, do optycznego (Optical) lub koncentrycznego (Coaxial) wejścia odbiornika. Nie należy używać więcej niż jednego połączenia.
- Upewnij się, że wyjście cyfrowe zostało wybrane w menu konfiguracyjnym dodatkowego źródła.

Dodatkowe informacje dotyczące konfiguracji i obsługi są dostępne w podręczniku użytkownika dostarczonym razem z odbiornikiem dźwięku przestrzennego.



## Konfiguracja analogowego odbiornika dźwięku przestrzennego

W przypadku analogowych (nie cyfrowych) aplikacji dźwięku przestrzennego firma Bose zaleca konfigurowanie odbiornika z trybem Wide odtwarzania dźwięku przestrzennego. Aby uzyskać szczegółowe informacje dotyczące sposobu zmiany tego ustawienia, przeczytaj podręcznik użytkownika dostarczony razem z odbiornikiem sygnału dźwięku przestrzennego.

# Rozwiązywanie problemów

W przypadku wystąpienia problemu związanego z systemem głośników Acoustimass® należy wyłączyć źródło dźwięku i spróbować zastosować następujące rozwiązania. Jeżeli problem nie zostanie rozwiązany, należy skontaktować się z dystrybutorem produktów firmy Bose® w celu zlecenia wykonania prac serwisowych. Aby skontaktować się bezpośrednio z firmą Bose, należy skorzystać z listy adresów umieszczonej w opakowaniu.

Problem	Zalecane czynności
System w ogóle nie działa	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Upewnij się, że odbiornik i aktywny moduł Acoustimass są podłączone do czynnego gniazda sieciowego i włączono zasilanie odbiornika.</li><li>• Upewnij się, że na odbiorniku zostało wybrane źródło dźwięku (odtwarzacz Blu-ray lub DVD, dekodery telewizji kablowej/satelitarnej, konsola do gier itp.)</li></ul>
Brak dźwięku	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Zwiększ poziom głośności.</li><li>• Odłącz słuchawki.</li><li>• Sprawdź podłączenie głośników przy module basowym, odbiorniku i głośnikach.</li><li>• Upewnij się, że zarówno aktywny moduł Acoustimass, jak i odbiornik są podłączone do sieci zasilającej.</li><li>• W przypadku dźwięku cyfrowego upewnij się, że kabel HDMI, koncentryczny lub optyczny jest podłączony do cyfrowego wyjścia źródła dźwięku i wejścia odbiornika.</li><li>• Upewnij się, że wybrano odpowiednie źródło audio. Na przykład wybierz DVD w odbiorniku, aby korzystać z odtwarzacza DVD.</li></ul>
Brak dźwięku przestrzennego	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Upewnij się, że dostępny jest materiał źródłowy w formacie dźwięku przestrzennego.</li><li>• Jeżeli używany jest tryb Dolby Pro-Logic odbiornika, upewnij się, że obsługa dźwięku przestrzennego jest włączona.</li><li>• Upewnij się, że materiał źródłowy (pochodzący z odtwarzacza Blu-Ray™ lub DVD, dekodera telewizji kablowej/satelitarnej, konsoli do gier itp.) jest kodowany w formacie Dolby Digital.</li><li>• Upewnij się, że odbiornik przetwarza sygnał ze stereofonicznego telewizora, odtwarzacza Blu-Ray lub DVD, bądź innego źródła dźwięku przestrzennego.</li><li>• Jeżeli używana jest funkcja cyfrowego programowania, sprawdź, czy ustawienia odbiornika są prawidłowe.</li></ul>
Brak niskich częstotliwości	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Upewnij się, że przewody głośników między odbiornikiem i wzmacniaczem są podłączone zgodnie z polaryzacją tzn. czerwone końcówki powinny być podłączone do czerwonych zacisków (+ do + i – do –).</li><li>• Sprawdź, czy wielkość głośników jest ustawiona w odbiorniku na „duże”</li></ul>
Niedostateczny lub zbyt wysoki poziom głośności niskich częstotliwości	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Zmniejsz odległość między modulem Acoustimass i ścianą lub narożnikiem pomieszczenia, aby zwiększyć ekspozycję niskich częstotliwości. Zwiększ odległość między modulem Acoustimass i ścianą lub narożnikiem pomieszczenia, aby ograniczyć ekspozycję niskich częstotliwości.</li><li>• Dostosuj poziom korekcji niskich częstotliwości (LFE) lub kompensacji charakterystyki pomieszczenia.</li></ul>
Dźwięk jest zniekształcony	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Upewnij się, że przewód głośnikowy nie jest uszkodzony.</li><li>• Zmniejsz poziom głośności urządzeń zewnętrznych podłączonych do odbiornika.</li></ul>

## Dział Obsługi Klientów

---

Aby uzyskać dodatkową pomoc w rozwiązywaniu problemów, należy skontaktować się z lokalnym biurem Działu Obsługi Klientów firmy Bose®. Należy skorzystać z listy adresów umieszczonej w opakowaniu.

## Czyszczenie

---

Obudowy składników systemu głośników Acoustimass® można czyścić tylko przy użyciu miękkiej suchej ściereczki. Nie wolno rozpylać cieczy w pobliżu składników systemu lub dopuścić do przedostania się cieczy do otworów w obudowie. Ponadto nie wolno używać rozpuszczalników, chemikaliów lub środków czyszczących zawierających alkohol, amoniak lub materiały ściernie.

Oslony głośników można ostrożnie odkurzać, jeżeli jest to konieczne. Należy zauważyć, że głośniki znajdują się bezpośrednio za osłonami i mogą zostać uszkodzone, jeżeli nie zostanie zachowana ostrożność.

## Informacje dotyczące ograniczonej gwarancji

---

System głośników Acoustimass® jest objęty ograniczoną gwarancją z prawem do przeniesienia. Szczegółowe informacje dotyczące gwarancji zamieszczono na karcie gwarancyjnej dostarczonej razem z systemem. Należy wypełnić sekcję informacyjną na takiej karcie i przesłać ją do firmy Bose. Rezygnacja z wysłania karty gwarancyjnej nie oznacza jednak anulowania uprawnień wynikających z ograniczonej gwarancji.

Dołączone do tego produktu informacje na temat gwarancji nie dotyczą Australii i Nowej Zelandii. Szczegółowe informacje dotyczące gwarancji w Australii i Nowej Zelandii można znaleźć pod adresem [www.bose.com.au/warranty](http://www.bose.com.au/warranty) or [www.bose.com.nz/warranty](http://www.bose.com.nz/warranty).

## Akcesoria

---

Głośniki systemu można zamocować na uchwytych ściennych, ustawić na stojakach stołowych lub stojakach podłogowych. Aby kupić te akcesoria, należy skontaktować się z lokalnym dystrybutorem produktów firmy Bose® lub odwiedzić witrynę [www.Bose.com](http://www.Bose.com).

Pozostałe akcesoria:

- Adaptor kabla wejściowego przeznaczony do montażu wbudowanych w ścianę przewodów głośnikowych łączących moduł Acoustimass z odbiornikiem
- Przedłużacz 6,1 m umożliwiający połączenie modułu Acoustimass z odbiornikiem
- Adaptory kabli głośnikowych do użytku przy montażu w ścianie

Skontaktuj się z autoryzowanym przedstawicielem firmy Bose Aby skontaktować się bezpośrednio z firmą Bose, należy skorzystać z listy adresów umieszczonej w opakowaniu.



#### Głośniki

##### System Acoustimass® 10:

- Zespoły głośników kostkowych i centralny głośnik przedni:  
dwa głośniki 2,5" (6,35 cm) Twiddler™
- Aktywny moduł Acoustimass:  
Dwa przetworniki 5,25" (13 cm)

##### System Acoustimass 6:

- Głośniki kostkowe:  
jeden głośnik 2,5" (6,35 cm) Twiddler™
- Aktywny moduł Acoustimass:  
Jeden przetwornik 5,25" (13 cm)

#### Zasilanie systemu

##### System Acoustimass 10:

USA/Kanada: 100-127 V ~ 50/270 Hz 60 W

Europa/Australia 220-240 V ~ 50/270 Hz 60 W

##### System Acoustimass 6:

USA/Kanada: 100-127 V ~ 50/135 Hz 60 W

Europa/Australia 220-240 V ~ 50/135 Hz 60 W

#### Możliwości podłączenia

##### System Acoustimass 10:

System jest zgodny z odbiornikami audio-wideo (A/V) i wzmacniaczami o mocy od 10 do 200 watów na kanał i oporności od 4 do 8 omów

##### System Acoustimass 6:

System jest zgodny z odbiornikami audio-wideo (A/V) i wzmacniaczami o mocy od 10 do 150 watów na kanał i oporności od 4 do 8 omów

##### System Acoustimass 10:

Zespół głośników kostkowych i centralny głośnik przedni: 2,2 funta (1 kg) każdy

zespół głośników kostkowych: 7,4 calawys. x 3,2 calaszer. x 3,3 calagłęb. (15,7 cm x 7,9 cm x 10,2 cm)

centralny głośnik przedni: 3,4 calawys. x 7,3 calaszer. x 3,2 calagłęb. (15,7 cm x 7,9 cm x 10,2 cm)

Moduł: 35 funtów (15,8 kg)

16,3 calawys. x 8,1 calaszer. x 25,3 calagłęb. (41,4 cm x 20,6 cm x 64,3 cm)

##### System Acoustimass 6:

Głośnik kostkowy: 1,18 funta (0,45 kg) każdy

3,7 calawys. x 3,2 calaszer. x 3,3 calagłęb. (9,5 cm x 8,3 cm x 8,4 cm)

Moduł: 27 funtów (12,2 kg)

16,3 calawys. x 8,1 calaszer. x 22,3 calagłęb. (41,4 cm x 20,6 cm x 56,6 cm)



# Informações importantes de segurança

## Leia este manual do proprietário e guarde-o para referência futura.



O símbolo de raio com ponta de flecha dentro de um triângulo equilátero alerta o usuário para a presença de tensão não isolada e perigosa no compartimento do sistema cuja magnitude é suficiente para constituir risco de choque elétrico.



O ponto de exclamação dentro de um triângulo equilátero, marcado no sistema, tem a finalidade de alertar o usuário para a presença de instruções importantes de operação e manutenção neste manual do proprietário.



### ADVERTÊNCIAS:

- Para reduzir o risco de incêndio ou choque elétrico, não exponha o produto à chuva ou umidade.
- Não exponha este equipamento a goteiras ou respingos, nem coloque objetos de conteúdo líquido, como vasos, sobre ou próximo ao equipamento. Assim como qualquer produto eletrônico, tenha cuidado para não derramar líquido em qualquer componente do sistema. Líquidos podem provocar falhas e/ou perigo de incêndio.
- Não coloque qualquer fonte de chama aberta, como velas acesas, sobre ou próximo do equipamento.



### CUIDADO:

- Não faça alterações não autorizadas no produto para não comprometer a segurança, a conformidade com regulamentos e o desempenho do sistema, podendo também anular a garantia.



**ADVERTÊNCIA:** Este produto contém material magnético. Consulte seu médico para esclarecer se isso pode afetar o funcionamento de seu dispositivo médico implantável.

### NOTAS:

- Quando o plugue do cabo de força ou o conector do aparelho for utilizado como dispositivo de desconexão, tal dispositivo deverá permanecer prontamente operável.
- Este produto deve ser utilizado em ambientes internos. Ela não foi projetada nem testada para uso em ambientes externos, em veículos de recreação ou em barcos.
- Os cabos de colunas e de interligação incluídos com o sistema não estão aprovados para instalação por dentro das paredes. Consulte a legislação local de construção civil para saber qual o tipo correto de cabos para instalação no interior das paredes.



Este símbolo indica que o produto não deve ser descartado com o lixo doméstico e deve ser entregue em um local de coleta apropriado para reciclagem. O descarte adequado e a reciclagem ajudam a proteger os recursos naturais, a saúde humana e o meio ambiente. Para obter mais informações sobre o descarte e a reciclagem deste produto, entre em contato com a prefeitura, o serviço de descarte, o serviço de coleta de lixo do local ou a loja onde você comprou este produto.



A Bose Corporation declara pela presente que este produto está de acordo com os requisitos essenciais, bem como outras provisões relevantes, da Diretiva 1999/5/EC e todos os outros requisitos de diretivas aplicáveis da União Europeia. O texto completo da Declaração de Conformidade encontra-se em [www.Bose.com/compliance](http://www.Bose.com/compliance).

## Instruções importantes sobre segurança

1. Leia estas instruções.
2. Guarde estas instruções.
3. Obedeça a todos os avisos.
4. Siga todas as instruções.
5. Não use este equipamento perto da água.
6. Limpe apenas com um pano seco.
7. Não obstrua as aberturas de ventilação. Instale de acordo com as instruções do fabricante.
8. Não o instale próximo a fontes de calor, como radiadores, registros de calor, fogões ou outros equipamentos (incluindo amplificadores) que produzam calor.
9. Proteja o cabo de alimentação para evitar que ele seja pisado ou danificado, particularmente próximo aos plugues, às tomadas e no ponto onde saem dos equipamentos.
10. Somente utilize conexões/acessórios especificados pelo fabricante.
11. Desligue este equipamento da tomada durante trovoadas ou quando não for usá-lo durante muito tempo.
12. Deixe todo e qualquer reparo a cargo de profissionais qualificados. A assistência é necessária quando o equipamento tiver sido danificado de alguma forma, tal como se o cabo ou a ficha de alimentação tiverem sido danificados, se líquidos ou objetos tiverem caído para dentro do equipamento, o aparelho tiver sido exposto a chuva ou umidade, não funcionar normalmente, ou tiver caído.

### Nomes e Conteúdos de Substâncias ou elementos tóxicos ou perigosos

Nome da peça	Substâncias e elementos tóxicos ou perigosos					
	Chumbo (Pb)	Mercúrio (Hg)	Cádmio (Cd)	Hexavalente (CR(VI))	Bifenilos Polibromados (PBB)	Éter difenílico polibromado (PBDE)
Placas de circuitos integrados	X	0	0	0	0	0
Peças metálicas	X	0	0	0	0	0
Peças de plástico	0	0	0	0	0	0
Alto-falantes	X	0	0	0	0	0
Cabos	X	0	0	0	0	0

0: Indica que esta substância tóxica ou perigosa contida em todos os materiais homogêneos desta peça está abaixo do limite em SJ/T 11363-2006.

X: Indica que esta substância tóxica ou perigosa contida em pelo menos um dos materiais homogêneos utilizados nesta peça está acima do limite em SJ/T 11363-2006.

### Preencha e guarde para referência futura.

O número de série e o número do modelo estão localizados no painel do conector do módulo Acoustimass®.

Número de série: \_\_\_\_\_

Número do modelo: \_\_\_\_\_

Data da compra: \_\_\_\_\_

Guarde a nota fiscal do produto junto com o manual do proprietário.

Blu-ray Disc™ e "Blu-Ray™" são marcas comerciais da Blu-Ray Disc Association.

HDMI é uma marca comercial ou registrada da HDMI Licensing LLC nos Estados Unidos e em outros países.

©2014 Bose Corporation. Nenhuma parte deste documento pode ser reproduzida, modificada, distribuída ou utilizada de qualquer outra forma sem autorização por escrito.

<b>Introdução</b>	
<b>Obrigado</b> .....	<b>4</b>
Desembalagem da caixa .....	4
<b>Configuração</b>	
Colocação dos alto-falantes para alcançar som realista de um cinema em casa.....	5
Alto-falantes frontais da esquerda e da direita .....	6
Alto-falante central.....	6
Alto-falantes traseiros .....	6
Módulo Powered Acoustimass® .....	6
Conexões .....	7
Conexão dos alto-falantes ao módulo Acoustimass .....	7
Conexão do módulo Acoustimass® ao receptor .....	8
Verificação das conexões .....	9
<b>Uso do seu sistema</b>	
Como conseguir o máximo dos alto-falantes de home theater .....	10
Ajuste da compensação de sala/grave.....	10
Ajuste do nível LFE.....	10
Configuração do seu receptor de som surround digital .....	11
Recebimento de um sinal de áudio digital .....	11
Configuração do seu receptor de som surround analógico .....	11
<b>Referência</b>	
<b>Solução de problemas</b> .....	<b>12</b>
<b>Suporte ao cliente</b> .....	<b>13</b>
<b>Limpeza</b> .....	<b>13</b>
<b>Informação de garantia limitada</b> .....	<b>13</b>
<b>Acessórios</b> .....	<b>13</b>
Informações técnicas.....	14
Complemento do driver de alto-falante.....	14
Classificação de potência do sistema.....	14
Conectividade .....	14

# Introdução

## Obrigado

Agradecemos a sua escolha pelo sistema de alto-falantes de home theater Bose® Acoustimass® 6 series V ou Acoustimass 10 series V.

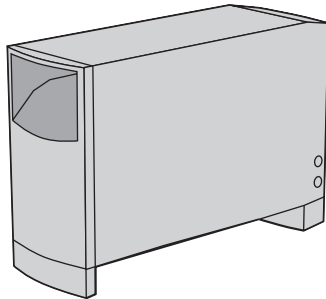
O Acoustimass 6 apresenta cinco pequenos alto-falantes Cube, enquanto o sistema Acoustimass 10 conta com quatro conjuntos de alto-falantes Cube e um alto-falante frontal central. Esses alto-falantes, juntamente com o módulo Acoustimass, produzem uma experiência poderosa e realista de um cinema em casa.

## Desembalagem da caixa

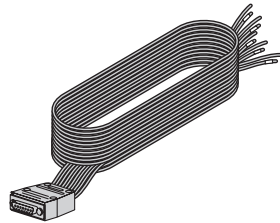
Desembale o conteúdo da caixa com cuidado:

1. Remova a caixa interna marrom que contém os alto-falantes.
2. Deslize com cuidado a caixa para o seu lado e retire o módulo Acoustimass.

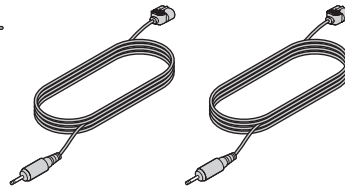
**ADVERTÊNCIA:** Para evitar ferimentos, tenha cuidado no levantamento do módulo, que pesa aproximadamente 14 kg (30 lb).



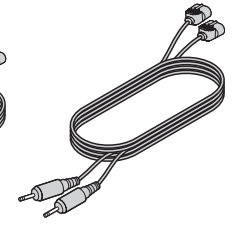
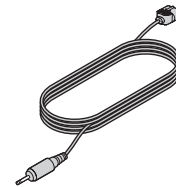
Módulo Powered Acoustimass



Cabo de entrada do sistema de 6,1 m (20 pés)

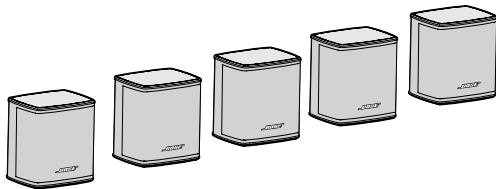


Três cabos de alto-falante dianteiro de 6,1 m (20 pés)



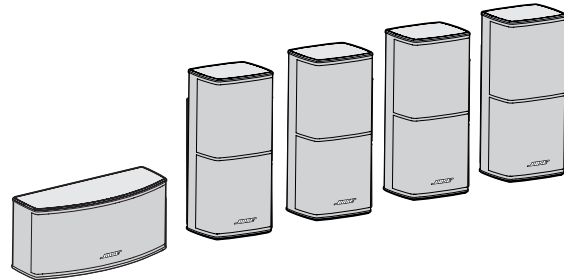
Dois cabos de alto-falante traseiro de 15,2 m (50 pés)

### Com o sistema Acoustimass 6



Cinco alto-falantes Virtually Invisible® series II

### Com o sistema Acoustimass 10



Quatro alto-falantes Direct/Reflecting® series II e um alto-falante de canal central horizontal

### Cabo elétrico (1)



EUA/Canadá



Europa



Reino Unido/Cingapura



Austrália

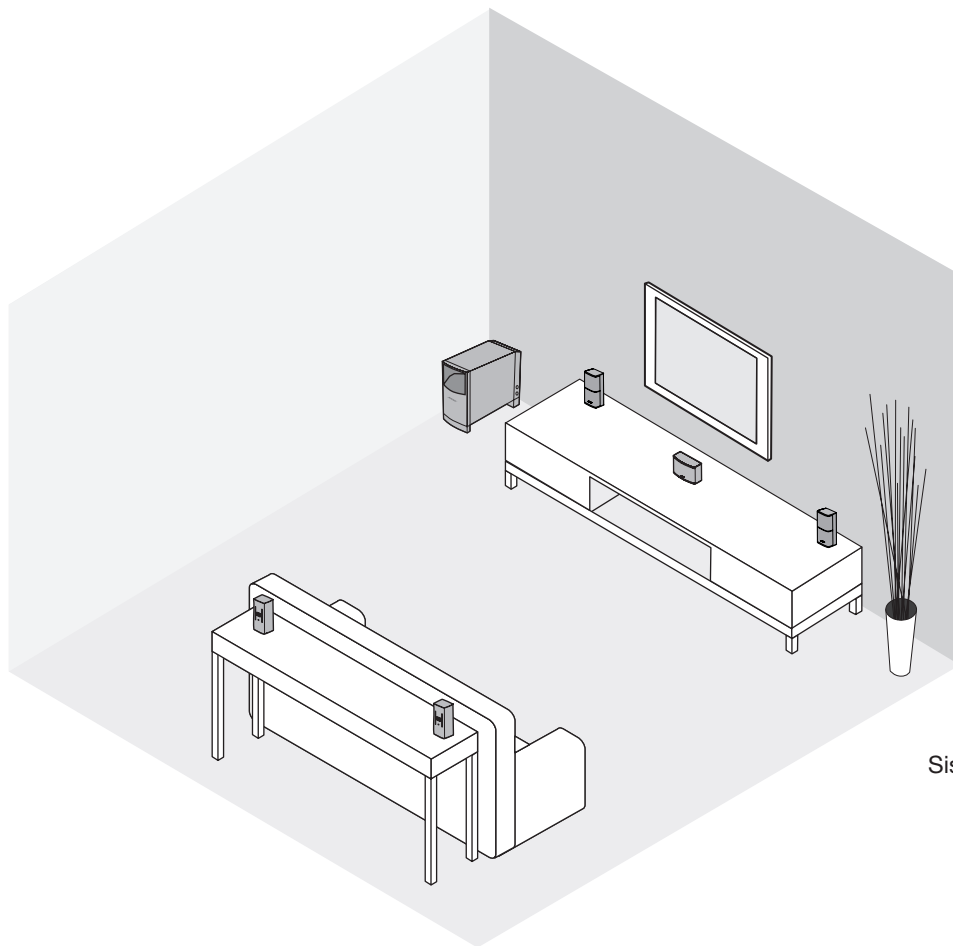
Agora é um bom momento para registrar o número de série do seu produto no cartão de garantia. Guarde a embalagem para possível uso no futuro.

**ADVERTÊNCIA:** Para evitar o perigo de asfixia, mantenha os sacos plásticos que envolvem esses alto-falantes fora do alcance de crianças.

## Colocação dos alto-falantes para alcançar som realista de um cinema em casa

Mantenha estas orientações em mente ao escolher o local de cada alto-falante:

- O módulo Acoustimass® deve estar a pelo menos 0,6 m (2 pés) da TV para evitar interferência.
- Selecione uma superfície estável e nivelada para cada alto-falante.
- Em um sistema Acoustimass 10, o alto-falante do canal central deve ser utilizado na frente da sala e próximo ao centro da TV. Os outros alto-falantes são idênticos e podem ser colocados em qualquer ordem na sala.
- No sistema Acoustimass 6, todos os cinco alto-falantes são idênticos e podem ser colocados em qualquer ordem na sala.
- A forma e o tamanho da sala e a localização da mobília afetarão a escolha dos locais dos alto-falantes. Use o exemplo abaixo como orientação para a instalação do home theater.



Sistema Acoustimass 10 series V

# Configuração

## Alto-falantes frontais da esquerda e da direita

O objetivo deles é criar uma imagem de som mais ampla do que a tela e que pareça natural para os espectadores sentados em qualquer lugar da sala.

- Coloque esses dois alto-falantes frontais em ambos os lados da TV.
- Mantenha-os entre 2 m (6 pés) e 5 m (15 pés) de distância um do outro e a pelo menos 15 cm (6 polegadas) longe de qualquer TV de CRT (tubo de imagem).

## Alto-falante central

O som do alto-falante central deve parecer vir de dentro da imagem, para oferecer o desempenho mais realista de ação e diálogo na tela.

- Coloque o alto-falante central acima, sobre ou abaixo da TV. NÃO coloque o peso da TV no alto-falante.
- Mantenha o alto-falante alinhado ao centro vertical da tela, se possível, para uma reprodução mais precisa dos diálogos.
- Mantenha o alto-falante a pelo menos 15 cm (6 polegadas) longe de qualquer TV de CRT (tubo de imagem).

## Alto-falantes traseiros

Apesar dos diálogos também saírem dos alto-falantes traseiros (surround), esses alto-falantes servem principalmente para oferecer sons discretos e efeitos especiais que ampliam a imagem visual. Eles ajudam a colocar o espectador no centro da ação.

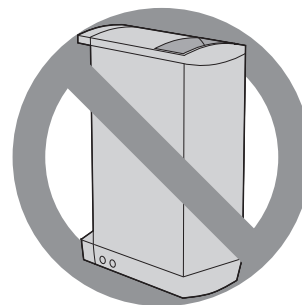
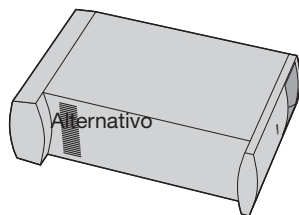
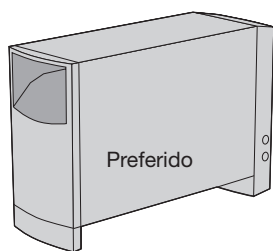
Escolha locais práticos e cômodos, levando em consideração estas recomendações:

- Posicione os alto-falantes traseiros da esquerda e da direita de forma que eles possam fornecer som em ambos os lados do espectador, em vez de diretamente de trás.
- Coloque esses alto-falantes na mesma altura dos ouvidos do espectador sentado ou mais alto.

## Módulo Powered Acoustimass®

A tecnologia dos alto-falantes Acoustimass dificulta a localização da origem de sons de baixa frequência desse módulo. Portanto, fique à vontade para escondê-lo de vista. Coloque o módulo de acordo com as seguintes orientações:

- No mesmo lado da sala em que se encontra a tela da TV.
- A pelo menos 0,6 m (2 pés) da TV para evitar interferência.
- Para aumentar os efeitos dos graves, vire a abertura frontal em direção a uma parede; vire-a na direção oposta à da parede para diminuir os efeitos dos graves.
- Mantenha a abertura frontal e a grade de ventilação na parte inferior do módulo a pelo menos 5 cm (2 polegadas) de qualquer outra superfície.
- Não bloqueie as grades de ventilação localizadas na parte inferior do módulo. Impedir a ventilação pode diminuir a saída de frequências graves do módulo.



## Conexões

Somente o módulo Acoustimass® se conecta ao seu receptor. Todos os alto-falantes se conectam diretamente ao módulo Acoustimass.

**ADVERTÊNCIA:** Não conecte os alto-falantes a um receptor. Isso pode resultar em danos ao sistema e risco de choque elétrico.

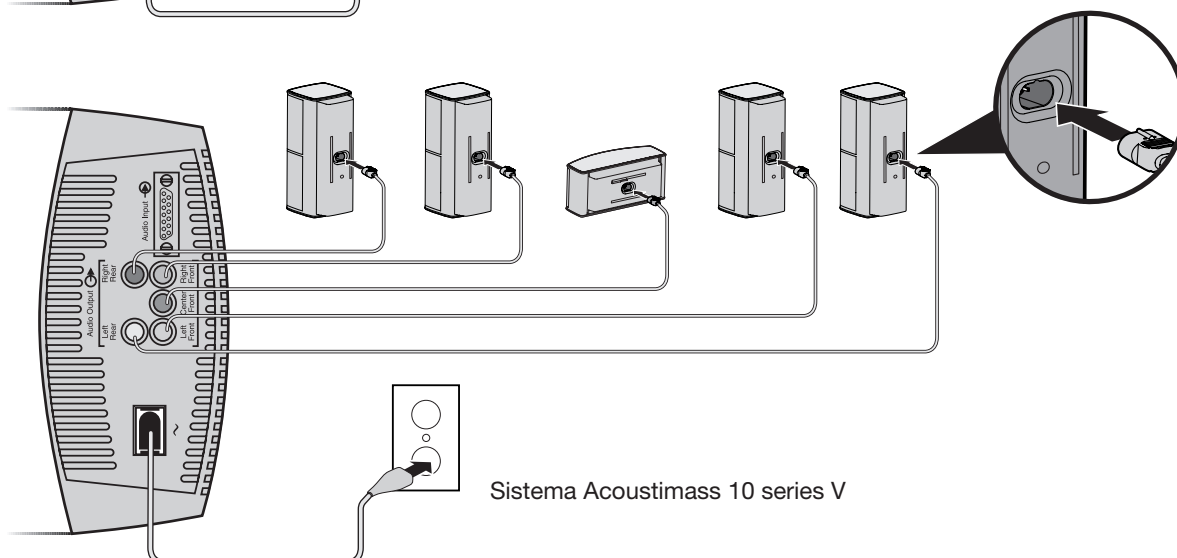
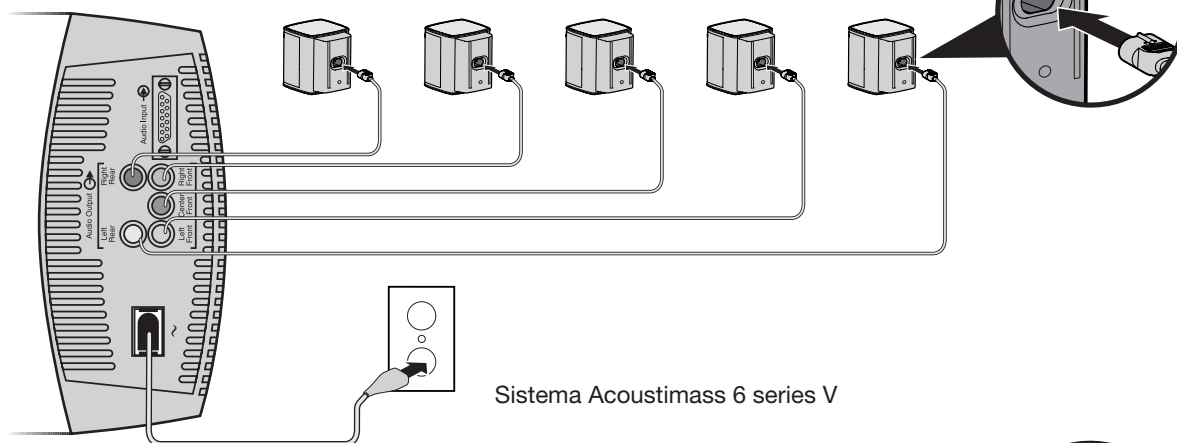
### Conexão dos alto-falantes ao módulo Acoustimass

Insira o plugue em cada cabo dos alto-falantes no conector do módulo. A etiqueta do plugue deve corresponder ao conector apropriado.

- Use os cabos de alto-falante de 6,1 m (20 pés) fornecidos para os três alto-falantes frontais.
  - Insira o plugue **R** no conector com a etiqueta **Right Front** (direita frontal).
  - Insira o plugue **C** no conector com a etiqueta **Center Front** (central frontal).
  - Insira o plugue **L** no conector com a etiqueta **Left Front** (esquerda frontal).
- Use os cabos de alto-falante de 15,2 m (50 pés) fornecidos para os alto-falantes na parte traseira da sala.
  - Insira o plugue **RR** no conector com a etiqueta **Right Rear** (direita atrás).
  - Insira o plugue **LR** no conector com a etiqueta **Left Rear** (esquerda atrás).
- Insira a outra extremidade de cada cabo no conector de cada alto-falante, com a etiqueta virada para baixo.

**Observação:** Encontre a etiqueta em cada cabo que coincida com o alto-falante adequado:

Etiqueta do cabo do alto-falante	
L para o alto-falante dianteiro esquerdo	LR para o alto-falante traseiro esquerdo
R para o alto-falante dianteiro direito	RR para o alto-falante traseiro direito
C para o alto-falante dianteiro central	



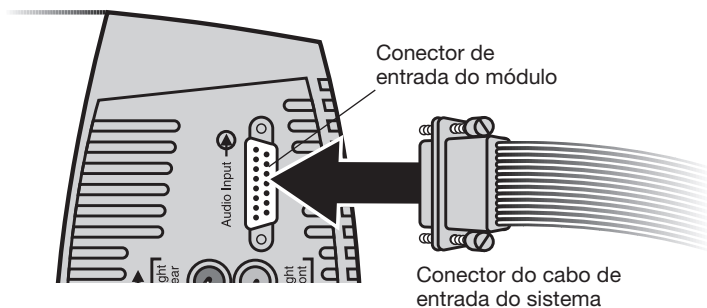


# Configuração

## Conexão do módulo Acoustimass® ao receptor

**CUIDADO:** Antes de fazer as conexões, desligue seu receptor para evitar ruídos indesejados ao conectar o módulo Acoustimass® a ele.

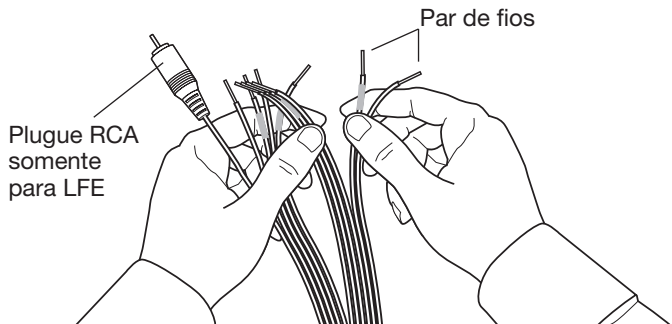
O cabo de entrada do sistema tem 6,1 m (20 pés) de comprimento e se conecta ao seu receptor surround. Ao contrário dos cabos de alto-falante, este cabo de entrada tem um conector multipinos que entra no conector de **Audio Input** (entrada de áudio) do módulo.



Na outra extremidade do cabo de entrada do sistema, vários pares de fios se "descompactam" para fácil acesso e inserção aos terminais do seu receptor. Uma faixa vermelha marca um dos fios como o fio positivo (+).

**CUIDADO:** NÃO conecte o módulo à TV, pois ela não tem a amplificação necessária.

O plugue RCA simples na extremidade é para uso **SOMENTE** com um receptor que trabalhe com efeitos de baixa frequência e forneça um conector **LFE/SUBWOOFER**.

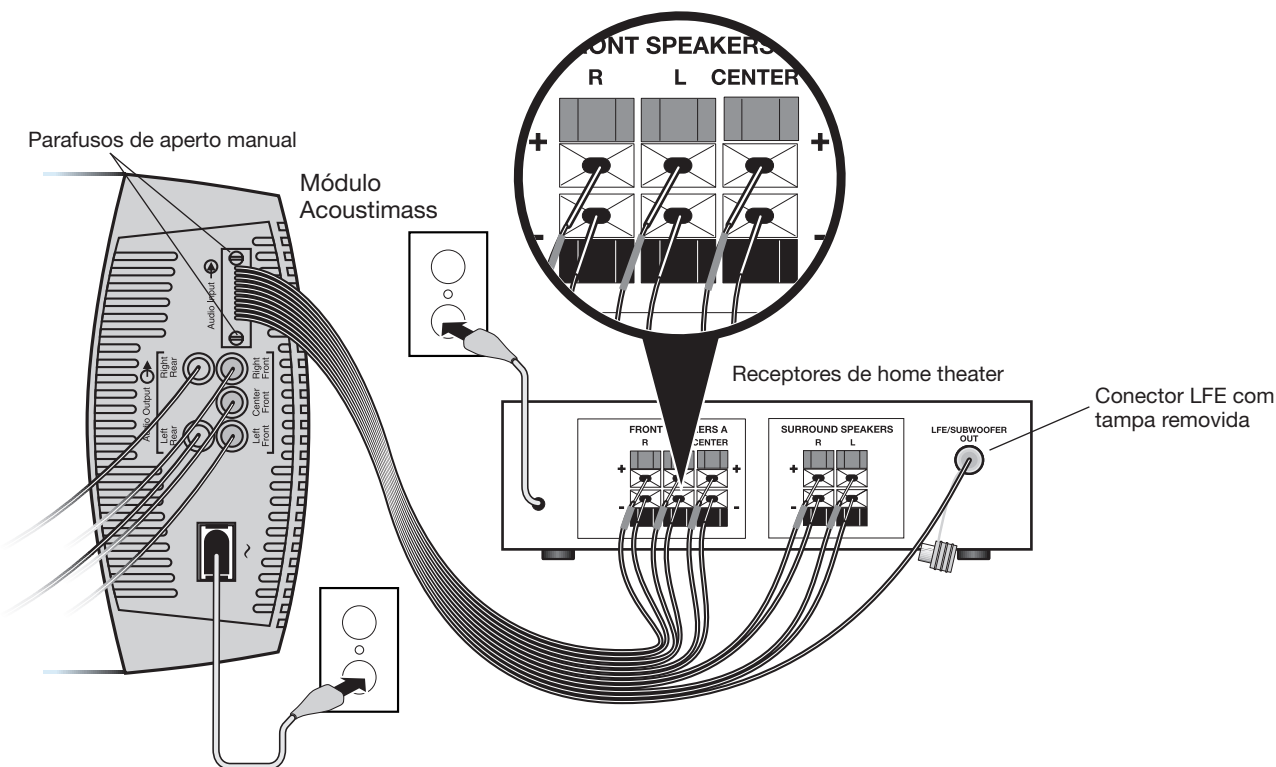


## Para fazer as conexões:

1. Insira o conector multipinos do cabo de entrada de sistema no conector de entrada do módulo Acoustimass®. Aperte os dois parafusos de aperto manual para fixar a conexão.
2. Conecte cada par de fios na outra extremidade do cabo de entrada do sistema ao seu receptor surround, que deve ter etiquetas nos terminais de saída de áudio:
  - Right (direito), Left (esquerdo) e Center (centro) para os canais de áudio frontais.
  - Right Surround (surround direito) e Left Surround (surround esquerdo) para os canais traseiros. As etiquetas do seu receptor podem ser um pouco diferentes.

**CUIDADO:** Não deixe fios expostos encostarem uns nos outros; isso pode danificar o receptor.

3. Coincida com atenção a polaridade das conexões (+ com +, e - com -).
  - Ligue cada fio com faixa vermelha (+) ao terminal + apropriado.
  - Ligue cada fio liso (-) ao terminal - apropriado.
4. Se for aplicável ao seu receptor, insira o plugue RCA marcado como **LFE** do cabo de entrada do sistema, no conector **LFE/SUBWOOFER OUT** do seu receptor surround. Retire a tampa primeiro.



## Verificação das conexões

Antes de ligar o módulo Acoustimass, verifique todas as conexões do receptor ao módulo e do módulo aos alto-falantes.

- Verifique se todos os alto-falantes estão conectados aos terminais adequados de acordo com a posição deles na sala.
- Verifique se todos os cabos estão conectados ao receptor surround com a polaridade correta (fios + com +, e - com -). A conexão incorreta pode resultar em perda total da saída do módulo.
- Corrija os problemas de conexão antes de ligar o seu receptor.

Quando todas as conexões estiverem verificadas, conecte o cabo elétrico do módulo Acoustimass em uma tomada CA (tomada elétrica). Conecte o cabo elétrico do receptor também.

**Observação:** A Bose recomenda o uso de um estabilizador de qualidade em todos os equipamentos eletrônicos. As variações de tensão e surtos podem danificar os componentes eletrônicos de qualquer sistema. Usar um estabilizador de alta qualidade (disponível em lojas de produtos eletrônicos) pode eliminar a grande maioria das falhas causadas por oscilações de energia.

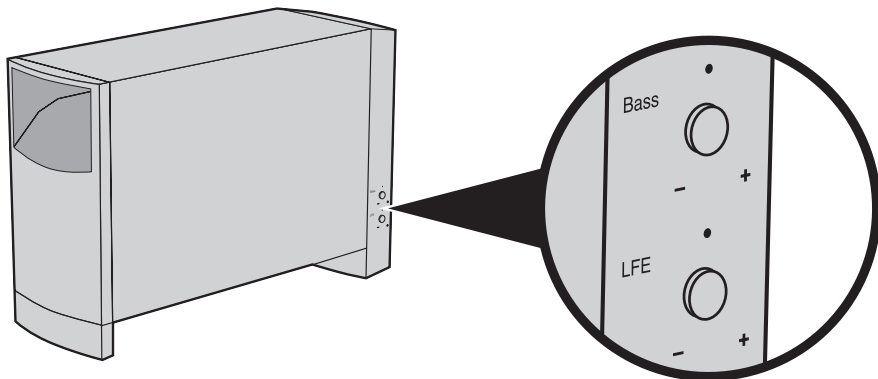
## Uso do seu sistema

### Como conseguir o máximo dos alto-falantes de home theater

Com as conexões do sistema concluídas e o módulo ligado, seu sistema Acoustimass® agora está pronto para ser usado.

Familiarize-se com os controles e as proteções incorporadas que ajustam o áudio desse sistema. Eles oferecem opções para atender ao seu estilo particular de uso e preferências.

**CUIDADO:** Esse sistema oferece um circuito de proteção automática para ajudar a proteger contra danos causados de tensões elétricas e sobrecarga do sistema. Em níveis de alto volume, o circuito é ativado para reduzir a saída, o que diminui um pouco o volume. Se você notar essa diminuição, esteja ciente de que seu sistema está funcionando conforme foi projetado. Essa redução de volume também indica que a entrada de energia no sistema pode ter ultrapassado os níveis seguros. Não é recomendado continuar ouvindo nesses níveis.



### Ajuste da compensação de sala/grave

Depois de colocar o módulo Acoustimass onde quiser, você pode ajustá-lo para que ele fique ideal para esse local. Faça esse ajuste somente quando for necessário.

Por exemplo:

- Se falta graves no desempenho do sistema, gire o controle BASS (mostrado acima) no sentido horário para aumentar a saída de baixa frequência do módulo.
- Se o áudio supervaloriza os graves, gire o botão no sentido anti-horário para reduzir a saída de baixa frequência do módulo.

A configuração de fábrica é destinada ao uso nos arranjos de sala mais comuns.

### Ajuste do nível LFE

O controle do nível LFE (mostrado acima) é somente para uso com receptores que tenham um canal LFE/SUBWOOFER.

Ao girar o botão, você pode ajustar o nível relativo dos efeitos de baixa frequência das trilhas sonoras de filmes. Use-o para combinar o nível de volume do canal LFE com os níveis de volume dos canais dos outros alto-falantes.

Você pode verificar todos os níveis usando o recurso "tons de teste" do seu receptor de som surround digital. Para obter detalhes sobre como usar esse recurso, consulte o manual do proprietário fornecido com o seu receptor surround.

## Configuração do seu receptor de som surround digital

Os alto-falantes do sistema Acoustimass® 6 series V ou Acoustimass 10 series V são totalmente compatíveis com a saída de áudio de receptores surround digitais. O processamento de sinal integrado do sistema é compatível com a reprodução completa de baixa frequência a partir de todos os canais.

Para aproveitar totalmente esses recursos do sistema, você deve ajustar algumas configurações no seu receptor. Para fazer alterações, use o menu do display digital do receptor e consulte a lista de configurações recomendadas abaixo.

Alto-falante	Configuração de receptor
Esquerdo e direito	LARGE (grande)
Centro	LARGE (grande)
Esquerdo e direito surround	LARGE (grande)
LFE/Subwoofer	ON (ativado)

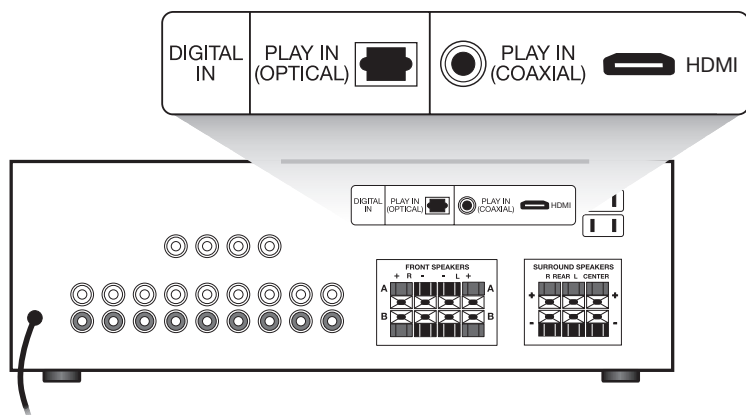
**Observação:** Se seu receptor tiver uma configuração para a opção LFE ou Subwoofer, ela deve estar ativada e o valor de crossover deve estar com o menor número possível, que normalmente é 80 Hz.

### Recebimento de um sinal de áudio digital

Para o sinal de áudio digital de fontes adicionais (Blu-ray™ ou DVD player, caixa CBL/SAT, videogame, etc.) alcançar seu receptor surround, você precisa de uma conexão de áudio digital entre a fonte adicional e o receptor.

- Utilize a entrada HDMI™, óptica ou coaxial do receptor para conectar a saída digital da fonte adicional. Não use mais de uma conexão.
- Não se esqueça de selecionar a saída digital no menu de configuração da sua fonte adicional.

Para obter informações adicionais sobre operação e configuração, consulte o manual do proprietário que acompanha o seu receptor surround.



## Configuração do seu receptor de som surround analógico

Para aplicações de som surround analógico (não digital), recomendamos que você configure o modo de centro de som surround do seu receptor como Wide. Para obter instruções sobre como alterar essa configuração, consulte o manual do proprietário fornecido com o seu receptor surround.

## Referência

# Solução de problemas

Se você tiver um problema com o sistema de alto-falantes Acoustimass®, desligue a fonte de som e tente as seguintes soluções. Se você ainda tiver um problema, entre em contato com um revendedor Bose® para providenciar a manutenção. Para entrar em contato com a Bose diretamente, consulte a lista de contatos da embalagem.

Problema	O que fazer
O sistema não funciona	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Verifique se o receptor e o módulo Powered Acoustimass estão conectados a uma tomada CA que funciona e se o receptor está ligado.</li><li>• Não se esqueça de selecionar uma fonte de áudio no receptor (leitor de Blu-ray ou DVD, caixa CBL/SAT, videogame, etc.).</li></ul>
Sem áudio	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Aumente o volume.</li><li>• Desconecte os fones de ouvido.</li><li>• Verifique as conexões dos alto-falantes no módulo de graves, no receptor e nos alto-falantes.</li><li>• Verifique se o módulo Powered Acoustimass e o receptor estão conectados.</li><li>• Para som digital, verifique se um cabo HDMI, coaxial ou óptico está conectado à saída digital da fonte de áudio com a entrada digital do seu receptor.</li><li>• Verifique se a fonte de áudio selecionada está correta. Por exemplo, selecione o áudio de DVD no seu receptor para ouvir o som do DVD.</li></ul>
Sem som surround	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Verifique se o material de origem contém som surround.</li><li>• Se você estiver usando o modo Dolby Pro-Logic em seu receptor, verifique se o som surround está ativado.</li><li>• Verifique se o material de origem (Blu-ray™ ou DVD player, caixa CBL/SAT, videogame, etc.) está codificado para Dolby Digital.</li><li>• Verifique se seu receptor está processando um sinal de uma TV estéreo, disco laser, Blu-ray player, DVD player ou outra fonte de som surround.</li><li>• Se você estiver usando uma programação digital, verifique se as configurações estão corretas no receptor.</li></ul>
Sem graves	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Verifique se as conexões de alto-falante do receptor para o amplificador estão na fase correta, o fio com faixa vermelha com o conector vermelho (+ com +, e – com –).</li><li>• Verifique se o tamanho do alto-falante no receptor está definido como LARGE (grande).</li></ul>
Grave demais ou não o bastante	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Mova seu módulo Acoustimass para mais perto de uma parede ou de um canto para aumentar o grave. Mova-o para mais longe de uma parede ou de um canto para diminuir o grave.</li><li>• Ajuste o nível LFE ou o controle de compensação da sala.</li></ul>
Som distorcido	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Verifique se o fio do alto-falante não está danificado.</li><li>• Reduza o volume dos componentes externos conectados ao receptor.</li></ul>

---

## Suporte ao cliente

---

Para obter mais auxílio na solução de problemas, entre em contato com o escritório de suporte ao cliente adequado da Bose® em sua região. Consulte a lista de contatos da embalagem.

---

## Limpeza

---

Os gabinetes do sistema de alto-falantes Acoustimass® podem ser limpos apenas com um pano seco e macio. Não use sprays perto do sistema ou derrame líquidos nas aberturas do equipamento. Além disso, não use solventes, produtos químicos ou soluções de limpeza que contenham álcool, amônia ou abrasivos.

Os conjuntos de grade nos alto-falantes podem ser limpos com cuidado com um aspirador, se necessário. Observe que os drivers estão localizados diretamente atrás da grade e serão facilmente danificados se não for tomado cuidado.

---

## Informação de garantia limitada

---

O sistema de alto-falantes Acoustimass® é coberto por uma garantia limitada. Os detalhes da garantia são fornecidos no cartão de garantia que acompanha o sistema. Preencha a seção de informações do cartão e o envie à Bose. No entanto, se você não o fizer, isso não afetará os seus direitos.

As informações de garantia fornecidas com este produto não se aplicam na Austrália ou na Nova Zelândia. Consulte nosso site em [www.bose.com.au/warranty](http://www.bose.com.au/warranty) ou [www.bose.com.nz/warranty](http://www.bose.com.nz/warranty) para obter detalhes sobre a garantia na Austrália e na Nova Zelândia.

---

## Acessórios

---

Você pode posicionar os alto-falantes do sistema em suportes de parede, suportes de mesa ou suportes de chão. Para adquirir esses acessórios, entre em contato com um revendedor local da Bose® ou visite [www.Bose.com](http://www.Bose.com).

Para os seguintes acessórios:

- Cabo de entrada adaptador para uso com fiação na parede do módulo Acoustimass ao receptor
- Cabo de extensão de 6,1 m (20 pés) para uso entre o módulo Acoustimass e o receptor
- Adaptadores de cabo de alto-falante para uso com fiação na parede

Entre em contato com um revendedor autorizado da Bose. Ou, para entrar em contato com a Bose diretamente, consulte a lista de contatos da embalagem.

## Complemento do driver de alto-falante

### Sistema Acoustimass® 10:

- Conjuntos de alto-falantes Cube e alto-falante frontal central:  
Dois alto-falantes de 6,35 cm (2,5") Twiddler™
- Módulo Powered Acoustimass:  
Dois woofers de 13 cm (5,25")

### Sistema Acoustimass 6:

- Alto-falantes Cube:  
Um alto-falante de 6,35 cm (2,5") Twiddler™
- Módulo Powered Acoustimass:  
Um woofer de 13 cm (5,25")

## Classificação de potência do sistema

### Sistema Acoustimass 10:

EUA/Canadá: 100-127V ~  
270/60 Hz  
50W

Europa/Austrália: 220-240V ~  
270/60 Hz  
50W

### Sistema Acoustimass 6:

EUA/Canadá: 100-127V ~  
135/60 Hz  
50W

Europa/Austrália: 220-240V ~  
135/60 Hz  
50W

## Conectividade

### Sistema Acoustimass 10:

Compatível com amplificadores e receptores A/V com classificação de 10 a 200 watts por canal e de 4 a 8 ohms

### Sistema Acoustimass 6:

Compatível com amplificadores e receptores A/V com classificação de 10 a 150 watts por canal e de 4 a 8 ohms

### Sistema Acoustimass 10:

Conjunto de alto-falantes Cube e alto-falante frontal central: 1 kg (2,2 lb) cada

conjunto de alto-falantes Cube: 15,7 cm A x 7,9 cm L x 10,2 cm P (7,4"A x 3,2"L x 3,3"P)

alto-falante frontal central: 15,7 cm A x 7,9 cm L x 10,2 cm P (3,4"A x 7,3"L x 3,2"P)

Módulo: 15.8 kg (35 lb)

41,4 cm A x 20,6 cm L x 64,3 cm P (16,3"A x 8,1"L x 25,3"P)

### Sistema Acoustimass 6:

Alto-falante Cube: 0,45 kg (1,18 lb) cada

9,5 cm A x 8,3 cm L x 8,4 cm P (3,7"A x 3,2"L x 3,3"P)

Módulo: 12.2 kg (27 lb)

41,4 cm A x 20,6 cm L x 56,6 cm P (16,3"A x 8,1"L x 22,3"P)





# Viktig säkerhetsinformation

## Läs den här bruksanvisningen och spara den sedan för framtida bruk.



Blixtsymbolen med pilhuvudet i en likbent triangel uppmärksammar dig på att det finns oisolerad farlig spänning i systemet som kan vara tillräckligt stark för att orsaka elektriska stötar.



Utropstecknet inuti en liksidig triangel, på systemet, är avsett att upplysa användaren om att det finns viktiga anvisningar om skötsel och underhåll av systemet i denna handbok.



### VARNINGAR:

- För att minska risken för brand och elektriska stötar ska du undvika att utsätta produkten för regn eller fukt.
- Utsätt inte systemet för väta och placera inga föremål som exempelvis vaser fyllda med vatten på systemet eller i dess närhet. Precis som med andra elektroniska produkter bör du vara försiktig så att du inte spillar vätska i någon del av systemet. Vätskor kan orsaka fel och/eller brand.
- Tända ljus eller andra föremål med öppna lågor får inte placeras på eller i närheten av produkten.



### FÖRSIKTIGHET!

- Gör inga otillåtna ändringar av produkten eftersom det kan äventyra säkerheten, efterlevandet av bestämmelser samt systemets prestanda. Dessutom kan produktgarantin bli ogiltig.



**VARNING!** Produkten innehåller magnetiska material. Kontakta din läkare om du har frågor om huruvida produkten kan påverka implantat av medicinsk enhet.

### TÄNK PÅ FÖLJANDE:

- Om produkten kopplas bort från strömförsörjningen med nätkabelns eller produktens kontakt ska det vara lätt att komma åt och använda denna kontakt.
- Den här produkten får bara användas inomhus. Den har inte konstruerats eller testats för utomhusbruk eller för användning på båtar eller i husvagnar/bilar.
- Högtalarsladdarna och kablarna mellan högtalarna som medföljer systemet är inte godkända för att installeras i väggar. Kontrollera vilka lokala bestämmelser som gäller för sladdar och kablar som ska installeras i väggar.



Den här symbolen betyder att produkten inte ska kastas med hushållsoporna utan återvinnas i enlighet med lokala bestämmelser. Rätt deponering och återvinning hjälper till att skydda våra naturresurser, vår hälsa och miljön. Mer information om deponering och återvinning av produkten får du om du kontaktar lokala myndigheter, deponeringscentraler eller affären där du köpte produkten.



Härmed förklarar Bose Corporation att denna produkt i alla väsentliga avseenden uppfyller de krav och föreskrifter som uppställts enligt direktivet 1999/5/EG och andra tillämpliga EG-direktiv. En komplett försäkran om överensstämmelse finns på [www.bose.com/compliance](http://www.bose.com/compliance).

## Viktiga säkerhetsanvisningar

1. Läs de här anvisningarna.
2. Behåll anvisningarna.
3. Ge akt på alla varningar.
4. Följ alla anvisningar.
5. Använd inte produkten i närheten av vatten.
6. Rengör endast med en torr trasa.
7. Blockera inte ventilationsöppningarna. Installera produkten i enlighet med tillverkarens anvisningar.
8. Installera inte produkten nära någon värmekälla (t.ex. radiator, värmespjäll och spisar) eller någon annan apparat (inklusive förstärkare) som avger värme.
9. Skydda elkabeln så att ingen trampar på den och så att den inte kommer i kläm. Detta är särskilt viktigt vid kontaktorna, tillbehörsuttagen och den plats där elkabeln kommer ut ur apparaten.
10. Använd bara den utrustning/de tillbehör som rekommenderas av tillverkaren.
11. Koppla bort produkten från eluttaget när åskan går eller om den inte ska användas under en längre period.
12. Låt utbildad personal utföra all service. Underhåll krävs när apparaten skadats på något sätt, t.ex. skada på elkabel eller kontakt, vätska har spillts i apparaten eller främmande föremål har hamnat i den, apparaten har utsatts för regn eller fukt, apparaten fungerar inte felfritt eller har tappats.

### Namn och innehåll på giftiga eller farliga ämnen eller delar

Namn	Giftiga eller farliga ämnen eller delar					
	Bly (Pb)	Kvicksilver (Hg)	Kadmium (Cd)	Sexvärdig (CR(VI))	Polyklorerad bifenylnyl (PBB)	Polyklorerad diphenyl ether (PBDE)
PCB:er	X	0	0	0	0	0
Metall	X	0	0	0	0	0
Plast	0	0	0	0	0	0
Högtalare	X	0	0	0	0	0
Kablar	X	0	0	0	0	0

0: Anger att detta giftiga eller farliga ämne som ingår i alla homogena material i den här artikeln ligger under gränsvärdena uppställda i SJ/T 11363-2006.

X: Anger att detta giftiga eller farliga ämne som ingår i minst ett av de homogena materialen i den här artikeln ligger över gränsvärdena uppställda i SJ/T 11363-2006.

### Fyll i uppgifterna och se till att förvara dem.

Serienummer och modellnummer finns på kontaktpanelen på Acoustimass®-modulen.

Serienummer: \_\_\_\_\_

Modellnummer: \_\_\_\_\_

Inköpsdatum: \_\_\_\_\_

Spara inköpskvittot tillsammans med den här bruksanvisningen.

Blu-ray Disc™ och Blu-ray™ är varumärken som tillhör Blu-ray Disc Association.

HDMI är ett varumärke eller ett registrerat varumärke som tillhör HDMI Licensing LLC i USA och andra länder.

©2014 Bose Corporation. Ingen del av denna publikation får återges, modifieras, distribueras eller användas på annat sätt utan föregående skriftlig tillåtelse.

**Inledning**

Tack .....	4
Packa upp kartongen .....	4

**Installation**

Placera högtalarna för att få realistiskt hemmabioljud .....	5
Vänster och höger fronthögtalare .....	6
Mittenhögtalare .....	6
Bakre högtalare .....	6
Den elektriskt anslutna Acoustimass®-modulen.....	6
Anslutningar .....	7
Ansluta högtalarna till Acoustimass-modulen .....	7
Ansluta Acoustimass®-modulen till förstärkaren .....	8
Kontrollera anslutningarna .....	9

**Använda systemet**

Använda hemmabiohögtalarna på bästa sätt .....	10
Justera basen/rumskompensationen .....	10
Justera LFE-nivån .....	10
Ställa in den digitala surroundljuds förstärkaren .....	11
Ta emot digitala ljudsignaler .....	11
Ställa in den analoga surroundljuds förstärkaren .....	11

**Referens**

Felsökning.....	12
Kundtjänst.....	13
Rengöring.....	13
Information om den begränsade garantin .....	13
Tillbehör .....	13
Teknisk information.....	14
Specifikation för högtalarelement.....	14
Systemeffekt.....	14
Anslutningar .....	14

# Inledning

## Tack

Vi är glada att du valt hemmabiosystemet Bose® Acoustimass® 6 series V eller Acoustimass 10 Series V.

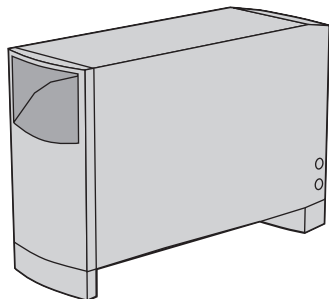
Acoustimass 6 består av fem små kubhögtalare, medan Acoustimass 10 består av fyra kubhögtalare och en främre mitterhögtalare. Dessa högtalare ger tillsammans med Acoustimass-modulen en kraftfull och realistisk hemmabioupplevelse.

## Packa upp kartongen

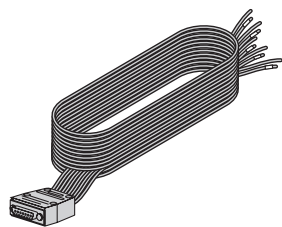
Packa upp innehållet i kartongen försiktigt:

1. Ta bort den bruna innerkartongen som innehåller högtalarna.
2. Lägg försiktigt över kartongen på sidan och dra ut Acoustimass-modulen.

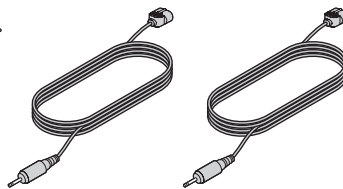
**VARNING:** Var försiktig när du lyfter modulen så du inte skadar dig, eftersom den väger 14 kg.



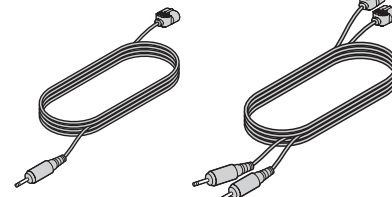
Den elektriskt anslutna Acoustimass-modulen



6,1 m systemkabel

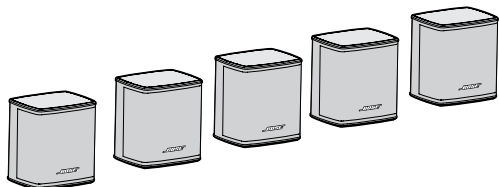


Tre 6,1 m fronthögtalarkablar



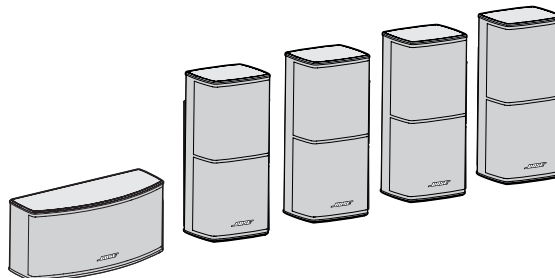
Två 15,2 m långa kablar till bakre högtalare

### Acoustimass 6-systemet



Fem Virtually Invisible® series II-högtalare

### Acoustimass 10-systemet



Fyra Direct/Reflecting® series II-högtalare och en vågrät mitterkanalshögtalare

### Strömsladd (1)



USA/Kanada



Europa



Storbritannien/Singapore



Australien

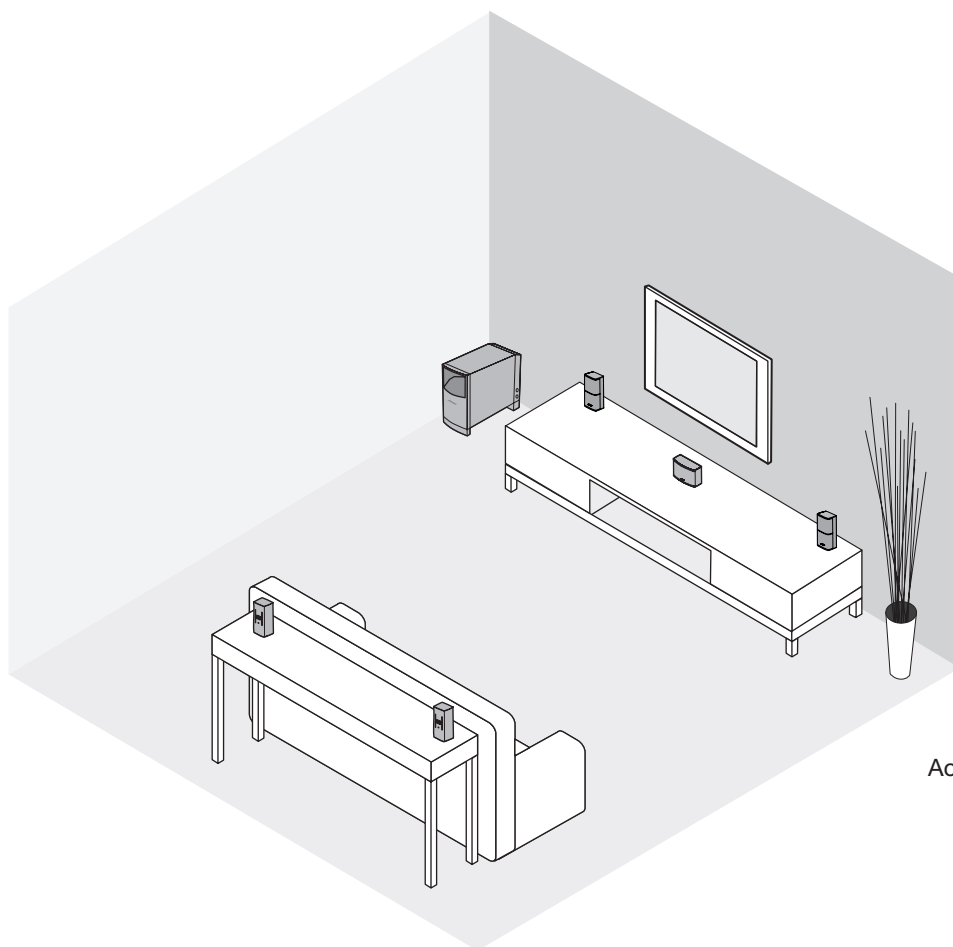
Nu är det lämpligt att skriva upp produktens serienummer på ditt garantikort. Behåll förpackningsmaterialet för eventuellt framtida bruk.

**VARNING!** Förvara de plastpåsar som omgav högtalarna utom räckhåll för barn för att undvika kvävningrisk.

## Placera högtalarna för att få realistiskt hemmabioljud

Ha dessa riktlinjer i åtanke när du väljer högtalarnas placering:

- Acoustimass®-modulen ska stå minst 0,6 m från TV:n för att förhindra störningar.
- Välj ett stabilt och plant underlag för högtalarna.
- I ett Acoustimass 10-system ska den främre mitterhögtalaren placeras längst fram i rummet nära TV:ns mittpunkt. De andra högtalarna är identiska och kan placeras på lämpliga platser i rummet.
- I Acoustimass 6-systemet är alla fem högtalarna identiska och kan placeras på lämpliga platser i rummet.
- Rummets form och storlek samt möbleringen påverkar hur högtalarna kan placeras. I exemplet nedan visas hur du kan installera hemmabiosystemet.



Acoustimass 10 Series V-system

# Installation

## Vänster och höger fronthögtalare

De här högtalarnas uppgift är att skapa en ljudbild som är bredare än TV-skärmen och framstår som naturlig för TV-tittare runt om i rummet.

- Placera de två främre högtalarna på var sin sida av TV:n.
- Ha dem 2 m till 5 m från varandra och minst 15 cm från en bildrörs-TV (CRT).

## Mittenhögtalare

Ljudet från mittenhögtalaren ska kännas som om det kommer inifrån bilden för att återge bild och ljud så realistiskt som möjligt.

- Placera mittenhögtalaren ovanför, ovanpå eller nedanför TV:n. Låt INTE TV:ns vikt vila på högtalaren.
- Placera (om möjligt) högtalaren i linje med skärmens lodräta mittpunkt, för den mest exakta dialogåtergivningen.
- Se till att högtalaren inte är närmare än 15 cm från en bildrörs-TV (CRT).

## Bakre högtalare

Även om viss dialog kan komma från bakhögtalarna (surroundhögtalarna) är de främst till för diskreta ljud och specialeffekter som fördjupar den visuella bilden. De gör att tittaren placeras i mitt i handlingen.

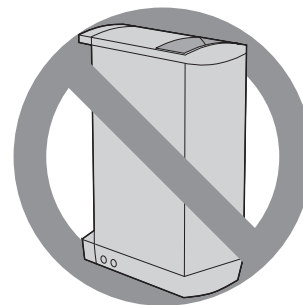
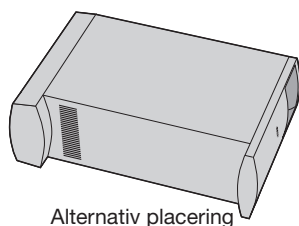
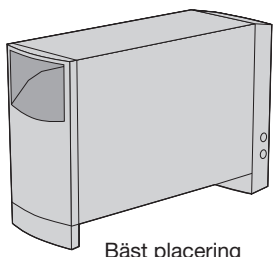
Välj en placering som är praktisk och lämplig, baserat på de här rekommenderade riktlinjerna:

- Placera vänster och höger bakhögtalare så att ljudet kommer på bägge sidor om tittaren, snarare än precis bakom.
- Placera högtalarna i samma höjd som den sittande tittarens öron eller högre.

## Den elektriskt anslutna Acoustimass®-modulen

Acoustimass®-högtalartekniken gör det svårt att lokalisera källan till lågfrekventa ljud från den här modulen. Du kan alltså lugnt ställa den utom synhåll. Placera modulen enligt följande riktlinjer:

- På samma sida av rummet som TV:n.
- Minst 0,6 m från TV:n för att förhindra störning.
- För att öka baseffekten vrider du framsidans öppning mot en vägg, för att minska baseffekten vrider du den bort från väggen.
- Låt framsidans öppning och ventilationsgallret längst ned på modulen stå minst 5 cm från någon annan yta.
- Blockera inte ventilationsgallret längst ned på modulen. Försämrad ventilation kan försvaga basfrekvensen.



## Anslutningar

Endast Acoustimass®-modulen ska anslutas till din förstärkare. Högtalarna ansluts direkt till Acoustimass-modulen.

**WARNING!** Anslut inte högtalaren till en mottagare. Detta kan medföra skador på systemet och eventuella elektriska stötar.

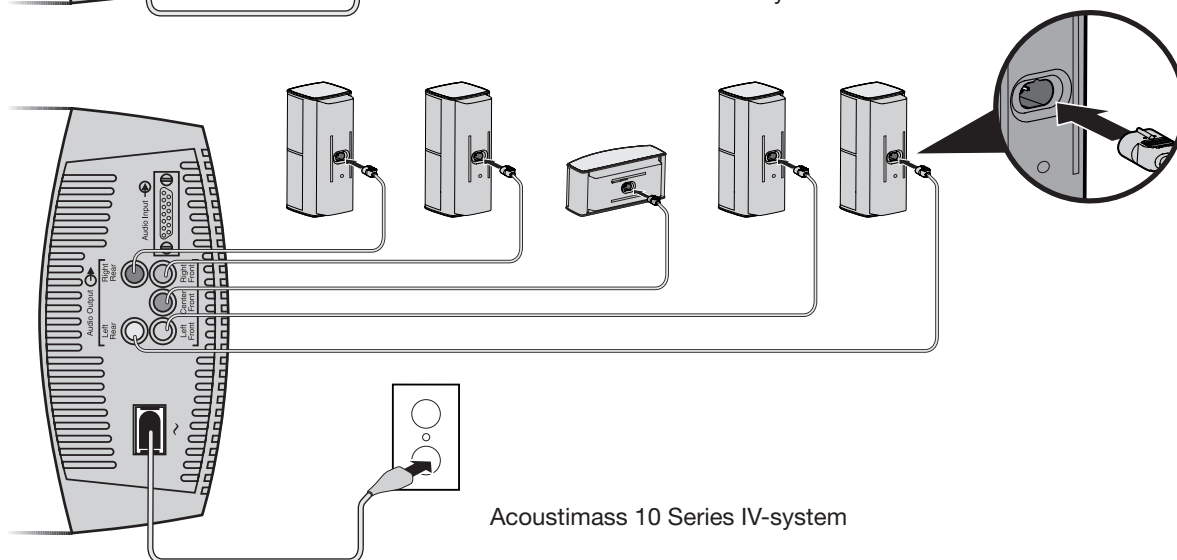
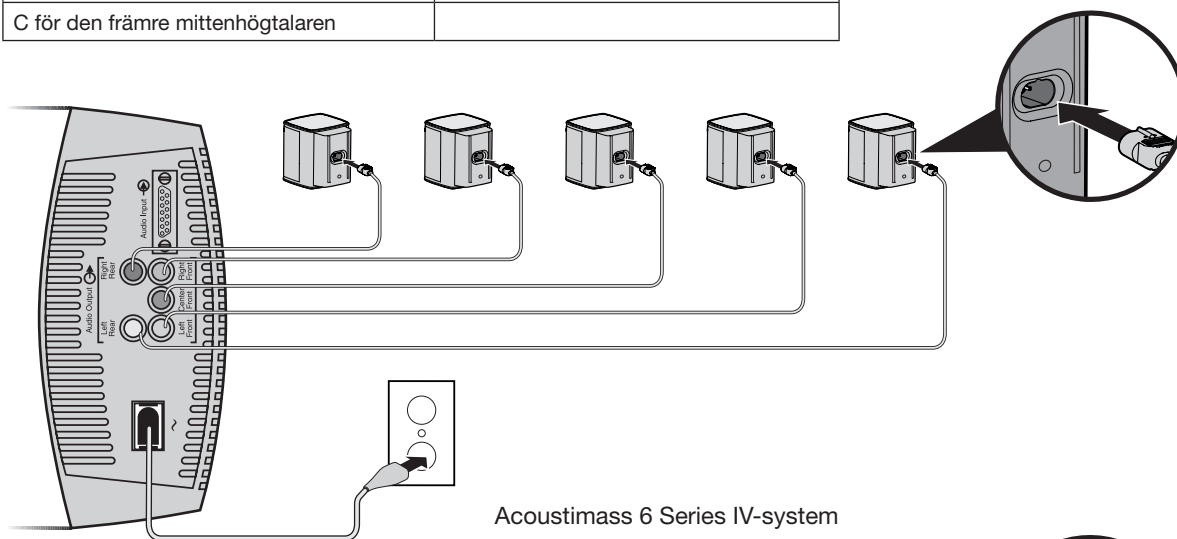
### Ansluta högtalarna till Acoustimass-modulen

Anslut alla högtalarstickkontakter till kontakterna på modulen. Matcha etiketten på stickkontakten mot rätt kontakt.

- Använd de medföljande 6,1 m långa högtalarkablarna för de tre fronthögtalarna.
  - Sätt in **R**-stickkontakten i kontakten märkt med **Right Front**.
  - Sätt in **C**-stickkontakten i kontakten märkt med **Center Front**.
  - Sätt in **L**-stickkontakten i kontakten märkt med **Left Front**.
- Använd de medföljande 15,2 m långa högtalarkablarna för högtalarna längst bak i rummet.
  - Sätt in **RR**-stickkontakten i kontakten märkt med **Right Rear**.
  - Sätt in **LR**-stickkontakten i kontakten märkt med **Left Rear**.
- Sätt in den andra änden av kabeln i kontakten på varje högtalare. Vänd etiketten nedåt.

**Obs!** Hitta etiketten på varje högtalarkabel som matchar rätt högtalare.

Etiketter på högtalarkabel	
L för vänster fronthögtalare	LR för vänster bakhögtalare
R för höger fronthögtalare	RR för höger bakhögtalare
C för den främre mittenhögtalaren	

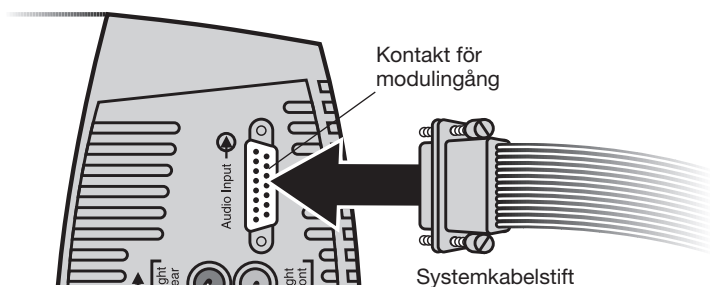


# Installation

## Ansluta Acoustimass®-modulen till förstärkaren

**FÖRSIKTIGHET!** Innan du gör dessa anslutningar stänger du av förstärkaren för att förhindra oönskat brus när du ansluter Acoustimass®-modulen.

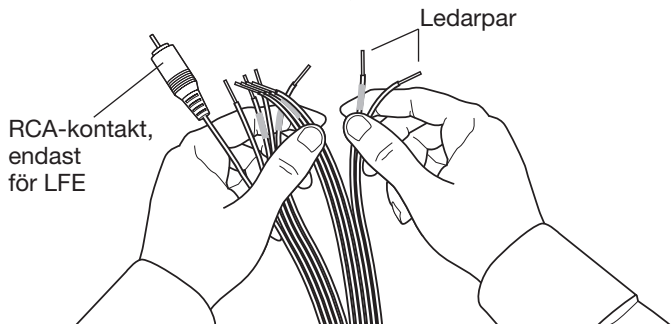
Systemkabeln är 6,1 meter lång och ansluter modulen till surroundljudsförstärkaren. Till skillnad mot högtalarkablarna har den här kabeln en kontakt med flera stift som ska sättas i modulens **Audio Input**.



I andra änden av systemkabeln finns flera ledarpar som kan "dras isär" för att de ska vara enkla att nå och sättas in i förstärkarens terminaler. En röd markering visar att ledaren är positiv (+).

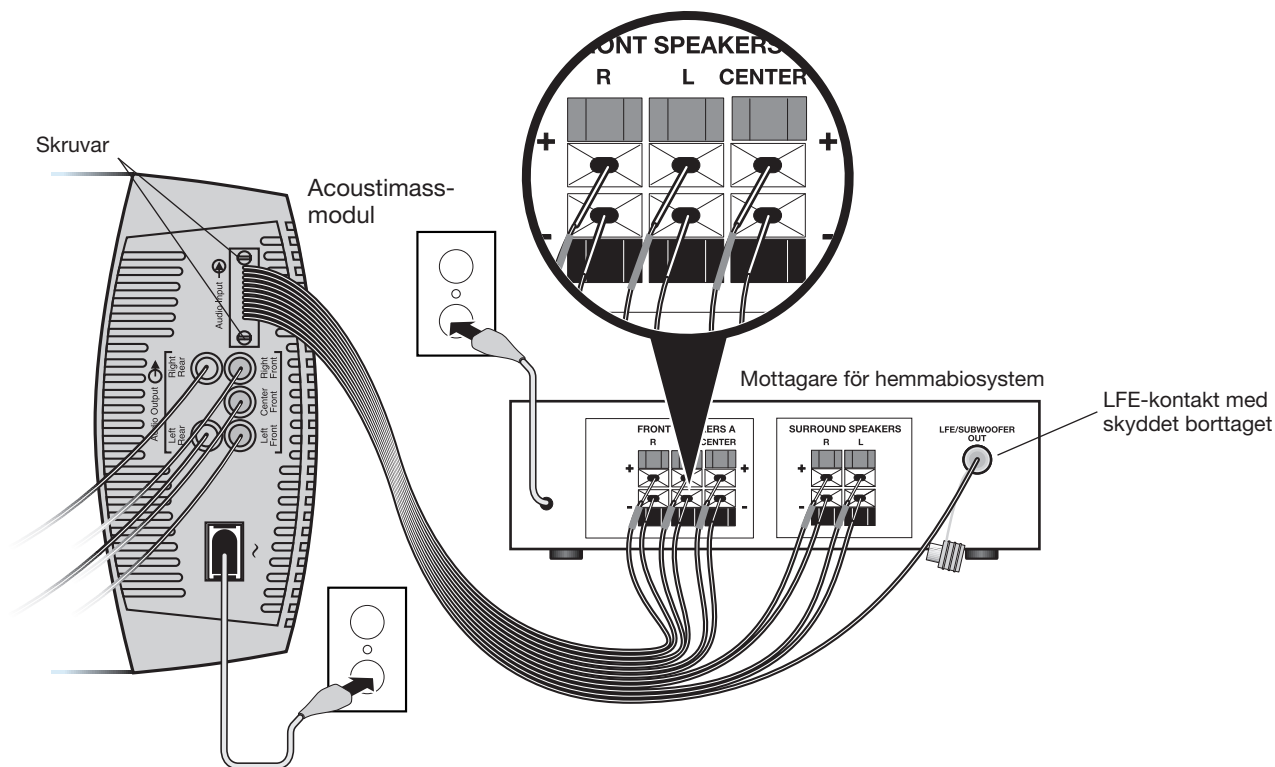
**FÖRSIKTIGHET!** Anslut INTE modulen till TV:n, som saknar korrekt förstärkning.

Den enstaka RCA-kontakten i änden ska **ENDAST** användas tillsammans med en förstärkare som kan hantera lågfrekventa ljud och som har ett **LFE/SUBWOOFER**-uttag.



### Så här ansluter du:

1. Anslut flerstiftskontakten på ljudkabeln till ingången på Acoustimass®-modulen. Dra åt de två skruvarna för att säkra anslutningen.
  2. Anslut varje ledarpar i systemkabelns andra ände till surroundförstärkaren, som ska ha ljudutgångar märkta:
    - Right, Left och Center för de främre ljudkanalerna.
    - Right Surround och Left Surround för de bakre kanalerna (Höger surround och Vänster surround). Markeringarna kan variera något mellan olika förstärkare.
- FÖRSIKTIGHET!** Låt inte oskyddade ledare vidröra varandra då detta kan skada förstärkaren.
3. Matcha försiktigt anslutningarnas polaritet (+ till + och – till –).
    - Fäst varje rödmärkt ledare (+) till lämplig +-terminal.
    - Fäst varje omärkt ledare (–) i lämplig – kontakt.
  4. Sätt in systemkabelns RCA-kontakt som är märkt **LFE** i **LFE/SUBWOOFER OUT**-uttaget på din surroundförstärkare, om tillämpligt. Ta bort skyddet först.



## Kontrollera anslutningarna

Innan du ansluter Acoustimass-modulen kontrollerar du alla anslutningar, från förstärkaren till modulen och från modulen till högtalarna.

- Kontrollera att högtalarna är anslutna till rätt kontakter enligt deras placering i rummet.
- Kontrollera så att alla ledare är anslutna till surroundförstärkaren med rätt polaritet (+ till + och – till –). Felaktig ledardragning kan göra att modulen inte låter alls.
- Rätta till eventuella fel innan du ansluter din förstärkare och slår på den.

Då alla anslutningar är korrekta, sätter du in strömkabeln från Acoustimass-modulen i vägguttaget. Anslut även förstärkaren.

**Obs!** Bose rekommenderar att ett överspänningsskydd av hög kvalitet används för all elektronisk utrustning. Spänningsvariationer och -toppar kan skada elektroniska komponenter i alla system. Genom att använda ett högkvalitativt överspänningsskydd (finns i elbutiker) kan den största delen av fel som orsakas av strömspikar förhindras.



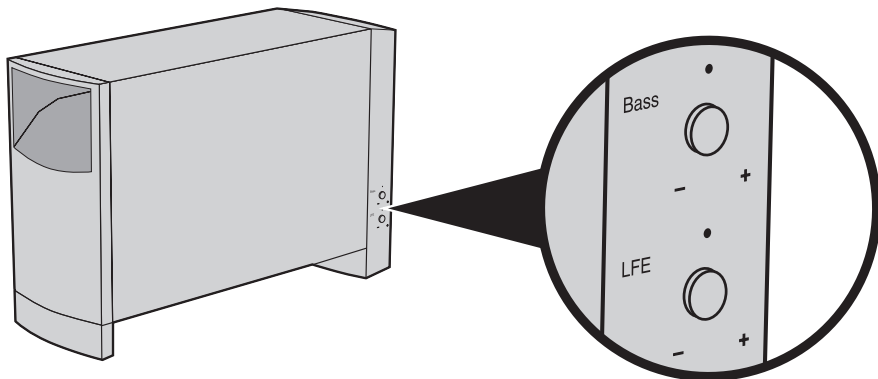
## Använda systemet

### Använda hemmabiohögtalarna på bästa sätt

När systemanslutningarna är klara och modulen är ansluten till vägguttaget är Acoustimass®-systemet redo för användning.

Bekanta dig med reglagen och de inbyggda skydden som justerar systemljudet. Här finns alternativ som kan anpassas efter din användning och dina önskemål.

**FÖRSIKTIGHET!** Systemet innehåller en automatisk skyddskrets för att skydda mot skador vid elektriska toppar och systemöverbelastning. Vid höga volymnivåer aktiveras kretsen för att minska uteffekten vilket gör att volymen sänks något. Om du märker av denna sänkning så tänk på att den innebär att systemet fungerar som det ska. Den här volymsänkningen visar också på att systemets strömtillförsel kanske överskrider en säker nivå. Kontinuerligt lyssnande på sådana nivåer rekommenderas inte.



#### Justera basen/rumskompensationen

När du har placerat Acoustimass-modulen där du vill ha den kan du fininställa den för just den platsen. Justera endast om det behövs.

Exempel:

- Om ljudet inte har någon bas, ska du vrida vrid BASS-kontrollen (se ovan) medsols för att öka modulens lågfrekventa ljud.
- Om basen är mycket förstärkt, vrid du vredet motsols för att minska modulens lågfrekventa ljud.

Fabriksinställningen är avsedd för de flesta vanliga rumsmöbleringar.

#### Justera LFE-nivån

LFE-nivåreglaget (visas ovan) används endast för förstärkare med en LFE/SUBWOOFER-kanal.

Genom att vrida på vredet kan du justera den relativa nivån av lågfrekventa ljud i filmmusik. Använd vredet för att anpassa LFE-kanalens volymnivå efter de andra högtalarkanalernas volymnivåer.

Du kan kontrollera alla nivåer genom att använda testtonsfunktionen på din digitala surroundljudsförstärkare. Information om hur du använder den här funktionen finns i bruksanvisningen som medföljde surroundförstärkaren.

## Ställa in den digitala surroundljudsförstärkaren

Högtalarna i systemen Acoustimass® 6 Series V och Acoustimass 10 Series V är helt kompatibla med ljudutdata från digitala surroundförstärkare. Systemets integrerade signalbehandling stöder full återgivning av lågfrekventa ljud från alla kanaler.

För att få full kontroll över systemets möjligheter kanske du vill justera några av förstärkarens inställningar. Använd menyn på förstärkarens skärm för att göra ändringar. Nedan finns en lista över rekommenderade inställningar.

Högtalare	Inställning på förstärkare
Vänster och höger	LARGE (STOR)
Mitten	LARGE (STOR)
Vänster och höger surround	LARGE (STOR)
LFE/Subwoofer	ON

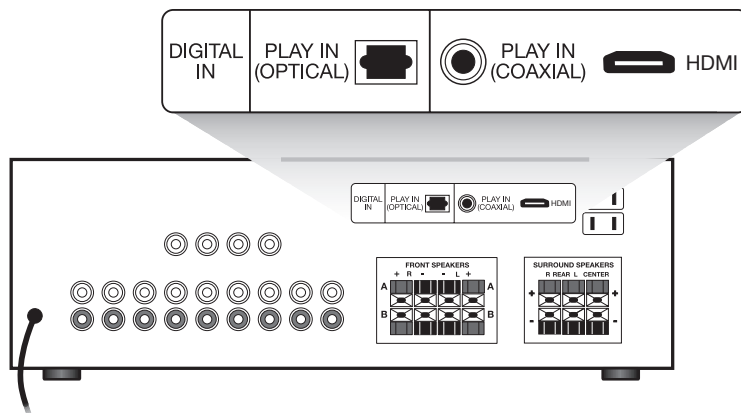
**Obs!** LFE- eller Subwoofer-alternativet ska vara inställt på ON (PÅ) och delningsfiltervärdet så lågt som möjligt, vanligtvis 80 Hz, om sådan inställning finns på förstärkaren.

### Ta emot digitala ljudsignaler

För att den digitala ljudsignalen från andra källenheter (Blu-ray™- eller DVD-spelare, CBL/SAT-box, spelsystem, osv.) ska nå surroundmottagaren måste du ha en digital ljudanslutning mellan den andra källenheten och mottagaren.

- Använd antingen HDMI™-ingången eller den optiska/koaxiala ingången på förstärkaren för att ansluta det digitala ljudet från andra källenheter. Använd endast en anslutning.
- Se till att du väljer digitalt ljud i inställningsmenyn på den andra källenheten.

Mer information om hur du ställer in och använder förstärkaren finns i bruksanvisningen som medföljde surroundförstärkaren.



## Ställa in den analoga surroundljudsförstärkaren

För analoga (ej digitala) surroundljudstillämpningar rekommenderar vi att du ställer in förstärkarens mittenläge för surroundljud på Wide (Brett). Anvisningar om hur du ändrar den här inställningen finns i bruksanvisningen som medföljde surroundförstärkaren.

# Felsökning

Om du får problem med Acoustimass®-högtalarsystemet stänger du av ljudkällan och provar nedanstående lösningar. Om problemet kvarstår, kontakta en Bose®-återförsäljare för service. Du kan också kontakta Bose direkt. Se adresslistan i förpackningen.

Problem	Åtgärd
Systemet fungerar inte alls	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Kontrollera att förstärkaren och Acoustimass-modulen är anslutna till ett fungerande vägguttag samt att förstärkaren är påslagen.</li><li>• Kontrollera att du väljer en ljudkälla på mottagaren (Blu-ray- eller DVD-spelare, CBL/SAT-box, spelsystem, osv.).</li></ul>
Inget ljud	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Höj volymen.</li><li>• Koppla från eventuella hörlurar.</li><li>• Kontrollera högtalaranslutningarna på basmodulen, mottagaren eller högtalarna.</li><li>• Se till att både Acoustimass-modulen och förstärkaren är anslutna till ett vägguttag.</li><li>• För digitalt ljud ska du se till att använda en HDMI-kabel eller en koaxial/optisk kabel för att ansluta den digitala signalen från ljudkällan till den digitala ingången på förstärkaren.</li><li>• Kontrollera att rätt ljudkälla valts. Välj t.ex. dvd-ljud på förstärkaren för att höra dvd-ljud.</li></ul>
Inget surroundljud	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Kontrollera att källan innehåller surroundljud.</li><li>• Om du använder läget Dolby Pro-Logic på förstärkaren kontrollerar du att surroundljud är påslaget.</li><li>• Kontrollera att källanheten (Blu-ray™- eller DVD-spelare, CBL/SAT-box, spelsystem, osv.) är Dolby Digital-kompatibel.</li><li>• Kontrollera att förstärkaren behandlar en signal från en stereo-TV, laserskiva, Blu-ray eller DVD-spelare eller någon annan surroundljudkälla.</li><li>• Om du ser på en digital utsändning, kontrollerar du att rätt inställningar används på förstärkaren.</li></ul>
Ingen bas	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Kontrollera att högtalaranslutningarna från mottagaren till förstärkaren är i rätt fas: rödmärkt ledare till rött uttag (+ till + och – till –).</li><li>• Kontrollera att högtalarstorleken i mottagaren är inställd för stora.</li></ul>
Inte tillräckligt med bas eller för mycket bas	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Flytta Acoustimass-modulen närmare en vägg eller ett hörn för att öka basen. Flytta den längre från en vägg eller ett hörn för att minska basen.</li><li>• Justera LFE -nivån eller rumskompensationen.</li></ul>
Ljudet är förvrängt	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Kontrollera att högtalarledaren inte är skadad.</li><li>• Minska antalet externa komponenter som är anslutna till förstärkaren.</li></ul>

---

## Kundtjänst

---

Om du behöver mer hjälp med att lösa problem ska du kontakta Bose® kundtjänst i ditt område. Se adresslistan i förpackningen.

---

## Rengöring

---

Kabinetten i Acoustimass®-högtalarsystemen ska bara rengöras med en mjuk och torr trasa. Använd inga sprejer i närheten av systemet eller låt vätska rinna ned i eventuella öppningar. Använd inte heller några rengöringsmedel, kemikalier eller rengöringslösningar som innehåller alkohol, ammoniak eller slipmedel.

Gallret på högtalarna kan dammsugas försiktigt om det behövs. Observera att elementen är placerade direkt bakom gallret och kan lätt skadas om inte försiktighet iakttas.

---

## Information om den begränsade garantin

---

Acoustimass®-högtalarsystemet täcks av en begränsad garanti. Fullständiga upplysningar om garantin finns på garantikortet som medföljer systemet. Fyll i uppgifterna på kortet och skicka in det till Bose. Dina rättigheter påverkas inte även om du inte gör det.

Den garantiinformation som medföljer den här produkten gäller inte i Australien eller Nya Zeeland. På webbplatsen [www.bose.com.au/warranty](http://www.bose.com.au/warranty) eller [www.bose.com.nz/warranty](http://www.bose.com.nz/warranty) finns information om vilka garantier som gäller för Australien och Nya Zeeland.

---

## Tillbehör

---

Du kan placera systemhögtalarna på väggfästen, bordsstativ eller golvstativ. Om du vill köpa ett väggfäste eller ett stativ ska du kontakta en Bose® -återförsäljare eller besöka [www.Bose.com](http://www.Bose.com).

För följande tillbehör:

- Kabeladapter för kabeldragning i väggen från Acoustimass-modulen till förstärkaren
- 6,1 m förlängningskabel för användning mellan Acoustimass-modulen och förstärkaren
- Högtalarkabeladapterar för användning i väggar

Kontakta en auktoriserad Bose-återförsäljare. Du kan också kontakta Bose direkt. Se adresslistan i förpackningen.

## Specifikation för högtalarelement

### Acoustimass® 10-system:

- Kubhögtalarsystem och främre mitterhögtalare:  
Två 6,35 cm Twiddler™-högtalare
- Den elektriskt anslutna Acoustimass-modulen:  
Två 13 cm woofers

### Acoustimass 6-system:

- Kubhögtalare:  
Två 6,35 cm Twiddler™-högtalare
- Den elektriskt anslutna Acoustimass-modulen:  
En 13 cm woofer

## Systemeffekt

### Acoustimass 10-system:

USA/Kanada: 100-127V ~ 50/270Hz 60W

Europa/Australien: 220-240V ~ 50/270Hz 60W

### Acoustimass 6-system:

USA/Kanada: 100-127V ~ 50/135Hz 60W

Europa/Australien: 220-240V ~ 50/135Hz 60W

## Anslutningar

### Acoustimass 10-system:

Kompatibel med A/V-mottagare och förstärkare med 10 till 200 W per kanal och 4 till 8 ohm

### Acoustimass 6-system:

Kompatibel med A/V-mottagare och förstärkare med 10 till 50 W per kanal och 4 till 8 ohm.

### Acoustimass 10-system:

Kubhögtalarsystem och främre mitterhögtalare: 1 kg vardera

kubhögtalarsystem: 15,7 cm (H) x 7,9 cm (B) x 102 cm (D)

främre mitterhögtalare: 15,7 cm (H) x 7,9 cm (B) x 102 cm (D)

Modul: 15.8 kg (35 lb)

41,4 cm (H) x 20,6 cm (B) x 64,3 cm (D)

### Acoustimass 6-system:

Kubhögtalare: 0,45 kg vardera

9,5 cm (H) x 8,3 cm (B) x 8,4 cm (D)

Modul: 12.2 kg (27 lb)

41,4 cm (H) x 20,6 cm (B) x 56,6 cm (D)











717626-0010

***BOSE***<sup>®</sup>  
*Better sound through research*<sup>®</sup>

©2014 Bose Corporation, The Mountain,  
Framingham, MA 01701-9168 USA  
AM717626 Rev. 00